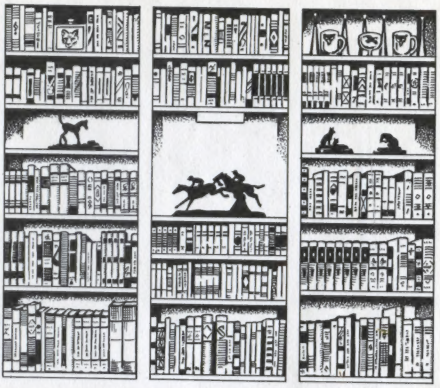


Ex Libris

JOHN AND MARTHA DANIELS

Or

THE ENGLISH HORSEMAN:

Contayning all the Art of Horſe-manſhip, aſmuch as is neceſſary for any man to vnderſtand, whether hee be Horſe-breeder, horſe-ryder, horſe-hunter, horſe-runner, horſe-ambler, horſe-farrier, horſe-keeper, Coachman, Smith, or Sadler.

Together, with the diſcouery of the ſubtil trade or myſtery of horſ-courſers, and an explanation of the excellency of a horſes vnderſtanding: or how to teach thē to do trickes like *Bankes* his Curtall:

And that Horſes may be made to draw dry-foot like a Hound. Secrets before vnpubliſhed, & now carefully ſet downe for the profit of this whole Nation:

Newly imprinted, corrected & augmented, with many worthy ſecrets not before knowne:

By *Gervaſe Markham.*









To the most High and mightie, CHARLES, Prince of *Wales*, Duke of *Cornewall*, *Yorke*, *Albanie* and *Rothsay*, Marqueſſe of *Ormount*, Earle of *Roſſe* and *Cheſter*, Baron of *Armanoch*: Great Marſhall of *Scotland*, and Lord of the *Iſles* thereof, and Knight of the most Noble order of the Garter.

IT is not out of ambition (most excellent Prince) to get vnto my ſelfe a more particular Name, then the meaneſt Groome in your Highnes Stable, which hath mooued mee to offer vnto your ſacred handes, this poore volume of mine experience in this Arte, which euen from mine infancie I haue purſued ſo farre forth, as either mine abilitie or obſcuritie had power to extend it ſelfe. But becauſe it hath pleaſed God through the glory of your countenance to giue a new life to this Arte, which not long agoe was ſo much neglected, that I thinke (if it had beene poſſible for vertue to haue receiued ſo great a ſtaine) it would haue drawne neare to the danger of diſpiſing; ſo many vnfurniſhed Stables, like vnpeopled Townes, and ſo many worthy ſpirits (ignorant in the nobleſt action) beeing prophetique ſignes of following deſolution, but by your Highnes fauours it is not repayred (for that were but to peice vp olde Ruines) but there is (as it were) a new and an eternall

foundation laide, which will continue till all the corners of the world be consumed: which as it hath inflamed me to offer vp this tribute of my zeale and knowledge, so I wish it would likewise kindle some sparkes in others, who hauing attayned the top and height of all best perfection, might leaue vnto the world some famous records of ther worthie admirations; and not by their neglect, suffer a diuine guift to perish with their naturall bodies, knowing that if either Xenophon, Russius, *or* Grison *had beene so vncharitable, they should themselues with much more difficulty haue attayned to that in which now they haue no equal; and being by them manifested vnto the world, they shall not onely blesse and make happy posteritie, but also so acertaine, vncertaine resolutions, that how euer the world shall boast either* Spaine, France *or* Italie, *yet it shall then be knowne, that they haue not brought foorth so good Horse-men as haue beene bred, and are now liuing in this Empire of great* Brittaine, *to whome albe the world may imagine I haue broken the way with too great boldnesse, yet mine humble soule knowes, I haue done it with such care and zeale, that they shall neither taske me for absurditie, or mis-application, to which I will not be able either by Arte or demonstration to giue an account or satisfaction; holding it in my selfe a sinne vnpardonable to offer to your gracious presence that which shall not taste both of true Art, and true duety: And how euer the first may bee mistaken, yet the latter shall be so much vnblemished, that (though a worme) yet my faith shall not bee exceeded, but I will liue and dye your Highnes Beades-man and vassaile:*

GERVASE MARKHAM.

To the three great Columbes of this Empire: the Nobilitie, the Gentrie, and Yeomanrie of Great *Brittaine.*

NO ſooner ſhall this worke of mine breake foorth into the world, but I knowe it will ſtirre vp many thoughts in many perſons: ſome wondring what new matter I haue to ſpeake of; ſome fearing olde repetitions; and ſome reſting ſatisfied in their opinions with that ſmall treatiſe which I formerly publiſhed; but to all theſe I knowe the worke it ſelfe will giue indifferent ſatisfaction: onely touching that ſmall treatiſe of Horſemanſhip, which about ſixteene yeares agone (when mine experience was but youngly fortified) I brought forth into the world: giue me leaue to deliuer you theſe few reaſons. Firſt it was not gathered for any publique view or benefit, but onely at the intreaty of a deare kinſman (in thoſe dayes much inamored with delight in ryding) was as eſſaies or taſtes collected for his priuate vſe: and that hee might with leſſe difficulty attaine the perfection at which he aymed. Next, being intended for him, who was well grounded in the Arte before, I was leſſe carefull to obſerue thoſe plaine rules of demonſtration, then otherwayes I would haue beene, my thoughts not then plotting the benefite of any ſuch as were ignorant, and ſo I muſt confeſſe I let paſſe the worke with more obſcuritie and darknes then otherwiſe I ſhould haue done. Laſtly, a coppie thereof being corruptly taken, and couetouſly offred to the printing without my know-

ledge, I thought it as good my ſelfe to publiſh it with his naturall wantes, as to let it come abroad by others with vilder deformities: and hence proceeded the appearance of my firſt Epitomie in the world; which becauſe it hath found fauour both amongſt my friends and ſtrangers, and the better to ſatisfie them, who haue done me honour in giuing allowance to mine imperfect labours, I thought good to publiſh this larger volume, wherein I haue not onely at full laide open all the obſcurities and concealments which haue been hidden both in it and in other writings, but alſo made ſuch an euen & direct path to leade the moſt ignoranteſt ſpirit through the bowels and heart of this praiſe-worthy Arte, that not any man whatſoeuer (who will beſtow the reading thereof) but ſhal in his greateſt doubt touching any intricate propoſition in Horſe-manſhip, finde both reaſon and ſatisfaction, whether hee be generall, as delighting in all thinges wherein the vſe of Horſe is imployed, or particular as addicted to any peculiar braunch or member: wherein as my labour and the expence of my beſt houres, hath onely tended to a publique good, ſo I deſire my reward may not be either an eſpeciall miſ conſtruction, or a particular enuie; and that as the ſtrength of my wiſh hath been to help thoſe which know nothing in this Art, ſo it may be an attractiue perſwaſion to thoſe which know much more then my ſelfe, to publiſh their skils, and ſo to make it a moſt compleat Art, till when let this Booke and my loue bee a true teſtimony of my zeale and ſeruice to my

Countrey, whoſe flouriſhing eſtate and wealthy
peace I pray may neuer end, till the laſt
of all times be ended.

G. M.

A Table of all the Chapters contained in euery seuerall Booke through this whole volume.

The Table of the First Booke.

Chapters.

1 OF the Breeding of Horses, and first touching the choise of Groundes, their vses and seperations.

2 Of Horses and Mares, and of their diuers kindes.

3 Of the mixture of Races, for which purpose each is best, and for the Breeders commoditie.

4 Of the choise of Stallions and Mares, the knowledge of their age by diuers obseruations, and of the shapes.

5 How and at what time of the yeare Horses and Mares should ingender: Signes of a Mares desire, how many Mares for one Stallion, and how long hee shall continue with them.

6 Of couering Mares in the house, the dyeting of the Stallion, the time of the day for the act, and to knowe when she hath conceiued.

7 That Mares may bee made to conceiue either Horse-foales or Mare-foales at pleasure, and of what colour the breeder will.

8 How Mares should be forc'd to take the Horse, and how to mooue lust in Horse and Mare, and how to abate it.

9 Which Mares should be couered, which not, and which shall not goe barren.

10 The vse of Mares when they are with foale, and of the casting of Foales.

Chapters.

11 Helpe for a Mare that is in danger of Foaling and other ſecrets.

12 How to make a Mare caſt her Foale.

13 The vſe of Mares when they haue foaled: of the ſucking of Foales and other helpes and vſes.

14 The knowledge of a Horſes ſhape, ſtature and quallity, and how it is to be knowne when he is new foaled.

15 How Horſe-foales and Mare-foales grow, and how to know the continuance of their goodneſſe.

16 Of the weaning of Coltes, of their ordering, and ſeperating them according to their ages.

17 Of the gelding of Colts and Horſes, the cauſe, the age, the time of the yeare, and manner.

18 When, and at what age to take vp Coltes for the Saddle, and of their firſt vſe and haltring.

19 Of the cutting of Colts mouthes or tongues, and of the drawing of teeth to help the bit to lye in his true place.

20 Of the ſeperating of bad Coltes and Mares from the good, and which ſhall maintaine the race ſtill.

The Table of the Second Booke.

Chapters.

1 OF the Natures and diſpoſitions of Horſes: howe they are to be knowne by the Colours of the Horſes, and other ſpeciall markes.

2 The vſe and benefite of the Chaine, Cauezan, Headſtraine, Muſrole and Martingale.

3 How to make a Colt gentle, how to bring him to the blocke, and of the firſt Brydle and Saddle.

4 Of helpes and corrections, and of the vſes and ſeuerall kindes thereof.

5 How to correct a Horſe that beareth his heade or necke awry, and of all vices belonging to the head.

6 How to correct a Horſe that doth ouer-reach or ſtrike one foote vpon another.

7 How

Chapters.

7 How to correct the euill motions in a horſe, which are ſhewed by the carriage of his head or eares, or other outward ſignes.

8 Corrections againſt reſtifenes, & the ſeueral kinds therof.

9 How to correct a Horſe that runneth away, and the cauſe of ſuch euill.

10 How to correct a Horſe that will reare vpright, or come ouer with his Ryder.

11 How to correct a Horſe that will lye downe in the water as hee paſſeth thorow.

12 How to correct a Horſe that is skittiſh and fearefull and findeth many boggards.

13 How to correct a Horſe that is dull of ſpirit, and ſlouenly in his trott.

14 Of the treading of the large ringes, and their vſe.

15 Of ſtopping, retyring, aduancing, and the vſes.

16 Of yerking behinde, and the vſe.

17 Of turning vpon both handes, and the ſeuerall kindes of turnes.

18 Of managing, and the ſeuerall kindes.

19 Of the paſſing of a ſwift Carrier.

20 When and how to Bitt Horſes, and to make the heade conſtant.

21 Of bounding aloft and the manner thereof.

22 Of the Coruet, Capriol, Gallop-galliard, and of going ſide-long.

23 Of running at the Ring and the vſe of the Launce.

24 Of the teaching of young Schollers: and the ryding of a ridden Horſe to the beſt ſhew.

The Table of the Third Booke.

Chapters.

1 OF Huntiug horſes in generall, and of their Chaſes.

2 The chuſing of the Hunting horſe, & of his ſhape.

3 At what age Horſes ſhould hunt, of their firſt taking from Graſſe, and of their houſing.

4 Of

Chapters.

4 Of the first fortnights dyet, exercising, and dressing.

5 Of the ayring of Hunting horses.

6 The second fortnights dyet and first hunting.

7 Of Hunting bread, both ordinari (as for trayning of Horses) and extraordinary for matches.

8 Of all manner of Purgations or scowrings that are fit for Hunting horses, and of their natures, vse and operations.

9 The third fortnights dyet, and of sweating.

10 Why Horses should haue their sweates after the Dogs and of their cloathing.

11 Of making a Hunting match, the obseruations and aduantages.

12 The dyeting of a Hunting horse for a match.

13 Of the Ryding of a match, and of the aduantages in ryding.

14 The Tryers office & the aduantages hee must obserue.

15 The office of the Groome, and helpes in rubbing of Hunting horses.

The Table of the Fourth Booke.

Chapters.

1 OF Ambling in generall, and of the vse and commoditie.

2 Why Foales amble from their Dammes, and how to make them amble if they doe not.

3 How to teach a Horse to amble by the helpe of a newe plowed field, and the faults therein.

4 Of making a Horse amble from his gallop, or by ouer-ryding.

5 How to make Horses amble by vse of weights.

6 Of making a Horse amble out of the hand.

7 Of making Horses to amble by the helpe of the hand onely.

8 Of making horses to amble by the help of shooes only,

9 Of teaching horses to amble by the vse of the Tramell.

Th

The Table of the Fift Booke.

Chapters.

1 HOw Stables shal be made, the seat and cõmodities.
2 Of a trauelling horses meat, and the seuerall kindes and vses.
3 Of the seuerall kindes of waters, which is best, and which is worst.
4 Of the Dressing, Combing, and Currying of horses, and of their dyet in the time of rest.
5 Of a Horses labour or exercise, and how hee shall be ordered when he is iourneyed.
6 Of sleeping, waking, fulnesse and emptinesse.
7 Of the Soyle or scowring Horses with grasse, and of other foodes.
8 Of the passions which are in Horses, and the loue which Keepers should beare vnto them.
9 The office of the Coachman, & obseruations for his place.

The Table for the Sixt Booke.

Chapters.

1 OF Running horses in generall and their choise.
2 How Running horses shall be first trayned vp and of their dyet.
3 Of the making of a match, and obseruations therein.
4 Of the seuerall kindes of ayrings, and foodes belonging to a Running horse.
5 Of the seuerall kindes of sweates, and of the vses.
6 Of the ordering and dyeting a Running horse for match or wager.
7 Obseruations to be vsed and inconueniences which happen during the dyetting of Running horses.
8 Certaine helpes and rules for the Ryder, and how he shal runne his Horse at the best aduantage.
9 The office of the Sadler, and the best side of his commodities.
10 The office of the Smith touching the shooing of horses.

The

The Table of the Seauenth Booke.

Chapters.

1 OF the compoſition of Horſes, and the qualitie of the thinges hee is compounded of.
2 Of the Sinewes, Veynes, and Bones of a Horſe.
3 Of a Horſes vrine, and of his excrements.
4 Of the letting of Horſes blood, the time, the cauſe and ſignes.
5 Of ſickneſſe in generall.
6 Of Feauers and the diuers kindes thereof.
7 Of the Peſtilence or Gargill.
8 Of the inward diſeaſes of the heade, and firſt of the headach.
9 Of the Frenzy or madnes in Horſes.
10 Of the ſleeping euill or Lethargie.
11 Of a Horſe that is taken.
12 Of the Staggers.
13 Of the falling-euill or falling-ſickneſſe.
14 Of the Appoplexie or Palſie.
15 Of the Witch or night-mare.
16 Of Crampes or conuultions of Sinewes.
17 Of the Poſe or colde in the head.
18 Of diſeaſes in the eyes, and firſt of watriſh eyes.
19 Of Blood-ſhotten eyes.
20 Of Dimneſſe of ſight, pin, web, Pearles or ſpottes.
21 Of the Haw or kirnels within the eyes.
22 Of the Lunatike or Moone-eyes.
23 Of the Canker, Vlcer, or Fiſtula in the eye.
24 Of diſeaſes belonging to the eares, and firſt of laue eares or hanging eares.
25 Of the impoſtume in the eares.
26 Of the Poll euill, or Fiſtula in the necke.
27 Of the Viues.
28 Of the cankerous Vlcer in the noſe.
29 Of bleeding at the noſe.

Chapters.
30 Of diſeaſes in the mouth, and firſt of the bloody riftes:
31 Of the bladders.
32 Of the lampas.
33 Of the canker in the mouth.
34 Of heate in the mouth and lippes.
35 Of the tongue being hurt with the bitt.
36 Of the Barbs or pappes vnder a Horſes tongue.
37 Of the paine in the Teeth, and of the Wolfes.
38 Of the cricke in the necke.
39 Of Wennes in the necke.
40 Of ſwelling in the Necke after blood-letting.
41 Of ſtenching of Blood, whether it come by blood-letting or by any wound receiued.
42 Of the falling of the Creſt.
43 Of mangines or ſcabbes within the Mayne.
44 Of ſhedding the haire from the mayne or tayle.
45 Of the ſwelling of the Withers, either by pinching, or galling with an ill ſaddle.
46 Of the impoſtumations in a Horſes withers.
47 Of hard hornes, knobs, or fitfaſtes growing vnder the Saddle.
48 Of the Nauell-gall.
49 Of the ſwaying of the backe.
50 Of weakenes in the backe.
51 Of hide-bound.
52 Of the Strangle, Glanders, and mourning of the chyne.
53 Of the Cough.
54 Of the inward and wet Cough.
55 Of the frettized, broken, and rotten lunges.
56 Of the putrified or rotten lunges.
57 Of the ſhortneſſe of breath and the cauſes.
58 Of a Conſumption.
59 Of griefe in the breaſt.
60 Of the Antichor.
61 Of Tyred horſes.
62 Of diſeaſes vnder the midriffe.

Chapters.

63 Of the loaththing of meate.
64 Of casting out drinke.
65 Of surfeits.
66 Of the hungry euill.
67 Of the diseases of the Liuer.
68 Of the consumption of the Liuer.
69 Of diseases in the Gall.
70 Of diseases in the Spleene.
71 Of the Yellowes.
72 Of the Dropsie.
73 Of the diseases in the Guts.
74 Of Costiuenes or belly bound.
75 Of Loosenes.
76 Of the bloody Fluxe.
77 Of the Bots or Wormes.
78 Of paine in the Kidneyes.
79 Of pissing blood.
90 Of the Colt euill.
81 Of the mattering of the yarde.
82 Of the shedding of seede.
83 Of the falling of the yarde.
84 Of the swelling of the Cods onely.
85 Of Incording or bursting.
86 Of the Botch in the groynes.
87 Of Mangines in the tayle.
88 Of pinching, splatting, or straines in the shoulder.
89 Of swelling of the legs after labour.
90 Of foundring.
91 Of the splent or Serew.
92 Of the Mallander or Sallender.
93 Of an ouer-reach vpon the Sinew.
94 Of an ouer-reach vpon the heele.
95 Of halting either before or behinde.
96 Of being Hipped.
97 Of being styfled.

Chapters.

98 Of the Bone ſpauen.
99 Of the Blood ſpauen.
100 Of the Kurbe.
101 Of the Paines.
102 Of kib'd heeles.
103 Of Windgalles.
104 Of wrinchng the neather ioynt.
105 Of the Shakle gall.
106 Of the Scratches.
107 Of the Ring-bone.
108 Of the crowne ſcab.
109 Of hurtes vpon the Cronet.
110 Of the Quitter-bone.
111 Of grauelling.
112 Of ſurbating.
113 Of a pricke in the ſoale of the foote.
114 Of retreate.
115 Of coyning.
116 Of looſening the hoofe.
117 Of caſting the hoofe.
118 Of hoofe-bound.
119 Of the running fruſh.
120 Of the Leproſie.
121 Of the Farcion.
122 Of the Canker.
123 Of the Fiſtula.
124 Of the Anbury.
125 Of Woundes.
126 Of bruiſings or ſwellings.
127 Of Sinewes, cut or prickt.
128 Of woundes made with Gun-ſhot.
129 Of burning with Lime.
130 Of the byting with a mad Dog.
131 Of being Shrew-runne.
132 Of the Warble or felter worme.

Chapters.
133 Of being ſtung with Adder or Snake.
134 Of eating Hens dung.
135 To kill Lice.
136 To keep Horſes from the ſtinging of Flies
137 The cure of broken bones.
138 Of the taking vp of veynes.
139 Of Gliſters.
140 Of Purgations.
141 Of Calteryzing.
142 Certaine ſpeciall receites for ſpeciall purpoſes.

The Table of the Eight Booke.

Chapters.
1 OF Horſe-courſers in generall.
2 The obſeruations Horſe-courſers vſe in the choiſe of Horſes, and the deceits they vſe in couering their faultes.
3 Of the diſcouerie and preuention of the Horſe-courſers deceites.
4 Of the excellencie of Horſes vnderſtandings.
5 How a Horſe may be taught to doe any tricke done by *Bankes* his horſe.
6 Of drawing dry-foote, and the aptneſſe of Horſes thereunto.

The end of the Table.

CAVALARICE.

The first Booke.

CHAP. I.

Of the breeding of Horses, and first touching the choice of groundes, their vses and seperations.

HAuing resolued inwardly in my selfe (euen to the vttermoste of my best powers) to giue to euerie creature that shall reade these my labours, a full and vndoubted satisfaction touching anie scruple, misterie, or other *Inigma*, that hath hitherto beene concealed in this moste famous Art, making a plaine, eeuen and direct way, where there hath formerly beene much roughnes, some hilles, and many interchangeable turnings; I thought it moste conuenient, to begin with the Art of breeding of Horses; which how euer it bee not so generally appertayning vnto all men, as the other members of the same Art in this volume following; yet for as much as

bringing foorth, muſt goe before the vſe of the thing brought foorth, and that this Art of breeding is onely appertaining to Princes, Potentates, and men of beſt place and eſtimation; it muſt neceſſarily challenge the precedent place. Wherefore to you that are the owners of the earth, and deſirous to inrich her and your ſelues, with Beaſtes of the greateſt vſe and vertue, I dyrect my diſcourſe: Know then the firſt obſeruation in breeding, is the knowledge of groundes, their natures, clymats, fertilneſſe or barrennes. The ſecond, the diſtinguiſhment of Horſes and Mares according to their breedes, or proportions: coupling each kinde together, in ſuch ſort as may bee moſte commodious for that purpoſe to which you intende. And the laſt the diſpoſing and vſing them, being brought foorth both in their foleage, beſt ſtrength, and old age.

For your grounds, I am of opinion with *Zenophon* and *Griſon*, that you muſt principally, reſpect both the quantitie and qualitie: the one for ſurchaarging, the other for too groſſe feeding: the quantitie, that your Mares and Colts may not bee throng'd vp, and as it were kept in a pin-folde, wanting libertie to ſcope and runne vp and downe at pleaſure (then which there is nothing more commodious) and the qualitie which is the ſcituation & fertilnes of the ſoyle: For the ſcituation, it would be aſcending with hilles & dales, & thoſe hilles open vppon the freſh ayre: if the plaines be full of Moale-hills it is much better: for the fertilnes, it would be a ground neither exceeding ranke, nor extreame barreine, but of an indifferent mixrure, rather inclyning to barrennes, then much rancknes, apportioning to the fruitfulneſſe of the ground the number of your

Mares,

Mares, in such sort that they may neither want foode nor surfett with too great aboundance, neither grow so exceeding fat, that they be either disabled for bringing foorth, or indangered with rotting (which onelie springs from such grossenes) nor brought so weake with want of foode that they neither take delight in generation, or for lacke of strength die with hunger-bane: an indifferent meane must therefore be obserued, which must be applyed according to the nature of the ground; obseruing this order, eyther to increase or diminish the number of your race-mares, as you perceiue them eyther growe fatte or leane in the place of their abyding. Some are of opinion, that as much ground as will serue a Cowe, will serue a Race-mare, and I am not much opposite to that opinion, onelie I holde it a proportion somewhat with the moste; for I haue found in mine owne experience, that the ground which would summer but eight Kine well, hath sommered a dozen Race-mares very sufficiently. But forasmuch as euery countrie, nay almost euery Lord-ship differeth one from another, eyther in friutfulnes, or barrennes; there cannot be apportioned any certaine number or stint to euery ground, but it must be referred to the iudgement of the owner, either to increase or decrease his stocke, according as they either prosper or decay.

Grounds that be rancke, marrish, cold and wet, are most vilde to breed vpon, for the foode being vnwholsome, the layre vnnaturall, & the treading incertaine; the foales that are bred thereon, are heauie, slowe, fat-headed, great bellyed, round leggd, & weake ioynted, chieflie in the pasterne. Your ground therefore (as be-

fore I said) must lie hye and firme, and such commonly are the Parkes of Princes, and great Persons, whose imployments in my conceite are most fitte for this purpose, mixing with the delight of Deare, the delightfull benefit of a braue race of Horses, in which euen Kinges of the best memories haue taken vnspeakable pleasures: whosoeuer therefore hath eyther Parke or impal'd ground (for a lesse fence will hardly serue a good race) which hee purposeth to this vse of breeding, must first knowe that he must not keepe it as one entyre ground, but with a sufficient rayle of so conuenient a height as may controle a Horses leaping; deuide it into three seuerall pastures: The first containing the Launde or plainest place of the Parke, where there is least shelter, water furrowes, or drie ditches, which must be for your Mares to foale in; and after their foaling, for the stallyon and the Mares to runne together in: in which it shall be good if there be no other water more then some fayre fresh Pond.

Now the reasons for all these choyces are these: first, that it should be plaine and without shelter, because a Foale at the first foaling would haue all the bitternesse and sharpenesse that the latter end of the Winter can put vppon it, which will so harden and knitte him, that when the warmth of the Spring and Summer shall beginne, he will prosper more in one weeke then another contray-vsed in a Month: and when the Winter shall come vppon him againe, he shall holde both his flesh and courage, when others shall hardly holde life in their bodies: this being a rule amongst all good breeders, that euerie Foale should haue two Winters in the first yeare. Next, that there should be no water

furrowes

furrowes nor drye ditches, is becauſe a Mare out of her owne diſpoſition euer couetteth to foale in the water, or ſo nere as ſhe can get: by which meanes, I haue knowne many foales drowned. And againe, in that a Mare commonly foaleth ſtanding, ſhe leſſe reſpecteth where ſhe foaleth, whether in the water, by a ditch ſide, or other where. The next paſture you are to diuide, would conſiſt partly of good ground, partly of buſhes, brouſe, and ſome hie or thicke trees for ſhelter; it would be aſcending, and that aſcent plaine and open vpon the ayre; Moale-hills, ſmall gutters, and vncertaine treading is verie good in this ground: Alſo if ſome freſh riuer, or rundle iſſuing from a cleare ſpring runne through this ground, it is much the better. And in this ground you ſhall ſommer your Mares & Foales as ſoone as the Stallion is taken away: the reaſons for the former choyſes are theſe; firſt, it muſt be good ground, becauſe it may make your Mares ſpring with milke: next for buſhes and brouſe, it is that a Foale taketh a great delight in, and makes them hard.

The ſhelter of trees is to defend the heat of the Sun, and the ſtinging of Flies. To be mountainous & plaine, is that a Foale may by the ſharpneſſe of the ayre euery morning and euening, recouer ſtomacke, ſtrength and liuelyhood, or by ſcoping or galloping vp and downe the hill, come to a purenes of winde, and a nimblenes of bodie. For Moale-hils, ſmal gutrers, or other vncertaine treading, they are to bring a Foale by his wanton gallopping and playing about them, to a nimbleneſſe and truth of footmanſhip, to a fine treading, and a ſuretie of not ſtumbling. That the water ſhould bee either freſh riuer or ſpring, is becauſe the puritie ther-

of ingendreth no euill nutriment or grosneſſe, but rather ſprightineſſe and quickneſſe. The third or laſt ground wherein I would haue you winter your Mares and Foales, would be of reaſonable fruitefulnes, and free from all enundation or ouer-flowe of waters: it would be alſo vpon the knole of an hill, and if conueniently it may be, full of trees or buſhes for ſhelter. On the top of the hill, I would haue you build certaine croſſe houells of ſtone or other cloſe ſtuffe, ouer which you may ſtacke your Hay, Oates, or other winter prouiſion: the quantitie whereof you muſt meaſure according to the number of your Mares and Foales. The open ſides of your houells, I would wiſh to lie eaſt and weſt, the cloſſe endes north and ſouth, inſomuch that in what quarter ſo euer the winde or weather ſtandeth, they may haue warmth and ſhelter from the ſame. Within theſe houels I would haue racks wherein to put the Hay or Oates in the ſtrawe, which will not onelie ſaue much from loſſe and ſpoyling, but alſo increaſe the appetite of a Foale by labouring at the ſame. I would alſo haue vnder the racks, maungers; in which you may caſt the ouerchawinges of Wheate, Barley, or other white corne, but by no meanes any Peaſe pulſe, for it ingendreth many foule diſeaſes; as the gargill, ſtrangle, mawe worme and ſuch like: It ſhall be alſo good to caſt in the maunger that which Horſe men call garbadge, which is wheate ſtrawe and the eares; chopt ſmall together, with a fine cutting-knife, for it rayſeth the creſt, and makes it hie, ſtrong, firme and thin. Now for thoſe great princes, who are the owners of many Parkes, many waalts, and many large contynents; they may (if it ſeeme good in their eyes)

eyes) make these three seuerall grounds, three seuerall Parkes, multiplying their stockes as it hath pleased God to multiply their possessions: but for him that hath but one Parke, or one peece of ground, fit for this purpose, the course I haue formerly prescribed, I hold most Husbandly for his profit, and the goodnes of the Beast he intends to breede. As for the Yeoman or Husbandman, who neither haue choice of particular grounds, nor meanes to breede after any exact method, as hauing but onely the benefit of the common fields; yet both for his profit and credits sake desireth to breede a good Horse, to him I can but set downe these few rules: First to foresee that his Mare bee of good shape and mettall: next that he put vnto her so good a Horse as either his credit or abilitie can procure: Next, that after his Mare hath foaled, hee keepe her in the teather, shifting her foure or fiue times in a day vnto fresh grasse, which will be a sufficient meanes to preserue the Mares milke, al be she labor and worke much. Next, that she may be teathered so neare as may be vnto corne lands, that whilst the Mare feedeth, the Foale may at its pleasure crop & eate the green blades of Corne, which will scowre and make the foale grow: and when the corne is of better ripenes, then it may crop the eares of Corne also, especiallie wheate, which will bring vnto the Foale such strength, full groath and linelines, that he will sauor of that seasoning all his life after, so that in the winter he be not brought vnto too great a weakenes; which to auoide, I would haue the husbandman euer to winter his Foale in the house, giuing it good store of Chaffe, light Corne, and such like: but in any case neither Pease nor Pease pulse, till

March be past at the soonest. And thus much touching the vse of groundes and their diuisions.

CHAP. 2

Of Horses and Mares, and of their diuers kindes.

FOr me to enter into as friuolous & idle a discourse of the kindes of Horses and their coulers, as *Conradus Gesner* hath, filling leaues with names scarce heard of, at least neuer experienced in any of our climates, some being more vgly then prodigies, and some more strange then euen vntruth it selfe can imagine, were to distaste the most worthy ears, & make my selfe a second Trumpet of other mens falshoods: but forasmuch as mine ambition is to satisfie the world with truths, and not to amaze men with miracles, I will onely deliuer the kindes and generations of such Horses as I haue approued and knowne within mine owne experience.

And first of all, for as much as I know almost all English men, whether out of the inconstancie of their natures (which is euer most delighted with new fangled nouelties) or out of the bashfulnesse of their modesties, are euer apt to giue precedencie and prioritie of place to strangers, strange creatures, and strange fashions: yet for as much as I haue formerly, and do dayly finde in mine experience, that the vertue, goodnesse, boldnesse, swiftnesse, and indurance of our true bred English Horses, is equall with anie race of Horses whatsoeuer: I will first of all begin with him, and

and his discription

Some former writers, whether out of want of experience, or to flatter nouelties, or else collecting their workes from others writings, in which not finding the English horse named, they haue thereupon concluded that the English horse is a great strong Iade, deep ribbed, fid-bellied, with strong legges, and good hoofes, yet fitter for the cart then either the Saddle or any worthy imployment. How false this is, all English Horsmen knowe, and my selfe dare boldly iustifie: for the true English Horse indeed, him I meane that is bred vnder a good clime, on firme ground, and in a pure and temperate ayre, is of tall stature, and large proportion: his head, though not so fine as either the *Barbaries*, or *Turkes*, yet is it leane, long, and well fashioned: his crest is hie, only subiect to thicknesse if he be ston'd; but if he be gelded, then is it thin, firme, and strong: his chyne is straight and broad, & all his lims large, leane, flat, and excellently ioynted, in them exceeding any Horse of what Countrey soeuer. Now for their inward goodnesse; first for their valure and indurance in the warres, I haue seene them suffer & execute as much and more then euer I noted in any other of forraine creation: I haue heard it reported, that at the Massacre in *Paris*, *Mongomerie* taking an English Mare, first in the night swam ouer the riuer of *Seine*, and after ranne her so many leagues, as I feare to nominate, least misconstruction might taxe me of too lauish report. And I haue heard Master *Romano* say, the most induring beast that euer he rid, was an English Mare. Againe, for swiftnesse, what Nation hath brought foorth that Horse which hath exceeded the English? for proofe whereof

Of the English horse.

whereof wee haue this example: when the best *Barbaries* that euer were in my remembrance were in their prime, I sawe them ouer-runne by a blacke *Hobbie* at *Salesburie* of maister *Carltons*, & yet that *Hobby* was more ouer-runne by a horse of maister *Blackstones* called *Valentine*; which *Valentine* neither in hunting nor running, was euer equalled, yet was a plaine bred *English* Horse both by Syre and Dam. To descend to our instant time, what euer men may report or imagine, yet I see no shape which can perswade me that *Puppie* is any other then an *English* Horse: and truly for running, I holde him peereless. Againe, for infinite labour, and long indurance, which is easiest to bee discerned in our *English* hunting matches, I haue not seene any horse able to compare with the *English* horse: so that I conclude, the *English* horse is of tollerable shape, strong, valiant, swift and durable.

The Courser of Naples.

Next to the *English* Horse, I place the Courser of *Naples*, which is a horse of a strong and comely fashion, of great goodnesse, louing disposition, and of an infinite couragiousnesse: his limbs and generall features are so strong and well knit together, that he hath euer been reputed the onely beast for the warres, being naturally free from feare or cowardise: the best character to knowe him by, is his head, which being long, leane, and very slender, doth from the eyes to the nose bend like a Hawkes beake: he hath a great and a full eye, a sharpe eare, and a straight legge, which in an ouer-curious eye might appeare a little too slender, which is all the fault, curiositie it selfe can finde. They be naturally of a loftie pace, they be louing to their rider, easie to be taught, most strong in their exercise;

exercise; and to conclude, so good in all poynts, that no forraine race hath euer borne a tytle of so much excellencie.

The Horses of the Iles of *Sardinia*, and *Corsica*, are the neareſt of all other horses to the Coursar of *Naples*, onely they bee somewhat shorter bodied, and of somewhat a more fierce and fierie nature, but that by the temperance of a good Rider is easie to be qualified, and conuerted to an excellent vertue. *Gesner* amongst his other absurdities, saith they be exceeding little horses, whereas indeede they carrie proportion with horses of the best stature. Of Sardinia and Corsica.

Next these, the *Turkie* horse is an excellent beast; I doe not meane those horses which haue beene bred in the *Turkes* first dominions, as in the vpper parts of *Sithia*, *Tartaria*, *Parthia*, *Medea*, *Armenia*, *Capadocia*, and other his *Asian* countries, albeit we wil beleeue the report of old writers, each of these Countries haue seuerall good races, as *Sithia* and *Tartaria* for greatnesse of bodie: *Parthia*, for limbe and courage: *Media*, for beautie and comelynesse of shape: *Armenia*, and *Capadocia*, for heauinesse of head, and strength of body, with many other such like descriptions: but sith for mine owne part, I haue neuer found grosser vntruthes, (I speake for horse-manshippe onelye) then in the recordes of these olde Writers; and for-as-much as mine experience (and as I thinke the eye of our Nation) hath had little dealing with Horses of those Countries, I will omit them, and referre the curious, who only delight in noueltie, to reade *Absirtus*, *Vegetius*, *Gesner*, and such like, who may happily please their eares, but neuer better their experience; and for mine owne part I will Of the Turkie horse.

write

write of the horse of *Greece*, which forasmuch as it is now vnder the Turkes gouernment, the Horses that come from thence are called of vs *Turkes*; of which I haue seene diuers, ridden some, and knowne them bred vppon in many parts of *England*: but first to report what others write of the Horses of *Greece*: One saith they haue good legges, great bodies, comely heades, hie of stature, and well made forward, but not backeward, because they are pinne buttockt: they be verie swift, and of exceeding great courage. Now another saith, they be foule, ill shaped, rough ouer all their bodies, great shoulders, ill dispositions, Camel-backt, vnsure pac'd and crook'd legged. Now how these contrarie descriptions can agree I vnderstand not, only they say the better horse is of *Thessalie*, the other of *Thracia*, but for mine owne parr, touching those Turkes which I haue seene, all which haue beene said to come from *Constantinople*, which is a part of *Thrace*; they haue beene Horses of most delicate shape, pace, and mettall: they haue not beene of any monstrous greatnesse, but inclining to a middle size, or indifferencie of height; they are finely headed almost as the *Barbarie*; they haue most excellent forehandes, both for length, depth and proportion; their limbs are straight, yet rather small then great: their hoofes are long and narrow (a great signe of swiftnesse) their coats are smooth and short, and all their members of sutable qualitie; they are of great courage and swiftnesse, for I haue seene them vsed at our English Bell-courses. Naturally they desire to amble; and which is most strange, their trot is full of pride and gracefulnesse.

Abstrtus.

Gesner.

The Barbarie horse. Next the *Turke*, I place the *Barbarie*, which are horses bred

bred, either in one of the two *Mauritanias*, or in *Numidia*, or the lesser *Affrick*: they are beyond all horses whatsoeuer for delicacie of shape and proportion, insomuch that the most curious painter cannot with all his Art amend their naturall lineaments. They are to be knowne before all horses by the fineneſſe of their proportions, especially their heades and necks, which Nature hath so well shap'd, and plac'd, that they commonly saue Art his greateſt labour: they are swift beyond other forraigne horses, and to that vse in *England* we onely imploy them; yet are their races onely vpon hard grounds, for in soft or deepe grounds, they haue neither strength, nor delight: they are exceeding well winded, which breedes in them a continuance of their swiftneſſe: Their colours for the most part are gray, or flea-bitten. I haue seene blacke and bay, but not so generally: they seldome or neuer foundes; they aske leſſe care then others in keeping, being both of such temperate diet, and such abilitie of body, that they seldom surfeit, onely they are (especially such as I haue seene) of such little and slender stature, that they are vnfit for the warres, or to support armes.

Next these horses of *Barbarie*, I place the *Iennet* of *Spaine*, which albe *Gesner* in his ignorant descriptions reports to be a horse of great stature, buttockes short, weake, and vncomely; of body fat and bigge, slowe, and cruell to his rider; yet those which better know by their experience then he by his readings, And for my selfe, both those I haue seene here in *England*, and also those I haue seene in *Spaine*, and other places of the King of *Spains* dominions, assure me of the vntruth of such writings. For the *Iennet* Indeed is a horse but of a middle stature; The Iennet of Spaine.

ſtature; finely made, both head, bodie, and legges; his buttocks though they be long, yet are they well ſhap'd and ſtrong: but whereas ſome write they doe exceede all horſes in ſwiftnes, or for that Old wiues tale of breeding with the weſt winde, & ouer-running all windes, I haue in them as little beleefe, as there is in ſuch tales little poſſibilitie: onely this I thinke, that the *Ienet* being a horſe of great mettall and courage, and therewithall of nimble, light, and actiue proportion, may paſſe a carrere, that is, runne ſome twelue or twentie ſcore, with great puiſſance and ſwiftneſſe; but for running our Engliſh courſes, which commonly are three or foure miles, we haue not ſeene any ſuch vertue or goodneſſe in them: their limbs, for the moſt part, are weake and ſlender; yet in the warres they are eſteemed to be of wonderfull proweſſe, and indurance, they are commonly full ſix years old or more, before they come to any perfection or ſhape, for they grow one yeare before, and another behinde. And the laſt thing which is complete in them, is their creſts, they are many of them naturally giuen to bound, & to performe faults aboue ground; but by reaſon of their weake lymbs, they continue not long without lameneſſe; their trot is ſomewhat long and wauing: but if at any time they be put to amble, they take it naturally.

The Polland horſe.

Next this I place the *Polander*, or horſe of *Poland*, which is a beaſt but of a middle ſtature, well compoſed and knit together, their limbs and ioynts are exceeding ſtrong, in all proportions like to our true bred *Engliſh* horſes; their heades are ſomewhat fine and ſlender, verie like in proportion to the *Iriſh Hobbie*: their necks & creſts are well raiſed vpright, and exceeding ſtrong;

their

their eares are little and extraordinarily ſhort: they haue exceeding ſtrong backs, broade chines, and the beſt hoofs of any horſe liuing, which is the reaſon that they are many times trained vp, & made ſtirrers, as being horſes which take an eſpecial delight in bounding, yarking, and other ſtrong faults aboue ground, which moſt cõmonly they do with ſuch couragious violence & ſmartnes, that they haue been ſeene many times to throw their ſhooes from their feet, with an almoſt incredible furie; they are alſo exceeding good in trauell and will indure iourneying beyond many other horſes; they are alſo exceeding good in the coach, and as ſome of our *Engliſh* Nobilitie haue experience, equall or beyond moſt of the beſt *Flemmiſh* races; onely their generall fault is their littleneſſe of ſtature.

The Almaine horſe.

Next the *Pollander* I place the high *Almaine* horſe, who is generally of an exceeding great and high ſtature. And albe he haue neither neatneſſe nor finenes in his ſhape, yet is there great ſtrength in all his proportions; ſo that howſoeuer other men eſteeme him for the ſhock or the manage, yet I account him beſt for draught, or burthen: they are much vſed in the warres, but I thinke like their Country-men, rather for a wall or defence, then either for aſſault or action; they are great, ſlow, and hard trotters.

The Hungarian horſe.

Next them is the *Hungarian* horſe, who hath a great flat face, crooked noſe, and thick head, great eies, narrow noſthrils, and broad iawes; his maine rough, thick, and almoſt extending to the grounde, a buſhe tayle, weake paſternes, and a leane bodie: generally, his deformities are ſo well coupled together, that they appeare comely; hee is of a temperate courage, and

will

will abide much hardneſſe, by reaſon whereof they are of much vſe in the warres.

The Flanders horſe. Next the *Hungarian*, I reckon the *Flemming*, who in moſt of his ſhapes differeth little from the *Almaine*: His ſtature is tall, his head ſhort and thicke; his bodie long and deepe, his buttocke round and flat, his legges bigge and rough; and his pace a ſhort and hard trot: the principall vertue both of the Horſes and Mares, is in the draught, in which they exceede all other horſes, otherwiſe for the Saddle they are both vneaſie and ſlothfull; the Mares are tall, large and wondrous fruitfull.

The Frieſland horſe. Next theſe, I place the *Frieſland* horſe, whoſe ſhape is like the *Flemmings*, but not full ſo tall; he is of a more fierce & hot courage then the *Flemming*, which makes him a little better for ſeruice, as being able to paſſe a ſhort carreire, to manage, beat a coruet and ſuch like: but for his inward diſpoſition, it is diueliſh, cruell, and full of all ſtubborne frowardneſſe; they are apt to all reſtiffe and malicious qualities, if the diſcretion of the ryder preuent not their frenzie: their pace is a ſhort and hard trot.

The Sweathland horſe. Next them I place the *Sweathland* horſe, who is a horſe of little ſtature, leſſer good ſhape, but leaſt vertue, they are for the moſt part pyde, with white legges, and wall eyes: they want ſtrength for the warres, and courage for iourneying; ſo that I conclude, they are better to looke vpon then imploy.

The Iriſh Hobbie. Next and laſt, I place the *Iriſh Hobbie*, which is a horſe of a reaſonable good ſhape, hauing a fine head, a ſtrong necke, and a well caſt body; they haue quicke eyes, good limbs, and tollerable buttocks: of all horſes they are the ſureſt of foote, and nimbleſt in daunge-

rous

rous passages, they are of liuely courage, and verie tough in trauell, onely they are much subiect to affrights and boggards. They will hardly in any seruice ioyne with their enemies; the reasons I imagine to be these: first, they are for the most part bredde in wilde races, and haue neither communitie or fellowship with any man till they come to the Saddle, which many times is not till they come to seauen, eight, nine, or ten yeares olde, at what time the countrie rysing, doe forcibly driue the whole studd, both Horses, Mares, Colts, and Fyllies into some bogge, where being laide fast, they halter such as they please to take, and let the rest goe.

This wilde bringing vp, and this rude manner of handling, doth in my conceite ingender this fearefulnesse in the Beast, which those ruder people know not how to amend. This Horse though he trot very well, yet he naturally desireth to amble: and thus much I thinke sufficient, touching these seuerall kindes of Horses, and their generations.

CHAP. 3.

Of the mixture of these former races, for which purpose each is best, and for the breeders commoditie.

HAuing in the former Chapter, declared the kindes, Generations, shapes and dispositions of all such Horses, as either our nation hath been acquainted withall, or my selfe hath tryed in mine own

experience, it shall bee meete that now I mixe these races together, showing which will agree best with our clymate, for what purpose, and how they bring the best commoditie.

First, for the agreeing with our clymate, it is not vnknowne to all Horse-men and men either of greatnesse or experience, that al those races of which I haue written, haue beene, and are daily bred in this kingdome, and that of so great vigor, worth and goodnes, that euen their owne nations haue not brought foorth any of better estimation, as by infinite instances I can approue, were it not both teadious and needelesse. Wherefore for me to enter into a Phylosophycall discourse touching the height of the Sunne, the disposition of the ayre, or the alteration of heats and coldes, drawing from their effects the causes or hinderances of conception, were to trouble my selfe to no purpose, and to tyer others with idle ceremonies.

But for as much, as diuers men compose their breeds to diuers purposes, some for the wars, seruice or pleasures of great Princes: some for swiftnesse in running, or toughnes in hunting: some for easinesse of pace, and the vse of trauell: some for the draught and the portage of great burthens: I will as plainelye as I can, showe how each race should be compounded. First, if you couet a race for the warres, or the seruice of Kinges, the *Neapolitan* courser is of all Stallions the best, to whome I would haue ioyned the fayrest English Mares that can be gotten. The next to him is the *Turke*, who would bee mixt with the *Neapolitan* Mare, whence springes a braue race: next him, the Horse of *Sardinia* or *Corsica*, who begettes a braue

braue race from the *Turkie* Mare: lastly the Iennet of *Spaine*, breeding vpon the fayrest *Flaunders* Mares. To conclude, any of these Horses vppon faire English Mares beget much brauer Horses then of their owne kindes, and fayre English Horses vppon any of these countrie Mares, doe beget most seruiceable beasts: but if you will breede onely for swiftnesse, then the *Barbarie* Horse is onely best; breeding either vppon a Mare of his owne Countrie, vppon *Turkie* Mare or *English*: the *Turkie* Horse vpon the *English* Mare likewise doth beget a swift beast: But if you would breede onelie a tough hunting Horse, there is none better, (as by daily experience we finde) then the fayre bred English Horse, and the English Mare: but if you would breed easie ambling Horses for trauell and the vse of iourneying, there is none better then the *Turke* or *Irish* Hobbie, so they be mixed with either English ambling Mares, or bastard Mares of their owne countrie, that likewise amble perfectly. I haue seene many ambling Horses bredde from *Iennets* of Spaine, yet by reason of his slenderneſse of limbes, and length of pasternes, I esteemed him not altogether so good as the two former.

Now lastlye, if you would breede Horses for the draught, as eyther for Coach or Cart, or Horses for the portage of great burthens: as eyther for Sumpter or Packe man, the *Flaunders*, *Friesland*, or *Almaine* Horse are your best Stallyons: the *Flaunders* or *Friesland*, for the Coach or Cart, and the *Almaine* for the burthen: and for eyther of these purposes the Mares are in all parts as seruiceable as the horses, according to our present experience in England at this instant.

Now you are to vnderstand, that as all these Horses in their seuerall fore-named vses, are the best, so likewise their colts thus begotten (which of some Horsmen is called bastardie) are likewise excellent Stallyons. For mine owne part, I would to chuse breed sooner of a Bastard *Courser*, bastard *Ienet*, *Turke*, or *Barbary*, then of the naturall Horse of the owne countries; and my reason is, by their mixture with our Mares, all the imperfections of their owne Countries are amended; as in the *Courser*, his length of head, and want of crest, which many times is imperfect. In the *Ienet* his weakenes of ioyntes: and in the *Turke* and *Barbarie*, their slendernes of limbes: the *Flaunders* and *Friesland* which are so extreame rough and hayrie about their pasterns, that the best keepers cannot preserue them from scratches, paines and Mallanders, are by mixture with our Mares brought to a cleane race of sufficient tollerable limbes, so as they neede not be kept, but will keepe themselues from soarances: they also by mixing with our Mares, haue their heads much amended; and their hoofes infinitely much better hardned, which of all the partes of those countrie horses, is the worst, and of least indurance: all which me thinkes when a perfect iudgement shall take into his consideration, it shall appeare great honor to our nation, and much shame to them who haue wrongd it with former misreportings: and thus much for the mixing of races.

CHAP. 4

Of the choyce of Stallyons and Mares: the knowledge of their ages by diuers obſeruations, and of their ſhapes.

FOr as much as euerie thing is made moſte perfect, ſufficient, and of longeſt continuance, by the ſtrength and ſurety of his firſt ground-worke or foundation, which indeede is the chiefe maiſterpeece of all that growes from that beginning: I therefore aduiſe all thoſe worthie ones, who will be the breeders of the beſt Horſes, to haue eſpeciall care to the firſt choice and creation of their ſtudde, ſith if in the beginning, there be either inſufficiencie or blemiſh, it is moſt likely ſuch ſtaines will by continuance, growe to bee more and more vilde and vgly; and in this circumſpection, there is nothing of more importance, then the well chuſing of your Stallyons and Mares, ſith they are the liuing bodies, from whence you are to deriue both your delight and profit; he therefore, that will chuſe a perfect Stallyon (ſaith one writer) muſt reſpect his beautie, goodnes, and age. Another ſaith, ſhape, colour, merrit, and beautie; which indeede is all one with the former, and I holde them principall obſeruations, but I would likewiſe haue added vnto them, his deſcent and generation: for albe, a Clowne may beget a beautifull Son, yet ſhall he neuer begette an Heroyicall ſpirit, but it will euer haue ſome touch of baſeneſſe: and an ill bred Horſe may beget a Colt, which may haue faire colour

and ſhape, which we call beauty: Toughnes, which we call goodnes, and youth, which is few yeares, yet ſtill his inward parts may retaine a ſecret vildnes of diſpoſition, which may be inſufferable in breeding. Now for his beauty, which only is contained in his colour and ſhape, albe I haue in the next booke writ ſufficiently touching them two, yet I will heere a little glaunce at them, by comparing with them the opinions of ſome other writers. Firſt, for the opinion of *Geſner*, which meerly is no good opinion at all in horſe-manſhip, but a collection of idle tales; he ſaies the beſt colours are bay, white, carnation, golden ruſſet, mouſe colour, flea-bitten, pide, black & pale, pide blew and gray; had he put in alſo orenge-tawny, willow colour, & ſuch like: al the world could not haue gon beyond him, neither ſhould the *Spaniards* nor *Italians* haue need to haue dyed their horſes maines and tailes, if horſes could haue bin bred of ſuch colours. But to let paſſe ſuch friuolous notes, the beſt colour for a ſtallyon, is browne bay dapled, dapple gray, bright bay, or white lyard: the roane, the pure black, with white ſtar, white foote, or white rach, or the black bay, which hath neither mealy mouth, nor red flanke, is alſo ſufferable. A ſtallyon would be all of one colour, yet not according to the opinion of *Geſner*, his main & body of one colour, for that is moſt vilde: for a bright bay horſe would haue a blacke mayne and taile, & black out partes, as the tips of his eares, legs & ſuch like: a dapple gray would haue white main & taile and ſo foorth of the reſt: but I would not haue a pide ſtallyon, except it be for him, who eſteeming more the ſtrangenes of colours, then the goodnes of horſes, places his delight in motley generations: to ſuch an one a

pide

pide Stallyon is beſt: and of pides, the black and white, and bright bay and white are moſt choice: & not blew, carnation or golden pide. For his ſhape ingeneral, I refer you to the next booke, where I haue not as I hope omitted, the leaſt tittle in proportions, onely for ſome particular things, which are to be moſt reſpected in a ſtallion, then in any other horſe, I wil giue my opinion. Firſt, for his head, it muſt be lean, ſlender & ſmal about his muſſell: at the ſetting on of his head to his neck you muſt haue an eſpeciall regard that his neck ſwell not vp about his chaules, or that the kirnells which runne betwixt his neck and his chaule be thicke or big, for it is a great ſigne of ſloath, and thickneſſe of winde, which is a great faulr in the Stallyon, eſpecially if his maiſter expect to breede from him either running horſe, hunting horſe, or good traueller: neither muſt he haue wall eies, or white ſpecks in his eyes: you muſt haue care that your Stallyons yarde be all of one colour, and not pide or ſpotted: for what Stallyon hath ſuch a falt, begetteth weake foales, or for the moſt part of flegmaticke complexions, which are ſildome good, either for vſe or hardnes; his ſtones would be of a mean ſize, without warts or knobs, wel truſſed vp, & cloſe to his body, for if either they hang ſide, or one hang lower then another, it is a ſigne of ſurfet, ſicknes, or dulnes of Spirit. If your ſtallyon haue vnder his chappes, long thin haires like a beard, which alſo extend downeward euen to his breſt, it is much better, & a great ſigne of ſwiftnes. Alſo you muſt take care that your Stallyon be free from all naturall diſeaſes: as excreſſions, which are ſplents, Spauens, Serew, ringbones, Curbes, or ſuch like; If they put foorth, or appeare before a Horſe come to hand-

ling: or if he be subiect to lunaticke eyes, or to wenns on his body, or such like: And thus much for his shape.

Now for his goodnes, tis true, as some write, that it is of two sortes, eyther naturall or artificiall: His naturall goodnes consisting in his strength and abilitie of bodie, for the performance of the Arte of generation, in his health, agilitie, swiftnesse, and good disposition. His artificiall, in the manner of showing his naturall vertues, which is alwaies the best descerned vnder his rider: but in as much, as that artificiall grace doth little auaile in generation, it shall be the breeders principall office to take especiall knowledge of his naturall perfections, which if he shall finde answerable to my former demonstrations, he may presume vppon his fitnes for that purpose: and yet I would not haue you so seriously to regard his naturall goodnesse, that you vtterlie neglect his artificiall: but rather if you shall beholde a Horse vnder the ryder of infinite spirit and indurance, or of wonderfull speede, pride, and stateliness, that albe there be some thinges in him you could wish amended, yet to beare with them, and breede vppon him, for the benifit of his other vertues.

Now forasmuch as some, whether out of curiositie to appeare excellent in the knowledge of supernaturall thinges, or to giue a satisfaction to such as out of their too much search, would become Horse-midwiues; haue set downe as an especiall regarde in the naturall goodnesse of a Stallyon, to knowe the goodnesse or illnesse of the Horses seede, which experience (for mine owne part) I haue euer shunned as a thing loathsome, vngentill, vnnaturall, and most vnmanlie; yet, for as much as in the worke, I couet to satisfie euerie

rie seuerall desire; I will set downe what others thinke touching that poynt, and not what I haue approoued; leauing the tryall to such as out of their fleamie womanishnesse seeke for such secrets.

One VVriter saith, that if you will know the goodnesse of your horses seede, you shall when he couers a Mare, cause him to shed some of his seede into water, and if it sinke it is good, if it float aloft it is naught: another saith, if you take the seede of the Horse into wooll, or betweene your finger and your thumbe, and if it rope and be slimie like birdlime, then it is good: but if it be thinne and loose like whey, then it is naught: with other such like midwifely precepts, which I wish euery good breeder rather to hazard, then proue the experiment.

Now for the age of your Stallyon, though *Plinie* be of opinion, that a Horse may bee put to a Mare at two yeares olde, and continue getting Foales till he be thirtie three yeares olde; yet for mine owne part I like neither the beginning nor the ending, hauing in them both too much extremitie: for the beginning is too early, and the continuance too long to prosper. The best age therefore in these dayes (how euer it hath bin in former ages) for to put a Horse to a Mare, is when he is betwixt foure and fiue yeares olde, at what time he getteth the goodliest, greatest, & best spirited colts.

In *Spaine* I haue heard the *Spaniards* say, they let their Coltes runne with their Mares, till they couer their Dammes: and indeed I haue seene very young Horses in some of their Iland races; but I vtterly dislike such breeding, for it is vilde and vnnaturall: for as *Plinie* reports, a Horse being hoodwinkt whilest he conered a

Mare, after perceiuing it was his owne Damme, ranne vp to the rocks, and brake his owne neck: and also that a Mare in the territorie of *Realte*, kild her keeper for the like; which reports albe they carry not the faireſt liueries of truth, yet are they precedents vnto vs that ſuch manner of breeding is not by former horſmen allowed of: & this in mine owne experience I haue both found and know; that if a man will continue his breede altogether in one ſtraine, without any alteration or ſtrangeneſſe, ſhall in the ende finde his ſtudd to decay and looſe both ſtature, ſtrength and comelines, which doth intimate to mee, that there is a great diſlike in ſuch kinde of breeding. Let your Horſe therefore (as before I ſaid) be of the age of foure or fiue yeares olde, or betwixt that age, and fourteene or fifteene at the moſt; for after that time he is paſt the vſe of generation except he be ſome principall rare horſe, as ſome I haue ſeene, that haue gotten verie ſufficient Foales at eighteene and twentie yeares old, clearely diſprooving the opinion of *Geſner*, which ſaith, that olde Horſes get lame Foales, a thing both falſe and rediculous, except he account the hollowneſſe of the eyes, or ſadneſſe of countenance lameneſſe, which are the greateſt faults an old horſe begetteth: For whereas ſome hold opinion, that an olde Horſes Foale is more tender then the other, and more ſubiect to ſickneſſe and infirmitie, I haue for mine owne part found the contrarie, not approouing many Colts more ſufficient for health, or of more abilitie in nature to endure ſickneſſe when it chanceth, then the Colt of an olde Horſe; yet that ſuch an olde Horſe would haue begot a much better Colt in his youth I make no queſtion; by which I conclude,

that

that the young Horse is for breed the most principall: but the good olde horse in extremitie or necessitie, not to be forsaken; prouided alwayes that he be sound of his limbs and bodie, vnlesse it bee such disease as commeth meerly by mischance or casualtie.

And now sith I haue proceeded thus farre in the age of Horses, it shall be requisite that I shew you how you shall knowe the age of any Horse whatsoeuer: First by the pride, fulnesse, and cheerefulnesse of a Horses countenance we adiudge his age: for first if his eies be round, full and starting from his heade; if the pits ouer his eies be filled, smooth and euen with his temples; and his countenance smooth and free from sadnesse, then we gesse and knowe that such a Horse is young: and by the contrarie aspects, we know he is old.

Another way, is to take his skin betwixt your finger and your thumbe, and plucke it from the flesh, then letting it goe againe; if it suddenly returne to the place from whence it came, and be smooth and plaine, without wrinckle, then is he young and full of vigor; but if being pulled vp it stand, and not returne to his former place, then is he olde and wasted.

Others approue a Horses age in this sort: take him with your finger and your thumbe by the sterne of the tayle, close at the setting on of the buttocke, and feeling there hard, if you feele betwixt your finger and thumbe, of each side his taile, a ioynt sticke out more then any other ioynt, by the bignesse of an Hasell Nut, then you may presume he is vnder ten yeares olde; but if his ioynts be all plaine, and no such thing, to be felt, then bee assured he is aboue tenne yeares old. Others approue the age of Horses by their teeth

and

and that is of all wayes the moſte certaine : ſome will put their fore-finger into the horſes mouth, and feele the inſide of his vpper tuſhe : and if therein they finde a little hole or nicke, then they are ſure he is vnder ten yeares old : but if it be plaine and full, then he is aboue ten. Laſtly, and the ſureſt way to know a Horſes age, is to looke in a Horſes mouth, and if he haue changed no more but his foure formoſt teeth, then is he but two yeares olde : if he haue two teeth aboue, and two below of each out ſide to change, then he is three yeares olde : if he haue one tooth aboue, and one below of each outſide to change, then he is foure yeares old : at fiue yeares olde he changes his tuſhes, and at ſix yeares old all his teeth are perfect, onely his vnder tuſhes will haue a little circle or ring of young fleſh about them, different from his gumme, & his outmoſt teeth of each ſide haue little black holes in the top of them; which as ſoone as they be worne out, and are ſmooth, the horſe is paſt eight yeares old: if when that marke is gone, and the teeth ſmooth, the horſes teeth be long, yellow and foule, although he cut eeuen & cloſe, then he is aboue twelue : if his vpper teeth ouer-reach his neather, and be worne vneeuen, and his tusks long, foule and thicke, then is he aboue fifteene ; but if his teeth be foule, vneeuen, and his tusks worne cloſe to his chaule, then he is rather aboue then vnder twentie. Alſo, if a horſe of darke colour growe griſſell aboue his eye browes, or vnder his maine, it is a ſigne of extreame old age. And thus much touching the Stallyon.

Now to ſpeake ſome little of breeding Mares, which as well as the horſe would haue all the three properties of beautie, age, and goodneſſe; by the conſent of

mine

mine opinion, I woulde haue a breeder to chuſe his Mare (after he is reſolued touching her naturall goodneſſe and generation) by the largeneſſe and goodly ſhape of her bodie, not reſpecting a gaunt, cleane, and eye-pleaſing proportion, in any ſort comparable with a well forehanded, ſide-ribbed, cleane limb'd, and large wombd Mare. For if a Foale haue an ample bed, he cannot chuſe but be of great ſtature: the beſt age for a Mare to take the horſe in, is at three yeares olde and vpward, and the time of their decreaſing at twelue: yet for mine owne part, I did know the two and twentieth Foale of one Mare, which was an exceeding good and goodly horſe: but that example I holde for no generall rule.

Now if you demaund of me why a Mare ſhould go ſooner to the Horſe then the Horſe to the Mare, mine anſwer is, becauſe ſhe commeth a yeare ſooner to her fulneſſe and perfection: for a Horſe is not complete, till after ſixe, and a mare is perfect at fiue. *Plinie* and other Philoſophers, are of opinion, that Mares may beare Foales till they be fortie yeares olde, not being vſed for other purpoſe: but I whoſe Philoſophie is mine owne experience, haue found it ingenerall otherwiſe, and therefore would wiſh no Prince, nor man of greatneſſe of eſtate, whoſe power and purſe may vphold his breed in the beſt māner, to preſerue his Mares longer in his ſtudd, then from three yeares olde till ten; vnleſſe it be ſome ſuch principall Mare of whom you haue ſuch ſufficient proofe of extraordinarie goodneſſe, that you may aduenture a more then vſuall continuance: for Mares being more apt to the Acte of generation then Horſes, are euer founde ſooner to de-

cay

cay and grow barraine. That your Mares which you preserue for your studd should runne wilde and vntamed (as I haue seene them doe in *Spaine*, *Ireland*, and in some races here in *England*) I vtterly dislike: for albe great persons respect not their worke or labours profit, yet such wildnesse endangers them as oft as they are driuen or remoued from ground to ground, either for casting their Foales, swelting, or other violent euill proceeding from wildnesse: therefore it is most necessarie that your Mares be made as domesticall and tame as may be, both that great men may not loose the pleasure of their breede, nor the meaner sort the profite of their worke and labour; which labour if it be moderate, is most wholsome for the Mare, and makes her more apt and readie for conception; and moreouer makes her fit either to be couered in hand, or out of hand, at your will or pleasure.

CHAP. 5.

How and at what time of the yeare Horses and Mares should ingender: signes of a Mares desire: how many Mares for one Stallion, and how long he shall continue with them.

THe next and immediate precept after the choise of Stallions, and Mares, is to know the time of the yeare, and season when they should ingender: the opinion of *Plinie*, *Palladius*, and some other

ther writers is, that the Stallion and Mares ſhould bee put togither, from the midſt of March, till the midſt of Iune; and truly the opinion is very good, & agreeable with our clime: but in the ſtrictneſſe of mine own opinion and experience, I haue euer found from the beginning of March till the end of Aprill, the very beſt time of all: for May and Iune are ſomewhat with the hotteſt, and a little too late in the yeare; ſo that the Foales falling in thoſe times, neither hauing taſte of froſts, nor ſence of colde dewes; in the latter end of the yere, when they ſhall be compelled to endure them, and feele them to increaſe euery day more and more, the bitterneſſe will be ſo extreame, that for want of former cuſtome, they will looſe their fleſh, grow weak, and miſhapen: notwithſtadding, if a Mare be not ready (as it will often happen) ſo early in the yeare: yet rather then ſhe ſhould goe ouer, or you looſe her profite, it ſhall not be amiſſe to let her be couered, either in May or Iune, ſo that the Mare going with Foale ordinarily eleuen Months, and tenne dayes, or thereabouts, ſhee may foale though not in the beginning of the ſpring (which I would euer wiſh) yet at ſuch a tollerable time, as both for the temperature of ayre, and benefite of food may be allowed, though not much praiſed. Diuers horſmen heere in *England* (but not any expert breeders) I haue heard, holde ſtrong argument againſt this opinion of mine for early couering of Mares, concluding that to couer Mares in May, is ſomewhat of the ſooneſt, reaſoning thus; that for aſmuch as *Italie*, *Spaine*, and other Countries much hoter then ours, couer not their Mares before mid-March, or the beginning of Aprill: ours that through the coldnes keepes

graſſe

graſſe ſlowe & long ere it ſpring, may right neceſſarily ſtay a month after them, but they are deceiued in their iudgements: For albe our clime be colde, and that graſſe be long in growing, yet this is a certaine rule, that if a Mare haue meate inough to ſuſtaine nature in any goodfaſhion, ſhe will euer haue milke inough to bring vppe her Foale.

Againe, if a Foale fall early in the yeare, as the yeare increaſes, ſo both meate and milke increaſe, but if a Foale fall in the prime time of the yeare, then as the yeare decreaſes, ſo meate and milke decreaſe; ſo that the Foale taſteth in his firſt month his beſt foode: and when he can eate leaſt, hath the greateſt plentie, which is contrarie to rule.

Laſtly, our Winters being almoſt double to the Winters in thoſe hot Countries, if our Foales haue not a little taſte or ſeaſoning of Winter before our VVinter begin, they will hardly (as before I ſaid) indure our VVinters.

Another Argument thoſe Horſemen haue, which is, that our Mares will not couet the Horſe before May, but that is more abſurd then the other; for all men of experience know, that a Mare which is not with foale, will euer couet the Horſe before mid-March, at what time if ſhe be ſuffered to goe ouer, ſhee will not deſire the Horſe for a Month after. Againe, if the Mare be with Foale, it is an infallible rule, that as ſoone as ſhee hath foaled, ſhe will euer couet the Horſe nine nights after: ſo that it is rather a naturall courſe, then the pride of foode, which makes a Mare couet or not couet the Horſe.

Signes of a Mares pride.

Now the ſignes to know when a Mare coueteth the Horſe

Horſe be theſe: They will runne extraordinarilie vp and downe, and ſildome reſt in any one place, and their courſing for the moſt part is euer towards the North or South; they will pricke vp their tailes, wooe one another, and leap one vpon another, they will piſſe oft, and as ſome doe report in their writinges, if they may not haue the Horſe in the extremity of their deſire, they will runne madde.

The time of the yeare being thus: from the beginning of March, till the end of Aprill or May: and your Mares being ready for the Horſe, the next rule is, the manner of their putting together: tis moſt true, that for Princes and great Perſons, who haue multitudes of Mares, & great choice of Horſes, to whom the ſpoyling of a Horſe, or the goeing ouer of a Mare, is no loſſe. The onely beſt manner of couering, is to put your Stallyon into a well fenc'd ground, full of freſh water, good ſhelter, and cleare ayre, where hee may runne from March till the midſt of May, and then to put vnto him ſo many Mares as with good conueniencie his ſtrength is able to endure and ſerue: which muſt bee proportioned according to his youth and ſtrength. *Plinie* is of opinion, that a good Stallyon may couer fifteene Mares, and our Engliſh Horſmen haue ordinarily proportioned twelue and tenne, but for the beſt Horſes that haue beene within my experience, I haue found eight at full ſufficient, vnleſſe a man would neuer expect more of the Horſe, then that one two monthes ſeruice.

For of a Horſe then of youth, ſtrength and luſtineſſe, eight Mares are a ful number, but if he be old or feeble, then foure is enow, ſixe too many. According to this

preportion, hauing ſeuered your Stallyons and Mares into their proper places, You muſt appoint ſuch as may be careful of the fences, leaſt either your ſtallyons ſhould breake one into another, and ſo either marre the determination of your breed, or ſpoile themſelues by fighting; For Horſes like Deare are iealious of their Mares, as may appeare by their keeping them together, & not ſuffering them to ſtray or feed a ſunder, as in ſuch caſes you may eaſily obſerue, and which as ſome thinke, is the cauſe that they are more apt for generation, and doe conceiue more ſpeedily: and truely for the firſt, ſecond, or third Mare, I am of the ſame opinion: but that it holdeth ſo in the reſt, I differ; for a Horſe which is at ſuch liberty, and is of a mighty ſpirit, doth ſo extreamly, and with ſuch diſorder ſpend himſelfe, that in leſſe then one weekes ſpace, he brings ſuch feeblenes vpon him, that he is almoſt diſabled for the purpoſe you imploy him: and for mine owne part, I haue knowne diuers excellent Horſes that haue kild themſelues with the violence of their luſt. Yet as before I ſaid, for ſuch as haue multitudes of Mares there is no other meane, but the ſufferance of this hazard.

As ſoone as you ſhall perceiue that all your Mares be couered, which neceſſarily muſt bee within the compaſſe of ſix weekes: becauſe euery empty Mare at that time of the yeare, deſireth the Horſe once in a month, you ſhall foorth-with take your Horſe from your Mares: for it is not good to let him goe any longer, for theſe reaſons: Firſt for the loſſe of his vſe and ſeruice, which may bee after his recouerie to ſome good purpoſe; but chiefly, leaſt if he run too long, he ſpoile what hee hath formerly created: for a Mare,

con-

contrary to the kinde of other beasts, is of so strong a lust, that albe she haue conceiued, yet if she be proud in flesh, fat, full, and lusty, she will notwithstanding desire and take the Horse againe, which if at any time she do, she immediatly casteth the Foale wherewithall formerly she went, which experiment I haue knowne diuers times approued, yea euen when a Mare hath bin within almost a month of her recconing: for which cause I would haue you euer obserue to remoue your Stallyon, so soone as he hath done his office. And thus much for the races of Princes, and Potentates.

Now for such priuate Gentlemen, as hauing but one Stallyon, yet diuers Mares, they may by no means runne the hazard of this former course, least by spoyling their Horses, they loose both their hope and benefit together, wherefore it behoueth them to obserue another course: yet not in mine opinion, according to the demonstration of some of our-late English writers, by turning Mares single, and by one vnto the Horse, whilst hee runneth in some priuate fenc'st ground, as some pond-yarde, or such like: for this taketh as sore of the Horse as the other course first mentioned, or rather sorer, by as much as the change and nouelties of new Mares, brought almost at the end of euery three dayes fresh vnto him, stirreth and inflameth him with a more greedy and eager lust, then otherwise hee would haue if they were his continuall obiect: therefore hee that hath but one Stallyon, and hopes to inioy him long, (yet many Mares for him yearely to couer) let him obserue the order prescribed in this next Chapter.

CHAP. 6.

Of couering Mares in the House, the dyeting of the Stallyon, the time of the day for the Act, and to know when shee hath conceiued.

ALbe this course wee are now about to treate of, bee much more troublesome, and a little more chargeable then the former, yet it is by manie degrees safer, and in my conceite much surer. Hee therefore, that out of little meanes will preserue a good breede: Let him first prepare to keepe some warme spotte of ground, as eyther Orchard, Garden, or such like: which not being eaten all the yeare before, may haue grasse ready to mowe by mid Aprill, at what time you shall put your Horse into the soyle, feeding him thoroughly with bread made of pease meale and mingled with barme and water, well knodden and baked in great housholde loaues: then when you haue a Mare ready to be couered, let her as soone as the Sun is in setting, be brought into some large empty barne, and there turned loose: let then the Horse be also brought vnto her, and turned loose, where let him remaine with her all night, till halfe an houre after Sunne rise: then let him be taken and led into the stable, and the first thing you giue him, let it bee a sweete warme mash of malte and water: after that, let him haue grasse and prouender as before he was accustomed: then let the Mare likewise be turned to grasse.

This

This order you shall obserue three nights together, and there is no doubt but your Mare shall be sufficiently serued: In this manner, and with this dyet, your horse may well serue one after another, ten or twelue Mares; during all which time of soyle and couering, your Horse must by no meanes be ridden.

Now for as much as some English writers prescribe in this time of soile, for your horses dyet, dryed wheate or dride Pease and Wheate branne, or cleane fytches, and his mashes of wheate meale and water, I for mine owne part, doe dislike them all, and this is my ground: first, for dride wheate, albe it be a cleane, heartie, and strong food, yet it is a graine, which of all other dooth sooneſt cloy a Horse, and is most dangerous, if a horse shall surfeit thereon: besides, it is with vs heere in *England*, of so little vse for Horses, that when you shall giue it a Horse, his nature (vnaccustomed thereunto) receiues it rather as a medicine, then as any familiar foode, and by that meanes takes little or no pleasure therein: Lastly, it is so costly, that no good Husband but will grudge the expence, except he were assured of some extraordinarie benefit thereby, which I assure him he shall neuer reape.

Now for pease and branne, who knowes not that hath any experience, that it is of all foodes the most vilde, ingendering grosse humors, & bad neutriment, occasioning hart-burning, & many other scalding passions in a Horse. And for fytches they are (if possible) worse then the other, for besides that they are rancke, fulsome, & vnwholsome food: they haue also in them such a dangerous poyson, that by surfetting vppon them, they breede euen the plague amongst Horses.

For the maſhe of Wheate and Water, it is tollerable, and may bee vſed, but not in this time of couering, becauſe it carryeth neither the ſtrength, pleaſant taſte, nor ſweeteneſſe, which Malt and water doth. And thus much for the couering of Mares in the houſe.

There is yet another manner of couering of Mares, and that is, for ſuch as either hauing ſome one principall Horſe, which they eſteeme ſo pretious, that they will not aduenture him looſe a night together, leaſt the Mare either in her wooing, or out of her toying knauiſhnes, ſhould giue him ſuch a blowe, as might either breed in him griefe or lameneſſe; yet are deſirous to haue ſome one or two eſpeciall Mares couered with him: or elſe it is for them who being deſirous to get into good races, are fayne to get leapes for their Mares, either by courteſie, bribes, or ſtealth: for theſe, they muſt bee content to haue their Mares couered in hand; which albe it bee not altogether ſo ſure as the former preſcribed was, yet the Foales ſo begotten, are altogether as good as the former: and whereas ſome haue held opinion that the Horſe being at hard meate (that is, at Hay and Prouender) and the Mare at graſſe, or the Mare at hard meate, and the horſe at graſſe, that if theſe two ſhal ingender together, the Mare will neuer conceiue or holde, I haue found it meere vntruth, for I haue knowne a horſe the night before he ſhould haue run for a wager, who then was not onely at hard meate, but alſo in ſtraite dyet, which is the extreameſt of hard meate, couer a graſſe Mare, which Mare hath held to that horſe, & brought foorth a foale, which both for his ſhape & vertue, might well challenge

challenge his Syre. He therfore that will haue his Mare couered in hand, muſt obſerue this order: as ſoone as you finde your mare ready for the Horſe, which you may knowe by the ſignes before mencioned, or if for a better aſſurance, you may if you pleaſe, bring ſome bad ſton'd lade vnto her, and if you ſee her wrie her taile, & ſhow willinges to receiue him, then it is moſt certaine ſhe is ready: then you ſhal halfe an houre after Sun-riſe in the morning, bring your Mare into ſome cloſe court or backe yarde, neere vnto the ſtable, or for want of ſuch into ſome emptie barne: then you ſhall cauſe the Horſe-keeper to bring foorth the Horſe, in a watering trench, with a ſtrong long rayne: and if at the firſt ſight of the Mare, the horſe (as it is very likely he will) fall to bound or leape, let not the keeper bee affrayde, but rather cherriſh and fortefie the Horſe in ſuch ſalts, onely let him ſo much as is in his power reſtraine him from comming too ſuddainely to the Mare, that if it bee poſſible hee may bee readie when hee commeth to her, and as ſoone as hee is vppon her, let him haue all the libertie the Horſe-keeper can giue him. But whereas ſome would haue the Horſe-keeper to helpe the Horſe, as by putting his yarde into the right place, or ſuch like: I am vtterly againſt it, (except it bee in caſe of great neede) for it is ſo much againſt the nature of a Horſe, ſo to be handled, that I haue ſeene a Horſe when he hath beene ready to couer a Mare, by ſuch officiouſnes of the keeper, to come immediately off from the Mare, and leaue her vnſerued, for more then an houre after. As ſoone as the Horſe hath ſerued the Mare, & is comed from her back, let a ſtander by (prepar'd for the purpoſe) imme-

diately throw a pale of colde water vpon the priuye partes of the Mare, which will keep her from shedding the seede (which naturally a Mare will do) and so soone as the water is thrown, let him which holds the Mare, runne vp and downe with her the space of a quarter of an houre, making her trot a good pace, which chasing will also make her holde the seede, and whilst this is in doing, let the Horse be ledde into the stable and haue some breade giuen him, then within halfe an houre after, let him be brought forth againe as before, and let him couer her the second time, and then no more for that time, & looke, how you doe in the morning, the same you must also doe in the euening, continuing so to doe for three mornings, and three euenings together: and it will be sufficient.

Now that you may know whether she hath conceiued or no, you shal within ten daies after her couering, offer her some bad stond Iade againe: which if she refuse to receiue, it is an euident token that she holdeth; but if at that time month after her couering, you offer her the Horse againe, and she refuse him, it is most infallible that she holdeth.

Againe, if when you couer your Mare in hand, and let her stand still, she doe not then loose or cast out her seede, it is most certaine that she holdeth. Also when a Mare hath conceiued, her coate will scower, and she will looke more smooth, sleight, and full then before she did. The only time of the month for couering of Mares, is three dayes after the change of the moone, and three daies before the full of the moone. And thus much for the couering of Mares.

CHAP. 7

CHAP. 7.

That Mares may be made to conceiue either Horse-Foales, or Mare Foales at pleasure, and of what colour the breeder will.

ALbe euer, euen from mine infancie, my vttermost ends and ambition hath bin onely to bee expert in this Art of Horsmanship which I professe: And although I haue not omitted any time, labour, or rest (according to the substance of mine estate) which might any way intice me with any secret belonging to the same; yet whether it hath beene the strength of my misbeleefe, or the nature of my condition (which hath euer desired in these naturall courses, a naturall and comely proceeding) I knowe not, yet well I am assured, that I could neuer relish or well disgest these needlesse secrets, into which the fond curiositie of man doth to so small purpose wade; yet for my promise sake, and least by this omission some other man might come and deny my *CAVALARICE*, I am content to report the vttermost of other mens opinions, ioyning to them mine owne obseruations. One writer therefore saith, that if you will haue your Horse get a Colt Foale, you must tye vp his left stone with a lace or ribband: but I feare if he haue not the vse of both those instruments, hee will get neither Colt nor Fillye: The binding vp of the right stone getteth the Filly Foales.

Another saith, if you couer a Mare when the north

winde blowes, she will conceiue a Colt Foale; if when the South winde blowes, a Fillie. Others report, that if you constraine your Horse to stand a good space by the Mare wooing her, and priding himselfe before her, that the Mare out of the conceit of his comlinesse, will at that time conceiue a colt Foale. Others are of opinion, that if you annoint the Horses yard & stones with the oile *Petrolium*, that it will occasion him to beget colt Foales: but in all these experiments, I haue little trust. Mine obseruations therefore for this begetting of males, or Females, hath beene euer these: first, let a mare be couered three daies after the change or three daies before the full of the moone & it is commonly a meane to make her bring forth a colt Foale: To couer a mare the third night, or the ninth night after she hath foaled, is a good way to get colt Foales: lastly and which is of all the surest, let your Horse when he goeth to your mare, be in as great lust and strength as you can make him, and let your mare be rather leane then fat, so that in the worke of nature, the horse may be the stronger doer: and from these obseruations I haue many times seene horse-colts to issue.

Now that you may knowe when your mare is couered, whether shee hath conceiued a horse Colt, or mare Colt: one obserueth, that if the horse when the act of generation is ended, doe come off from her backe on the right side, that then she hath conceiued a colt Foale, if on the left side, then a mare foale. Others obserue, that if when the horse commeth off from the mare, he seeme to be much deiected and ashamed, that it is a strong argument he hath got a colt foale; but if he shew any alacritie of spirit, or doeney, it is a manifest

feſt token he hath got a mare foale: but both theſe obſeruations in my conceit are friuolous, nor do I thinke we ought in truth ſeeke ſuch ſuperſtitious knowledge.

Now that your *Mare* may conceiue her Foale of what colour you will, many Philoſophers and ſome Horſ-men are of this minde, that looke what colour you ſhall put vppon the horſe when hee couereth the *Mare*, or what other colour you will preſent to her eye when ſhe is in couering, that the Foale which ſhe then conceiueth ſhall haue the ſame colour: Others report, that of what colour you will ſtaine or paint the haires of your Horſe, when he goeth to couer your mare, that ſhe wil conceiue her foale of that colour. Another writeth, that if you will paint the portrature of a Horſe vpon boord or canuaſſe, and holde it before the eyes of the *Mare* whileſt ſhe is in couering, that looke what colour or ſpeciall markes the picture containes, that the ſame colour and markes the foale ſhall haue which the *Mare* then conceiueth. How euer theſe opinions are mayntained by the Scriptures, or by *Labans* ſheepe, for mine owne part I holde neither truſt nor truth in them: for were there a certaintie in ſuch practiſe, I know ſo many fantaſticall wits in this Nation, that we ſhould not be without a worlde of *Geſners* Horſes, I meane horſes of all manner of colours in the Rainbow: Nay ſome madde men I knowe would haue their *Miſtreſſes* names grow on their horſes buttockes, but letting theſe iugling trickes paſſe, the only ſure way to haue your foale of good colour, is to haue both your Horſe and your *Mare* of a good colour, and that doth neuer faile in nature.

CHAP.

CHAP. 8.

If Mares should be forc'd to take the Horse, how to moove lust in Horse and Mare, and how to abate it.

THough in former ages, as in the dayes of *Plinius Secundus*, and *Varro*, it hath bin an vsuall custome to force Mares to take the Horse, when they haue had no lust, as by crosse shackling them, tying them to a Poast, and such like violent compulsions: yet I for my part doe vtterly dislike it, and holde it both barbarous and vnnaturall: For in all those naturall actions, there should bee a naturall accord and agreement, or otherwise the labour is lost: or if it auaile, it is the first meanes to bring foorth prodigies: Therefore if at any time you bee offered the benefite of a principall Horse, and because of your Mares vnreadinesse you are likely to loose that faire oportunitie, vnlesse you shall force her by compulsion: mine aduice is, that rather then you shall loose the one, or make vse of the other, that you trie all the meanes that may bee to stirre and moove lust in your mare, which one Writer saith you may thus doe: Take Shrimps and beate them in a morter with water, till they bee as thicke as hony, then mixe therewith mares seede, and so annoynt her priuie parts, and her nose, and it will procure lust; Or else take the powder of Horses stones, and mixing it with sweete wine, giue it the mare to drinke.

Another

Another writer saith, that the iuyce of a Sea Onion being laid vpon the Mares Matrixe, will stirre vp lust, or else to anoint her matrixe with Hennes dung and Turpentine mixt togither. But aboue all these vncleanly receipts, the best and surest prouocation, is to rubbe her priuy parts with keene nettles, for that will not only violently stir vp her lust, but also make her conceiue and hold when she is couered, as I haue seene by due proofe at sundry times: yet before you make triall, either of this or of any of the former, I would haue you first put to your Mare some bad ston'd lade, who being so shackled that he cannot couer her, may run with her a day or two, in which time, if by her chasing and wooing her he stirre her to lust, (as it is most likely he will) then let that onely suffice; otherwise you may follow your owne opinion: but if it be so that your Mare bee ready for the Horse, and only the Horse out of a colde or sullen disposition refuseth to couer your Mare, as I haue seene many faire Coursers of that nature: then you must imploy your Art by stirring lust in your Horse, which some writers report you may do, by giuing him to drinke the taile or pizsel of an olde Stag burnt to powder: and mixt with sweet wine, and also annointing his stones therewith, or else to mingle with that powder the powder of Anny-seedes *Saterion*, Basil, and Date stones, and giue them in sweet wine to drink; but rather then you shall approue any of these medicines, I would wish you to stay the long leisure of the Horse, and by often offering to take the Mare from him, seeke to moue and inflame him; if you doe with nettles rub his yard a little it will prouoke him, and is a thing ordinarily vsed.

But

But nowe of the contrarie part, if either your Horse or Mare be so proud and strong in lust, that nothing you can doe will abate their heate, you shall then annoynt his stones and yarde, and the Mares Vdder and priuie parts with Sallet Oyle, wherein hath beene steeped before Mallowes, Sorrell, and Lettice: but if that preuaile not, you shall twice a day swimme your Horse or Mare in some deepe Riuer. As for that idle opinion of them that thinke the cutting off of a Horse or Mares maine, or taile, will abate their courage, it is most grosse; for Horses and Mares haue not like *Sampson* their strengthes in their haires: and thus much touching these naturall secrets, which if to modest eares they bring any euill sound, they are the rules of the best respected Writers, and not by me published but repeated.

CHAP. 9.

Which Mares should be couered, which not, and which shall not goe barren.

P*Alladius*, *Columella*, and my selfe am much different in opinion; for they would haue such Mares as are beautifull, and faire, and therewithall haue beene well couered and haue faire Colt Foales, not to bee couered euery yeare, but once in two yeares, nay, once in three yeares: their reason being, that their Foales may thereby haue the longer time to sucke, and for such Mares as are foule, and haue

haue foule Foales, to be couered euerie yeare; as if they would giue rules to breed bad things often, and good things seldome.

Now for mine opinion: first, where they make a distinction betwixt faire Mares, and foule Mares, I would haue euerie breeder, so neare as he can, not to preserue one foule or vncomly Mare in his race, or if hee haue any such, to breede so seldome vpon them as may bee; so that composing his studd all of faire Mares, hee should by *Palladius* rule, breed but once in three yeares, a husbandrie in my conceyte verye vnprofitable. But to come to our purpose: I would haue euerie one that breedes Horses, not to let anye Mare he hath to goe ouer, except it bee that some of his Mares miscarie, and cast their Foales; which if any doe, then I would haue such Mares to goe ouer for a yeare at least, because if they be couered the next yeare after, they are in danger to cast their Foales againe, although they haue no mischance: as for *Palladius* reason, that they should goe ouer for the bringing vp of their Foales, hee is much mistaken: for a Foale dooth not sucke any great quantitie of milke aboue nine Moneths, the other three Monethes hee sucketh but by snatches, and for wantonnesse; so that the Mares being with Foale, doth not any thing at all hinder the Foales nourishment. Besides, the Foales sucking vpon the Mare, keepes the Mare in a good estate of bodie, rather leane then fat; so that when she shall come to bee couered shee will sooner holde, sooner bring forth a Colt foale, and haue more roome, and a larger bedde for her foale to tumble in: Whereas should she be suffered to go ouer a yeare or two, in that

time

time of her barrenneſſe, ſhe would grow ſo fat, that ſhe would hardly hold; or if ſhe did hold, her womb would be ſo cloſed vp with fatneſſe, that when ſhee ſhould come to foale, ſhee would bring foorth nought but a wreckling: mine opinion therefore is, that no Mare ſhould goe ouer, that is worthie the couering, except (as before is ſaid) miſchance conſtraine: now to be ſure that none of your Mares ſhall goe barren, trie euerie Mare you haue the Month day after her couering, except ſuch as be fat and proud, but by no meanes trie them; and if the other couet the Horſe againe, let them haue him, and ſo you ſhall be ſure that not any of them ſhall goe barren: but for turning a Stallyon amongeſt your Mares about Lammas, (as ſome aduiſe) O it is moſt vilde: firſt through the miſchiefe he may doe to thoſe which haue already conceiued, and next the lateneſſe of the yeare, at what time I had rather the Mare ſhould goe ouer, then bring a Foale at ſo bad a ſeaſon: and albe I haue ſeene my ſelfe, and heard alſo of many good Lammas Foales, yet I neuer ſawe any ſuch, as thereon to ground a preſident. And thus much for Mares and their barrenneſſe.

CHAP. 10

The vſe of Mares when they are with Foale, and of the caſting of Foales.

AS ſoone as your Mares haue conceiued and are with Foale, thoſe great perſons which keepe their ſtudds onely for breede, and no other

ther labour, are to respect that they may goe in good short, yet sweete pasture, especially if they giue sucke, and that for a month before and after Michelmas they bee not chased, strained, or troubled, for then is the time of their knitting and quickning, so that a small rush at that time breedes aborsement (which is the casting of their Foales.) But for such men as must by labour make some especiall vse of their Mares, they must haue care, that after their Mares haue conceiued, they labour and worke them very moderately, shunning by all meanes to put them to the carriage of heauy burthens, or the toyle of hasty iourneyes: But aboue all, as before I saide, a month before and after Michaelmas; Mares that are with Foale, and haue Foales sucking vpon them, must haue in the Winter besides grasse, good store of sweete hay, and light Corne: they must haue good shelter, as house or houell, and dry layre. The houses or houels, where they eate their winter meate, must bee large and spacious, so that they may not bee throng'd vp together, for feare by rushing or striking, they be forc'd to cast their foales. Some haue been of opinion, that the change of pastures, and strange waters, will make a Mare cast her foale, but it is not so, only a man may by driuing Mares frō pasture to pasture, with vnruly chasing make them cast their foales, which is the cause I wold haue mares with foale seldome remoued or driuen: but that fresh pasture should do them such hurt, it is senceles. As for the mast of *Cedar* trees, the treading vpon Wolues or such-like, al which some writers say, wil cause aborsement, we here in *England* need not feare them: But for stinking smels, as the snuffs of candles, carrion, or such

like, I holde it very dangerous, and doe often occasion aborſſement: fatneſſe in a Mare is dangerous for aborſſement alſo; or if they ſcape caſting their foales, yet fatneſſe puts a Mare to great hazard in her foaling, which is the reaſon that many good breeders which I knowe, will let their Mares after they are quickned, be moderately trauelled or wrought, till within ſome month or ſix weekes of their foaling, but not any longer: for the onely time of danger is at the firſt conception, and at the time of teaming. And thus much for this matter.

CHAP. 11

Helpe for a Mare that is in danger in foaling, and other ſecrets.

MAres naturally (contrarie to the cuſtome of other beaſtes) doe foale ſtanding: and as certaine ancient Writers report (for I haue not at any time ſeene it) the foales when they are new foaled, haue vppon their foreheads a little blacke thing like a figge called *Hypomanes*, which they ſay will procure loue, the damme bites it off, and eates it as ſoone as the foale is falne, but if ſhe be preuented thereof, ſhe will neuer ſuffer the foale to ſucke; as if the tenderneſſe or naturall loue which a Mare bears to her young, ſprung from this accidentall cauſe, and not from the motion of her naturall inclination: but for mine owne part, hauing ſeene ſo many Mares foale as I haue done, and neuer perceiuing

uing any such obseruation, I cannot imagine it any other then a fabulous dreame.

But to proceede to our purpose: if your Mare either by mischance, or by naturall defect, as by taking the Horse when she was too young, as vnder two yeares olde, or vpon her first foale, which euer hath the greatest perill, be in danger at her foaling, or put to extraordinary torment in foaling; you shal ease her by these meanes: first one is of opinion, that if you make one stand before the Mare when she is in foaling, that shall holde her nosthrils close, in such sort that she cannot take her breath, it will procure her to foale with much ease: but for the ease I doubt, onely I knowe it will procure her more speed in her businesse: but the most certainest and surest remedie for this euill is, to take the blacke part of the Crab-fish feete, and beating them to powder, mixe it with sweete Wine, and Sallet Oyle, and giue it the mare with a horne to drink, and it will bring her ease presently, of which I haue knowne good experience: but if it shall faile, then I would haue you take the helpe of some discreet woman, whose better experience knowes best how to handle such an occasion.

Now if after your Mare haue foaled, shee doe not scowre away her *Secundine*, which is the skin wherein the foale is wrapped, after that naturall maner which is requisite in such a case: some thinke it best to giue her this medicine: first to boile two or three handfuls of fenel in water; then to take halfe a pint of that water and as much old sweet wine, and a fourth part of sallet oile, & mingle them together vpon the fire, then when it is luke warme, to power it into the Mares nosthrils,

and to holde her noſtrils cloſe after it, which will bee a preſent meanes that ſhe ſhall expell the former ſubſtance: But for as much as this medicine is ſomewhat teadious in making, and that a Mare ſhould not bee ſo long in ſcowring, as this: in compounding, boyling, and cooling: I haue euer obſerued, that as ſoone as my Mare hath foal'd, to giue her a little bottle of green forrage, that is, the blades of young Wheate or Rye, but of the two Rye is the better, and it will both expell and clenſe a Mare preſently: Touching the eating of the *Secundine*, which moſt commonly Mares doe, ſome thinke it is very vnwholſome, and that it maketh a Mare ſick and vnluſty, which opinion I hold for great truth, adding this with al; that it is a great hindrance to the Mares milke: wherfore ſo far foorth as is in a mans power, I would haue it preuented. And thus much for this matter.

CHAP. 12.

How to make a Mare caſt her Foale.

SOme ſay, it hath beene a practiſe amongſt ancient Horſemen, in times paſt, that when they haue had a Mare vnworthily couered, as when a fayre Mare hath either by ſtealth, or miſchance, taken ſome ill fauoured ſton'd Iade, or when a Mare of ſome eſpeciall hope or vertue, as either for ryding, running, or hunting, is preſeru'd from the Horſe, and yet not withſtanding through ſome negligence, gets to the Horſe, and is couered.

In this caſe, it hath beene a practiſe to force the Mare

Mare so couered, to aborssement, which is to cast her Foale, and it is a thing my selfe haue practised vpon a Mare, in whose speede I was infinitelie much perswaded, the rather because I know this generall rule neuer to faile, that a Mare which once giueth a Foale sucke shall neuer boast of that speede which in her maydenhood, she inioyed, both because al her powers, organs, and instruments of strength haue then a contrarie imployment; and also, because nature in foale bearing looseth the pride and luster of her greatnes.

Againe, if you preserue your Mare for beautie, and eye-pleasure, the bearing of foales vtterly taketh away that delight, because the wombe being stretcht out, the vdder broken, and the full partes falne, there is little more then the head & limbs which a man can cal beautifull; he therefore then which hath either swift Mare or beautifull Mare, which is vnworthily couered, if he would disburden her of that euill burthen, there is no course but to make her cast her Foale: which although some writers holde, may be doone two waies, that is either by strength of hand or vse of medicine, yet for mine owne part, for that handy course, I vtterly dislike it, both for as much as I know it can neuer be done but to the great hazard of the Mares life, and also because I haue seene some Mares die in the deed dooing for that which is to bee done by hand, is not to be doone, till the Foale be so great, that it haue hayre, at what time they cause one to thrust his hand into the wombe of the Mare, & to crush the head of the foale, how monstrous, immodest and vnnaturall this is, who cannot Iudge? but for the medicinable course, it is lesse dangerous, & by all degrees more tollerable; Yet for as much as I

haue euer vſed ſuch experiments, but in extremity and that the medicines are all in other mens records; I will for modeſtie ſake, referre them to their writings; and at his inſtant ſaue my ſelfe a labour in repetition, aduiſing all Horſebreeders and Horſemen whatſoeuer, rather to indure the inconuenience of miſchances, then the miſchiefe of theſe ſubtile knowledges.

CHAP. 13

The vſe of Mares when they haue foaled: of the ſucking of Foales, and of other helpes and vſes.

IT is to be intended, that according to the obſeruations which are preſcribed in the firſt chapter of this booke, all your race Mares ſhould be in that ground which being plaine and moſt voide of water furrowes, ditches, and ſuch like is the ſafeſt from danger in foaling: but when your Mares haue all foaled, if then you haue any freſh and vnbitten ground, which not being ranke, deepe, nor ſoft, but ſweete graſſe, ſhort bit, and hard to tread on, with good ſhelter and freſh water: it ſhall be good to put your race Mares and their Foales therin, to the end that their milke may ſpring and that your Foales may come to a fulneſſe of ſtrength, beautie, and courage: in which albe ſome Authors giue aduice to chaſe and rechaſe your Mares vp and downe the ground at certaine times, as the beſt meanes to bring the Mares milke into her Vdder, yet I am of a contrary opinion,

opinion, knowing this by due proofe, that such exercise doth rather hurt then good, because whatsoeuer is don vnwillingly is done with paine, & that painfulnes takes away the sence of profite: as for bringing downe the milke, that the foale it selfe euer doth, whom as he sucks, you shal euer see with his nose and head to iump and strike against the Vdder of the mare, which is to no other purpose but to break the kernels of the Mares Vdder, and to haue the milke haue its passage, so that to conclude, I would haue your Mares run with all the quietnesse that may be, knowing this principle, that all horses and mares, which are either in lust or strength, will out of their owne natures, either against raine, winde, or stormes, runne, chase, and scope about the ground where they pasture; so that where nature is so good a helpe, constraint need to be of little vse.

Now for the sucking of foales, although one man writes, that all Authors do agree, that foals should suck two yeares at least: nay, that after the Spanish manner, they should sucke till they couer their dams, I for my part & as I think all good *English* breeders are of a contrary opinion: for how euer in the daies of *Plinie*, *Aristotle*, or *Anatulius*, two yeares might be thought litle enough; yet in these our daies we finde it full one yeare too much; wherfore leauing the variable opinions of sundrie men, I conclude, that in the races of Princes, Noblemen and Gentlemen, for a foale to suck a yeare complete, that is from his own foaling, til his dam foal againe, is a time full out sufficient; but for the husbandman, who may not loose the worke and labour of his mare, it shall be sufficient for him if his foale sucke but full sixe Moneths complete; and how euer some men

haue written that Foales sucking so small a time, must necessarilye want much of their inward pythe, strength and healthfulnes, yet by proofe I knowe it doth not generally hould so, and for mine owne part, I could almost giue consent to the wayning of all foales at sixe and seauen monthes, were it not for the great danger of the Gargill, and maw-worme, which vnto foales wayned so young, are diseases both incident and common: so that in conclusion, I would haue those which are of abilitie, to let their foales sucke a yeare, and no more. For those which want meanes, to make their hazard at six monthes and vpward. For the housing of foales at their first foaling, which is the opinion of *Varro*, and some others, I am vtterly against it, because as I haue formerly written, the Perfect horse must euer in one yeare haue the taste of two winters, and therefore in Gods name let your Foale taste the worst of winters farewell.

Now for the exercising of your Foales to eate prouender after they be fiue or sixe monthes old (which is likewise the opinion of *Varro*) it is exceeding good, and nothing more necessary, but that the prouender should bee either ground Barley, or dride Barley and wheate branne mingled together: That might in those countries, wherein he was experienst be tollerable, because peraduenture there was no other choice: but with vs heere in *England*, where we haue so many choyces of good foodes, that foode of all other is the vildest, and worst, both because it affordeth the worst nutryment, and also both Barley and wheat bran, are of a hot burning nature, ingendering hot feauers and other drye diseases. The prouender best for foales then, is olde

Oates

Oates in the sheafe, the ouerchawing of wheate; Garbage (which is wheate eares and the straw chopt altogether) and now and then barly in the chaffe: or if your foales grow drie in their bodies, and costiue, then now and then a sheafe of Rie amongst them. This maner of feeding will not onely make them acquainted with the seuerall taste and vse of meates, but also breed such familiaritie betwixt them and their keepers, that they will be much more domesticall and tame then otherwise they would be, which is a great benefite, both to the breeder, and also to him which shall be the rider; but in any wise let not their keepers handle or stroke them too much, for that will but hinder their growth, because for the most part, all foure-footed beasts do take dislike in their infancie to be much handled. The houses or crosse houels which you preserue for winter shelter for your foales, would be faire paued with pibble boulder, or some other kind of small stone, and therwithall dayly kept cleane from myre or dung: from myre, that by soft treading the hoofes of your foales growe not weake and tender: and from dung, least standing therupon it burne & drie vp their hoofes, making them short and brittle. But if naturally you perceiue any of your foals to haue tender hoofes, then you shall seek by medicinable means to recouer them, as by annointing them with the vpper sword or skin of fat bacon, or els by taking the eares of Garlicke, Swines grease, Goates grease, and Brimstone mixt togither, and annointing their hoofes therewith, or by rubbing the cronets of their hoofes with Tarre and Hogges grease mixt togither, and such like, of which I will speake more in my booke of diseases.

CHAP. 14.

The knowledge of a Horses shape, stature, and quality: and how it is to be knowne when hee is new Foaled.

THis knowledge and experience I haue oftentimes noted, and therefore dare the more boldly protest it, which is that a man may haue almost a certain knowledge when a Foale is new foaled, what shape, stature, and quallity hee will carry when hee is a Horse of compleate strength and growth: Wherefore, first as touching his shape; looke what shape, proportion and beauty hee hath when he is a full month olde, the same shape and beauty hee will carry when hee is full sixe yeares of age: and the same defects which he then retaineth, the same he will hold when hee comes to his growth, and all his life after. Then for his stature, this is an infallible rule, that for the shinne bone (which is betwixt the knee and the pasterne of the fore legges) that bone neuer increaseth, no not from the first foaling, neither the bone from the cambrell to the pasterne of the hinder legg; insomuch that if those bones be long and large, we are euer assured that the Foale will proue a tall and a large Horse. But for a generall knowledge of the height of a Horse by his foalage, take an Incle or Ribband, and measure the Foale when hee is new foaled, from the knee to the Withers (which is the top of his shoulder) and double

that

that length he shall be of height when he comes to be a Horse of complete age.

Now for his dispositon and qualitie, I am of *Varros* opinion, that if a Foale be of a stirring and liuely spirit, valiant against all strange sights, and suddaine noyses, wantonly leading the way in his sportings, and to bee the formost in euery chasing, that will voluntarily leap hedges and ditches, boldly passe bridges, straite lanes or places of couert, or to swimme waters, and therewithall to shew a most tractable patience, when they are by ordinarie meanes restrained: This foale or colt I say, and this I haue euer approued and obserued, will proue a horse of all good vertue, tractabilitie and indurance; whereas Coltes of contrarie dispositions, proue horses of dull, cowardly, and most vnseruiceable qualitie. And thus much for these hopefull and prophetique imaginations.

CHAP. 15.

How Horse foales, and Mare foales grow, and to knowe the continuance of their goodnesse.

TOuching the growth of Horses and Mares euen from their first beginning to their complete age, diuerse men are of diuerse opinions: for one supposeth that Horse-foales are sooner fashioned in their Dammes bellyes then Mare-Foales: and indeede there is some naturall reason for such conceite: but in as much as no man

can

can make any iuſt proofe or experiment thereof, I will refer it to the readers diſcretion to beleeue it as he liſt. Another is of opinion (& to that opinion I muſt needs condiſcend, for I finde it in dayly experience) that after foales are foaled, the Mare foale commeth to her full growth of height and length at fiue yeares of age: but the horſe foale not before he be full ſix; and from that time, although ſome imagine they ſpread and growe in breadth and largeneſſe till they be ten yeares of age; yet I for mine owne part haue diligently obſerued, and found by experience, that no horſe doth ſpred or grow broder or larger, after he is eight years of age, at which time onely he is complete, and full in euery member.

There is another which writes, that horſes with bald or white faces do not growe olde ſo ſoone as other horſes; how he meaneth that ſaying I ſcarce vnderſtand, for moſt ſure it is, that nature as ſoone decayeth in them as in others: but if his meaning be that they do not appeare olde ſo ſoone as other horſes, then I am of his opinion, becauſe thoſe griſſeld haires which in horſes of darke colours are the onely markes of olde age, do neuer appeare in a horſe that hath a white face: as for the length of life in ſuch horſes, I thinke it is ſhorter then in the others: for bald faces, white legges aboue the knees or cambrels, and ſuch like ſuperfluities of whiteneſſe, are the euident tokens of the imperfections of nature, and where nature is imperfect, there life is of leaſt continuance.

Now for as much as all horſes doe not attaine to their full growth in one manner and faſhion, I will ſhew you how they growe, according to their ſeuerall breedes: and firſt for our Engliſh horſes, they commonly

monly doe holde their ſhapes till they bee two yeares olde; but at three, they looſe all beauty and proportion, appearing to the eye weake, looſe, and ilfauouredly caſt, no member anſwering other, either in ſhape or fitneſſe: then at foure yeares olde they recouer againe the ſhape and good faſhion of their bodies, only they want necke and creſt, which begins not to riſe or extend its comelyneſſe till he be fiue yeares olde, and becommeth perfite and complete at ſixe yeares olde. The Engliſh horſe groweth altogether eeuen and iuſt, and not as other horſes doe, one while before, and another while behinde; for whenſoeuer you ſhall perceiue him to grow vneeuen, that is higher behinde then before, or hygher before then behinde, be you well aſſured, he will euer continue ſo all his life after: ſo that when you ſhall ſee any Engliſh Colt of any ſuch vneeuen making, neither chuſe him, nor preſerue him, otherwiſe then for preſent ſale or profit. According to the growth of your Engliſh horſes, ſo for the moſt part grow your *Almaines*, *Flemings*, and *Friſonds*.

Now for the *Neapolitan* Courſer, he looſeth his ſhape as ſoone as he is a yeare olde, and recouereth it not a gaine, till he be full fiue yeares olde: during all which time he is of looſe ſhape, raw-bond, weak-ioynted, and thinne neck'd: at two yeares olde he is higher behinde then before: at three, higher before then behinde: at foure, higher behinde then before: and at fiue, of eeuen height, all his ioynts being come to their true eeuenneſſe; and at ſixe yeares olde, his necke, creſt, breaſt, and buttockes, come to their full beautie, and comelineſſe.

Now it is to bee noted, that if any true bredde

Courſer

Courser doth either at two yeares old, or three yeares olde, shew the beautie of a good shape, appearing to the eye to be firmely knit, round and close trust together, with all those shapes which should be discerned in his full age: such a Colt doth euer loose his shape at foure or fiue yeares olde, and neuer recouereth it againe during his whole life after. So that I conclude, the worse shape a Courser carrieth at two, three, and foure yeares of age, the better he will beare it at fiue, and sixe, and all his life after. According to the growth of the *Neapolitan*; so for the most part growes both the *Iennet* of *Spaine*, the *Turkes* and *Barbaries*.

As touching the continuance of a Horses goodnesse, it often appeareth by the Horses hoofes. For if they be tender and soft, as for the most part your *Flemings*, *Almaines*, and *Frisons* are, then are they but of short continuance, as wanting much of their vigor and strength, But if they haue hoofes which are strong, hard, and sounding, as for the most part our *English* horses, *Neapolitans*, *Iennets*, *Turkes*, and *Barbaries* haue, then are they of long life, continuance and goodnes, as wanting no benefite that nature can giue. Other obseruations wee haue for the continuance of a horses goodnes; as from the healthfulnesse of his body, or inclination to infirmitie, from his strength or weaknesse of stomacke, or his good or bad disgestion, from his sleepe or watching, and many such like; by whose excesse we may euer iudge of a horses good or euill habite. And thus much for this matter,

CHAP. 16.

Of the weaning of Colts, of their ordering, and seperating, according to their ages.

SO soone as your Foales haue suckt a yeare, or within a month of a yeare, which is till your Mares be readie to foale againe, which as neere as you can compasse would bee about the middest of March, you shall then some three or foure dayes before the full of the Moone, about nine or tenne of the clocke in the fore-noone, take all your foales from your Mares, and shutte them vppe in a close house, where they may neither heare the noyse of their dammes, nor their dams heare their whinneing. In this house would be either some fewe Oates in the sheafe, some Hay, or some other prouender, not so much as will fill their bellies, but so much as will sustaine nature.

The Foales hauing thus rested in this house all night, the next morning, although one Authour would haue you putte them to their Dammes againe, that they might sucke whilest they are able, yet in my conceyte it is verie insufficient aduice, neither would I haue you by any meanes to obserue it, but in stead of putting them vnto their dammes, let them bee taken by the strength of men, one after another, and giue to each of them two or three slippes of *Sauen*, which

which done, let them rest an houre or two without meate, then after giue them both Hay, Prouender, and water, as much as they will eate till night, but all night let them fast, and the next morning giue them *Sauen* againe as before, and in this sort vse them for three mornings together. This *Sauen* is the most wholsomest thing in the world for young foales, because all foales naturally, what through the flegmaticke humor of the milke which they sucke, and the rawe and moyst coldnes of the grasse which they eate, are euer subiect to great aboundance, both of *Maw wormes*, *Grubbes*, and *Bots*, which as soone as foales are weaned wanting halfe the nourishment on which formerlie they fedde, they then begin to feede and corrupt the vitall partes, bringing vnto foales many times a suddaine and vnexpected death: nay, I haue knowne from the corruption of these maw-wormes, many times the gargill to proceede, which is a disease little differing from the plague, and is discerned onely by a great swelling about a foales face and neather chaps, which swelling doth not rise about two or three houres before the foales death, and when it ryses, the Foale is past cure, from all which mischiefes and diseases, this receite of *Sauen* doth both saue and defend foales: and truly before I knew or found out this medicine, I haue seene foure or fiue foales, which ouer night haue beene scoping, and playing as wantonly as may bee, and in the morning haue beene dead in the house, whome when I haue with mine owne hands opened, I haue found no other occasion of their death, but the extreame aboundance of these maw-wormes, and since I vsed this *Sauen*, I neuer had any that dyed.

When

When your Foales haue had *Sauen* giuen them thus three mornings together, you shall then driue them to that pasture wherein you intend they shall runne all the yeare following, which pasture would bee a firme, hard ground, and full of short sweete grasse, and some cleare Springs, pond, or fresh riuer, and not as one of our English writers perswade, keepe them fourteeene dayes together in the house: Becausе after a Foale is a yere old, there is neither in him such fondnes towards his Damme, nor such delight in milke (which a Foale naturally refuseth after hee comes to sixe or seauen monthes of age) as will inforce him to put himselfe into any danger or hazard.

Now the reasons why your pasture for your weanlings should be so good, is, becausе if in this first yeare (which is the spring time of their growth) your Foales shall either indure thirst, hunger or colde, they will become staruelings, or such as wee call stockt Foales, which is small of stature, weake both of body and reynes, and full of euill diseases: Wherefore I would haue all good Horse-breeders, the first yeare after the weaning of their Foales, to put vpon their foales all the strength, lust, and liuely-hood, which may bee got either by food or otherwise.

But as soone as your Foales haue past the age of two yeares, then I would haue you put them into some large, wilde, hard, and hungry ground, where, by their vttermost paine and trauell, they may not fill their bellyes aboue once in the day, which will be sufficient for their growth: for by such meanes of sharpnes, labour and hunger, they will bee made hard, durable, and exceeding healthfull: where, on the contrary part, rank-

rancknes of grasse and fatnesse of body breedes both vnwholesome humors and incurable diseases, so that by keeping such obseruations, as are before prescribed you shall breede a Colt, nimble, hard and strong, with good legges and sound hoofes, free from surfet, corruption of blood, or outward members.

Now lastly (according to the agreement of all good Horsemen) I would haue you to seperate your horse-colts from your Mare Colts, in seuerall pastures, and your yearelings from your two yeares olde, and your two yeares from your three; that none going together but such as are of equall age and strength, there may be no disorder or tumult, the great ones beating the lesse, or robbing them of their foode or nourishment. And thus much for the weaning of foales, and the partition of pastures.

CHAP. 17.

Of the gelding of Colts, and Horses, and the cause, the age, the time of the yeare, and manner of gelding.

I Cannot finde in any Author whatsoeuer, that the vse of gelding of Coltes, is in any nation whatsoeuer, of so great antiquitie, as with vs heere in *Engiand*, from whence (as I imagine) the first originall of that practise began; and I am the rather induced so to thinke, because I neither know, nor haue heard of any countrie whatsoeuer, that can boast of so many good, goodly, and seruiceable Geldings as

England

England at this houre can showe, the cause whereof I thinke hath proceeded from our continuall vse of trauelling winter and Summer, in which men desire to ride easily, fast, and quietly. Now for as much as stond horses naturally out of the pride of their courage, doe most cõmonly trot, & therewithall are exceeding rammish, and vnruely, especially in the company of Mares and other horses, there sprung from some inuenting braine, both the deuice to make horses amble (which is the pace of ease) and the practise of gelding horses, which is the means of quietnes. Now whereas one of our English writers saith, that a stond horse will not trauell so far in a day, as a Gelding, in that he is infinitly deceiued, and I impute this error onely to his want of experience, for all Horse-men know this (especially those whose practise consists in hunting horses, or running Horses, that the good stond horse will euer beate and ouerlabour the good Gelding: nay more, wheras the Gelding, if once he be ouer laboured or tyred, doth neuer againe recouer his first goodnes: the stond horse, on the contrary part, if he be neuer so sore tyred, with a little refreshing getteth againe his strength, and is againe as good as euer he was for new labour: the reason whereof, I take to be this, that the Geldings wanting that naturall and liuely heate which a stond Horse inioyeth, are of more abiect and deiected spirits, so that when their labor comes to exceed their strength, their faintnesse, and cowardlines of their dispositions, makes them yeelde to tyring, the sence whereof they neuer forgoe all their liues after: but to returne to our purpose, howsoeuer this practise of gelding of Colts was begun, yet for as much as we finde a profit

therein, both in our trauell and also in our light seruice in the warres, it shall be requisite that I set downe the age, time of the yeare and moone, which is most fit for the gelding of Colts. And first for the age: although some of our late Authors would haue Coltes gelded when they are two yeares olde, which in truth is a very good, sure, and tollerable time, because at that age a Coltes stones will be come downe, and he is of good strength and abilitie to indure both the griefe and torment, yet I doe not holde it the best and choycest time of all, for that purpose: because the longer that a Colt goes vngelt the thicker and fatter his head will growe: his crest also will be thicke and heauie, and the act it selfe by reason of the toughnesse and hardnesse of the strings and cordes, will be both more dangerous and more painefull.

Now therfore the onely choice, and best time of all for gelding of Colts, is euer when the foale is iust nine daies olde, for at that time nature hath so little force in those partes, and the cordes and strings of those instruments, are so tender and easie to be broken, & fluxes of blood and other grosse or impostumating humors, are so little incident to foales of such youngnes, that there is no more danger at that time in gelding of a Foale, then in gelding of a Lambe: neither is there greater labour; for to foales of such youngnesse, there needs no caulteryzing with hot yrons, stytching, or other implastering, which elder Colts must of necessitie haue: besides, a Foale of such youngnesse, sucking vpon the Damme, eates no bad or vnwholsome meate, but liuing onely vppon milke, keepes that dyet which preserues the sore from ranckling, swelling, or rotting: in somuch

somuch that my selfe haue gelt a foale at that age(when mine experience was almost in that matter as young as the foale)and haue had him sound and whole in seauen daies, applying nothing to the sore but sweet butter, which is an euident proofe to confute those which say that the gelding of a foale young, decayes the growth of a foale, for sure the paine being ended in lesse then seauen daies, the griefe thereof can neither loose growth nor strength, but if they meane that the depriuing the foale of those instruments so easely, doth decay his growth, then by all reason to geld at two yeares old, must decay it much more, both because the foale at that age hath more sence, vse and strength in those instruments, then at the former age: by meanes whereof the losse of them, is by a thousand degrees more painefull and greeuous, and the cure thereof, is neuer finished in a month, many times not in two, and sometimes not in three monthes: which teadiousnes of griefe cannot chuse, but abate both growth, strength and courage.

Now the benefit which is gotten by gelding Foales thus young is, First, besides the safenesse & no danger in the cure, it maketh your Gelding haue a delicate fine leane head, of a comely shape, well-fauorednesse and proportion, many times not vnworthy to be compared with the choyceſt *Barbarie*: it makes him to haue a gallant crest, high, thinne, firme, and strong: it is a great cause of swiftnesse, nimblenesse, and courage, by which it is certaine they will not tyer so soone as those which are gelt of elder age.

But if it bee so, that your Foale haue not let downe his stones so soone, neither that you can by chafing or

towsing his cod compel him to let them come downe, which none but some fewe dull Foales will doe, you must then of necessitie let him ouer-slippe that time, and stay till the fall of the leafe after, for by no meanes I can allow gelding of Foales in Summer, both because of the excessiue heate, and the crueltie of the flye, both which are dangerous, and sometimes mortall to young foales: but if at the fall of the leafe, hee doe not let downe his stones, then you must stay till the Spring, for the extremitie of the cold in Winter is as euill as the heate in Summer, occasioning inward swelling, canker, and putrification: so that the time to geld Foales, is eyther in the Spring, or at the fall of the leafe: the age from nine daies olde to two yeares olde, and the state of the Moone euer when it is in the wane.

If after your foales be gelt, their cods and sheathes happen to swell exceeding much, as there is no question but they will, especially if they be aboue six months old, when they are gelt, and such swellings do euer beginne fiue daies after the gelding, you shall then (notwithstanding some of our English writers giue precepts to the contrarie) cause those Foales which doe swell to be chafed vp and downe an houre together, both morning and euening, till the swelling cease, which it will doe in lesse then a weekes space, holding this obseruation, that if the foale be aboue a yeare old when it is gelt, then the more it rotteth, the better and safer is the cure.

Now as you may geld foales, so you may also geld elder Horses, nay horses almost of any age, & that with great safenes also, as I haue diuers times approued in mine

mine owne experience, without the vse or help of any other instrument or medicine, then such as in those cases are vsd about foales. Lastly, touching the manner and way to gelde foales or horses, all be there be sundry practises, yet there is but one sure and perfect method. Some there are which will take eight or tenne strong horse haires, and knit them fast and strait about the horses cods aboue his stones, and so with the continuance and eating of the haires, make the colts stones to rot, and fall away, but this fashion of gelding, I doe vtterly dislike, for it is both in danger to mortifie the member, & bring it to *Gangeran* (which is deadly without cure) and also it is so painefull, that neither horse nor foale can indure it without the hazard of madnes. Others vse after they haue slit the cod, and taken out the stone, to cut the stone away, and only to melt a little yellow wax vpon the roote of the strings, and so to anoynt the cod with fresh butter, and let the horse or colt goe, but that is not so good neither, because vpon such a cure, a flux of blood may follow, which may kill either horse or foale. The only perfect & certaine way, therefore to geld either foale or horse is : after you haue slit the cod, and taken out the stone betweene a paire of nippers, made of wood for the purpose, then with a sharpe knife to cut away the stone, then with a hot calteryzing yron to seare the cords and strings of the stone, and then to melt vpon them, wax, Deare-suet, and *Venice* Turpentine, made together in a plaister, then to fill the inside of the cod with salte, and to annoint the outside of the cod, the horses sheath, and all betweene his thigh and his body, with fresh butter or fresh hoggs grease and so to loose him, and put him

into a close house for three or foure daies, (if it bee a Foale or horse of age) but if it sucke vpon the Dam, then turne it to the Dam, and the danger of the cure is past. And thus much for the gelding of horses or foals.

CHAP. 18.

When, and at what time to take vp the Colts for the Saddle and of their first vse and haltering.

TOuching the taking vp of Colts that they may be broke, and come to the vse of the Saddle: there bee sundrie opinions, according to mens seuerall experiences, yet there is but one most substantiall, albe the rest haue their grounds of probabilitie and reason: for if when you take vp your Colt that you may make him for the vse of the Saddle, you also determine at the same time to put him either to trauell vpon the high way, or to the exercise of any violent lessons: as galloping the large Ringes, passing a Careyre, or managing either in straite or large turnes: then I say, to take vp your Colte at foure yeares olde and the vantage, is full soone enough, or rather with the sooneſt: but if according to the rule of good Horsemanship, you intend when you take your Colt vp first, onely to make him but acquainted with the saddle, Stirrops, garthes, crooper, brydle, watering trench, musrole & martingall, & other such necessarie implements as are needefull in those cases: And that for the Ryder, the Horse shall the first Winter but only learne to knowe his waight, in what manner to receiue him,

how

how to goe or walke vnder him, and with what quietneſſe to part from him: making all his exerciſes recreations, and benefites, and not labors or ſeruices. In this caſe, and with a firme reſolution thus to order your horſe, you ſhall then take him vp at three yeares olde and the vantage, which is at three yeares olde and as much as between the time of his foaling, and the midſt of October, but if you ſhall faile in this courſe, & either out of indiſcretion or furie, or finding your horſes aptneſſe to precede your imagination, put him to any violence or extremitie, you ſhall not onely indanger the ſwaying of his backe, and the dulling of his better ſpirits, but (his ioynts being tender and vnknit) make him put forth wingals, and boanie excreſſions (which are ſplents, ſpauens, curbs, and ringbones, or ſuch like) wherefore the onely thing I can aduiſe any horſeman vnto, in the whole worke of horſmanſhip, is vnto temperance and patience, eſpecially in the beginning, becauſe the choyſeſt time for taking vp of Colts to the ſaddle, is in my conceite at three yeares olde and the vantage, chiefly if they be *Neapolitans*, *Iennets*, *Turkes*, or *Barbaries*, and keeping the obſeruations before preſcribed. For if horſes of their breed and ſpirit ſhall run wilde and vntamed, without either acquaintance with the man, or the furniture needfull in riding, till they be foure or fiue yeares olde, they will be of that ſtubbornneſſe, furie & diſobedience, that they will not only put the ryder to a three-fold greater trouble then the other which are but three yeares olde and vantage: but alſo vpon the leaſt contention or croſſing of their natures, enter into reſtiſe, dogged & rebellious qualities, which to reclaime, aske as great labor & induſtry, as to bring

a horſe of good qualitie to his beſt perfection. Againe, if a man wil but meaſure time by an eeuen proportion if a horſe be foure yeares olde and the vantage, ere he be haltered, he muſt of neceſſitie be full fiue ere he bee reclaimed from his wildneſſe, made familiar with the man, brought to be ſhod, and to take the ſaddle with patience: then before he be made to receiue the man, to haue his head well placed, and his raine right faſhioned, before he will trot foorth-right in a comely order, change turnes on both handes, trot and gallop, both large and ſtrait rings, and performe other ground manages, hee muſt needes bee full ſixe yeares olde. Then before he come to the vſe and perfectneſſe of the bytte, or to performe thoſe faults and manages aboue ground, which are both delightfull to the beholders, and wholſome for the health of ſuch as haue them in practiſe, he will accompliſh full the age of ſeauen, ſo that more then halfe the horſes life, ſhall be ſpent in precept and inſtruction, where as beginning at three yeeres age and the vantage, a horſe out of his youth and ignorance will he ſo tractable, that in the firſt ſix Monethes, he will gaine as much knowledge as the other in a yeare and more, neither ſhall you finde reſtifeneſſe or churliſhneſſe, except it ſpring from your owne furie; ſo that there is no doubt but your horſe at the end of fiue yeares of age, will be abſolutely perfect in all that is fit for his vnderſtanding.

At three yeares old therefore and the aduantage, & in the latter end of the month of October, I would haue you driue your colts vp into a houſe, where hauing a halter made of principall hempe, after the faſhion of ordinarie halters, onely a ſize bigger at the leaſt,

leaſt, and the reine thereof muſt be at the leaſt three or foure yardes long, taking ſome olde quiet Iade in your hand, goe amongſt them, and with all the patience, lenitie, and leaſure that you can deuiſe, put the halter vpon one of their heads, which if the colt will not ſuffer you to do with your hand (as it is very likely he will not) you muſt then trie to ſteale it on, by winding the halter about the end of a long poale, and holding it before the coltes face, you ſhall ſee him with ducking his head downe to thruſt it into the halter: this is an ordinarie way, and you ſhall neuer faile as long as you take leaſure, and vſe no violence. When the colt is haltered, you ſhall prouide, that good ſtrength of men take holde vpon the end of the chaſe halter, which done, you ſhall cauſe one to ſeuer the reſt of the colts from him that is haltred, and as it were to driue them to the other end of the houſe: but if the haltred colt offer in furie to ruſh after them (as it is no queſtion but he will) then ſhall they which haue hold vpon the chaſe halter, with a forcible and ſtrong twitch pull him backe, in ſuch ſort that they almoſt make his necke cracke againe; which done, let his keeper after, leaſurably, and with gentle wordes go vnto him: but if the colt refuſe him, and offer either to runne, leape, or ſtrike, let them which haue hold vpon the halter, with twitchings & ſtrainings torment him: but if that preuaile not, then let them leade him forth of the houſe, and when he comes abroade, let ſome ſtanders by chaſe him about on both handes, till hee be ſo tame that he will ſuffer his keeper (or ſome other) to come vnto him to cheriſh him, and clawe him, and that he will leade vppe and downe quietlye, which

when

when you haue effected, you shall then forthwith lead him into the stable, and putting on a coller made of strong leather, both broade and flat, and with two reines, tye him downe to the manger, and take off his chase halter. As for making your first coller of wollen yarne, or of horse haire (as some Authors aduise) it is a curiositie, but too curious, and the expence may bee saued: for after a Colt hath beene once well maistred, twitcht and conquered in a chase halter, he will neuer after straine his coller so much as to hurt himselfe. You shall when you place your Colt in the stable, either set him by some old ridden horse, vnder whose couert the keeper may safely come to him; or else in such a roome where there may be space enough without danger to come & goe on both sides of him. The keeper after the Colt is in the stable, must neuer be idle, but euer either rubbing, picking, clawing, or cherishing the colt, clapping him somtimes vpon the back, somtimes vpon the necke, sometimes vnder the belly, betweene the foreboothes, and about his cods. He must oft stroke his legs downe eeuen vnto the pasterns, and often take vp his feete; and first with his hand, and after with a little stick knock him vpon the soales of his feet as if he were shooing him, and euer as the keeper shal finde the horse to giue a sufferance to these motions, so shall he not only increase his cherishings, but also for reward, giue the colt either bread or other prouender, such as hee findes him to take most delight in, by which meanes he shall not onely bring the colt to be tame, but also to take a delight in his tameneſſe.

If your colt be of so stubborne and rebellious a disposition, that these gentle courses wil not preuaile, you shall

ſhall then but only augment your labor, and what you cannot attaine to in one day, you muſt ſeeke to win in two: for it is no loſſe of labour if you be two dayes in winning your horſe to let you but ſtroke him, ſo in the end with gentle means you compaſſe it; and that your horſe in the meane ſpace learne no knauiſh qualitie, as to bite, ſtrik, or ſuch like: which to eſchue, you muſt euer obſerue, that what you do to a colt, you muſt doe with conſtancie, boldneſſe, & reſolution, and not with fearfulneſſe, ſtarting, or tickling, for they are the firſt occaſions of a horſes wickednes. Now, whereas ſome horſmen aduiſe you in this caſe to keepe your horſe from ſleep, and ſo by ouerwatching him, to make him tame, Though it be a courſe which in mine own knowledge and experience, wil tame either man or beaſt, yet to vſe it to a colt of ſuch yongneſſe, and for faults which only proceed from nature and ignorance, I cannot allow it; for beſides that, it is vnwholſome and breeds infirmity in ſuch yong years: it is alſo too cruel, & brings a colt to too much faintneſſe & weakneſſe: wherfore I would neuer wiſh any horſeman to tame any with ouer watching, but ſuch as are old ridden horſes, & either out of their owne natures or miſgouernment, are not onely become reſtife and furious, but euen mad & deſperate.

When you lead your colt either to the water, to aire, or ſuch like, you ſhall let ſome other ridden horſe which ſtands next him be led before him (which will not only be an incouragement, but alſo be an example) the colt will with more willingneſſe immitate.

After your colt is brought to a perfit tameneſſe, and a louing familiarity with his keeper, ſo that he will be rub'd, dreſt, clothed, ſhod, and led vp and downe, you

ſhall

ſhall then vſe him to weare head ſtraine, Cauezan, and Chaine: you ſhall alſo acquaint him with the Muſroll, and Martingall; which done, you ſhall then bring him to weare the Saddle, the manner whereof is ſet downe in the next booke. All this perform'd, you ſhall then put vpon his fore legges a paire of ſoft and well-lin'd paſterns, but for tying his hinder foote with a wollen cord, as one of our auncient Horſe-men aduiſeth, I doe not like it, becauſe a Colt being fearefull and ſuddaine in all his motions, may by ſtarting, or ſome apprehenſion of affright, indanger the ſpoyling of his hinder parts. Againe a Horſe that is ſo tyed cannot lye downe, neither take reſt nor delight in his ſtall, which you ſhould endeuour to procure him with all induſtrie; and for mine owne part it is a toy I did neuer practiſe: but when I had a Horſe of diueliſh quallity that would ſtrike and yarke at his keeper with his hinder heeles, or turne himſelfe croſſe in his ſtall, to ſtrike at the Horſe which ſtood next him, in theſe caſes I haue vſed it but in no other. You ſhall whilſt your Colt is in taming (as neere as you can) ſuffer neither fantaſticall men, nor apiſh boyes to come into your ſtable, who with toying or other fooliſh affrights may mooue thoſe diſtemperatures in a Colt which will hardly bee reclaimed. In this maner as I haue preſcribed for one colt, ſo muſt you vſe the reſt one after one, if your number be neuer ſo many. And how euer other riders perſwade you to take vp your yong Mares for the ſaddle a yeare ſooner then your colts, yet I cannot be induc'd to be of that opinion, but would haue both one age, and one time of the yeare obſerued in both kindes. And thus much for the taking vp, and taming of colts.

CHAP. 19.

Of the cutting of Colts mouthes or tongues, and of the drawing of teeth, to helpe the bit to lie in his true place.

THe braine of a man being a buſie and laborſome workemaiſter, to bring to our deſires the depth and ſecrets of that Arte which wee profeſſe; often times out of its owne contriuinges brings to our knowledge ſuch falſe ſhapes and experiments, as being but onely clad in the colours of Art, for loue to our ſelues, and to our owne inuentions, we are willing to entertaine them not onely as grounds, but euen as the Arts beſt perfection. Hence it hath come to paſſe, that ſome of the beſt horſemen of the old-paſt times, hauing got both by rule and practiſe more ſpeculation in this Arte then other men, did not yet thinke their skill great enough, except they could both finde faults, and approue reaſons to controll and and amende the worke of nature: of which ſort *Laurentius Ruſsius* is moſt principall, who amongſt his better knowledges hath ſet downe certaine precepts for the drawing of a Horſes teeth, affirming peremptorily, that it is impoſſible for a Horſe to haue a good or perfite mouth, except his two tuſhes of his nether chappe, and the two wongge teeth of the ſame next to the tuſhes be firſt drawne out, becauſe (ſaith hee) if a horſe be once heated or chaft, it is impoſſible for the

the rider to holde him from running away, hauing those teeth: and thereupon prescribes the manner of drawing them out, which shold be with an instrument made for the purpose like a crooked paire of Pincers: And the teeth being drawne, to dresse the gums with salt, or with Claret wine, honie and pepper, warm'd together, or with wine or honie onely, till the sore place be whole. To make answer to these allegations,

First, that the generall proposition is not good, and that the horse should not loose any teeth at all, euerie one knowes that hath seene the worke of nature, that in her creations she hath not made any thing superfluous, nor can we (how euer out of our follies we suggest inconueniences) diminish one iot of what shee hath made, but by bringing to the beast farre greater mischiefes. For the teeth being the strength of his food, the maintainers of his life, and the instruments both of his defence and strength, take any of them from him and what shall become of those powers? And againe, a horse hath not any one tooth, which in true iudgement a man can say may be spared: for first, the two first rankes of teeth which are eeuen before, serue him onely but to cut vp and gather his meate: of which in number they are not commonly aboue twelue, both aboue & below, & who can allow him a lesser proportion? Next those which stand higher in the vpper parts of his chaps, which we call his grinders or wonge teeth, they are to chaw & shred his food being gatherd vp, & to make it fit for disgestion, & they are in number commonly not aboue ten of a side, both aboue and belowe, which are so few, that if you take any of them away, you doe not onely take away his strength, but a great

a great part of his life also: as for his foure tushes, they are to holde in his foode as he gathers it, and so to conuey it vp to his grinders, so that you may see euerie tooth hath such an especiall office, that not any of them can be spared.

Now where hee saith a Horse cannot haue a good mouth, except these teeth before named be drawn out, as if the bitte lying vpon his horses tushes, should by that meanes be defended from the chap, so that the hauing little or no feeling of the bytt, should therefore owe vnto the bytt no obedience longer then during his owne pleasure. To this I say, all Horse-men knowe that the true place of the bytt is directly aboue the two tushes, the neather side of the mouth of the byt resting not vpon the tush, but against the tush, so that the tush, is a stay and helpe for the bytt and no hinderance: but the former Author would haue men imagine, that if the bitt rest aboue the tush, that then there cannot be space enough for the bytt to lie betwixt the tush and the wongge teeth, but whosoeuer pleaseth to looke into that part of the horses mouth, shall finde that there is full foure inches betwixt the tush and the horses wongge teeth, and I hope there was neuer any mouth of bytt made so broad, especially in that part which lyeth vpon the chap.

Thus you may see this curious inuention, if it bee lookt into with a right sence, is both needeles and friuolous, yet because of the greate authoritie of the Author, I know it hath beene retained, and held authenticall by sundrie Horsemen, and by one of our English Authors, is not onely commended, but also left in record to posteritie; which Author, to showe the loue he

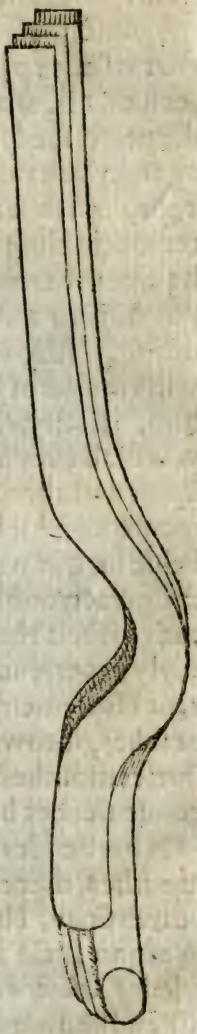
beareth to noueltie, hath to this deuice of drawing of teeth, added another of his owne of selfe like nature and vertue, and that is, for as much as hee supposeth that a Horses mouth may narurally be so shallow, that the bytt cannot haue any firme resting place, but shall bee inforced to lye vppon his tushes, or else so inconueniently, that it will much disturbe both the Horse and man; hee would haue you therefore to make some expert Horse farrier, to slit vp the weekes of your Horses mouth, equallie on both sides of his cheekes, with a sharpe Rayfor, and then to seare it with a hot yron, and so heale it in such sorte, as the sides thereof may no more grow together, but appeare like a natural mouth: to whome I make this answere, that I imagine neither hee, nor any other Horse-man hath heere in *England* seene a Horse of that shallowneſſe of mouth, which would not giue place for the reasonable bytt to lie in; or if they haue, surely I knowe it hath beene so seldome, that I holde such Horses rather of a stigmaticall then naturall proportion, but suppose there are Horses of such shallowneſſe of mouth, yet I say they ought not to haue their mouthes cut to make a place for the bytt, but to haue the bytt moulded and proportioned according to the shallowneſſe of the mouth, for were it neceſſarie that all bytts should be of one quantitie & proportion, then I should draw some what nearer to their opinions; but in as much as they are to be made either in length, roundnes, thickneſſe, sharpnes, or flatnes, according to the nature, shape and temper of the mouth, why shold horsmen make themselues eyther tyrants or Fooles, to torment without cause, or inuent to no purpose, those tortures or stratagems

gems, which shal rather make vs scornd then imitated?

Againe, these inconueniences, a horse-man shal finde that wil slit vp his horses mouth first, the skilfulst horslech that is, shall neuer heale it (according to the order prescribed) in such sort, that euer it will meet close againe, because the fearing of the skinne with hot yrons, doth so feauer and dispresse it, that it wil neuer after meete close together againe; insomuch, that when he eateth his meate, it will fall out of his mouth, and put him to a double trouble, and a double time in eating. Also when hee drinketh, the water likewise will run out of his mouth, and both annoy and grieue him, Lastly, (and which is of all the foulest eye-sore) you shall euer haue a Horse that is so cut, both in the house and abroad, continually slauering, because the moysture which commeth into his mouth, cannot bee helde in, but will issue foorth at those open places, to the great trouble of the horse himselfe, and the annoyance of such Horses as shall stand neare him; for this by dayly experience we see, that those barbarous & ignorant Horsemen, which with distempered hands, rough brackes, or townd snaffles, doe treate and breake their horses mouthes, that euen those horses haue all the inconueniences before mentioned.

Now besides this drawing of teeth, and cutting of mouthes, there is also a third practise, which many yeares since, I haue seene vsed by *Prospero*, and now to my no little admiration, I see the opinion forty-side by *Salamon de la Broue*, a man of exquisite practise and knowledge: and that is, when a horse dooth in his ryding thrust foorth his tongue, and will not by any meanes bee made to keepe it in his mouth,

he would haue you to take an instrument, made according to the proportion of this figure here presented, which opening and shutting like a paire of flat nippers, you may in it take and hold the horses tongue so hard and flat, that he cannot stirre it, and then according to the circle of the instrument, which must carrye the proportion of the horses tongue, with a sharpe rasor cut so much of his tongue away, as hee puts out of his mouth. The fashion of the instrument is this:



Truly, vnder the correction of his better knowledge, I can giue no allowance to this kinde of dismembring; for besides that, it is both vnnaturall and hurtfull to the beast, whose tongue is his onely instrument for the taking vp of his prouender, & for the conueyance of euery seuerall kinde of foode downe into his stomack: I see not, but if any part of it be taken away or diminished, but that the horse by such lacke, must incurre many mischieses. Againe, this I knowe, that no man hath euer seene any foale foaled with his tongue, eyther too long or too bigge for his mouth, nature making euery member

eyther by custome, torment or sufferance, come to be disfigured, with such a foule and odious fault. I must for mine owne part impute the whole ground and cause thereof to be onely the vnskilfulnesse of the Ryder, who wanting knowledge or discretion, either to make his bytt according to the modell of the horses mouth, or to knowe when the tongue is either at too much libertie, or too much streightned, brings on these foule errors, which are not to be cured, but with much greater mischiefes, and so by these deuises do imagine to couer the deformitie of their ignorance, for had I euer seene in my worthy olde Maister, Maister *Thomas Storye*, or might in these dayes see by the example of noble Sir *Robert Alexander*, or any of their equall knowledge (which without flatterie, I thinke *Europe* scarse containes) that this drawing of teeth, cutting of mouthes, and dismembring of tongues, were by them either allowed or practised, I should (whatsoeuer I thought) bee more amazedly silent, but because I see horses of their makings, haue no such apparant deformities, and besides in my selfe, know that all the errors from whence *Rusius* and others drawe the groundes of these inuentions, haue many better, safer, and more comely remedies, I could not chuse but make this protestation, & defence against this tyrannicall martyring of poore horses, concluding thus: that if either your horses teeth stand too straite, or his mouth be too shallowe, that you make the proportion of the bytt lesse, and fit with the work of nature: and if he thrust out his tongue, as hauing too great libertie by the openesse of the bytt, that then your bytt be made closer, so as it may restraine the tongue from too much freedome:

but if it proceede from too much closenes and pressing downe of the bytt, that then the libertie thereof be augmented, eyther by whole and smooth port, vpset mouth, or such like. Lastly, if it proceede from neither of these causes, but euen from an euill habit and naughty condition of the horse, you shall then as soone as the bytt is in his mouth, if he thrust out his tongue, first knocke it in with the great end of your rodde, and then buckle the nose-band of your brydle head-stall so straight, that he shall not be able to open his teeth, and thus riding him but a weeke or a little more, he will soone both forget and forgoe that vice: and thus much for these cruell inuentions.

CHAP. 20.

Of the seperating of bad Colts and Mares from the good, and which shall maintaine the race still.

IT is not the diligence of man, neither the curyositie of his choice (although they be the two most especiall cares which begets a man his owne desires in this matter of breeding of Horses) which can a certaine vnto any man, that he shall breede horses all of one stature, strength, beautie, and goodnesse, sith thereby diuers casualties (as sickenesse or infirmitie in the Mare or Foale, negligence in keepers, rushes, straynes, heates or coldes and such like) which may make foales (though they be all of one breede (much different and almost contrary in proofe, some prouing

good,

good, some bad, and some indifferent: wherefore I would wish euery good breeder once a yeare, especially at Michaelmas, to looke ouer his whole studde, and amongst those Mares and Foales, which shall bee three yeares olde and the vanttage, to cull out them which be most beautifull, strong, nimble, and couragious, and to seperate them for his owne vse: the rest, which either by infirmie, or casualtie, haue lost the pride of their naturall perfection, I would haue you take into the house, and hauing made them fit for the Saddle and other mens vses, to send them to such fayres and markets as shall be conuenient, and so sell them to their best profit. But if the greatnesse of the breeders place doe disdaine such profit, it shall then be worthy in him, if he bestowe them either of his officers, or other men of merrit: and in this coyling of Studs, there is great arte and iudgement to be vsed, for it is not at that age, the Colt which is fatteſt, best proportioned to the eye, round, and close knit together, which maketh the best horse; nor he that is long, loose, gaunt, and ilfauoured, which is to be coyled and cast away: for the first when he commeth to ripenes of age, looseth his beautie and goodnesse, and the other increaseth, and when his age is complete, is most worthy and gallant: wherefore as I said, there must be art vsed in the choice of coylings, for I haue my selfe seene a Studde coyld when there hath beene none so good left behinde as those which haue beene solde, and made away for a little money.

After you haue coyld your Colts and Mares of three yeares olde, and the aduantage, you shall then take a suruay of your younger sorte, and if you shall finde

amongst them any that are diseased, as with Ague or inward sickneſſe, with *Peſtilence*, *Staggers*, *Appoplexie*, *Glaunders*, *Strangle*, or ſuch like, all which are infections, you ſhall forthwith, ſeperate the ſound from the vnſound, leaſt the infection of one, breede the loſſe of all the reſt.

Laſtly, you ſhall take the Suruey of all your old breeding mares, and if any of them, either through naturall defect, miſchance or age, ſhall become barraine, or if you ſhall perceiue any of them, which from yeare to yeare bringeth foorth vncomely Foales: or if any of them hauing brought foorth comely Foales, ſhall not nurſſe and bring them vp well, but either through want of milke, or the doggednes of ſome vnnaturall quality, ſhall ſtocke and ſtarue their foales: in any of theſe caſes, it ſhall bee good for them to ſell or make away ſuch Mares, as being vnworthy to be bred vpon, and to ſtore your ſelfe with none but ſuch as ſhall be both good, full of milke, and moſt naturall. And thus much I thought good to write, touching the breeding of Horſes, and all ſuch neceſſarie obſeruations, as are incident for that art or knowledge, wherein if I haue aſcribed to mine owne knowledge or experience, too ſeueare an authoritie of iudgement, I craue onely to be cenſur'd by their excellent wiſdomes, who being both owners of reaſon, and maiſters of this Art, will not condemne me till there be iuſt approbation of mine errors, and in that hope I liue their Seruant.

The end of the first Booke.



CAVALARICE,

Or

The Arte and knowledge belonging to the Horse-ryder: how horses are to be handled, ridden, or made perfect, either for seruice or pleasure.

Newly corrected and augmented.

The second Booke.

By Gervase Markham.

LONDON

Printed by *Edw: Ailde* for *Edward White*, and are to be sold at his shop neere the little north doore of Saint Paules Church at the signe of the Gun. 1616.













To the High and mightie Prince of great Brittaine.

WHen with ſeuearer iudgement I beholde,
The cuſtomary habits of our Nation:
Nothing I finde ſo ſtrong or vncontrold,
As is of great mens Actes the Immitation.
Whence comes it, that to immitate your praiſe,
Our leſſer great ones, (which would elſe neglect
The nobleſt Acte of vertue) now doe raiſe,
Their ſpirits vp, to loue what you reſpect:
O may you euer liue to teach them thus.
Thoſe noble Actes which gets the noble name,
And may the grace you doe the Arte and vs,
Liue to out-liue, Time, Memorie, and Fame,
That many ages hence the world may ſay,
You gaue this Arte the life ſhall ne're decay.

Geruaſe Markham.

To all the Noble and famous Horſe-men or Horſe-riders of this Land.

IT may ſeeme in mee (by a ſtrict conſtruction) more preſumption and boldeneſſe, then either Art or iudgement, thus to publiſh my rude collections, and proſtitute to your cenſuring, the depth of my knowledge, ſith I cannot let paſſe ſo ſleight an error, which to you will not appeare moſt groſſe, and lye diſcouered in the plaineſt nakedneſſe, becauſe you knowing all thinges which in right ſhould belong to a well accompliſh'd Ryder, are the beſt able both to correct and condemne mine errors, as hauing in you the onely ſufficiency both of power and authority: But my hope is, that my worſt fault is the rudeneſſe of my Phraſe, not mine ignorance in the Art which I handle; and though this ſubiect might haue beſeemed (ſome of you that are my Maiſters) much better then my ſelfe, yet ſince it is the fortune of my froward ſpirit, to which you haue giuen an eſpeciall libertie through your ſilence, let me be helde excuſed, and what you ſhall finde to differ either from your owne rules, or from the ſquare of auncient practiſe, after you haue argued it with reaſon and the nature of the beaſt, of which I treate of, if then you haue cauſe to condemne me, I will with all humblenes ſubmit to my puniſhment which I perſwade my ſelfe ſhall be moſt charitable, becauſe I rather deſire your loues then any other mens admiratious.

G. M.

CAVALARICE.

The ſecond Booke.

CHAP. I.

Of the natures and diſpoſitions of Horſes, how they are to be knowne by the collours of the Horſes, and other eſpeciall markes.

FOr as much as there is nothing more proper or neceſſarie to the Horſe-ryder then the true knowledge and iudgement of the nature, diſpoſition, complexion, and inclination of the horſe, as being the onely dore and perfect entrance into the Arte, all other waies being full of abſurdities and vnnaturall blindeneſſe, it ſhall to me ſeeme moſt expedient to ſhewe the true charracters and faces, by which a man ſhall with the greateſt eaſineſſe attaine that ſpeculation: *Fredericke Griſon* ſaith, that as a horſe is coloured, ſo

is

is he for the moſt part complexioned: and according to his complexion, ſo is his diſpoſition of good or euill qualitie: and according to the predominance or regencie of that Element, of which hee dooth moſt entyrelie participate, ſo for the moſt part are his humours, and addictions, and inclinations; for if hee haue moſt of the earth, then is hee melancholie, dull, cowardlie, and ſubiect to much faintneſſe: and the colours incident to that complexion, is moſt commonlye, eyther kyte-glew'd, blacke, both ſortes of dunnes, Iron-gray, or pyed with any of theſe colours. But if hee haue moſt of the water, then is hee flegmaticke, and full of ſloath, ill vnderſtanding, faint ſpirited, and ſubiect to much tenderneſſe: and the colours following that complexion, are Cheſnutte colour, Milke-white, Fallowe deare colour, or pyed with any of thoſe colours. If hee haue moſt of the Ayre, then is hee ſanguine, free of ſpirite, bolde, nymble, and pleaſant and the colours appertaining to that complexion are, Bright-bay, Darke-bay, Fleabitten, White-lyard, Aſhie-gray, or pyed with anie of theſe colours: But if he participate moſt of the fire, then is hee chollericke, light, free, ſtirring, and full of anger: the colours wayting on this complexion being Bright ſorrels, Cole-blackes without whites, or pyed with either of thoſe colours. But thoſe complexions are ſayde to bee the beſt, which hauing an equall mixture or compoſition, dooth participate indifferently of all the foure Elements: and thoſe colours for the moſt parte are browne bayes, plaine, or dappled, Dapple grayes, Black with ſil-

uer

ner haires, or well mixte Roanes, the white Liard, which hath his outwarde partes, as the tippes of his eares, maine, taile, feete, and such like, blacke. The Ashie gray which hath his feete stryped, *Grison* also commendes as good complexions, and notes of tractable dispositions: and from this generall opinion *Salomon de la Broue* dooth little or not at all differ, for there is a strong rule both in nature and reason, that these colours should as well bee the Indexes or Tables to directe our knowledges to the vnderstanding of the Horses disposition, as the face or complexions of a man, in which we many times reade, the very secrete workinges of his most priuate dispositions. It shall therefore bee most behouefull for euerie good Horse-man, first, constantlye, and with a remarkeable iudgement to beholde the colour and complexion of his Horse, together with all the shapes, beauties, markes or figures whatsoeuer wherewith nature hath eyther adorned or deformed him, and forsomuch as the best coloured Horses are so much the better, by how much they beare in their neathermoste partes signes of adustion or blackenesse: In like case are the woorst coloured Horses much amended in the beauties of their complexions, if their outermost partes beare any visible markes of blackenesse, onely your browne Bay, your perfect Blacke, your redde Sorrell, and your darke Chesnutte, are much graced, if for mittigation of their fiercer complexions, they be accompanied with any white markes, as white Starres in the face, white snippes on the nose, or white feete: the white starre in the face

is

is generally good, and giueth great hope of a good disposition, so it bee plaine without mixture of contrary haires, stand full in the midst of the forehead, and somewhat hie a little aboue the eie-brow, the feather of the face making his turnings eeuen in the midst of the white: next the white rache downe the face is exceeding good, and the smaller the better: for if it extend to any great breadth or largenesse, then is it said not to be a rache, but balde, and that is of great defect, and a signe of euill inclination in a Horse, shewing him to be faint, dull, and of ill memorie.

The white snippe vppon the nose is both good and beautifull, so it be alwayes accompanied with a starre in the face, and that the snippe be so small that there appeare vpon the nose no rawnesse or want of haire, for where eyther of those defects meete, there the nature altereth, and there is to be expected contrary workinges in the Horses disposition: to haue halfe the Horses face white, as from the nose to the eye, or from the roote of the eare to the Ball of the cheeke, the bodie being of one entyre colour, is both an euill marke, and a note of great imperfection; for white feete, some be good some bad, but generally all are bad, whose whitenesse extendeth it selfe aboue the fetlockes, and the higher the worser; for nothing doth more demonstratiuely showe weakenesse both in minde and bodie. For white feete which are vnder the fetlockes, some of them be good, some bad: the good are, the white fore-foote, on the right side commonly cald the farre side: the white hinder-foote on the left side, commonly cald the neare-side, and both his hinder feete white, and to haue in any of these whites

blacke

blacke ſpots, the bigneſſe of our Engliſh ſhilling or more, it is an aſſured ſigne of great courage, and much aptnes to learne. The white heele, on what foote ſoeuer it be, is a very good marke, and of the *Italians* eſpecially commended. The white feete which are badde, are theſe: the neare foote before, the farre foote behinde, both the fore feet, the fore-foot and hinder foot both of one ſide, or the fore-foot or hinder foot croſſe trauerſed: as for example, the farre fore-foote, and the narre hinder foot, or the narre fore-foote, and the far hinder-foote. To haue all the fore-feete white, to haue both the hinder feete white: and the farre fore-foote, is very good, and to haue the hinder feet, and the neare fore-foote is tollerable; but to haue both the fore feet and any of the hinder feet white is exceeding euill, and blacke ſpots to bee mingled with any of theſe euill whites, make the ſignes worſe, and the horſe of leſſe eſtimation. The horſe (whoſe rumpe or docke vnderneath, is full of white ſpots, is moſt commonly an excellent good horſe, ſtout & induſtrious: the horſe that is flea-bitten by nature (as from his firſt foaling, or vpon the caſting of his firſt haire) is moſt commonlye an excellent Horſe and of the beſt temper, as for the moſt parte your *Barbaries* are: but ſuch whoſe Flea-bitings come through a late Foaling, olde age, or by Arte, or Ticke-byting: in them theſe ſpots are ſignes of much euill, faintneſſe and weakeneſſe, and they commonly appeare moſt aboundant vppon their ſhoulders and flankes; but if they appeare onely about his cheekes, eyes, and noſe, holding their colour more tawny or redde then ordinarie, then they be ſignes of ſtubborneſſe, ill will, and reſtifeneſſe.

The Horſe that is whale-eyde, or white eyed, is for the moſt part ſhrewd, craftie, full of toyes, and dim ſighted, chiefly when ſnowe is vpon the ground.

The Horſe that is pure blacke, and hath no white at all vppon him, is furious, dogged, full of miſchiefe and miſ-fortunes: but if he bee browne-bay, bright-bay, cheſ-nut, ſorrell or dunne, altogether without white, he may notwithſtanding, be tractable and apt in teaching, onely in his pace and naturall motions, he will be fantaſticall, forgetfull and incertaine, more or leſſe according to the nature of that element, which hath moſt predominance in him: aboue all the markes or Charracters, which declare vnto vs either the vertuouſneſſe or vitiouſneſſe of a Horſes nature, there is none more plaine or infallible then the Oſtreige feather on each ſide of the Horſes creſt, for in my life time I haue not found one horſe naturally euill, which hath beene foaled with that marke or enſigne; and albe thoſe feathers, are euer accounted the beſt vppon the creſt, yet are they alſo exceeding good vpon any other part or member of the Horſe, and chiefly when they are placed ſo as the Horſe cannot behold them: Euery Horſe by the rule of nature hath a feather in his forehead, and that feather is euer the better, the higher it ſtandeth. Euery horſe likewiſe hath feathers vpon his breſt, and thoſe feathers are the better, the higher they aſcend vpwards towards the throate: moſt horſes haue feathers vppon their neckes, euen vpon the vaine, which wee commonly ſtrike them blood of, and they are the better, the broader, and rounder they are: ſome horſes haue feathers vpon the pitch of their buttockes, next to the ſetting on of the taile, and they haue

haue amongſt Horſemen beene taken for a beauty and a vertue.

Now when the horſ-man is able by colours to diſtinguiſh complexions, and by theſe markes and figures, euen as it were to reade the good or euill habite of the minde, it ſhall be neceſſarie for him then to beholde the ſhape and proportion of the beaſt: for as ſtigmaticall and abortiue ſhapes in a man, prognoſticate euill fortunes and the euents of wickednesſe, euen ſo vncomely and monſtrous ſhapes in a Horſe, are euer accompanied with the worſt vices; nature neuer ſhowing her ſelfe a worthy miſtreſſe, but there where ſhee imployeth the beſt of her graces. Therefore to ſhow the picture of a perfect horſe in wordes, albe in ſome reſpects I differ much both from *Griſon*, *Xenophon*, and diuers others: yet notwithſtanding I will caſt out mine opinion in this diſcription; and although diuers Horſe-men (my Maiſters) haue ſet it downe for a perfect rule, that in theſe diſcriptions we ſhould begin at the neathermoſt parts, as the members whereon a horſeman ought firſt to fixe his eyes and minde; yet I not grounded in that beleefe, will begin with the vppermoſt partes, as being the moſt worthye, fulleſt of beauty, and of greateſt maieſtie, and ſo conſequently to our eies, the beſt, fitteſt and moſt eſpeciall obiect: wherfore to begin with the head of a horſe, I would haue it in generall leane, ſo as euery vaine might be beheld in a natiue plainneſſe: his forehead large, broad, and well riſing in the midſt, like the forehead of a Hare, for to be ſmooth and flat, mare facſt, ſhoweth dulneſſe of ſpirit, much faintneſſe and diſabilitie: his eyes ſhould be big, blacke, round, fierie, and as it were leaping out of his

head: the hollownes of his eye-browes would be fild, and as it were ſwelling outward: his iawes would bee ſlender, leane, thinne and wide a ſunder: his throple, big, full and round: his noſthrell wide, round and open: his mouth large, and his muſſel aboue the neather lipp, ſmall and ſlender: his eare ſmall, ſharpe, and ſtanding vpright: if they be long, ſlender, and ſtanding vpright, though they be not ſo beautifull, yet be they eſpeciall notes of great life and courage: his necke would bee long, vpright, great towards the breſt; bending in the midſt, and ſlender at the ſetting on of the head: his mayne, neither buſhie, thicke, nor too exceeding thin: for as the firſt ſhowes dulneſſe, ſo the latter ſhowes too fierie madneſſe, but of a reaſonable and indifferent mixture, which is a proofe both of ſtrength and aptnes: his creſt thinne, hye, firme, and ſtrong at the bottome: his withers ſharpe pointed, cloſe, and well ioynted: yet ſo as a man may diſcerne from thence the motion of the ſhoulders: his backe ſhort, plaine, broad, and of a iuſt leuell, in whoſe ſtrength conſiſteth the beautie of all his motions: his ſides long, large, and much bending, with a very ſmall ſpace betwixt his ſhorteſt ribbe and his huckle bones: his fillets ſhort, thicke, full, and ſwelling eeuen with his chinne: his flanckes full and round, hauing Oſtrige feathers, riſing vp from the loweſt part of their thinneſſe, euen to the bottome of his fillets: his belly large, yet well hidden within his ribbes: his buttocke round, plumpe, and full, without either gutter or deuiſion of ioynts, or any vncomely appearance of the hippes or huckle bones: his thighes large, round and bigge, well let downe euen to his houghes: his hammes leane and ſtraight, his houghes large and

crooked,

crooked like a Stag: his legs broad, short, straight and leane: his knees great, plaine, and firmly knit: his forethighes, synewye, short-bon'd, and of iust proportion: the brawnes whereof, when he standeth vpright, and with his legs together, must be more distant one from another, aboue next his brest, then benath: his shoulders long, large, and fleshie: his brest large, round, and bearing outward, his ioyntes beneath his knees great, with long feawter lockes: his pasternes short and straight; the crownets of his hoofes small and hairie; his hoofes blacke and smooth, large, drie, round, and hollow: his heeles swelling and straight: his taile long and hairie, but not bushie, but rather crispe and thin; the sterne whereof, small and strong, and close coutched betwixt his buttockes: his stones and yarde small and blacke without white spots, and all his shapes ingenerall, according to the proportion of his stature, which what horse soeuer hath, doubtlesse hee cannot chuse but be of good disposition: for tis hard to finde a horse of good shape and colour, which is by nature euill inclinde.

Salomon de la Broue, is of opinion that the temperatures and climes, vnder which horse is bred, is an especiall Index to declare the nature and disposition of the Horse, and questionlesse his iudgement is moste sound: for generally those horses, which are bred nearer to the Sunne, as the *Ienet* of *Spaine*, the *Barbarie*, the *Arabian* and the *Turke*; (by which *Turke* as I take it, he meaneth the *Greeke*: for the true naturall *Turke* indeede, is bredde in the colde partes of *Sithia*, and is a Horse of exceeding largenesse, strength, and sufferance, but not of a franke spirit and courage, equall

with the other, are euer of more pure mettall, more couragious valour, and more ſtrength and nimbleneſſe, then either the *Almaine*, *Flemming*, or any other diſcending from the Northerne, colde and barraine races: the reaſon being, that the Sunne, doth with his hot beames expell, diſpierſe, and exhall in the firſt, thoſe groſſe, moyſt, and corrupt humors, which the colde and froſt conicaleth, bindeth, and incorporateth in the latter; but whereas *La Broue*, placeth in his firſt ranke, as worthie the onely ſoueraignte amongſt horſes, as the fitteſt ſeate for Kinges, and the beſt renowned in battaile, the Horſe of *Spaine*: let mee in that take leaue to bee of a cleane different, and contrarye opinion, and to his ſuperlatiue hardlie bee intic'd to lend him a comparatiue, for if I acknowledge him faire, Noble, gratious and braue, I muſt not ſay moſt, for then I ſhall erre exceedingly, for if wee will ſtand to the opinions of our auncient Maiſters in this Arte, wee ſhall finde that one ſaith, they bee of too ſlender a molde in the hinder partes, their buttockes too narrow, and their limbes too ſlender.

Another ſaith, they bee weake and cowardly: and a third ſaith, they haue bad hoofes, no pace, and bee for the moſt part, of curſt, and froward diſpoſition: and ſhall this Horſe beare away the prize, both for inward or outward perfection?

But let vs compare his vertues with theſe former defects: the ſame Authors affirme, hee is finely made, both of head and bodie, full of lightneſſe and quickneſſe, ſtrong, and able for the induring of trauell, and in ſwiftneſſe exceeding, not onely the *Parthyans*, but

but all other horſes whatſoeuer. Truely in ſhape they are not of any thing comparable with the meaneſt in manye *Barbaries*, and for their ſwiftneſſe, it is not to bee ſpoke of, chiefly in long courſes, where the indurance of lobour is to bee approued, in comparison of many of the meaneſt of our Engliſh races; of which we haue ſpoke more amply in the former booke: but to come nearer to our times, and to bring our beſt proofes from our owne experiences, I haue my ſelfe beheld ſome of the *Spaniſh* Studdes, their Mares, Colts, and Horſes, and for mine owne part, I haue not ſeene any whereat to admire: many I haue beheld of vncomely molde, looſe and ill ioynted; I haue ſeene ſome ſerue in the field, and haue noted in them great fearefulneſſe, chieflie at the ſight of fire: ſome I haue ridden, and albe I haue found them tractable enough, quicke ſpirited, and full of vigor, yet haue I found them with all fantaſticall, apiſh, apt to forget, and prone to reſtifnes vpon the leaſt indiſcretion, ſo that I conclude, the *Ienet* is a good horſe, but not the beſt: witty, but not of the beſt vnderſtanding: fierce but not of the moſt approoued valour: before whome I prefer (as moſt principall) the Courſer of *Naples*: next them, our *Engliſh* baſtard Courſers, and true *Engliſh* bred horſes. Then the *Greeke*, next the *Barbarie*, and then the *Spaniard*: and all theſe, are for the moſt part either of well compounded & mingled complexions, or elſe Sanguine, or Chollericke, which makes them apt to learne, able to performe, and leaſt deſeruing the furie, either of torture, or correction. And thus much for the diſtinction of complexions, and the iudgement by markes and ſhapes of the inward

dispositions, which the horse-man must correct according to his experience in practise.

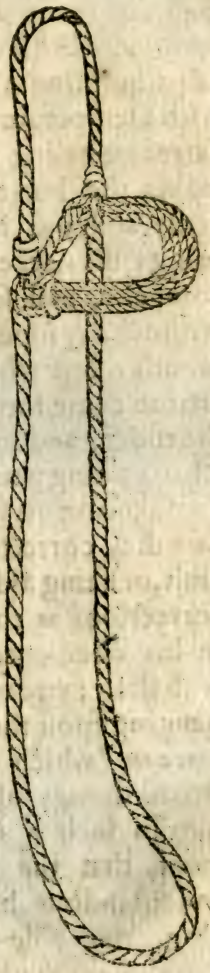
CHAP. 2.

The vse and benefite of the chaine Cauezan, Headstraine, Musroll, and Martingall.

Cauezzanna, of the ancient *Italians* was taken both for the Chaine, Headstraine, Musroll, and that to which heere in *England* we giue no other attribute but *Cauezan*, or any other binding fillet ouer the nose of the Horse, to which was vsed any reynes, whether leather or corde; but time bringing forth diuers practises, and those practises sundrie experiments, not formerly knowne: wee haue not onely altered the names and titles, but euen the vse and maner of imployment: the olde *Neapolitans* which were indeede the Schoole-masters to all Christendome in the Arte of horse-manship, vsed for their *Cauezan*, nothing but a plaine halter of strong well twound corde, the *Musroll*, or *Nosehand*, being at least foure cordes broad, well sow'de togetther with strong Packthreed, with two noozes or loops; through which a long reine crosse wise passeth, so as by pulling or straying it, you may pinch the Mussell of the horse, and force him to bring in his head, and shewe obedience without further compulsion, the figure whereof is this which is here prescribed.

There is no question but this maner of *Cauezan* was inuented to exceeding good purpose, and was found of

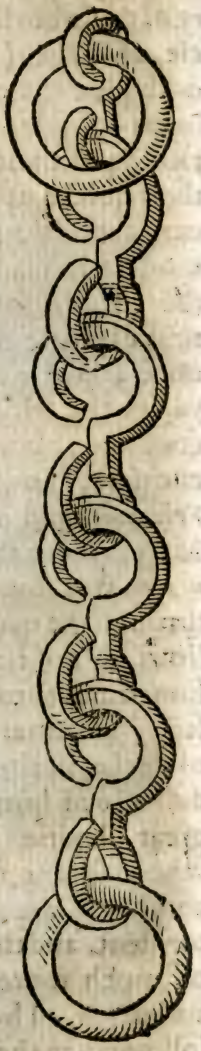
of great vse and estimation amongst the *Neapolitanes*, both by reason of the tractabilitie of those horses, their excellencie of shape (wherein nature doth giue them all the possible helpes which may bee to the attaining of their perfection) and their quicke apprehension of euery correction ioyned with the moderation, arte, patience, and the industrious labour of the skilfull Horse-man; but when it once ariued with vs in *England*, where the Horse-mans charge consisted, both of *Neapolitan* coursers, *Spanish Ienets*, *Flemings*, *Frizonds*, and our owne *English* Mares: there this maner of *Cauezan* was founde, sometimes through the naughtie and rebellious disposition of the horse, sometimes through naturall defects, as either in the shortnesse of necke, straitnesse of chaule or dulnesse of spirit, to bee of too great lenitie or gentlenes: whence sprang the inuention of another *Cauezan* more full of torment, and therefore reputed of much more especiall vse or authoritie. The figure whereof followeth in the next page.



The Cauezan or Headstraine.

The

The *cauezan* made in fashion of a Chaine, & in our *English* phrase commonly called the Chaine, was much accounted of amongst principall horsemen, and found a sufficient correction for horses of most seuerall dispositions; for being vsed with a temperate hand, without extreame haling or pulling, it makes the horse light before, firme and iust in his turning, brings his necke into his true compasse, and setleth the head without any inpeachment of the mouth: but when this *cauezan* chaine came into the hands of the ruder, and more vnskilfull, who wanting patience to let the horse knowe his fault before before they corrected him for his fault, or being as frantick in their corrections as the horse wilfull in his obedience, they haue with their extreame pulling, or hanging vpon the reines of the *cauezan* (which commonly are broad thongs of leather) held him in such a continuall torment, that the Horse neither vnderstanding his riders meaning, nor able to indure the punishment, hath falne to such



The cauezan or chaine plaine.

a wilfull

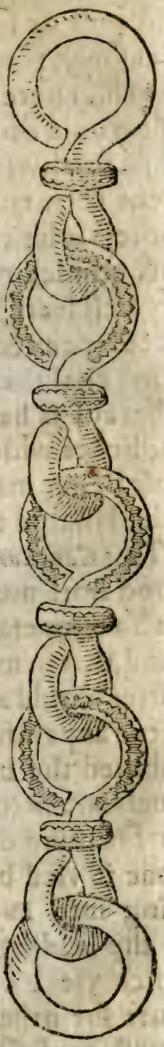
a wilfull oppoſition againſt his rider, that he hath euen reſted & hung his head vpon the *cauezan*, albe the rider did pull or hale neuer ſo extreamely: which fault when the riber perceiued in the horſe but would not behold in himſelfe; forthwith, he began to inuent torments of greater and more violent nature, holding this ethnick opinion that the greateſt feare begat the greateſt obedience: & hence came this other chaine *cauezan*, the figure whereof is heere repreſented: the linkes which goe ouer the noſe being made hollow, and full of ſharpe teeth.



The Cauezan or chaine with teeth.

This *Cauezan* I haue ſeen very good horſ-men vſe, but with ſuch a temperate & Lady-ſoft a hand, that in my conceite a ſilke garter would at any time haue beene as painful. Many haue attributed the inuention of this cruel *cauezan* to *Signior Proſpero*, but for mine owne part I haue ſeene it vſed before his comming into *England*, eſpecially in the leading of horſes, for which vſe I eſteemed it, and neuer for other purpoſe; yet I muſt confeſſe *Proſpero* was a

moſt tyrannous and cruell ryder, and out of the depth of his knowledge in horſ-leach craft (in which he was moſt famous) would aduenture ſundry bloody ſtratagems and cruelties, beyond reaſon. And as touching the *cauezan* which hee moſt vſed, it was more cruell then the former, and made after this figure.



The Cauezan or Chaine with teeth, and rings toothed.

This *cauezan* or *chaine* thus made with theſe turning rowles, by reaſon of the extreame crueltie therof, as it made ſome horſes of ſlothfull, dogged, & rebellious diſpoſition, more obedient and louing, of more tractable natures whereby the rider tooke ſome delight, and hope in his trauell: ſo it made horſes of free, quicke, and apprehenſiue qualitie, oft times deſperate, and ſo oppoſite to all the good hopes which their complexion promiſed, that nothing ſeemed more impoſſible, then what appeared in reaſon eaſie; and the oftner it ſo hapned when ſuch violent corrections came into the handsof ſuch horſmen, who exerciſed the ſame more from the tradition and vſe of others, then from any certaine knowledge in themſelues, of the nature and

qualitie

quality of such extremities; for my selfe haue diuers times seene & argued with sundrie horſ-men, whom I haue beheld ride with these cruel *Cauezans*, of the reason and cause of that extraordinary terror, who could yeeld me no satisfaction but this: that such and such good horſmen did vse them, and therefore they (forgetfull, that whosoeuer will be any mans Ape in such practise must necessarily haue his iudgement, his temper of hand, and his discretion in gouernment) haue them in practise; for as amongst Scriueners, he which hath a heauie hand must write with a hard pen; hee that hath a light, with a soft: so amongst horſmen, he that hath a iudiciall temperate hand, may draw good effects from cruell instruments; but he that hath a rough and stubborne feeling, cannot haue his instruments made with too great softnesse and gentlenesse. Hence it came to passe, that our best horſemen, seeing the euils which these euil *Cauezans* did beget by the roughnes of their owne shape, and by the indiscretion or the barbarous handler: but most of all by reason of the reynes of such *Cauezans*, which being alwayes broad thonges of leather running crosse-wise through the eies of the two outmost rings, when they were once drawne straight, albe the rider did afterward ease his hand, yet would not the reynes recoile or giue apeasment to the horses griefe, but helde him in a continuall paine: which considered, they forthwith inuented an other *Cauezan* of two peeces of Iron writhen about, which is nothing so cruell as these former Chaines, and made the raynes thereof, of a kinde of soft twound rope, being in thickneſſe as big as an ordinarie Cart-roape, which running crosse-wise through the ringes, did no longer

holde

holde the Horſe in paine then the hand did pull, but with euery eaſe of the hand, recoyled and gaue eaſe and libertie to the horſe ſo pained. The figure of which *Cauezan* is this.

The Wrythen Cauezzan.



This kinde of *Cauezzan* put both the head-ſtraine, and chaines out of all vſe, and as it is, and hath beene euer ſeene that our Engliſh nation is euer moſt adicted to ſtrangers and ſtrange trickes; So now this and none other was reputed moſt perfect and moſt exquiſite: which when *Proſpero* perceiued, and ſawe the adiction of our natures, which eſteemed that beſt for which we could giue the leaſt reaſon of goodneſſe: hee foorthwith inuented another *Cauezzan* made of two peeces of yron, hollowed and ioynted in the midſt, full of teeth, long and ſharpe like a Horſe-Combe, with raynes of rope like the former faſhion, of which this is the *Cauezan* that followeth.

The Cauezan of two peeces.



But he was no sooner seene to vse this *Cauezan*, when almost euery man that would seeme a horseman, began forthwith to apparell his Horse in his new *Italian* fashion: not arguing the vertues or the vices of the instrument,

inſtrument, but onely the quaintneſſe and ſtrangeneſſe, ſo that euery one could not imagine faults, and imperfections in all the former *Cauizans*, and now this onely was good and no other: and this was for a long time in ſuch vſe, that not any man almoſt was ſeene to ride without them: which when *Proſpero* perceiued to be ſo much diuulged, and grow ſo generall, *Italian*-like being iealous of his honour, and ſeeking onely to be particular (like the Souldior which renownſt his owne diſcipline, becauſe it was made common amongſt the wilde *Iriſh*) refus'd the vſe of this *Cauezan*, and inuented an other of the ſame faſhion, and with the ſame like reines only, it was compounded of three peeces, which made it more plaint about the horſes noſe, and by that meanes more full of ſharpe correction. The figure whereof is this which followeth.



The

The Canezan of three peeces.



With this *Cauizan* I haue seene him ride many times, and in his right hand a hammer, wherewith hee would strike the *Cauezan* into the Horses nose, by which meanes I haue seene many foule Farcions, and other cankerous sores breede in the Horses face, which sore he could easily heale, he lesse respected to hurt; but those violences I absolutely hold brutish, and in euery rule opposite to all art and Horse-manship.

Now to come to the experience of these latter times: we doe finde all these Chaines and Cauezans formerly expressed to be good, so they be gouerned by art, and according to the propertie of each of their seuerall natures, for which they were inuented, yet *Salomon de la Broue* will allow (at least commendeth to our memories) none but the three last Cauezans, and the first plaine chaine, betweene whome and mee is this difference, that I allow none of them all, but in cases of great extreamitie, where the sufferance of euill hath brought the horse to a habit of euill, so that ordinarie meanes being taken away, there then remaineth nothing but extraordinare practise: for that they should be as he pretendeth, like the swadling clouts to a child: the first garments a Colt should weare, I hold it mearely against the Arte of Horsemanship, and against the greatest substance of his owne precepts: for if as hee prescribeth, and all arte teacheth, we are to fortifie our Horses vnderstanding with all manner of meekenes, lenitie, and patience, and that we must in no sort begin to correct till we be assured of some apparant & grosse vice: then must we lay aside these instruments, which euen punish in the very wearing before the mans hand come to be laide vppon them. For first the peeces and

joyntes

ioyntes of which they consist being so plyant and bynding about the nose and cheekes of a Horse, together with the sharpnes of their teeth, euen in the sence of reason must breede much griefe to the Colt, if eitheir the Ryder haue feeling of the Colts head, or the colt a sence of his ryders hand; and for the one to be without the other was neuer seene in good Horse, nor good Horseman, nor can the fine temper of any mans hand be a lawfull excuse for these beginning cruelties: wherfore if it were so as this french Gentleman suppoſes, that a Colt should be first traind vp with the Cauezan, which I can neuer allow in my sleight iudgement, yet none of these three holde I tollerable: but rather the Cauezan which consisteth all of one intyre peece, according to this figure following.

The Cauezan.



In this *Cauezan*, neither is the teeth filde ſharpe ſo as it can much pricke the Colt, neither is the ſubſtance ſo plyant that it can binde the correction longer then is the will of the ryder, but as his hand abateth, ſo the paine vaniſheth, ſo that I conclude, of al theſe *Cauezans* this is the worthyeſt to begin with, if there were not a better way of beginniug alreadie knowne and approued, and the other to followe, either as vice, ſtubborneſſe, or reſtie qualities, ſhall giue occaſion, or as the defects in naturall proportions, ſhall inforce a man to more violent practiſe.

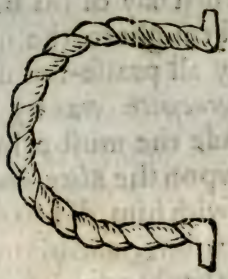
The

The vse of all these head straines, chaynes and *Cauezans*, only tendeth to one purpose, which is but to assure and make firme the head, to bring a horse to lightnes, and as it were an inward delight of his owne comlines, and to preserue the mouth in sensible and tender feeling, which being either dul'd, or hardned, there straight followeth disobedience, frenzie and disorder. But that it worketh all these, I haue both seene the contrarie in others; and found it in mine owne practice; for where a Horse is naturally light headed, forgetfull, or fantasticall, or where the Horse hath a thicke short necke, and a straite narrowe chaule; there a man may with the *Cauezan* and plaine cannon, bestowe much arte and more labour; but shall hardly eyther bring the one to a stayednes, or the other to any comelines, nature being a stronger Mistresse then art, of such weake playnes: and I doe well remember a Gentleman, who at this day in this kingdome, is not reputed much inferior to the best Horse-men, who rid a short-neckt courser, aboue two yeares with the *Cauezan* and plain cannon, yet brought him to little better perfection, then at the first day of his backing, when the same Horse being brought to the most famons Gentleman, and worthy all praise-full memorie, Maister *Thomas Story* of *Greenewich*, was by him in lesse then one halfe yeare made the most principall best doing horse which came vpon the *Black-heath*, and my selfe at that instant riding with him, did so diligently obserue both his art, his reasons, and his practise, that euen from that man and that Horse, I drew the foundation and ground of my after practise.

Finding in the vse of the *Cauezan*, so much insuffici-

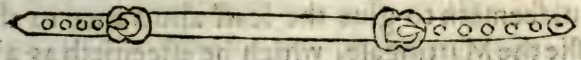
encie, losse of time and libertie to disorder, that I dare confidently maintaine, it is neither the best nor second way to bring a horse to perfection: if then I shall be questioned what I doe prefer before the Cauezan, as the first instrument to bring a horse both to beauty and obedience, my answere absolutely is, the Musrole and the Martingale, which how euer it be either vnassayde, or vnremembred in the *Italian* or *French* practise, yet I am well assured it is of much better effect, and hath brought foorth moe better examples of perfect arte, then they haue either deliuered vs in their writinges, or we haue beheld in their practise: But in asmuch as no man hath writ against it, I will imagine all men hold with it, and not goe about to defend, what none in the Arte I thinke will impugne. The Musrole therefore would be made after the fashion of the writhen Cauezan, onely it should be of one peece after the fashion of this figure.

The Musrole.



This Musrole must be couered with a strong leather, and a buckle at one end to buckle vnder the horses chaps,

chaps, like the nose-band of a Brydle: then must a head-stall be ioyned vnto it, to goe ouer the horses head. As touching the Martingale, it would be made of very strong leather, with two buckels, a foote distant one from another, after the fashion of this figure.



This Martingale must haue the the shorter end thereof buckled to the Garthes vnder the Horses bodie, and so brought betweene his fore-legges to his head, and the longer end buckled to the nose-band of the Mus-role, vnder the Horses neather chaps.

The vse of this Musrole and Martingale, is to keepe certaine and firme a Horses head from tossing, shaking wrything or such like Antick countenances: it rayseth vp the necke, bringeth in the head, and fashioneth the reyne: it keepeth a Horse from plunging, rearing alofte, or running away: and to conclude, doth that good office, and breedeth that tractabilitie in two dayes (albe with a meane Horseman) which the Cauezan or the Chayne will hardly effect (though with the best Artes-maister) in two monethes: so that I conclude, and dare without ostentation or ambition prepose my selfe against any man of contrarie opinion, to make my Horse sooner and more certaine with the Musrole & Martingale, then he with the Chaine or

Cauezan, how euer his estimation doe precede my fortune and obscuritie. The place or seate for the Musrole is vppon the strength and midde part of the horses nose, vnder his eye more then a handfull, and aboue the tender grisslle, about some two inches or thereabouts.

Grison from whence all Horse-men, and all nations haue taken a great light, both of their Art and immitation, seemeth to giue the least allowance to these, chiefly the Martingale, which he esteemeth as a correction, and therefore dooth limmite the vse to certaine perticular and necessarie times, and not to any generall benefit; the reason whereof I holde onely to bee this: *Euangelista*, who was the first inuentor thereof, vsing it alwaies to correct such Horses as would reare vpright, and flye ouer and ouer; *Grison*, not willing to be beholden to any mans practise but his owne, not prooving the other benefits, was vtterly ignorant of the vertues, (this for which it was inuented, being the least of all other) and so like one of our olde Belfounders that neuer knewe how to melt his mettall, but by the force of a paire of Bellowes; thought it impossible that the new inuented furnaces should bring any profit: but had our Maister *Gryson* once put it in practise, I doe not thinke either chaine or Cauezan would haue held with him any estimation.

Now for the Musrole, that hee condemneth exceedingly, and to speake truely, it deserueth all his commendations: and this shall suffice touching the knowledge and vse of the *Cauezan*.

How

CHAP. 3.

How to make a Colt gentle, how to bring him to blocke, and of the first Bridle and Saddle.

I Did in my first Treatise of Horse-manship which I writ many yeares since, for the sleight tastes or essayes, to season the knowledge of a young Gentleman, my most especiall friend, and deere kinsman, set downe a method how to tame and make gentle a Colt, being come to full age, fitte to weare a Saddle, as namely of three yeares and seauen Monethes, or at foure yeares at the most; at which time his ioynts will be knit, his strength compleate, and his vnderstanding fit to entertaine instruction, and both of *Xenophon*, *Grison*, *Baptista*, and *la Broue*, and all Horse-men thought the time most conuenient, and in the self-same opinion I still confidently doe continue: which was, that hauing housed your colt, and with good strength and helpe, got a chase-halter made of strong Hempe, with the reine aboue three fathome long at the least, with the gentlest meanes that may be vpon his head: when you offer to leade him forth, if he offer (as it is most likely) he will either to leape, plunge, or runne away, that then with strong and sharpe twitches, you shake his necke, and maister his head, in such sort that in the ende the smallest straine of your hand may be sufficient to bring him back, and inforce him to obedience. This mastring of his head with the halter, brings

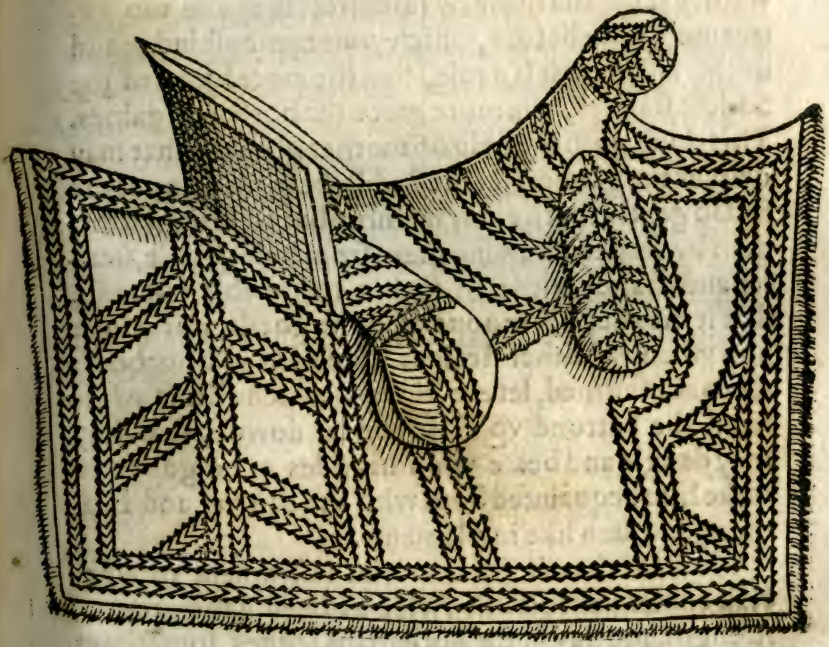
him to feare and obey the man, make him tender to all other corrections, and assures his keeper when he shall leade him in his hand, or bring him to his rider.

But if he be so stubborne that he refuse to leade, and onely hangeth backe, then let some standers by vrge him forward, by threatning him with their voyce, which if he preuaile not, then let one with a rodde giue him a smarke yerk or two, till he presse forward; which if he doe too hastily, or with too suddaine a furie, you shall twitch him backe with the chase halter, and vpon euery instant that he doth any thing orderly, or pleasing to your minde, you must not forget to cherish him, both with sweete words, and by giuing him somthing to eate. After he will leade a turne or two gently, you may set him vp in the stable, take off the chase halter, and put on a smooth coller: let his keeper euer bee trifling and doing something about him, rubbing and handling him most, where he is most coy to bee handled, mingling gentle wordes, and kinde speeches in all his doings, till with your modest curtesie, without any suddaine affright or rashnesse, you haue made him so tractable, that he wil suffer the keeper to handle him in the most tickliſh partes, to let his feete be taken vp and shod, and euery conuenient member to be vsed according as you shall thinke necessarie, which with labour, patience and gentlenesse, will soone bee brought to passe, where as furie, rashnesse, and sodaine approachings, are the first meanes which makes a horse learne to start, strike, bite, and take dislike euen in his keepers countenance. After your horse is thus mand, and made gentle to be drest, shod, and handled, you shall then present vnto him the Saddle, which how euer *Grisons*

opinion

opinion is it ſhould only at firſt be but a pad of ſtrawe without any tree, for feare of hurting: yet I hold it neither to be diſproportion in arte, nor offence to the horſe, if at firſt you ſet a ſufficient and ſeruiceable Saddle, made in proportion and faſhion anſwerable to this figure.

The perfect Saddle.



This

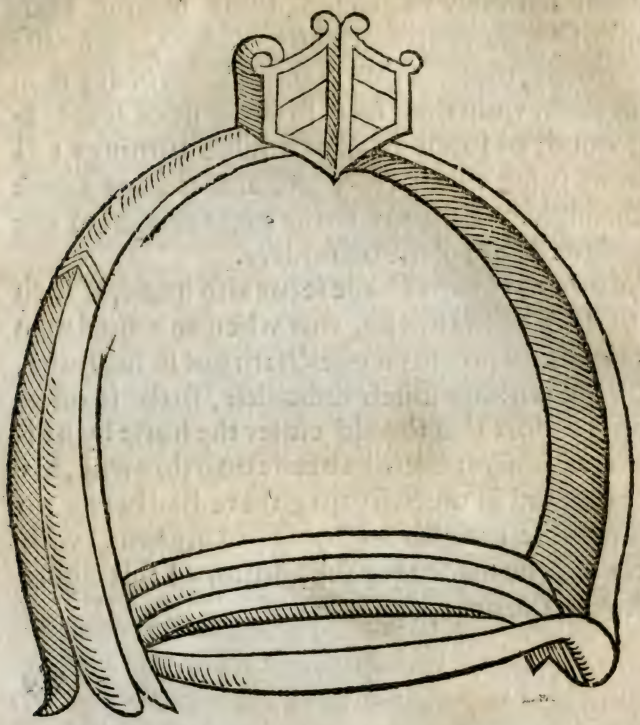
This Saddle when you first present to the Horse, let him smell to it: then rub his shoulders with it, his sides and his buttocks, and so breeding acquaintance by degrees, and with faire and gentle wordes, in the end set it vpon his backe: then take it off, and set it on againe twice or thrice before you let it settle, continually giuing faire wordes, and cherishing the Colt: in the end set it on firme, and place it rather forward then backward, except the horse by imperfect shape be too extreamely lowe before, which your eye must iudge and distinguish; for it is a rule, that the more forward the Saddle standes, the more grace the horseman gaines. This done, with the help of another groome that may deliuer the girthes, let the Saddle be girded on; at the first so gently that he may no more but feele the garths; then by degrees drawing them from hole to hole, straiter and straiter, gird it of such a reasonable fastnesse, that it may neither mooue when he goeth, nor pinch him when he either straines himselfe, or breatheth: this once finished, let the stirrops (which all this while should be buttond vp close) be let downe, that they may dangle and beate vpon his sides as he goeth, to make him acquainted both with the Stirrop and Leathers, and such like implements.

Now for that the Stirrop is an instrument of especiall consequence it this Arte, as beeing the ground, strength, and stay of the horsemans legges, sometimes a helpe in the horses lessons; sometimes a correction for his slouth or errors: and generally the sole grace or ornament of the mans faire seate and comelinesse, it shall not be amisse for me to shewe the true shape and proportion of the right and well fashioned Stirrop, which

which hitherto for the moſt part, and of moſt men hath beene infinitely neglected, ſome making their Stirrops of ſuch an extraordinarie waight, compaſſe and greatneſſe, that it is almoſt impoſſible for any man to holde them vpon their feete in any fault or leape aboue ground, or in any ſwift or double turnings: I haue ſeene ſome whoſe feete and ankles haue runne quite through the Stirrops, to the great danger of the man, and the diſlike of the beholders.

Some other Stirrops I haue ſeene alſo made, of ſuch an immeaſurable ſtraitneſſe, that when an armed man (hauing *greaues*) vpon his legges, hath put in his foote, he could not without much difficultie, ſhake it off againe, in ſuch ſort that ſhould either the horſe by miſchance haue falne, or the man beene ouerthrowne, his legges being faſt in the Stirrops, there had beene no meanes of preſeruing his life: which to preuent, I wiſh all Stirrops to be made after the faſhion of this figure following in the next page.

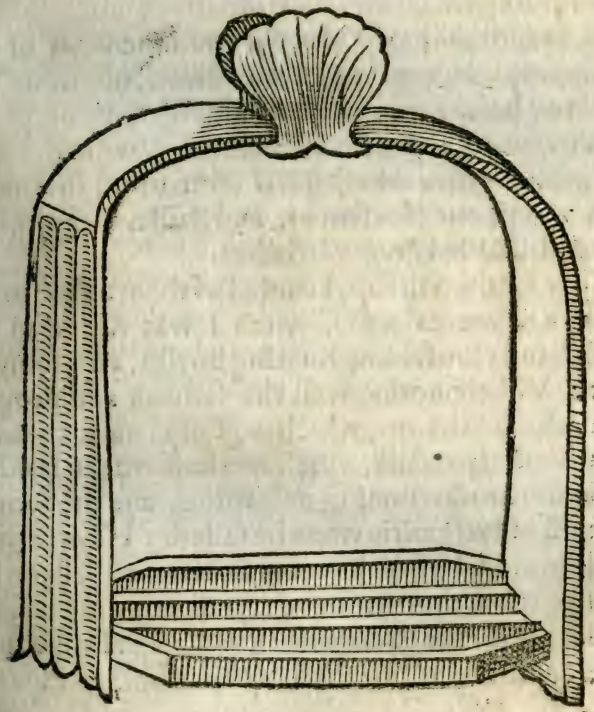
The perfect Stirrop.



Which bearing his compaſſe, or bowe out in the midſt, and likewiſe both ſtraitned at the bottome, and the top, giueth the foote a perfect liberty to goe in and out at pleaſure; and yet his ſhallowneſſe giueth the man that certaine and ſure holde, that it can neither at any time ſhake off againſt his will, nor eaſilie ſlide paſt the hart of the foote, which is euer the moſt certaine part which ſhould reſt vpon the ſtirrop; where on the contrarie part, thoſe ſtirrops, which in former time, and euen at this preſent are generally in vſe, being

ing made in the fashion of a Scutchion, turned the wrong end vpward, and made by a direct line, either of one wideneſſe, or one ſtraitneſſe, and ſuch a large diſtance betwixt the top and the bottome, and the rider hath no ſure foote-hold therein, but by extreame preſſing or treading vpon it, whereas indeed he ought, but to appeare to touch it and no more, keeping onely the Stirrop-leather ſtraight and no further; wherefore for your ſatisfaction and that you may auoid the vſe thereof, you ſhall beholde the faſhion of the euill Stirrop in this figure following.

The euill Stirrope.



Now

Now as touching the perfect Saddle, and the perfect Stirrop, both which I haue formerly expreſſed and figured, they are allowed generally of all horſemen, and by *La Broue* in his booke of precepts, principally commended and figured; wherfore by ſome ſhallow ſence beſt pleaſed in fault-finding, it may be alledged, that I rob him of his figures, and depriue him of his Inuention; Truly for the figures, I would our Nation were ſo induſtrious, that they would cut them in ſuch perfection as his are, which queſtionleſſe are the beſt done I haue ſeene; or our Nobilitie and Gentrie ſo much inamoured in the Arte, that mens paines and arts might not be miſregarded; ſure it would auaile much to their more vnderſtanding. But for the inuention of the Saddle, ſure it is, it was neither *La Broues*, nor mine, but were long before wee were, of much vſe amongſt the ancient *Italians*, and with vs here in *England* in the time of *Signior Proſpero* of eſpeciall eſtimation, inſomuch that amongſt our Horſemen, and Sadlers, they were and are ſtill called *Proſperos* Sadles.

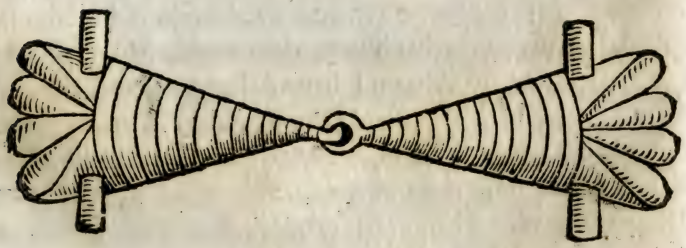
Now for the Stirrop, I cauſed of them to bee made aboue 16. yeeres agoe, when I was deepe in the practiſe and vſe of riding hunting horſes, and running horſes. Where noting well the faſhion and proportion of thoſe Stirrops, which we found moſt commodious for that practiſe, which are thoſe we can hold faſteſt in the horſes running or leaping, and the ſooneſt ſhake off in extremitie when he falleth: I foorth-with from the model of the hunting Stirrop, cauſed the like in proportion (though ſtronger, and of more maſſines) to be made for the great horſe Saddle, and found them better & more certaine then any I had before indured.

Now

Now to proceede to my purpose; when your horse is thus man'd, sadled, and firmely gyrt, your crooper sure and strongly buckled, and your stirrops of their euen and due length, which (according to the opinion of *la Broue*,) I would haue the right-foote stirrop a thought shorter then the left, because when a man encounters his enemie with his Launce, hee must a little lean to his left side, putting his right shoulder the more forward; or when he encounters with the sword, the lifting vp of his right arme to raise his blow, makes him ease his right foote stirrop, and tread the firmer on his left: for these and such other like reasons, it is found fit to make the left stirrop the longer. When this is done, you shall present vnto your horse the bridle which hee shall first weare, which according to the opinion of my maister *Grison*, should be the *Cauezan* head-straine, for he vtterly disallows the byt at the first riding, til a horse can trott forward, and turne readily on both hands: *la Broue*, he would haue the *Cauezan* chaine plaine without teeth, which indeede is more generally good, for hauing in it more force of correction, it bringeth the sooner and easier obedience: both haue beene and are good in their kindes; and diuers horses I know will ride as obediently with them, as with bytt or any other inuention: for, for mine owne part, I once rid a blacke bastard Courser, which was afterwards giuen to the Earle of *Essex*, in whom I found that tractabilitie and sensibleneesse, that before I euer put byt in his mouth, he would haue set a turne on both hands, either double or single, managed faire, or done any ordinarie Ayre or Salt meet for a horse of seruice: but when he came to weare a byt, I found his mouth so exceeding tender,

and out of the greatneſſe of his courage, I found him euery way ſo apt vpon the leaſt torment to diſorder & growe frantick, that I condemned my ſelfe, and found it was a courſe to ſpend a double time for one ſingle horſe making: wherefore, differing both from *Xenophon*, *Griſon*, *la Broue*, and others, I onely relie (as vpon the ſureſt rock and foundation layer of this Arte) vpon my famous maiſter, maiſter *Thomas Storie*, who was ſo exquiſite in euery perfection of horſmanſhip, that many at this day, who would diſdaine to haue other ranke then amongſt the beſt Horſemen, were but groomes and leaders of horſes to his ſchoole, and onely attained their skils by beholding, and obſeruing his practiſe, their eyes and memories being their beſt ſchool-maiſters: and according therefore to his rule; I would haue you put vpon your horſes head, the Muſroll before preſcribed, which done, you ſhall put into his mouth, (hauing it faſtned to a ſtrong head-ſtal, and with ſtrong reynes of broad leather) a Trench, in thickneſſe as big as a Cannon of the ſmalleſt ſize: which for your better inſtruction, you may behold in this figure.

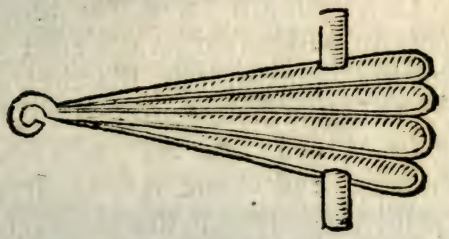
The Trench.



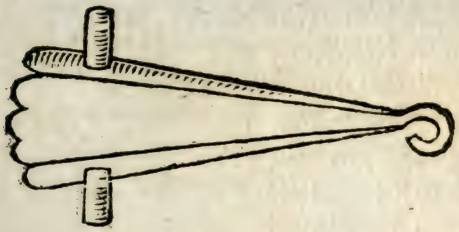
Notwith-

Notwithstanding I haue seene, who rather to mend the intemperance of their owne hands, then for any iust fault belonging to the Trench, haue in stead thereof vsed a plaine watring snaffle, made according to this figure.

The outside of the watring snaffle.



The inside of the watring snaffle.



But this watring snaffle I cannot allow for any other vse then to lead a gentle horse, or to tie vp a horse withall, during the time of his dressing, or for the groome to ryde a ridden horse withall, when there shall be occasion to swim him in the water, as when he lieth in the soile, or at such times which is most wholsome. For to apply it according to the nature of the trench, it ia too

ſmooth, and doth rather dead and dull the mouth, then preſerue it in any ſenſable feeling: for euery horſe naturally, when he ſhall feele the gentleneſſe thereof, will hang vpon it, and when any cauſe of contention ſhall growe betweene the rider and the horſe, rather rebell againſt it, then go about to obey it: the trench therfore I conclude to be of all things moſt fit for the mouthing of a yong Colt at his firſt riding. The trench being put on, which you muſt not forget at the firſt putting on, to annoint with honie and ſalt, that the colt may take pleaſure therein, you ſhall then take the Martingal, and buckling the one end vnder the horſes breſt, you ſhall buckle the other end to the neather part of the Muſroll, but at ſuch large length, that neither in the toſſing vp of his head, nor in thruſting out his noſe, he find any impediment thereby: which done, you ſhall make the Groom by laying his hand on the left ſide of the Muſrole to leade him to the blocke, which ſhould euer be placed neare vnto ſome euen wall, ſo that the horſe might be lead alongſt the wall to the blocke: but if he be of ſuch a flegmatick or melancholy diſpoſition that either he refuſe to lead, or to approach vnto the block, you ſhall firſt (according to the opinion of *la Broue*) fortifie him with incouragements, faire wordes, clappings, and ſtrokings; but if it auaile not, then you ſhall cauſe ſome by-ſtander with a rod in his hand to ſtand behinde him, and firſt with a threatning voice without touching him with the rod, to force him to approch to the block; but if he ſtill rebel, then ſhal he that ſtandeth behinde giue him a Ierke or two vpon the nether part of his buttocks, & ſo inforce him to come to the block: when he is come to the block, both his rider, his leader

and

and his driuer, shal cherish him, and clap him, and giue him grasse, or something els to eate: but if he refuse to stand quietly at the block, and couet to presse forward, then shall another stander by, with a rodde in his hand stand before his face, and threaten him, but not strike him; if he being thus affraid, both before and behind, & on euery side, he shall fall into any frantike passion, and either seeke to plunge, reare vpright, bite or strike; then I would haue you (according to the opinion of *Grison*) and the present vse of the *Italians*, to desist from further molestation, and forthwith leade him to some peece of new plowde ground, where holding the long reine of the Trench in your hand, let the standers by chace him about you, first on one hand, then on another; which done, goe to him, and offer to put your foot in the stirrop; at which if he seeme coy, you shall then chase him againe, and not leaue him till hee will stand quietly, suffer you to put your foote in the stirrop, and to heaue your selfe from the ground three or foure times togither: which effected you shall instantly cherish him, and then before you mount, you shall look that the headstall both of the Trench, & the Musroll, lie close behinde his eares, that the Musroll lie in his due place ouer the midst of his nose, that the trench lie neither too hie nor too lowe, but rest iust aboue his nether tush, that the reins of the Trench be strong: then you shall looke that the Saddle keep his true place, and that the gyrths be close and fast, that the stirrops be not slipt, and that the crooper be not too strait: lastly, and most principall, (according to the opinion of *la Broue*) and for mine owne part I holde it one of the best notes amongst all his precepts, you shall confidently, and

Obseruations before a Horsman mount his horse.

with a heedfull eye, marke the countenance and gesture of the horse, which is euer the largest Index or Table for a man to finde out his secret disposition: for if hee clap both his eares close to his necke, or if hee clappe downe but one, and pricke forward the other, if hee turne the eye next to the man backward, as if he would looke behinde him, or if he snore, or cracke in his nostrils, all these are verie euill signes, shewes that hee is displeased, wrathfull, and intendeth mischiefe; which wicked purposes you may driue from him by vse of the former chasings: but if you see his countenance vntroubled; his eye cheerfull and liuely, and his eares carried in due comelinesse, you may be well assured of his gentle disposition. It is good also to haue a respect to his maner of standing; for when a horse doth stand but firme vpon two feete, or three feete, heauing and fauoring the other, it is an euill signe of a churlish disposition: but when he standeth fast of all foure, it is a signe of meekenesse. Hauing satisfied your minde in all these caracters, and found euery thing to your contentment, you shall then by rubbing the horses nose vppon the palme of your hand, or by offring something to the horses nose to smell, drawing your hand inward, you shall see him pull in his head, and fashion his reyne, to which proportion I would haue you buckle downe your Martingale, so that carying his head in that place, he may haue no more but a feeling of the Martingale.

All these things obserued, you shall then put your foote in the stirrop: and after you haue heaued twice or thrice vp and downe from the ground, and sometime brought your leg halfe way ouer the Saddle, and downe againe, at euery motion cherishing the horse

excee-

exceedingly, you shall at last put your legge cleane ouer, and seate your selfe fast in the saddle; that is to say, your bodie straight and vpright, neither bending forward, nor leaning backward, your eyes fixt betwixt his eares, and your nose directly ouer the pommell of the Saddle, which shall euer be a rule for you, to knowe if your seate be comely: the chine of your backe must directly answer the chine of the horse: your thighes and knees must bee close and fast to the Saddle, your legges hanging straight downe, as when you stand vpon your feete, the ball and heart of your feete must rest vpon the stirrops, and your toes and heeles must be so orderly placed, that when you onely moue your head, and not your bodie, on the one side to looke to your stirrop, your toe may answer with the tippe of your nose: Now for the cariage of your hands during the time you exercise your horse vpon the Trench, it must be thus: you must take the reynes of the Trench, and fold the one side ouer the other, making each side of an eeuen length, and somewhat short; then laying both your hands vpon the reynes, about an handfull one from another, you shall neither drawe your hands to the saddle pomell, nor close to your bodie, but placing them ouer the midst of the horses crest, continually labour to bring vp his head, which with a sweet hand, comming and going, with gentle motions you shall easily doe: in your right hand you shall carry your rod, with the point directly vpright by your right shoulder; or if you carry it *trauato*, crosswise ouerthwart your brest, and vp by your left shoulder, it shall not bee vncomely. Being in this order mounted, seated and accoutered, after you haue paused and

The Horsemans seate.

cheriſh your horſe, you ſhall by thruſting your feete forward ſomewhat ſtiffely vppon your ſtirrop-leathers, moue your horſe to goe forward, which if he do not, becauſe he vnderſtands you not, his keeper ſhall forthwith lead him ſome dozen paces forward, where pawſing a while, both your ſelfe and the keeper ſhall cheriſh him. Then ſhall you thruſt him forward againe, and ſo continue, till the horſe finding your meaning will goe forward of himſelfe, which will be at the moſt not aboue an houres worke; and note, that in all his goings you reſpect not how he goes, neither which way he goes, ſo he goe at all; but the firſt day ſuffer him to take the incertaintie of his owne pleaſure. Aſſoone as you haue brought him to goe forward, you ſhall then in the gentleſt manner you can ride him home, and light from his backe at the blocke, where you muſt not light ſodainely, but with many heauings, riſings, and halfe commings off and on againe: you muſt dally with him continually, mingling with euery motion ſtore of cheriſhings: if when you are lighted off, he offer of himſelfe to depart away, and will not ſtay at the blocke, you ſhall force him to come againe to the blocke, where you ſhall mount vpon his backe againe, and neuer leaue him till he ſtand ſtill at the blocke, whileſt you eaſe his Martingall, his gyrths, and other implements, which when he doth, you ſhall giue him ſomething to eate, and ſo deliuer him to his keeper.

CHAP. 4.

Of Helpes and Corrections, and of the vses and seuerall kindes thereof.

BEfore I proceede any further into the Horses lessons, because it is reputed the most substantiall part of Horse-manship, to knowe when to help, how to correct, and at what time to cherrish: I will spend some little time therein And first for helpes in Horse-manship, *Grison* and the other *Italians* will allow but seauen; that is the voice or tongue, the rodde the brydle, the calues of your legges, the stirropes, the spurres and the ground: he alloweth also as many corrections; which are likewise the voice, the rod, the brydle, and so foorth as before is mentioned: but for the cherishing, he speakes but onely of two wayes, which is either the voice, or the hand; now for that both helpes and corrections hold but in their doing this difference, that to help goeth before as to preuent a fault, and correcting comes after as punishment for a fault, I will speake of them seuerally. And first for the voice, as it is the sound which naturally all creatures most feare, so it is in disorders the needfullest remedie: and according to the signification of the word, so it is either a correction or a helpe: as for example, if it bee roughly or terriblie deliuered, as *Ha traytor*, *Ha Villaine*, or such like, then t'is a correction for shrewdnesse or obstinacie: but if you crie *Hoe*, *Ho*, or *Hey*, *Hey*, or *Via*, *Via*, Of the Voice.

Via, then tis a help either in galloping, in turning, or any ayre or fault whatsoeuer. But if you will cherrish, then you must in the mildest manner that may be, crie *Holla, holla*, or *So boy*, *Jo boy*, and such like.

Now whereas some horsemen would haue a horse be helpt in his going backe, by crying *Back I say*, or *back Boy*, and in his aduancing by saying *Hup Boy*, *Hup*, or such like. I am vtterly against it, for neither is it comely in the Rider in euerie motion to vse his tongue so liberally, nor would I haue a horses memory clogd with so much seuerall language: but for this help of crying *Darrier*, *Darrier*, when a horse should yerke behinde, tis as absurd as fantasticall, and neuer in vse since spur or rod was inuented.

Of the rodde Now for the rod or cudgell, it is both a correction and a help of great effycacie, especially against either a fantasticall, quicke spirited horse, or a stubborne dull lade, so that the Ryder loose not his time, but correct euen in the moment of the offence dooing: but that it should be vsed as *Gryson* directs about the head, I am of a cleane contrarie opinion, for such corrections doe distemper and incertaine the head, and makes the horse so fearefull, that if after, the shadowe of the rodde but come in his sight, he will cast his head on one side or other very disorderly and frantickly, which of all the members about a horses body should be most stayed and certaine. I doe very much also differ from the opinion of *la Broue*, where he giues allowance for the beating of a horse about the head. *Gryson* would not haue a ryder to ride with a rod till his horse come to weare a bytt, but I hold that for no good precept, for it must either argue in the ryder indiscretion to gouerne it, or

want

want of arte to make his horſe indure it. Beſides, I knowe that euen in the firſt backing of a Colt, the ſound of the rodde ſtirreth vp life in him, correcteth the diſordering of his head, and puts toyes and fantaſies out of his minde, Beſides, it is ſuch an ornament to a Horſeman, that without it, he lookes like an Alderman or Mule-ryder. Laſtly, by rubbing the withers of the Horſe with the butt end of the rodde, you ſhall more cherriſh and delight your Horſe then with any thing elſe whatſoeuer: the rodde doth preſent to the Horſe-man, the vſe of the Launce, the ſword, and the Battle-axe, and is ſeuerally to be carried after their faſhions; as in ſhort manages, it preſenteth the ſword or Battle-axe, and is borne either directly vpright by the right ſhoulder of the man, or elſe croſſe the Horſes creſt, and thwart the mans bodie. In long manages or carieres, it preſenteth the Lance, and is borne lowe by the ryders thigh, but not vppon his thigh with the point vpward, and before you come to the place of turning, you may let it fall of the right ſide of his head: if you turne on the left hand, and when the turne is made, you may rayſe your rodde, vpward againe. Now for the helpes and corrections, they be theſe: firſt it helpeth a horſe in his aduancing, if with the cloſe of your legge, you either ſhake your rodde ouer his head, or let it fall vppon his ſhoulder: it correcteth a horſe if he aduance too hie, or when you would not haue him to reare vpright, if in the very inſtant of the falt, you iert him vppon the ſhins, not ceaſing to ſtrike him ſo oft as he aduanceth againſt your liking: it is alſo a great help to a horſe in his ſetting of turnes, double or ſingle: if

on

on what hand you turne your horſe, you carrie your rod with the point downeward, ouerthwart the contrarie ſhoulder; it correcteth a horſe that is ſloathfull or vnnimble in turning, if you giue him a good ſerte or two orethwart his contrarie ſhoulder, or if he trayle his hinder feete, you giue him a good ſerte or two in the flanke of the contrarie ſide. It helpeth, if when in the *Coruet*, *Capriole*, or ſuch like ayres you would haue him rayſe his hinder parts, you turne the point of your rod directly ouer his rumpe, and let him onely feele it, or heare the ſound of it: and it correcteth if when he will not gether vp his hinder partes, you giue him a good ſert or two, either in his flanke, or ouer his buttocks: many other helpes and corrections there bee with the rod, which ſhall be ſhewed amongſt the horſes leſſons.

Of the Brydle For the helpes and corrections of the Bridle, they be as infinite as mens inuentions, and as varyable as our opinions; for according to the nature of the horſe, the skill of the Horſeman, and the ſence or hardnes of the horſes mouth, ſo the helpes and corrections are either abated or increaſed: for as *Griſon* ſaith, the Sterne doth gouerne the bodie of the Ship, ſo doth the bytt gouern all the motions of the horſe, and as the bytt doth conſiſt not of one entyre peece, but of many: as of mouth, cheeke, curbe, and ſuch like: nor of one faſhion, but of ſundrie, ſo doth the helpes and corrections deuide themſelues according to the proportions and ſeuerall faſhions of the bytt.

Now, for it is the Ryders office to knowe when to ride his horſe with the bytt, how to vſe the bytt when it is firſt put into the horſes mouth, in what part of the

mouth

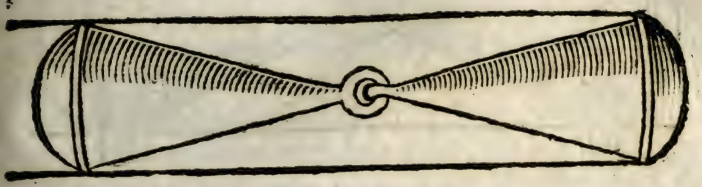
mouth it should rest; then how to holde the reynes, when to vse the false reynes, when to correct, when to helpe, and lastly what kinde or fashion of bytt is fittest for a horse: you shall vnderstand, that when your horse can trot cleane, both in euen furrow, and large ringe, stop firmely, and turne on each hand readilie: you shall then put a bytte in his mouth.

Now for the vse of the bytt, you shall by no meanes put a new bytt, but a worne bytt in your horses mouth, and as you did with your Trench, so shall you annoynt your bytt the first time with Hony and salt. The place where the bytt ought to rest, is vpon his neather gums, aboue his great tush. For the reynes of the byt, you shal holde them in your left hand, so as your ring finger may be betweene the reynes, your little finger on the contrarie side to your fore-finger and great finger, and your thombe close vppon the reynes, with the brawne thereof turned toward the pomell of your saddle. You shall carrie your reynes ordinarily about the middle of the pomell of your saddle, so that when you either stop him, or rayse him, your hand rise not aboue the top of the pommell, nor when you correct him, it fall not lower then the setting on of the pommell. Diuers horsemen vse, and it is also the opinion of *Grison*, when they take from the Horse either the headstraine, chaine or Cauezan, to put to the eyes of the bytt false reynes, for they correct a horse, if his head be vnsteadie, incertaine, or wrything to one side or other, and of this opinion also is absolutely *La Broue*, from both which I thus farr differ, that I would not haue the false reynes put to the eyes of the bytt, for then the false reyne and the perfect reyne worke so contrarie one to another,

other, that which of them you most vse: from the other you take all his operation; as for example, if you will beare your horse vpon his bytt, then cannot your false reynes be felt, or serue they for any purpose, because then the Curbe is in vse; which Curbe cannot be felt when the false reynes are vsed; for the drawing in of the false reynes, draweth the Curbe from the lip, whereas when a horse comes to be ridden onely with the bytt, the Curbe should neuer be from his feeling, as the thing of most delight and commaundment: and againe, the false reynes thus placed, doe so drawe the mouth of the bytt out of his due place, and sometimes so presse the lippe with the straitnesse of the cheeke, that I haue found them rather the begetters of these vices, then the reformers, and yet I doe allow the false reynes, both for an amender of these faults, and for the most principall instrument to breede the best acquaintance betwixt the horse and the bytt, but then I would neuer haue them vsed but to the smooth Cannon, made with the flying Trench; and the false reynes to be but onely to the flying Trench, the figure and vse of which bytt you shall see in the due place.

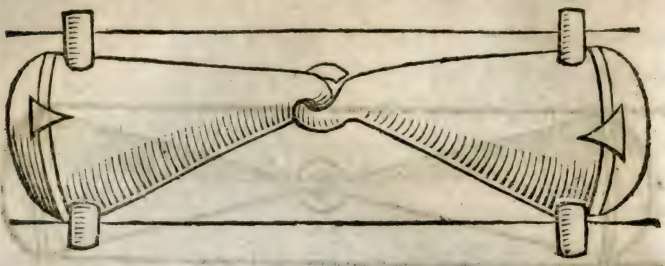
Now to proceede to the vses, fashions and properties of seuerall bytts, you shall vnderstand that the first byt a horse should weare, should be a smooth Cannon, for it is of all bytts the sweetest, as carrying in it no offence or dislike: the fashion whereof is contained in this figure following.

The plaine smooth Cannon.



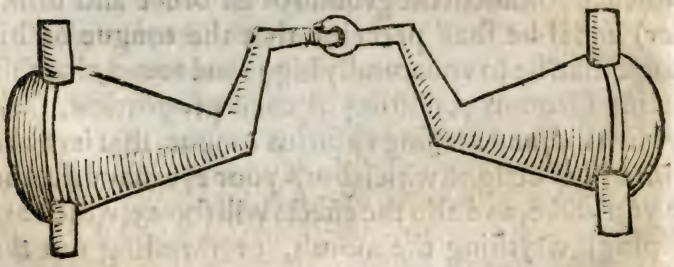
This Cannon ordreth and ſweetneth the Horſes mouth, helpeth to ſettle the head, faſhion the reyne, and bringeth pride and lightnes to his pace: But for aſmuch as Nature is a diuers worke-woman, and giueth not to euery creature euery perfection, but that in euery member there may be ſome imperfection, it ſhall be neceſſarie for the horſeman to haue a diligent eye to euery part of his Horſe, eſpecially to his mouth (whence commeth the ground of all order and diſorder) and if he ſhall perceiue that the tongue of his horſe ſhall be ſo vnnaturally bigge and round, that this plaine Cannon conſiſting of euen proportion, ſhall lye ſo hard, and preſſing vpon his tongue, that it robbe him of his delight, which both your eye may diſcerne if you looke, and alſo the effects will ſhowe, which are gaping, wrything the mouth, or thruſting out the tongue, you ſhall then make your Cannon with aduantage, according to this figure in the next page.

The Cannon of aduantage.



This mouth, and for this purpoſe *La Broue* commendeth; and his reaſon is exceeding good, for it giueth libertie to the tongue, offendeth not the barres, and keepeth the mouth in tenderneſſe and ſweetneſſe, but where he proceedeth further, and for more libertie to the tongue, giueth allowance to the cannon, with the vpſet mouth made in faſhion of this figure.

The Cannon with the vpſet mouth.



To this I can neither out of mine experience nor reaſon, giue any authority, for I haue euer ſince I could

first

first gouerne a brydell, beene mearely oppoſite to all *vpſet mouthes*, *Ports*, *Trenches*, and bytts of crueltie, as holding them rather to be inuented, either to ſhowe caprytchyouſnes, of cunning mens braines, or elſe to buſie the bytt-maker with ſuperfluous worke; or to make the ignorant beleeue there is a curyoſitie in the arte, more then either ſence or reaſon can diue into, as I will declare heereafter more amply; yet if ſuch an imperfection be in the greatneſſe of the horſes tongue that it muſt of neceſſitie haue more libertie then the ſecond figure of the Cannon can allow, I then thinke it not vnfit to make vſe of this other Cannon, made all of one peece; which many years agoe I haue found to good purpoſe, and now finde it by *La Broue* commended to eternall memorie: the figure whereof is this.



This mouth giueth all libertie poſſible to the tongue, preſſeth not the gums, not draweth in the lippes, but giueth that ſpatiouſneſſe to euery ſeuerall member of the horſes mouth, which can be deſired.

Now after you haue made your horſe perfect vpon one of theſe mouthes, which neuer ſhould bee vſed

without the helpe of the Cauezan, then the next bytt you ſhall vſe, and which is the firſt bytt wherwith you ſhould ride your horſe, without any other helpe, is the ſmooth Cannon with the flying Trench made according to this figure.

The Cannon with the flying Trench.



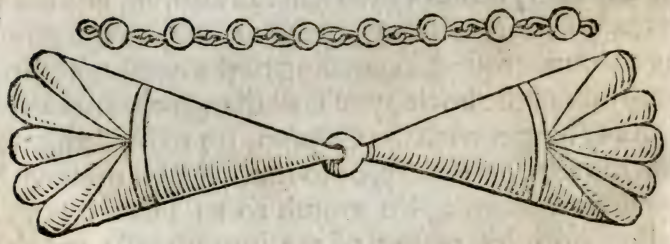
This Cannon with the flying Trench, is of all bytts the onely aſſured beſt, for the finiſhing and making vp of your horſe, for it conſiſteth of as much helpe and correction as any of the former Cannons doe, with the helpe of the Cauezan, and all thoſe helpes and corrections being within the mouth, and both naturall & proper to euery bytt breedes that knowledge and vnderſtanding in a horſe that no other doth: for this flying Trench is to be made in all proportion like a plaine full *Engliſh* Snaffle, hauing at each outward end a round ring, whereunto you muſt faſten your falſe reynes, which falſe reynes in ryding, you muſt hold in this ſort: the left ſide reyne you muſt lay vpon the perfect reyne of your bytt vnder your thombe, the right ſide reyne you

you muſt holde of euen length with the other in your right hand, vnder your rod, and when you will haue your horſe to feele the bytt and Curbe, you ſhall rayſe your hand vp to the top of the Saddle pommell; and when you will ſweeten the horſes mouth by eaſing the Curbe and bytt, you ſhall deſcend your hand to the withers of the horſe: for rayſing your hand drawes vp the reynes of the bytt, and lets looſe the falſe reynes, and putting down your hand drawes ſtrait the falſe reynes, and eaſes the bytt, by which meanes you may keepe your horſe in what ſweetneſſe and temper of mouth your ſelfe beſt pleaſe.

This flying Trench is a great helpe to a Horſe in all his Turnes and Manadges, and a correction when hee refuſeth the exchange of eyther hand: it keepes the head ſtaide, the mouth from wrything, and the lippe from being ſuckt inward to withſtand the Cannon. When your horſe is abſolutely perfect vpon the bytt, both in euery turne of each ſeuerall faſhion, all kind of *Manadges*, ſhort and long, each *Salt*, *ayre*, or other motion aboue ground, according to the nature, abilitie, or aptnes of the horſe, you ſhall then forbeare to ride him any longer with the Cannon, for to holde him to that mouth continually, or to iourney him therewith, would in time bring his mouth to an inſencible dulneſſe, both by reaſon of the ſmoothneſſe and dulneſſe, and alſo for want of a little pleaſant roughneſſe, which ſhould ſometimes in trauell reuiue and quicken the horſes ſences: Againe, though euery horſe ought, and will be brought to perfection, and perfectnes with the Cannon, yet ſhall the carefull ryder during the time of his inſtruction, finde ſuch diuers

tempers of Horſes mouthes, ſome being too tender ingenerall, ſome too hard, ſome tender belowe, and hard aboue, ſome hard belowe and tender aboue, with diuers other infirmities: ſome comming from nature, ſome from cuſtome, and ſome from other euill habits, that he ſhall be conſtrained to trie his beſt wits to finde a bytt ſutable and fit: to amend the faults of which, he ſhall haue plaine vnderſtanding, wherefore to make you acquainted with other byttes, that you may helpe ſuch errors as you finde, I will heere deliuer mine opinion. If your horſe be of a temperate and good mouth, ſweete, ſenſible, and without fault, then the next bytt you ſhall vſe after the Cannon, ſhall bee the plaine *Scatch*: the figure whereof is this.

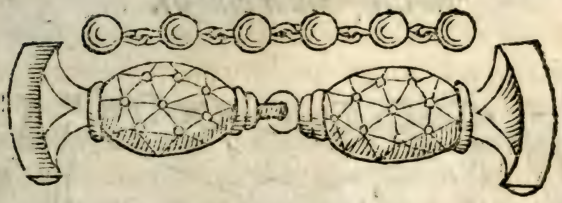
The plaine Scatch with a watring chaine aboue.



But if your horſes mouth be ſhallow and not great, yet very tender and good, then in ſtead of the *Scatch*, the Mellon of ſome cald the Oliue bytt is the next beſt bytt, hauing onely a watering chaine aboue, and thoſe Mellons or Oliues, muſt bee very ſmooth and full of holes,

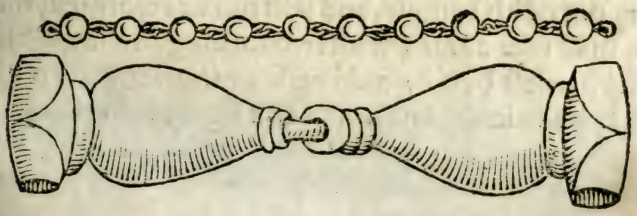
holes which the Horſe will take great pleaſure to ſucke and champe vpon: whoſe figure is this.

The Mellon or Olliue.



But if your horſe doe ſucke in his lippe, to defend the bytt from his gums; if his barres be tender, and his gums a little hard, or if he put out his tongue, you ſhall then take that bytt which is called the peare bytt, whoſe figure is this.

The peare bytt.



But if your Horſe ſucke vp his tongue, haue hard Bars, & a large mouth, or if he defend very much with

his nether lippe, or wryth his nether chappe, you shall then take that bytt which we call the *Campanell*, and it must be round and imboſt; but if his mouth be little and straite, the bytt must be flat: both which shapes are comprehended in this figure.

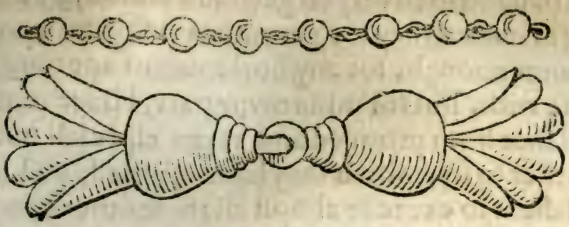
The Companell or Bell bytt.



If your horse haue a hard drie mouth, couets by Lowe reyning to rest, and lay euen the waight of his head vpon his bytt, as if hee disdained to beare any part of his owne burthen, or if he continue the thrusting out of his tongue, and will not be reformed, then you shall take a *Scatch* with two turning rowles, which is the hardest bytt I would wish any horse-man to vse, and is made in the fashion of this figure following.

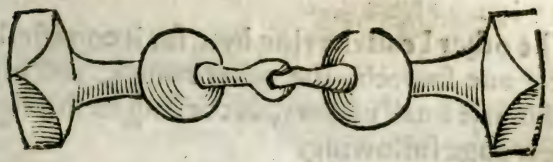
A Scatch

A Scatch with turning rowles.



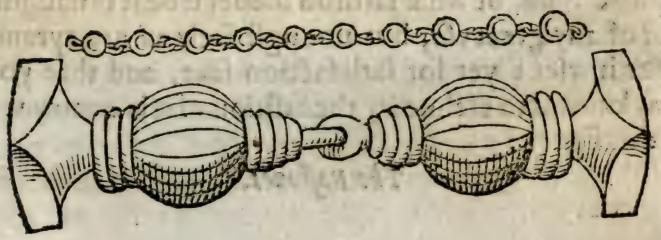
For the same faultes for the which this Scatch with turning rowles is to be vsed, I haue seen some horsmen vse that bytt which we call the *Bastonet* or *Ieine* bytt, which is made with round buttons or great rough ringes, made high like wheeles, and sometimes filed rough like a Sawe; sometime sharpe like the rowel of a Spurre: but of what fashion soeuer it be it is naught, nor of any great vse, but amongst such as are tyrants ouer horses: yet for satisfaction sake, and that you may know it to eschue it, the fashion of it is conteyned in this figure:

The Bastonet.



Of all these bytts, both *Grison*, *La Broue*, and some others haue written very largely, and skilfully, & thinke them (as indeed they are) mouthes sufficient enough and diuers enough, for any horseman to approue any practise with. But for mine owne part, I haue in mine experience both prooued and taken especiall note of two other bytts, which they haue omitted, and haue found them to exceede almost all these other byts, for some especiall purposes. The first of which bytts I call the Ball bytt, or poppie bytt, because the chiefe peeces are made round like a ball, yet smooth and indented like those round heads, which containe the seedes of poppie, the fashion whereof is presented in this figure.

The Ball bytt or poppie bytt.



The other I call the ring bytt, for it consisteth all of ringes, one smooth, the other rough, and mingled with sundrie small players, according to this figure in the next page following.

The

The ring Bytt.



Both theſe bytts are exceeding ſweete and good for a perfect mouth, they make a horſe labour his nether lippe, take delight in the Curbe, and keepes his mouth cloſe: but of the two the ring bytt is the harder, for being all of one equall bigneſſe it preſſeth the tongue and gummes more; and were it not for the moouings of the Ringes, it were a bytt of great extremitie, and might very well haue place of the hardeſt; but being as it is, it is of a good compoſition, and will breed obedience euen in the ſtubborneſt nature. Theſe two byttes I haue found aboue all other moſt excellent for Tracconers, I meane ambling Geldings, or ſmall Nagges, ſuch as are preſerued onely for the vſe of trauaile, or iourneying, and for ſuch men as not profeſſing the Arte of Horſe-manſhip, reſpect onely their owne eaſe, and their horſes patience. For albe the hand be extraordinarie rude, yet it can hardly diſtemper a horſes mouth with one of theſe bytts. Againe, theſe two byttes of all other, I haue noted to be moſt excellent for Coach-horſes, or Chariot-horſes, where the man ſitting farre behinde the horſes, and gouerning them with ſuch a long diſtance, cannot by any

meanes carry so temperate a hand, neither helpe so readily, nor correct so gently, as he which sitteth on the backe of the horse; for by reason of the farre distance, his straynings are more violent, and his eases more liberall; the first breeding in a horse dislike, the latter a will to doe euill: both which these two seuerall mouthes so temper, that I perswade my selfe, the most skilfull Coachman cannot take exceptions against eyther of their vses for his office.

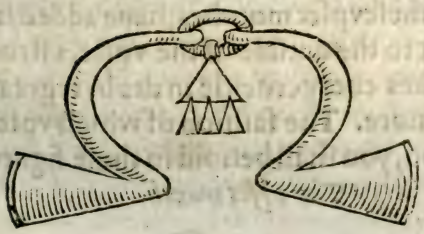
To all these mouthes for byttes, which I haue formerly prescribed in this Booke, which may well be remembred by the name of close byttes, many excellent and singular horsemen, partly out of their practise, and partly out of their Arte and inuention, which euer out of the best knowledges produceth the rarest deuises, haue added in stead of the plights which fold the two partes of the bytte together, another peece in fashion of a round hoope, or a halfe moone, which they call a Port, and sometimes this Port must consist of one peece, and then it is called a whole Port, somtimes of two peeces, and then it is called a broken Port. The fashion of both which are conteined in these figures following.

The

The whole Port.



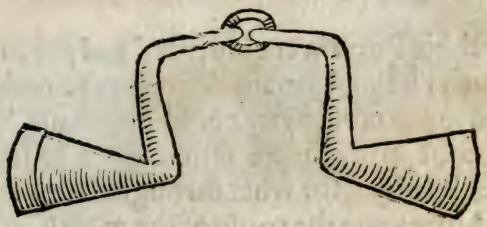
The broken Port.



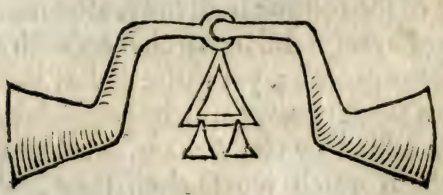
After these Ports were inuented and put in practise, their cruelty being by many degrees greater then could be found in the close bytt, could not chuse but at the first make the horse beare much more tenderly then with the close bytt, for what through the extreame galling the horse vpon the roofe of the mouth, or the bars, and what through the pressing the tongue with the two sharpe corners of the neather ende of the Port; (albee the libertie of the tongue is all the reason men haue for these kinde of bytts) it did bewitch men with an imagination of some profite; yet in the end of the worke, I neuer sawe it turne to any thing but disorder: to these Portes were added by the *Italians* another mouth in steade of them much worse then they, which are called vpset mouthes, for they haue both sharpe corners

ners aboue and belowe,& carrying an euen breadth in the vpper part,conſiſting of many foldings and peeces, hurt not onely in one place, but generally ouer all the mouth. I haue ſeene both of theſe portes, and vpſet mouthes,which to make them more cruel,haue had in the tops of them high wheeles,ſometimes filed rough, ſomtimes made like a ſpurre rowell; bigger then in the Baſtonet bytt, which hath made me admire how men for pittie could bee ſo tyrannous, when the greateſt fault in a horſe is the ſooneſt reclaimed with gentlenes: others to theſe vpſet mouthes,haue added from the eye of the bytt to the outſide of the vpſet,a ſtrong Trench, which makes euery crueltie in the bytt greater then of it owne nature. The faſhion of which vpſets,for your ſatisfaction, you ſhall behold in theſe figures.

The vpſet mouth.



The vpſet mouth and Trench.



Both

Both these ports and vpset mouthes haue receiued allowance both from *Grison*, and diuers other ancient *Italian* ryders, and likewise in these daies, not onely passe vnder the authoritie of *La Broue*, but euen in our best nurceries, or stables of *England*, we shall see of them put in vse dayly, whence of necessitie it must come to passe, that I shall be infinitely condemned, so peremptorily to condemne that which so generally is allowed: to which I must answere as our great Lawyers doe, (which holde contrarie opinion in many cases, how euer otherwise censured in the daies of their forefathers) and I must say, what euer other ryders haue done, I haue found these bytts naught in my practise. But they will say that was either mine abuse in propounding false shapes, or my mis-vse in want of knowledge; to both these allegations I will make no answer, onely to show the euilnes of these mouthes, I will propound my reasons. First all the arguments of goodnes that *Grison* or any other can giue for them, is the libertie of the tongue, which absolutely I denie; the port doth if it be made in his iust compasse, for the two nether ends, almost meeting together, euen presse down the tongue hard to the chaule, with more sharpnesse then any other bytt, except you will haue a horses tongue to be no biger then a mans finger: but say you will not allow it that straitnesse, but that the port shall be much wider: I say, if it be so wide as to giue libertie to the whole tongue, the bytt shall then consist of little or no mouth but the porte onely, which all Horsemen knowe, would be an vnpleasant bytt. Besides this, all Horsemen knowe, that the too great libertie of the Horses tongue, is the first occasion of a horses drawing

vp

vp his tongue, seeking to swallow the bytt, striuing to put his tongue ouer the bytt, and such like: wherfore it is not good to giue the tongue too great libertie. But conclude they had this one vertue, what were it to the many vices which follow: first they gaule a horses bars, and make them insensible, they force a horse to gape, and the outward hart of the bytt doth presse so sore vpon the horses chap, that they either bruse it, or breed in it a numnes, which taketh away all feeling: whence springeth inconstancy of head, rebellion, and flat running away. But you will answere me with *Grison*, that these ports should not be so hie as to touch the roofe of the mouth, and then not to occasion gaping: then I say they cannot be ports at all, nor carry any more compasse then the close byt, whose plights I will stand to it, whensoeuer the cheeke of the bytt is drawne inward, do continually touch the bats: to conclude, there was neuer that horse made or corrected, with these open mouthes, I meane ports and vpsets, but may bee better made and better corrected with one of the close byts before specified. Some peraduenture wil aske me, what, can the ancient *Italian* riders erre in their inuentions? O, no men more grosely, witnesse *Prospero* and his schoolemaisters. Besides I knew a Gentleman of great practise who being wholy brought vp in *Italie*, to the art of ryding, was mearely opposite to all *Chaines*, *Cauezans*, *Snaffles*, *Trenches*, and false reynes, and only would make his horse from the first houre of his backing, with the byt; hauing byts of so many seuerall fashions, as there be faults or disorders in a horse, to his byts I haue seene such rings mounted one aboue another, that a *Germaine* clocke hath not consisted of more confused

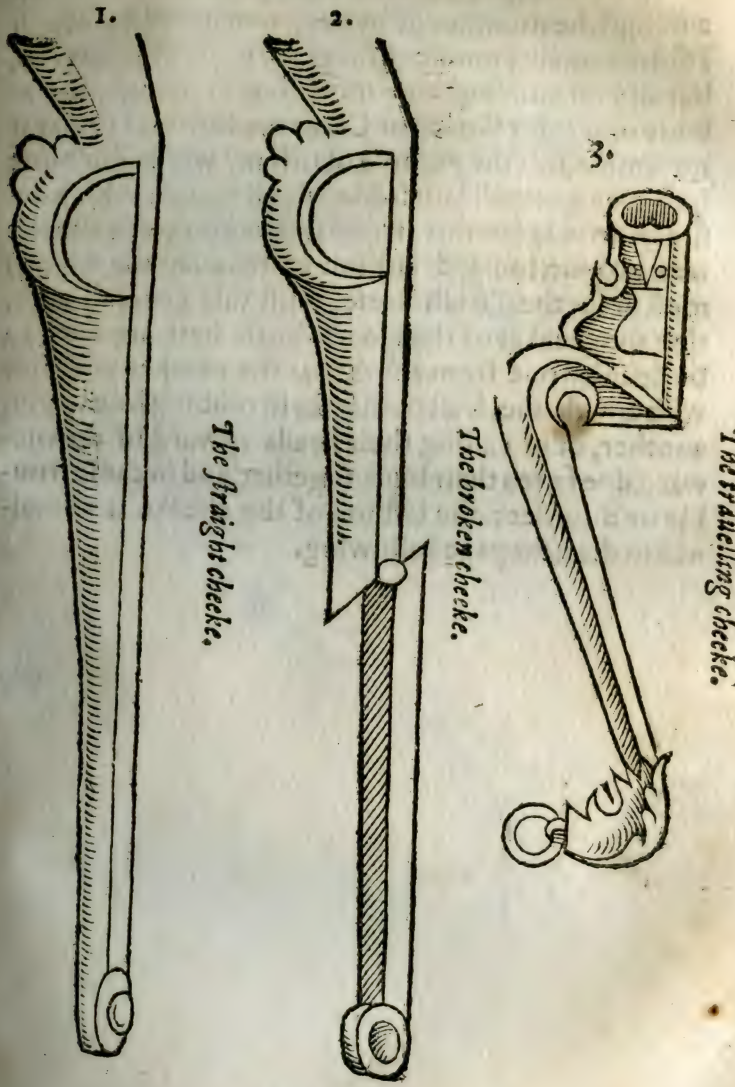
fused peeces: this Gentleman did I neuer see bring forth an abesolute perfect horse. But for run awaies and mad Iades, I haue knowne him haue seauen or eight in his charge at an instant. But now leauing the praise and dispraise of these bytts, to your experience in practise: I will proceed to the cheekes of bytts and their proportions. First, albe there be many fashions in vse, & sundry figures set forth by *la Broue* & some others, yet I will only recommend vnto you but three: The first is a straight cheeke, which indeed is the first cheeke, I would haue a Coltweare, for it putteth vp the horses head, giues him sence of the Curbe, and breeds a constancie in the carryage of his fore partes: the second is the broken cheeke, which is to be vsed with the flying Trench, and when you lay aside your Chaine or Cauezan, this cheeke as it holdeth vp the necke, so it bringeth in the moosell and boweth the crest to the best fashion of the reyne: the third is the perfect or trauelling cheeke, which is to be vsed when a horse is at his full perfection, & made complet, so as he is either for trauell pleasure or seruice; this cheeke carrying a larger compasse then either of the other, bringeth in the head more then any other, & giueth a more comely grace, both to the horses reyne, & the eye of the beholder: for tis to be noted that the more compasse a byt carryeth, the more it compasseth and bringeth in the horses head; and the straighter the cheeke is, the more it putteth vp, and aduanceth both the head necke and muzzell. Now from these three cheekes are deriued diuers other cheeks, as the straight cheeke broke in two parts, and sometimes three parts, or the compasse cheeke broken in 1. 2. or 3. parts, and all the breakings made inward, contrary to the breach of the first broken cheeke, end each breach

made

made more inward then other, and all these cheekes are to bee vsed according to the length or shortnesse of the Horses necke, the straitnesse or wideneſſe of his Chaule, according to his pride or euill disposition, to reyne well, which your arte and knowledge must better iudge by your practise, then I by writing can giue any discription.

Now the cheeke considered, which imitating *Grison*, I take to be but from the neathermost part of the eye of the bytt downeward, to the vtmost length of the bytt, you are then to respect the eye of the bytt, which should be halfe a circular compasse of iust proportion or bigneſſe, with the mouth of the bytt, so as it may come and goe without rubbing or sticking: then from the eye of the bytt vpward, to that part whereunto the headstall of the brydle is fixed, which the *Italians* call *Stanghetta*, you are to obserue such a length, that through the shortneſſe, the Curbe doe not fall belowe the round ball of the neather lippe: nor through the length thereof, fasten or binde about part of the bare chap, but lie in his due place, which is to rest vpon the thicke of the neather lippe, where the two neather chappes meete, and make one entyre bone. Now that your eye may giue your eare better instructions, you shall beholde the fashion of the three principall cheekes in these figures following.

Now


1.
2.
3.
The straight cheeke.
The broken cheeke.
The trauelling cheeke.

Now forasmuch as I did formerly showe vnto you amongst the mouthes of byttes, two mouthes which I did not onely commend for great horses for seruice, but also for ambling and trauelling Geldings, and aboue others for Coach or Charryot horses, I thinke it not amisse, sith the purpose of this my whole discourse is to giue generall satisfaction to all people which desire knowledge in this arte, to showe you heere also the true proportion and fashion of that cheeke wich is most fit for the Coach-horse, with this generall note, that the cheekes of the Coach-horse bytt are euer to be deuided one from another at the neather end, not with any chaine, least the horses in rubbing one vppon another, or in casting their heads vpward or downeward, doe fasten their bytts together, and so cause trouble or disorder: the fashion of the cheeke is contained in the next page following.

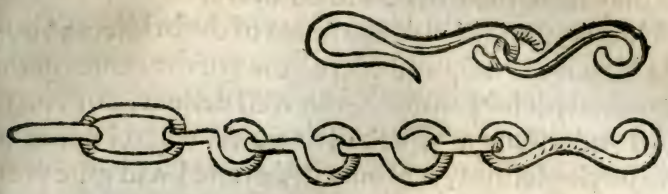
The

The Cheeke for the Coachbytt.



Hauing thus shewed you both the mouthes and cheekes for byttes, it resteth now that I shew you the true Curbe and the nature thereof. Of Curbes, diuers horsemen haue inuented diuers fashions, as some of Square linkes, some of square peeces fyled sharpe with pointes like Diamonds, some made all of one peece of yron and ioyned to the porte within the mouth of the horse, and sometimes those whole peeces of yron hauing sharpe prickes of yron, which as the bytt is drawne vp, runne into the chappe of the horse: all which being cruelties and tortures, both barbarous and vnnaturall, I both condemne and loath exceedingly as being onely brought foorth by error and absurditie. The true Curbe therefore which is in vse and practise with all good horsemen, is that which is made of round linkes of yron, foulded according to the fashion of the Romaine S. and the bigger such linkes be, the better euer they be, and doe lesse hurt & gaule a horse then the small Chaine, which thtough his smallnesse, when it comes to be vsde with a rough hand, doth euen cut as it bindeth, or being vsde with a moderate hand in his oft motions, or euen with the plying of the horses lip which is the only token of a good mouth, it many times frydgeth off the haire, I and sometimes the skinne from the horses neather chap, by reason whereof there many times growes vnder a horses chinne, hard kirnels, or tough skinnes, which takes away both the sence and vse of the Curbe. The fashion of the perfect Curbe and hooke you may behold in this figure following:

The Curbe and Hooke.



Now wheras ſome horſemen giue aduiſe, that when the Curbe hurteth or galleth, either to ride without a Curbe, or elſe to make a Curbe of thick double Inckle, or a Fillet Lace well platted together. For mine owne part I diſlike them both: for firſt to ride without a Curbe, is cleane to take away the true vſe of the bytt, and to make the horſe take ſuch an euill habit or falſe cuſtome by ſuch needles forbearance, as wil aske much labour after to redreſſe, and looſe much time, which might be ſpent for the horſes better knowledge. Then for this Curbe of Inckle, it is both in nature and feeling ſo contrary to the perfect Curbe, that where it ſhould prepare a horſe for the wearing of the Curbe, it rather makes him vtterly ſo forſake it, & neuer after conſtantly to endure it, how euer labored by the beſt meanes whatſoeuer: therefore if there be any ſuch gallings in the place of the Curbe, I wiſh the horſe-man rather to annoint it: and by his owne temper of hand, and the vſe of the Cauezan to heale it, then by forbearance of the Curbe, or making ſtrange Curbs, hazard worſe euils: And to obſerue this generall rule, that a man muſt not lie halling and pulling at the Curbe, but bring his horſe

to such a temper, that resting his head vpon the byt, he may feele the Curbe and no more.

Of the calues of the legges.

Hauing thus shewed the helps of the bridle, and byt, the next is the help and corrections of the calues of the legges, which I can neither so well deliuer, nor you so well vnderstand as you shall hereafter when I come to the horses lessons; yet some little taste I will giue you: you shall vnderstand that when you either trot or gallop any large ring, manage, or set any turne whatsoeuer, looke of what hand you doe any of those rounde ayres: as for example, if you would turne on your right hand, if your horse sticke, and doe not bring his bodie round and close together, but cast out his hinder partes, if then you giue him a stroake with the calue of your legge vpon the left side next behinde the formost garth, it is then in nature of a correction, and giues the horse warning of the Spurre, which doth second if amendment be not: if when your horse doth stoppe, and you by leysurely laying the calues of your legges to his sides make him aduaunce (which is an ornament to his stopp) in that place it is taken for a helps; if when you set any loftie or swift turne, you doe couertly lay the calue of your legge to his contrarie side, at or vpon euery aduancement; it is then also taken for a helpe; but this must bee done to a ready horse, with such artificiall closenesse, that euen the finest eyde beholder must hardly perceiue the motion, otherwise it is grosse and vncomely: for in that I consent with *La Broue*, that these farre fetcht motions with the legges, these slancke spurrings, and vniuersitie riding, euer digging in a horses sides, are the most prepostorous motions that can be seen in a horseman,

and

and are with vs of too great vse here in England, and chiefly with some who take vpon them the skill of instructing others.

Next this, is the help of the stirrop, and the stirrop leather, which how euer it be neglected is yet doubtlesse exceeding good, and helpeth a young horse much ere hee come to knowledge: for if by carelessnesse or neglect, hee either carrie his necke or head awry, if you giue him a good clappe with your stirrop behind the fore shoulder on the contrarie side, it will correct the fault, and put him in remembrance of his lesson. Againe, if in any galloping, manage, turne, fault, or carriere, your horse begin to growe idle, and doe not persue his lesson with sprite and agilitie, if with your feete you doe but ierte out your stirroppes and leathers stiffely, and with a good strength, it shall as much auaile to his quickning, as if you gaue him the euen stroke with both your spurs; and therein is counted a great help: againe, those lertings and thrustings forward with your legges, stirrops, and leathers, are and should be the first motiues to make a horse go forward at his first backing. Of the stirrop & the leather.

The next help and correction is of the spurs, which spurs, although some riders haue fixed a limitation, or prefixed time when they shall be worne, or vsed, yet I am of this opiniõ, that if he be a horsman which wears them, can gouerne both his body and legs, & knowes when to correct, when to help, and when to cherish, that the spurs are to be worne euen from the first breaking of a colt; for be wel assured that the sooner a horse is made to know the vse and correction of the spurs, the freer hee shall be from restiuenesse, madnesse, and Of the spurs.

other franticke qualities: Now to knowe when you ſhall firſt correct a horſe with the Spurs it muſt ſeldom be in the violence or chiefe excerciſe of any of his firſt leſſons, as in trotting the Ring faſt or gallopping: but rather in the beginning when you teach him to go or trot forward; for if from the Stable you trot him through ſome towne, where the fiends ſcars or frights, ſeeming to be fearefull, and loath to paſſe: if after you haue violently thruſt him forward with your feete and ſtirrop-leathers; yet notwithſtanding he ſtill ſtickes, it ſhall then be good for you to giue him the euen ſtroak of your ſpurrs, and thruſt him into a ſwift trot for ſome twentie paces, and then cheriſh him. Thus you ſhall vſe him at leaſt a doozen times in a day, till hee come to both knowledge, tenderneſſe, and feare of the Spurre.

The *Spurre* of all other is the ſeueareſt correction, and is generally vſed in euery leſſon, wherein he ſheweth extreame dulneſſe, too much apiſh wantonneſſe, too fierce couragiouſnes, or too dogged reſtines as ſhall be more amply declared both in his leſſons, and the particular corrections of vices; it is a helpe in euery *Manadge*, *ſalt* and *ayre* aboue ground; and makes them be done with more life and quickneſſe, as likewiſe ſhall hereafter be declared.

Laſtly, for the help or correction of the ground, it conſiſteth in the vſe and treading of the Rings; for if the horſe take not vp his feet nimbly and roundly, then it ſhall be a good helpe for him to be exerciſed vppon deepe newe plowed lands: but if he be too fierce and raging, inſomuch that he will not trot with any temperance or patience, then you ſhall correct him by exer-

ciſing

ciſing him likewiſe vppon deepe newe plowed landes, whoſe ſoftneſſe and painefull labour will ſoone bring him to a calme and quiet riding, with diuerſe other ſuch like helpes and corrections, which ſhall be more largely ſpoke of when we come to the horſes leſſons.

CHAP. 5.

How to correct a horſe that beareth his head or necke awry, and of all vices belonging to the head.

DIuers horſes, partly through the badde complexions, and conſtellation, vnder which they are bred, and partly through the rude and vnskilfull handling of moſt indiſcreete Riders, are many times cumbred, with moſt foule and vnſufferable diſorders, ſuch as are oft times difficult euen to the beſt riders to redreſſe, nature begetting, and cuſtome fortifying their euils againſt the ſtrength of all induſtrie, wherfore that I may as well as I can, direct ſuch as are deſirous of knowledge, through theſe darke obſcurities, they ſhall vnderſtand, that faults ingendred by theſe two euils, haue two ſeuerall remedies; for if they doe proceede from nature, then muſt art correcting the euilneſſe of that nature inſtruct to a better diſpoſition; but if they proceede from cuſtome and licence to do euill, then the libertie taken away, the effect thereof muſt needes periſh; wherefore to my purpoſe: if your horſe carry his head and necke awry, you ſhall firſt as he trotteth out-right, ſtrike him with your contrary ſpurre on the contrary ſide, and withall carry the reyne of the bytt

on

on the contrary side somewhat shorter then the other: and if at first it auaile not, you shal then carrie the calue of your legge close to the contrarie side, and at euery foure or fiue steps, let him feele the euen stroke of that Spurre. At the vse of which if you finde he any thing amendeth, forthwith you shall take away your legge, and begin to cherish him, that knowing his euill he may eschue his euill; for horses naturally are like schoole-children, vnwilling to do shrewdly, chiefly vnder their ryders. It is very good also, on the contrary side, to giue him a good stroke with your stirrop neare the shoulder, which will make him cast his head the other way to looke at the blowe, which as soone as he doth, ease your bridle hand, take away your foote and cherish him. The vse of which correction ioyned with your cherishing, will in time bring him to the knowledge of his error, and when it is once knowne, it is also reclaimed: to these former corrections, would also be added the correction of the rodde vpon the contrary shoulder, for to some horses both are little enough to awake their remembrance: to these corrections you shall also adde now and then a sharpe and sudden twitch or two with the contrary reyne of the Cauezan, which will bring him to as suddaine an apprehension of that fault, as any other correction before shewed, euer obseruing vpon the least imagined amends, not to forget to cherish him. It is good now & then also to giue him a twitch or two with the contrary reyne of the flying Trench, which will awaken him, and if it be but only in a gaze, yet it will make him looke straight, which you must carefully watch, and in the very instant of his straight looking, not forget

to

to cheriſh him. But if nature and vſe haue ſo incorporated this vice in him, that all the corrections auaile not, then ſhall you carry him to the rings: and if it be ſo that he carry his head and neck to the right ſide, then ſhall you trot him about in a ſwift trot on the left ſide, ſome 23. or 30. times without intermiſſion, according to the ſtrength and ability of the horſe; and as he trotteth, labour his contrarie ſide with the calfe of your leg, the reyne of the Cauezan, and of the flying Trench, and if he be come to that leſſon, it ſhall be moſt good to labour him ſome quarter of an houre together in the *Incauallare* and there is no queſtion but by theſe means (and theſe corrections, ioyned with a watchfull eye and minde, to cheriſh him at euery well doing) he will in very ſhort ſpace be brought both to the perfection of head and necke, and to carry all his body in an euen proportion: in all which corrections I would haue you mingle the vſe of the ſpurre but now and then; yet when you ſtrike, to ſtrike freely, and ſoundly, for the tickling or fridging of a horſe with the ſpurre is a groſſe fault, and doth breed manifold diſorders.

But if it be ſo that he wrieth onely his moozell, that is his noſe and mouth awry, and vncomely, except he haue taken it vp of a long cuſtome, the very bearing of the contrary reyne of the bytt ſhorter then the other will amend it; but if it faile, I would then haue you gyrde his chappes cloſe together with a Muſroll, that hee may not mouth or writh them, and then in ſtead of a rod ride with a good hand cudgell, & of that ſide which he wryeth his mouth, beate him with your cudgell, yet ſo moderately, that you neither bruſe nor hurt his chappes. And after ſuch correction, ſtill to carrie

Of the wrything of the moozell only.

rie your cudgell in his eye of that side which hee most writheth: This means applyed but two or three daies, will without all faile helpe any horse from his fault, I haue seene some horsemen vse another course I stand doubtfull of the goodnesse; yet this it is; they haue put three or foure little sharpe nailes on the inside of the Ports-mouth of the contrarie side, and likewise three or foure nayles in his Musroll, and as many in his head-stall al, of the contrarie side. These nayles you may keep hidde from sight at your pleasure, either if your head-stall be of double leather, or if you set them in a thinne plate of Iron, not so broade as the headstall, with these ride your horse about some fortnight, and it will reclaime him: yet I am very doubtfull of this remedie, because there is no end of the correction, nor shall the horse when he obeyeth your pleasure, finde any ease of his punishment; by which not knowing his fault from his well doing, he shall the longer continue in his euil.

If a horse reyne not wel

But if your horse carrie out his nose, and reyne not well, how euer any man defend such carriage, yet euen the iudgement of our sightes, and a world of reasons purposeles to repeat, assures vs of the contrary. Wherfore when your horse hath taken vnto himselfe any such fault, or vse, you shall first drawe in your bridle hand, against which if he rebell, you shall then holde your hand at that certainty, and with striking him with your spurres one after another, giue him knowledge of correction: and if vpon the correction he offer to presse forward, you shall clap your right hand vpon the midle of his crest, and hold his necke downe hard, & draw your left hand vp a little straiter: this doing 3. or 4. times together, you shal find he wil bow his neck,

and

and a little put in his nose; vpon the instant perseuerance whereof you must not forget to cherish him, but if out of his melancholy or flegmatique complexion, he withstand and rebell against this correction, you shall then compell him to goe backe eight or ten paces, and then trot him forward againe, then backward againe, and forward at the least a dozen paces together. This is a most ready remedie for this error, but if stubbornenes haue taken away the benefit of this, you must to these corrections adde the benefit of your bytt, which must be made of more compasse, as consisting of at least three broken descents all broken inward, vpon which kinde of bytt it is impossible for a horse to stay or settle his head but he must needs bring in his nose, and though at the first out of stubbornesse he may seeme to carry his head of himselfe without the help of the bytt, yet after long exercise and wearinesse, he will be forc'd perforce to bring in his nose, and rest vpon the bytt. But if contrary to this vice, he haue taken a custome to duck downe his head, when he standeth still, which is a most vncomely sight yet very incident to diuers horses, You shall then vpon your stop, hold both the reines of your bytt, and of your Cauezan firme as at the stop, and by pressing your feete stifly forward vppon your stirrops, holde him that hee retyre not backe, and if then he offer to ducke downe his head, you shall then giue him a good chocke both with your brydle and Cauezan. After which if hee offer the like againe, you shall then giue him a stroake with your spurres, one after another, but if he be of a hot and chollericke nature mad and furious, you shall then vpon euery correction instantly cherrish him, that

Of ducking downe the head.

that he may vnderstand you correct him, not for going but for some other disorder in his going: and this shall not onely detaine him from striuing against his bridle, or running away, but also giue him so easie an apprehension of his fault, that hee will in very short space amend it, but if he haue taken such a generall custome of ducking downe his head, that euen in his ordinarie trotting, or galloping, or going, he wil still vse the same; you must then leaue exercising him in any lesson whatsoeuer, and onely pace or trott him fairely forth right, neuer giuing him the least taste or feeling of any correction, till he duck downe his head; in the very motion whereof, giue him the euen stroke with both your spurs, and a good chocke in the mouth with your bridle hand, that he may vnderstand his fault proceedeth from his mouth: which done, pace him fairely forward againe, and as oft as he shall offend, vse this correction, and feare not but within three or foure dayes hee will be sufficiently reclaimed. Many other corrections I haue seene for this fault of much more cruelty, but they haue neuer tasted well in mine experiences, as for example: I haue seene some, that for this fault haue made the Curbe of their bytt all of one peece of yron, and the one end thereof fastned within the mouth of the bytt, then haue they had that parte which lay without vpon the lip, and full of sharpe prickes, which when the horse hath offered to thrust downe his head, by drawing or holding the reynes in one constant fashion, the prickes haue run into his chaps, by the sence of which torment, the horse hath beene reclaimed, the reason I confesse is probable enough, yet where more lenitie will serue with as little labour and lesse cost, there I

wish

wish rather for the forgetfulnes then the vse of these cruelties, and for mine owne part I haue neuer found the horse which the former corrections would not order and bring to a most setled constancie.

CHAP. 6.

How to correct a Horse that doth ouer-reach or strike one foote vppon another.

OVer-reaching is a fault incident to young horses, weake horses and euill trotting horses; it is also begotten by the vnskilfulnts of the ryder, when at the first handling he will thrust the Colt into as swift a trot as he can possible without respecting the horses strength or naturall skill in trotting; by meanes whereof the Colt striuing to goe beyond his ordinarie manner, is inforced to ouer-reach and clap his feet one vpon another, which in small time growes to an euill custome, whereas euery Horseman before hee backe a Colt, should haue a diligent eye to his naturall pace, and if it be comely and short, then he may venture more boldly, to enter him into a swift trot, which will but make him stretch out his legs, and bring lightnes to his body, but if his trot bee long and weake, then must he by any meanes keepe him to a slowe trot, and feeding him with his hand, which euen in the instant that it giueth libertie, it must restraine it againe, bring the horse to a pride in himselfe, and a shortnesse of pace. He must also refuse to let a weake or loose trotting horse come vppon deepe plowd lands, till he haue attained his pace, and brought it to a conuenient shortnes, but if it so happen (the reason not

not being to be disputed on) that your horse doth ouer-reach, and it is now your office to redresse it, you shall first (hauing shodde him with shooes extraordinarily short at the heeles) bestowe some three or foure dayes labour in bringing him by the tenderneſſe and gentle vse of your hand to a soft and slowe trot; in which slow trot, you shall with the help of the calues of your leggs the sound of your voice, shake of your rodde ouer his eares, and now and then with the euen stroke of both your spurres so quicken and stirre him vp, that partly out of courage partly out of feare, he may gather vp his feete so thicke, and set them downe also so thicke, that he may seeme to trot as he standeth, and gayneth no ground, which vse will bring him to such a shortnes of treading, that within a little space he will cleane forget his ouerreaching, and looſe long trotting; but if he be of so dull and heauie a disposition, that this agilitie and quickneſſe will not be forc'd into him, then it shall not be amiſſe if you digge your large ringes full of stayres and degrees, such as you shall see worne by tracke of horses in the foulest winter waies, and for a weeke or thereabouts onely exercise him in the same, and as he growes cunning in them, so to increase the swiftneſſe of his pace. I haue not approued any correction better then this, for this fault. To ride your horse in a hard ground that is very full of thistles, or amongst short *gorſſe* or *whinnes* is exceeding good, both to remedie this euill, and to make a horse trot loftilie and cleanly, for it will euen make a naturall ambler to trot. As touching the strowing of your tinges with stones of all sorts, therby to take from him his ouer-reaching, I am much against it, for there is no reason leades the vse,

and

and sure I am, there be many euils which pursue it, as namely the brusing or tearing of his hoofs, the beating him vppon the neather ioynts; which would not onely bring foorth windgalles, but also lameneſſe; and the incertaintie of his foote-hold, which to the weakenes of his pace will bring not onely stumbling, but also falling. And thus much I thinke sufficient for the amendment of this fault.

CHAP. 7.

How to correct the euill motions in a horse, which are shewed by the cariage of his head or eares, or other outward signes.

DIuers horses when they are corrected for any fault, and especially with the spurre, will shake their heads; which is a signe of much malitious doggedneſſe, and desirous of reuenge; which when you shall perceiue, immediately giue him the euen stroake of your spurres, and if he double his offence, doe you also double your correction, not giuing ouer till you haue got the conqueſt; and to that correction mingle two or three good strokes with the bigge end of your rodde, vpon his head betweene his eares, but if you perceiue that he pricketh forward one of his eares and clappeth the other close to his necke, be then most assured he intendeth some mischiefe: as to plunge, to byte, to strike or to lye downe, which to preuent, omit not to interrupt him, by giuing him a sound stroake on the contrary side to that eare which he most mooueth,

with your spurre, and if he instantly rayse not both his eares together, second that stroake with two or three moe, that your correction going beyond his frenzie, you may turne his sullennes into fearefulnes: it shall not be amisse if to these former corrections you adde the terrour of your voice by threatning him with a lowde voice; and presently vpon his amendment both conuert your corrections to cherrishing, and your thretnings to sweete language.

Now you are to take this obseruation euer with you, which is, that you be sure when he vseth any of these motions, that they doe procede from the sullennesse and euill habit of his dispositiõ, complexion or ill instruction, and not from other second causes: as if at the time of the yeare a horse be stung with flyes, or a flye chance to get into the horses eares, if it be so that the headstall of the brydle shall hurt him about the top of the head, or about the rootes of the eares, or if the Saddle shall wring or pinch his backe; or if you shall ride so close with your heeles that your spurres tickle him vpon the sides, there is not any of these causes but will make a horse shake his head, lay downe his eares, and show these frowning countenances of much sullennesse; which if at any time you finde, doe but remoue the cause, and the effect will little or not at all trouble you, which if it doe, you may soone either by thrusting him rouudly forward, or with the euen stroke of your spurs, put such toyes out of his remembrance.

If either in your trauelling, marching, or conferting amongst other horses, your horse shall be so rammege and vnruely, that he will not indure their companie, but fall a whynning, byting and striking, you shall immediately

mediately vppon any of those offers, giue him the euen stroke of your spurs, doubling it so oft as his frantick disposition shall giue occasion, to which correction you shall adde the terror of your voice, and in great extreamity the stroke of your rodde betweene his eares.

La Broue is of opinion, that to take from a horse this fault, and to breede in him an acquaintance and familiarity both with other horses and the vse of trauell, that it is very good now and then to hunt your horse amongst other horses, & sometimes to follow the chase. Questionlesse it cannot doe amisse in his sence, and his reason is very well to be allowde of, for hee doth not meane our English manner of hunting, but the French manner where the chase is neither so swift, so paineful nor so long induring as ours heere in *England* are: for to take a horse in the fulnesse of flesh and fatte kept; in the height of pride and ease, and runne him but one sent after our English houndes, and amongst our hunting horses; beleeue it he shall be the worse for it the whole yeare after, albe his keeper performe his full office and dutie: but the meaning of *La Broue*, is moderate exercise and trauell, either in hunting or otherwise amongst other horses, according to the abilitie of the horse brings a horse from such vilde cotruptions of minde and nature, and to such peaceable acquaintance with other horses, that neithet in trauell in the land of peace, nor in seruice in the warres, he will showe any barbarous or rude disposition.

CHAP. 8.

Corrections against restifenes, and the seuerall kindes thereof.

REstifenes proceedeth from two causes, *Nature* or *Custome*, *Nature* as if the horse be of base and vilde spirit, or of too stout and couragious feirceneſſe: *Custome*, as from the tolleration and sufferance of the vnskilfull ryder, who either wanting knowledge how to correct, or valure to dare to correct, fortefies by his ignorance or cowardiſe, thoſe errors in the horſe, which with much arte and difficultie are reclaimed. Now for naturall reſtifeneſſe, that which proceedeth from baſeneſſe, is when a horſes exerciſe exceedes his owne will, or that hee is a little wearyed, foorth of faint ſpirithe, immediately giueh ouer, and will doe iuſt nothing. That which proceedeeh from pride of courage, is when any labour exceedeth his owne appetite, he immediately falles to plunge, ſtriking, byting or ſuch like, thinking to eaſe himſelfe by the diſeaſe of his ryder: as for thoſe plungings, or leapings, which a horſe doth vſe at the firſt mounting, I holde them rather to come from ignorance then reſtifneſſe, and are ſoone amended. Cuſtomary reſtiueneſſe is when a Horſe findes his ryder affraide of him, and that hee rather ſuffers him in his euill, then dares to puniſh him, from whence the horſe takes ſuch ſtoutneſſe, that what hee will doe hee will doe, and more he will not doe, euen in diſpight of his Ryder. Of theſe kindes of reſtiueneſſe that which comes of cuſtome is the worſt, becauſe it addes as it were

to

to these another worse then any; that is, when naturall restifnesse, and customarie restifnesse meete both in one subiect, and so ioyning both their forces stretch art to his highest knowledge.

Wherefore to begin first with such horses as are restife out of the basenesse of their natures; if such a one you chance vpon, and that he will not by any meanes goe forward, you shall then lead him to some straight wall, and there mounting his backe, offer to put him forward, which if he refuse to doe, you shall your selfe sit still without offer of correction, & make some standers by with long poales beate him about the thighes and legges, rating him with their voyces without ceasing till he goe forward; which assoone as he doth, let them leaue striking, and begin you to cherish him; in this sort let him pursue him from one onde of the wall to the other seauen or eight times together at thy least, vntill such time that with the very motion or thrusting forward of your legges, he will freely and of his owne accord goe forward, And if at any time during this exercise, he shall cast his buttockes or hinder legges from the wall, you shall forthwith cause the standers by with their poales to beate him about the houghes till he carrie his bodie euen. It may be at the first rather then he will goe forward, he will runne backward; but respect it not, & let the standers by vse still their correction, till he take his way according to your own fancie: which done, light from his backe, cherish him, and giue him something to eate, and so lead him to the stable, where after he hath rested two or three houres, take him out againe, applying him as before: and doe thus three or foure times a day for the space of four daies at the least

Of restifnesse comming of base nature.

and there is no doubt to be made of his relayming; but for the vse of this in the plaine field, or vppon newe plowed ground, I holde it altogether prepostorous and against Art, albe *Grison* agree with it; for the plaine fielde giueth too great libertie for other as grosse disorders: and for the new plowed ground, the horses fault proceeding from weakenesse, and faintnesse of nature, that were euen the way to make him growe desperate in his faintnesse; yet thus farre I will excuse *Grison*, that in his dayes I thinke the vse and benefite of the straight wall, was either not knowne, or at least not practised.

Now where as some horsemen in reclaiming such horses vse al violent courses, neuer ceasing beating and striking the horse till they force him to gallop and run euen to the vttermost of all his force: this I dislike as much as the other: for whereas in these cases of restifnesse a horse shold haue the vnderstanding of his fault giuen him in the plainest manner that might bee; these violences take both from the horse the apprehension of his euill, and from the man patience to deliuer the cause of his euill. Other horsemen I haue seene, and it was the auncient practise of olde *Clifford*, to tie a long cord, platted fast in the haires to the sterne of the horses taile, and when the horse refused to go forward, to haue a stander by to pull at the cord with all his force, as if he would haile the horse backward, whereat the horse out of his doggednesse, rather then he would be haild backe, would presse forward, which as soone as he offred to doe, the by-stander let goe the cord, and the ryder cherisht the horse. But if it happen so, that none of these corrections will auaile, then I would haue you

vpon

vpon his ſtanding ſtill, to make a ſtander by take a drie wiſpe, and writheit hard about a Poale, then ſet it on a flame of fire, and bringing it before the face of the horſe, thruſt it againſt his buttockes, and againſt his cods, and there is no queſtion to be made, but he will goe forward, and onely to be feared that he will doe it but with too great violence: for fire of all things is that element which a horſe will not indure: you may if you pleaſe, and if his ſtubbornneſſe drawe you thereunto, cauſe ſome ſtander by to prick him in the buttock with a hot burning yron or goad: but the former corrections I thinke will be ſufficient.

Reſtifeneſſe that comes of pride & courage,

Now for the horſe whoſe reſtynes proceedeth from pride, and ſtoutneſſe of courage, (which oft is found in ſanguine and chollericke complexions) you muſt vnderſtand, that his faults are plungings, boundings, and ſuch fierce diſorders: wherfore if at any time you finde him ſo addicted, you ſhall immediately put vpon him the Muſroll, and the Martingall, binding the Muſroll to ſuch a ſtraitneſſe, that when he ſhall at any time exceed the limits of his Trench, and the due proportion of his beſt reyne, hee may forth-with feele the pinching of his Muſroll. And if you ſhall (till this error be reclaimed) take from him the vſe of the bytt and onely vſe of the Muſroll, Martingall, and Trench, you ſhall do much better; for this is a generall rule, and infallible, and I dare very well auerre it vpon many ſufficient and experienced trialls, that any horſe of what nature or qualitie ſoeuer hee bee, I will keepe him from all diſorderly plunging or leaping with the Muſroll, and the Martingall onely, for the reaſon is this; if a Horſeman bee vppon ſuch a reſtiffe horſes backe,

and first see that the Martingall holde the horse to the orderly proportion of his reyne, and then the ryder hold vp his head, so as by no meanes he may thrust it betweene his legges, or win it to such a loosnesse from the riders hand, that he may yarke vp his hinder partes at his pleasure: then of necessity it must follow that the horses head being held at such a constancie, betweene the ryders hand which holdes vpward, and the Martingall which holdes downward, that there is left vnto the horse no possible meanes or abilitie to disorder by plunging. Wherefore to conclude, if his restifnes consist onely in disorderly plunging, there is not in all the Art of Horsmanship, a more infallible remedie then the Musroll, and the Martingall; Other remedies I knowe both *Grison*, *La Broue*, and diuers other Horsemen haue prescribed, which carrie in them sufficient reason, but much care, more toyle, & most losse of time; as for example, to ride a horse in the open field, and if whilest he is in the exercise of his lessons, you shall perceiue that he prepareth himself for such disorders, that then vpon such imaginations you shall begin to rate him, beate him about the head, and vpon the fore-legs, when it may fall out your thought may erre, and then your corrections preceding his faults, may out of desperateneſſe beget a fault the horse neuer thought of, so that in this your too great haste to preuent a fault, you may ingender a fault. And I hold it more inexcusable, when with lesse trouble it may bee preuented; then with the expence and losse of time, hardly reclaymed.

Others vse to ride with a sharpe naile in their hand, with which they pricke the horse continually behinde vpon the rumpe, neuer remouing the punishment, till

the

the horse leaue his stubbornnesse. This sounds in mine experience very grosly, for such compunctions and tortures will euen force the best and most gentlest disposed horse, to leap, plunge, and disorder, and then if a man will suffer a horse of free and stout courage, nay more, compell such a horse to plunge whilest he is able, you shall not onely reclaime him from that vice, but also from all vertues, for it is the hie way to kill a horse; & of this I haue good experience, for I had once vnder my hand a Mare, bred from an excellent race of Coursers, which out of her hie pride and stomacke, was naturally giuen to the vice of plunging, which when I perceiued, and noted the manner of her leaps, which were euer exceeding hie, and so round, that she would haue fetched twentie or thirtie together, all in the compasse of her length, by meanes whereof shee would plunge her Riders so blinde, that not any mau was able to sit her: my selfe (being then young, and somewhat idly witted) intending to trie experiments, I reclaymed that Mare, onely to mine owne vse, and for mine owne Saddle, to which she was as gentle, and as orderly in all vses, as any beast whatsoeuer, but to all other men so deuilish, and full of stubbornnesse, that I neuer sawe any man whatsoeuer hee was, that was able to keepe her backe, insomuch that of diuers Horse-men I wanne diuers wagers; amongst whome, a Coatchman that was a stronge rough Ryder, and had receiued of her two or three falles, whether mooued with passion, or desire of conquest, I knowe not, but when my selfe was at dinner, and the whole household also, he tooke the Mare priuately, with a great Horse Saddle on her backe into a straite-

wald place, which was not aboue seaue or eight yards square, and there taking her backe (as he confest) hee thought she gaue him aboue twentie falles; but he not desisting, did continue till he was able to continue no longer, and in the end maistered her, and made her to trot about gently: but in the next morning I found the Mare dead in her Stall, which amazing me, I opened her with mine owne hands, both to finde the cause of her death, being so suddaine, and also for other experiments, & I found that her rimme was broken, her call cleane consumed, and her heart swelled as bigge as fiue hearts, and the bloud about it as blacke as leat, which signes assured me the cause of her death, but by no means it would be confest, till almost a quarter of a yeare after, when both griefe and furie being spent, the Coachman of himselfe declared the maner of his trial; from whence I conclude that whosoeuer to a horse of right breed, courage, and complexion, will giue or inforce libertie of plunging, he shall (as mine old master worthy maister *Storie* was wont to say) neither euer be good horsman, nor euer make good horse: but if the horses frenzie and rebellious nature, be either so great, that the former rules preuaile not, or the Riders vnderstanding so little, that out of true Arte and iudgement in ryding, he knowes not well how to reclayme him from these plungings, I would then haue him to watch his horse, and for three or foure nights and dayes by no meanes suffer him to sleepe, or close his eyes, which he may doe either by keeping candles light in the Stable, or else by some extraordinarie noyse or other diligence. After he is thus ouer watcht, and that he is readie to sleepe as he standes, you shall

take

take him foorth and ride him vppon some new plowed peece of ground: and if you chuse your houres for this purpose, to be at such time as the nights are darkest, It is a great deale the better: and by this meanes onely I haue seene most desperate horses reclaymed, prouided alwaies that you obserue in the time of your ryding, to ryde him with the Trench, Musroll, and Martingall.

There be diuers horses which haue such euill habits of minde, and be so vnrepressable in the violence of their furies, that when they cannot preuaile by their plungings, eyther to cast their Ryders, or to gayne to themselues that ease which they couet, they will after they haue plunged themselues wearie, fall downe, and in dispight of all strokes, or ordinarie corrections, not stirre from the ground til they haue gotten breath, and then rise vp and plunge as before. In this case, I would haue you as soone as he falleth downe, (as neare as you can possible) to keepe your selfe in the Saddle, and to lie with your horse for companie; then you shall cause presently some stander by, to take a Bottle of drie strawe, and lay it round about the horse, especially about and vnder his nose and face: then instantly to set it on fire round about him; at the sight whereof, there is no question but he will rise vp, and partly out of feare, partly out of furie, take his way forward, which when hee doth forget not instantly to cherish him, nay if he but rise vp onely, although he doe not presse forward, yet forget not to cherish him. By this course onely I haue reclaimed diuers, and seene diuers reclaimed by others: forget not then so oft as he thus offendeth, but thus to torment him and I dare

almost

almoſt aſſure you, this practiſe will not neede aboue twice or thrice for one horſe at the moſt.

There are another ſort of horſes, which hauing plunged, and leapt diſorderly, whileſt they haue either breath, or ſtrength, and not being able to leape any more, will foorthwith ſtande ſtone ſtill and not ſtirre any foote, how euer vrged by the violence of any correction. Remedies for this fault I haue preſcribed in the beginning of this Chapter, where I ſpeake of the baſeneſſe of the horſes nature, for it proceeds but ſeldome of mettle or good courage; yet foraſmuch as euery one in ſuch caſes as theſe, muſt inuent for himſelfe new remedies, where he findes olde precepts faile him, for thence ſprings the proofe of his Arte: and for that there be diuers practiſes at this day, both amongſt vs and ſtrangers, for the amending of theſe faultes, ſome carrying in them apparance of reaſon; ſome no ſimilitude of ſence; yet becauſe I will not be the onely peremptory Iudge, that am the meaneſt of many ſchollers, I will ſhew you both theirs and mine owne, and referre the vſe to the liking of beſt wiſdomes.

It hath beene the practiſe of ſome Horſe-men, when they could not make their horſe goe forwarde, to tie a ſhrewd Cat to a Poale, with her head and feete at libertie, and ſo thruſting it vnder the horſes bellie, or betweene his legges, to make her ſcratch, byte, and clawe him by the Coddes, and other tender partes of the bodie: the ſtrange torment and violence whereof, will make any horſe ſtarte, and runne away. Others haue taken a Hedgehogge, and tying it ſtraite by the foot vnder the horſes taile, the Hidiouſneſſe of the crye of that little beaſte, will make a Horſe not

not onely goe forward, but also runne away violentlie. The like wil the crie of a young whelpe doe, and to say truth, any suddaine or strange noyse, or any instant affright or amazement, will make the horse run away. Others haue vsed a long peece of yron of a foot long, all full of pricks like a Heckel, which being fastned to the crooper, and hanging downe by the horses buttocks, it must haue a long cord made fast to the other end, which cord passing betweene the horses legges, must come vp to the hand of the rider, so that he may at his pleasure torment or ease the horse as he list, and by this instrument, some say horses haue been reclaimed.

Others haue vsed to put a cord with a running knot about the horses stones, and to take the other end of the cord in their hand, and so at their pleasures to pull it straighter, which torment being most insufferable hath made a horse to goe forward violently. This practise I finde allowed both for this and other purposes by *La Broue*, and some other horsemen, but as before I said, so I say againe, that (vnder the reformation of their better knowledges (I neither like nor would haue any man either practise this or any of the other experiments; my reason being, that they are all of that crueltie, either in outwardly tormenting the bodie with extraordinary paine, or inwardly appalling the minde with affright and amazement, that they doe not so much good in redressing that one fault; as hurt in breeding many faults of much more worse nature. For a horse that is of good courage and mettall, when he either feeles any of these suddaine torments, or apprehends affrights, doth not instantly goe forward, for it is against his nature, but first begins to leape,

plunge,

plunge, kicke with one legge, or offer to byte, or such like motions, which when he findes not auaile he, falls euen out of desperation to runne violently away, for when a Horse is payned and neither knowes from whence it proceedes nor for what offence hee is punished, hee hath for himselfe no remedie but plunging, byting and running away, as for example: I haue seene wise men (as they haue beene ryding abroad) to make themselues sport with Fooles, haue made one put a nettle vnder the Fooles horses tayle, but the horse hath not vpon the acte runne away, but first falne to plunging and leaping, and in the end if the torment haue continued, hee hath runne away; euen of the selfe same nature, that the nettle is, the same is the scratching of *cats*, the crying of *hedgehogs*, the howling of *whelpes*, the pricking of yrons, and the pinching of the stones: so that to conclude, it is as good the horse should stand still, as by teaching him to goe, to learne him to plunge, byte, strike and runne away. If then you demaund of me in this case, what it to be done, I answere, if you haue a horse infected with this kinde of restifnesse of standing still, (which continually proceeds from folly) you shall first when you take his backe, after you are well setled and haue paused a while, first by thrusting foorth your feet hard and stiffe vpon your stirrops, you shall offer to put forward your horse; which motion if he will not vnderstand, after you haue done it twice or thrice euery time stronger then other, you shall make a stander by, instantly take him by the head, and leade him forward a dozen paces and more, your selfe and the stander by also cherrishing him as he goes, and with

Of restifnesse which proceedes from folly.

putting

putting your feete forward ſtiffe vppon your ſtirrops, quicken him vp, and make him goe chearefully, which when he doth, the ſtander by may lay off his hand, and you may make him goe three or foure ſteppes of his owne accord, which when he hath done, immediately ſtop him, cherriſh him, and giue him graſſe or ſomething elſe to eate.

In this ſorte I would haue you to labour your horſe three or foure times in a day, for a weeke together, in all which time, I would haue you to vſe no correction whatſoeuer, either of ſpurre, rodde, voice or any thing elſe, that your horſe may by your patience and temperance come to a perfect knowledge of your minde or intention; which he no ſooner knowes but out of the tractabilitie of his owne nature, he is as willing to performe as you to proffer.

After you haue aſſured your horſes knowledge ſo much that he knowes when he ſhall goe forward, then if either out of his churliſhneſſe or reſtiue nature hee rebell and withſtand your minde, then you ſhall correct him with the euen ſtroke of both your ſpurres, with your rodde ouer his left ſhoulder, and with the threatning of your voice: all which, if they doe not preuaile, you ſhall then as before make vſe of the ſtander by who ſhall not onely leade him, but alſo beate him till he performe your minde with chearefulneſſe, which as ſoone as he doth, forthwith cherriſh him, and giue him ſomewhat to eate. By this lenitie and gentle meanes, firſt making your horſe to knowe your minde, and after to vnderſtand the cauſe of his puniſhment for diſobeying your minde, you ſhall make no doubt but hee will performe all you can deſire,

with

with both feare and dilligence, for it is a maxime in horſemanſhip, that as knowledge is the miſtreſſe of arte and obedience, ſo ignorance is the roote of all euill and diſorder.

Now albe ſome horſemen, and eſpecially *La Broue* is of opinion, that this gentleneſſe in reſtrayning reſtiue horſes, is onely to be vſed but to Colts, and ſuch young horſes, whoſe faults onely proceede from follie, and naturall weakeneſſe, for mine owne part, I haue found both by experience, and doe approue it in naturall reaſon; that theſe generall courſes which doe giue a horſe the ſureſt knowledge, and playneſt inſtruction are the onely aſſured meanes to bring our deſires to a perfect end. Other trickes or violences being but like ſuperficiall workes, which may carrie a ſhowe or apparance, but neuer continue or worke in a naturall faſhion: and thus much for the reſtifnes and their ſeuerall kindes.

CHAP. 9.

How to correct a horſe that runneth away, and the cauſe of ſuch euill.

THis vice of running away, how euer other men are contrarily opinionated, yet for mine owne part, I hold it for moſt vndoubted truth, that it euer proceeds from ignorance, and want of diſcretion in the Horſeman, and neuer from any naturall defect or inclynation in the horſe, for it is queſtionleſſe that a horſe taketh no delight in running away, but rather feeleth

offence and dislike; the causes which make a horse to runne away be these:

First, if a horse be of a short fore-hand, that is, haue a short, thicke necke, and a strait chaule, if then his rider (wanting arte) goe about by compulsion eyther of cruell and sharpe bytts, or by tormenting chaines and cauezans, to make him to haue a better reyne then nature or proportion will allow, In this case a horse beeing tormented aboue his power, and neither knowing the cause, nor hauing abilitie to ease his paine, he presently begins to runne away, foolishly thinking to ouergoe that which he carries away with him. Secondly if the Ryder haue an vntemperate hand, which euer pulleth and hangeth vpon the horses mouth, neuer giuing him ease or sweetnesse, the horses mouth will grow so dead and senceless, that when he shall be put to any thing contrarie to his owne minde, he will presently runne away, hauing lost the tendernesse of his mouth, which euer kept him in obedience. Lastly, if the ryder for euery sleight offence in the horse, or to show in him more spirit and courage then he retayneth; when he would haue the horse doe that which neither himselfe nor the horse knowes how to doe, if he fall to spurre and strike his horse in any of these cases, the horse findes no ease but by running away.

If then it be your chance to light vpon the reuersion of any such horse, who by these former ignorances, hath got this fault of running away, you shall first put in his mouth a smoothe worne Trench, and vppon his head a strong Musroll, and a good Martingale, then taking his backe, you shall ride him into some sandie or grauelly way, where you shall at the end of euery ten

or twenty yards, make him ſtop & goe backe, thus ſhall you do for a mile or two ryding, during which time if he take any ſuddaine toy, and ſo run away, you ſhall in his running let the reynes of your bridle ſlack, then ſuddainly drawe them vp againe, then eaſe them againe, and drawe them vp againe, and queſtionles by ſo dooing 3. or 4. times together, you ſhall make him ſtay; the reaſon being rhat his liberty giues him ſuch a perfect feeling of the correction, in one inſtant feeling two contraries, that is Eaſe & Paine, that euen with amazement he will yeelde and ſtay. Where on the contrarie part, that you ſhall continually as he runnes pull and hang vpon his head, not letting him feele any eaſe or liberty at all, the very want of that contrary knowledge, ſhall make him runne away the faſter. This courſe of reclayming a horſe by gentleneſſe, and oft ſtopping and going backe, I haue found much to auaile, and it is very well allowed of by many horſemen, eſpecially by *La Broue*.

But if the mallice of your horſes nature be ſo great, that notwithſtanding the former obſeruations, the horſe ſtill continueth running away, you ſhall then as ſoone as he refuſeth to yeelde to your hand, thruſt him foorth of the hie way vppon ſome deepe newe plowde land, and there euen force him to runne till hee beginne of himſelfe to yeelde, which when you feele, you ſhall then ſtay him, and returne againe to the hye way. Whereas you did before, you ſhall againe trot him twentie yardes, and ſtoppe him, then gallop twenty yardes and ſo ſtoppe him, and ſo as before continue the ſpace of a mile, obſeruing at euery ſtoppe to make him goe backe two or three paces,

in

in which space if againe hee offer to runne away, you shall againe thrust him ouer the deepe landes as before, and doe but obserue this order thrice a day at the least for a weeke together, and there is no question but you shall reclaime him.

Some will obiect that this course which I haue prescribed, is of two great violence, and may indanger both the Horses strength and winde, but they are deceiued; for I doe not giue directions that you shall force your horse to runne ouer deepe landes, so long as he is able to runne (for that were not to hurt but to kill) but till such time as either hee shall yeelde to your hand, or else through his owne wearinesse fall to a slower pace in his running, which if you obserue, be well assured the horse will neuer doe himselfe hurt out of his owne nature.

Againe, this manner of reclaiming a runne away horse, doth neither hurt the horses mouth, or bringes him to other inconveniences, which will aske as much or more labour to amend, then the fault it selfe.

There bee some Horsemen, which when they haue a runne away Horse, will ride him into a straite lane, and there thrusting him into a swift *Cariere*, then comming to the place of the stop, if the horse doe refuse, and offer to runne further, then hee will haue some standers by with long poales to strike the horse vpon the nose and face, and so compell him to stay.

Others will haue wispes of fire vppon their Poales, and thrust them into the horses face, but both these wayes I vtterly dislike, for they breede in the Horse such a cowardlinesse and fearefulnesse, that a horse so reclaymed, will loose his natiue valure, which aboue

all things should bee preserued, and neuer after be brought either to indure the man or any warlike incounter. Againe, I did once see a Gentleman goe about to reclaime a runne away by this meanes; but the standers by in stead of the striking the horse, strake the Rider, & knockt him beside his horses backe; since when I was neuer much inamored of such a practise.

There be others that will tie a string about the horses stones, and then bringing it betweene the horses legs, fasten it about the pommell of the Saddle, and then when the horse runneth away, to drawe vp the string so straight, that by the cramping of his stones to force him to stoppe. This is allowed by some horsemen, yet I cannot but dislike it, for it is nothing but torment that maketh a horse runne away, and therefore me thinkes the increasing of torment should also increase the fault, and that by consequence if this practise will make a horse stoppe, why then spurring him will doe the same, for they be punishments both of a nature, but our experience assures vs no such effectes issues from such practise.

There be others that will haue a strong cord which hauing one end fastned exceeding strongly to the pōmell of the saddle, will then put a very strong pasterne vpon one of the horses hinder feete, then passing the other end of the corde thorowe the pasterne, bring it againe to the saddle pommell; then when the horse runneth away, to pull the corde vp with all your strength, by which meanes you shall take from the horse the vse of one of his hinder legges, and compell him either to stoppe or fall downe, by vse whereof the horse will be brought to forsake his fault, and will stop

at your pleasure. Both this practise and the other next before it, I haue seene vsed by *Prospero*, & finde them at this day allowed of by *La Broue*: for mine owne part, the former I would neuer vse neither this latter, but either when my wit failed me for better inuention, or when for experience sake I trie the nature of euery practise.

But for generall satisfaction, be well assured that if the first precept in this chapter be followed with good labour & diligence, it wil reclaime any run away horse of how vilde condition soeuer he be; yet some perhaps may vrge vnto me this doubt, that horse which out of strength of head, and churlishnesse of nature, runnes away, will not be turned of which hand a man pleases, but the more a man striues to turne him, the faster hee will runne the contrary way, and truely I doe confesse it many times falls out so: which as soone as you shall perceiue, you shall then vse those helps & corrections, which are heereafter deliuered, where I spake of Horses that are harder to turne of one hand then the other; the least of which remedies will amend his fault.

After you haue with the smoothe-worne Trench and martingale reclaimed your horse, you shall then put into his mouth a smoothe Cannon bytt, and vpon his head the Cauezan of one peece, and with them ride him, and instruct him in such lessons, as either he hath not learnd, or is in learning, and if you shall at any time finde him to rest his head too heauily vpon your hand (which is a testimonie of his hardnesse of mouth) you shall then raise the bytt a hole higher in his mouth, and so place it in such a place, where formerly it hath not rested, by which meanes you shall instantly finde in him such tendernesse of mouth, and lightnesse of

head, that hee will performe your will with great obedience; And for mine own part I haue diuers times reclaimed runne away horses, with no other meanes but by rayſing the bytt higher in the horses mouth onely.

Now to conclude, albe there are ſome (which take vppon them the name of Horſemen) which when they haue either hard mouthd horſes, or runne away Iades, ſeek only the amendment of ſuch by the cruelty of their bytts, as by hie ports with Trenches, & rough roules or buttons, or vpſet mouthes with Trenches of vnreaſonable length, with burres vpon the tops of them like ſpurre rowels, and many other ſuch like cruelties, yet I aduiſe all men to ſhunne them as the onely venomes and poyſons of horſemanſhippe, and the greateſt groundes of horſes running away: which the more boldly I affirme, becauſe I haue had ſome hard mouthes, and ſome runne awayes, who hauing by others beene brought to their faults by ſuch cruelties, I haue reclaimed and ridde after with ſmoothe *Scatches*; for it is crueltie which takes away ſence, and lenitie that giues a horſe the beſt feeling. And thus much for horſes that will runne away.

CHAP. 10.

How to correct a horſe that will reare vpright, or come ouer with his Ryder.

THis fault of rearing vpright, although it be naturally incident to many horſes, & that oft times to thoſe

those of best spirit, yet if you shall first ride your horse with the Trench and Martingale, it is almost impossible that you shall finde that vice: and when the horse is of such perfectnesse, that he is fit to forsake the Trench and Martingale, then is his experience such, that you can hardly compell a horse to such a fault: so that I conclude, amongst good Horsemen this fault is of least expectation; but forasmuch as diuers men haue diuers methods in ryding, and that ignorance & libertie may bring a horse to this fault, which albe others beget, yet you may be intreated to amend: You shall therefore when you haue such a horse, obserue this practise following.

If when you either stoppe your horse, and with the helpe of the calues of your legges, compell him to aduance before: or when you would haue him to retyre or goe backe, or in the vse of any other correction hee aduance higher then you would haue him, or aduance when you would not haue him, You shall first, as you drawe in your bridle hand, lay your other hand vppon the midst of the horses creast, and holding him downe hard, restraine him for aduauncing, but if either his aptnesse in aduauncing, or his willingnes to aduance be so great, that you cannot holde him downe with your hand, but that hee will aduance whether you will or no, you shall then as hee aduanceth, with your rodde giue him a good ierte ouerthwart his knees, and threaten him with your voice by saying: *wilt thou villaine, wilt thou?* or such like, and as oft as he aduanceth, so often strike him, not ceasing till hee keepe his feete fast to the ground, neither strike him in any place but ouertwart his knees onely. But if the violence of his

naughtinesse be so great, that he not onely aduanceth contrarie to your minde, but also in his aduancing reareth vpright so hie, that either he commeth ouer backward, or else is in great daunger of the same, you shall then vpon the proffer of such wickednes, and euen in his rising giue him the libertie of his head, and with the euen stroke of both your spurres together, make him leape forward. This being done in due time, and so oft as occasion is ministred, I haue many times seene to reclaime a horse from his fault: but if he be so infinitely desperate that it will not preuaile, you shall then cause him to be ledde foorth into some plaine peece of ground, & hauing a long string fastned to the reyne of his bridle, you shal as he trotteth before you, force him to stop and rise vp before, which if he dooth any thing extraordinarilie hie, you shall then with the strength of your owne hands pull him quite backwards, and assure your selfe, after you haue but giuen him two or three such falles, you shall neuer afterwards compell him to rise so hie, that he will bring himselfe into like daunger.

For a horse naturally, is as much affraide of falling, and as loath to hurt himselfe, as any man is, wherefore when by this meanes he commeth to the knowledge of his euill, he will without any more warning eschue it, and this course in all my practise I haue found most infallible; yet forasmuch as the vse of the Musroll and Martingall, is an ordinarie way, to represse and keepe a horse from this fault, I would wish euery horseman first therefore to make vse of them, and where they faile, then to make triall of those experiments which are before rehearsed. And thus much for horses that will reare and come ouer with their riders.

CHAP. 11

CHAP. 11.

How to correct a horse that will lie downe in the water as he passeth thorow.

OF this fault I haue had great experience and finde it to be most incident to horses of cholericke complexions, or to such as are foaled in the dogge dayes (which is from the midst of Iuly, till after the midst of August) or to such horses as we call Cades, which are those that neuer suck their dams, but vpon their first foaling are put vppe into a house, and brought vp vpon the finger. These horses haue many times this fault of lying downe in the water, with which if at any time you shall encounter, you shall thus seeke to reclaime him.

First you shall faire and softly pace him through some water, not aboue knee deepe, being hard and firme in the bottome: and if you shall finde him offer to stand and drawe in his hinder feet, as if he would lie downe, you shall immediately giue him the euen stroke of both your spurres three or foure times together, and make him gallop thorow the water with all violence; which done, after you haue paused a while, you shall pace him backe againe: and if he offer to lie downe againe, you shall (as before) make him gallop thorowe againe; but if after you haue done thus twice or thrice together, hee notwithstanding still proffereth to lye downe, you shall then cause two or three footemen to follow you into the water, who assoone as he pro-

fereth to lie downe, ſhall ſuffer him; but immediatly when he is downe, they ſhall with all their ſtrength holde him downe, and ducke his head vnder the water, holding it there a good ſpace, then letting him take breath, ducke his head againe vnder the water, and this they ſhall doe twice or thrice before they let him riſe, all the while rating him with their voyces, and ſtriking him with their handes, but not by any meanes with any roddes or cudgels, albe *Griſon* commend them both; for I haue ſeene that courſe bring a horſe into great deſperation. After you haue vſed him thus twice or thrice with the helpe of footmen; there is no doubt to be made, but hee will vtterly refuſe to lie downe, eſpecially when he either ſeeth, or heareth the footemen follow him: you ſhall therefore then cauſe the footmen to forbeare, and onely your ſelfe ride him into the water; yet before you ride into the water, you ſhall make faſt with a ſtrong thong of leather to each ſide of your Saddle-tree iuſt vnder both your knees, two large and ſtrong rings of Iron, ſo that nothing but the rings may appeare without the pannell: to theſe rings you muſt faſten two cordes that are plyant, and will runne and goe eaſily. Theſe cords you ſhall paſſe from the rings thorow the eye of the bytt, Trench, or ſnaffle, then thorow the rings againe, and thorow the eye of the bytt, Trench, or ſnaffle, and then winde the remainder of the cords about the pōmell of the ſaddle, but in any caſe let that which paſſeth from the rings to the eye of the bytt, be ſo ſlacke that it may giue the horſes head all the libertie poſſible, then when you come into the water, if the horſe offer to lie downe, you ſhal ſuffer him, and with all nimbleneſſe you can, auoiding his

his backe, looke vpon what side he lyeth most, and setting your foote against the saddle, pluck the corde on that side, & it will immediatly, not only pluck his head vnder the water; but also keepe him that he cannot rise, then at your pleasure you may let the corde goe, and giue him breath. If thus you shall but vse him twice, I dare venture much of my reputation in horsemanship, he will neuer need it the third time.

Now forasmuch as some authors giue aduise, to put a cord with a running knot about the horses stones, & to crampe him therwith in the water, I for mine owne part vtterly dislike it: for I haue seene a horse so vsed, who through his violence and strugling in the water, hath so pincht himselfe, that his stones haue not onely sweld, but also impostumated and rotted, so that there was no remedy but to geld him, to the great blemish of the horsman; & danger of the horses life; wherfore I would aduise all young riders, to approue no more, but the former practise, till such time as their owne experience and Art can create them better knowledge. If when you haue in manner aforesaid reclaimed your horse from this vice, he shall after, either through the violence of nature, or the forgetfulnesse of the correction, begin to fall to it againe; if vpon the first proffer thereof you doe but put him in remembrance, and quicken him vp with your spurres, and rate him with your voyce, you shall soone perceiue he will amend and eschue it. Yet euer I would haue you to keepe this caution in your minde, that when you haue a horse of such qualitie, to be very carefull of him when you passe thorow any water, and rather to let your correction goe before your fault, then your fault before

your

your correction. And thus much for a horses lying downe in the water.

CHAP. 12.

How to correct a horse that it skittish, and fearefull, and findeth many Boggards.

THis fault of skittishnesse, or fearefulnesse proceedeth from foure seuerall grounds, that is to say, either from nature, youth, custome, or imperfectnesse of sight. If it proceede from nature, then it is found in horses of flegmaticke and melancholie complexions, who out of their owne natiue cowardlinesse will start and be affraid of euery strange apprehension of the eye, & at euery suddain noyse or clamor which their eare shall receiue. To help this defect in nature, you must vse all lenitie and gentle meanes that may be to fortifie & strengthen his valure; so that when he shal finde any affright, as either at windmils, blocks, stones, noyse of drums, trumpets, or such like, you shall not at the first starting either with spurre, rodde or thretning voice, compel him to approach to the thing which he feareth, but with gentle wordes and incouragementes, first make him stand still, and a prettie space constantly to behold the thing he feareth; which done, you shall with the motion of your legges and bodie, by little and little bring him nearer and nearer to the thing he feareth, which if he doe with great vnwillingnesse (if he be a horse that knoweth what correction is) you shall then quicken him vp and make him aproach

Fearefulnesse by nature.

aproach to the thing he feareth, by giuing him now & then the euen ſtroake of both your ſpurres.

Aſſoone as you haue brought him to the thing he feares, you ſhall then make him ſtand by it, and ſmell vnto it, your ſelfe all the while cherriſhing him, then you ſhal make him trott about it, and cherriſhing him, make him againe ſmell vnto it.

But if it be a man who either through the ſtrangeneſſe of his apparell, or the carriage of ſome burthen the horſe feares; then you ſhall intreat the man to ſtand ſtill till you bring your horſe vnto him, who aſſoone as your horſe approacheth him, let him firſt cherriſh your horſe, then ſtroake him, and if there be any graſſe, let him giue the horſe ſome to eate, and by this meanes he will be ſo imboldned, that he will not after be any thing ſo ready to aprehend like amazement. If it bee any ſound or noyſe which hee feareth, you ſhall then acquaint him with thoſe ſoundes by little and little, as firſt in a lowe and ſcarſe-heard ſound, after by degrees, increaſing the noiſe, till it come to the vttermoſt loudneſſe. You ſhall alſo let him ſee and ſmell both the thing which ſoundeth, and him that ſoundes, and by theſe vſes and acquaintances, you ſhall both depriue him of feare, and create in him a conſtant valure, obſeruing alwaies, neither to doe nor ſuffer to be done vnto him any thing ſoddainely or with violence, but after a moſt temperate and modeſt faſhion.

If the horſes fearefulneſſe proceede from his youth and youngneſſe, you ſhall then cauſe an olde ridden horſe (in whoſe valure you are aſſured) to be ridden for a week or a fortnight continually before your colt, who may leade him thorough waters, thwart darke croſſe wayes, Fearefulneſſe by youth.

wayes, and vp and downe the ſtreetes of market Townes, where hee may ſee and heare all manner of noyſes, as the fire of Smithes ſhoppes, the knocking, and beating of Armorers, Puterers, Coopers, Tinckers and ſuch like, with the paſſing too and froe of all ſortes of people, by which vſe and acquaintance you ſhall ſoone proue him ſo valiant, that he will not ſtart for any terror whatſoeuer.

Fearfulneſſe by cuſtome.

But if his fearfulnes proceed from cuſtome (which is, that hauing been formerly ſcar'd, either with ſome vndiſcreet and fooliſh ſights, or with ſome ſtrange noyſes preſented to the horſe, with amazement, whence euer after he feareth, the ſame ſights and noyſes) you ſhall firſt in the Stable, after a gentle and familiar faſhion, preſent the ſame ſights and noyſes vnto him, ſuffering them not all the day to be from his eyes, till with the acquaintance therof, you ſee he neither reſpects or feares them; which done, you ſhall then take his back, and ryding him into the fieldes, cauſe thoſe affrights which he moſt feares to be preſented vnto him, either by the corner of ſome turning lane, vnder ſome hedge, or in ſuch a couert place, as the horſe may not perceiue them, till he be cloſe vpon them; at which if he chance to ſtarte, you ſhall firſt ſtay til he haue throughly lookt vppon his feare, then forcing him with your body, and ſometime with your rod and Spurre, make him approach and touch that which he feared, then cherriſhing him, and trotting him about it, acquaint him but in this manner, three or foure daies together, and his fearefulneſſe will ſoone forſake him.

Fearefulneſſe by euill ſight.

If his fearfulneſſe ſpring from his want of perfect ſight, which is of all fears the moſt incurable: you haue

but

but only two helps to reforme it; the firſt when he apprehendes any feare to ſtay him, and make him with better conſideration beholde the thing he feares, then to bring him by the help of your rodde and ſpurre a little nearer his feare, and then let him gaze at it againe, then ſomewhat nearer, and ſtay againe, and thus by degrees bring him ſo neare that his owne ſight may diſtinguiſh what he feares, which as ſoone as he beholdes and knowes what he ſees, you ſhall ſee him without compulſion preſſe to the thing he formerly feared, and without any amazement, both touch and ſmell to that he feared to come neare. Your ſecond help is, to haue a vigilant and carefull eye to his countenance, as he trauelleth, and when you ſhall perceiue him to pricke both his eares directly forward, and ſo hold them any long ſpace together, or if you ſhall heare him ſnore or cracke in his noſe, or raiſe vp his head to a more extraordinarie height then vſually hee dooth carrie it; vppon any of theſe motions, you ſhall bee aſſured that the Horſe apprehendeth ſome amazement, whereuppon you ſhall inſtantly drawe him to a ſlower place, and with all the encouragement you can giue him, bring him leaſurely to that he fears, and if the horſe of himſelfe offer to ſtay, you ſhall then both with your ſpurres, and a lerte with your rodde, compell him to goe forward, yet but very ſlowly, leaſt taking any affright in the ſwiftnes of his pace, hee by flying out of the way, doe not onelie indanger to hurt himſelfe by ſome ſuddaine ſtraine or ſlippe, but alſo to caſt or miſchiefe his ryder.

Now that you may knowe the true Carracters of theſe feares, and iudge in your riding which horſe is infected

infected with which feare, you shall hold these obseruations. First when you make an old ridden horse lead you the way where there bee manie Scarres and Boggards, if when the olde horse taketh no affright, but passeth quietly on, the following horse taketh Scarres almost at euery thing he heares and sees, both his eyes and eares being the ministers of his feare: when this you note, be assured that horses feare proceedes from the cowardlynes of his nature and complexion: if he follow the olde horse stoutly without any feare, and onely when hee is alone, apprehendeth all manner of feares, then bee assured all his fearefulnesse proceedes onely from his youth and ignorance in those strange sights and noyses which he sees and heares; but if he passe stoutly by many strange sights and stranger noyses, onely at some particular sights and noyses (paraduenture lesse fearfull then those he stoutly endureth) he finde Scarres and affrights, then assure your selfe that his error comes from custome, and that hee hath in former times beene affrighted with those thinges which then he feareth.

If he onely take affright at what he sees, and not at what he heares, starting at showes, but not at noyses, then you shall assure your selfe, that all his feares proceede onely from the imperfectnesse of his sight, and from no other cause.

Of great noyses.

But for as much as some horses may haue more then one, nay all these imperfections, as both being naturally fearefull, young, formerly scard, and imperfect of sight, I would wish all horsmen to haue in their stables, both Drums and Trumpets, which beating and sounding continually in the horses eares, will

embolden

embolden them, and make them hardie against all sounds whatsoeuer; yet you must not at the first let such sounds be heard in their full lowdnesse, but making your Drumme first beate verie softly, after increase the lowdnesse, as the horse increases in boldnesse, till in the ende you may beate the Drumme to his vttermost height. And likewise for your Trumpet, you shall at first make it sound very lowe, by stopping the great ende, either with a Clarin, or with a Gloue, or such like, till the horse bee acquainted therewith-all, and then you shall cause the Trumpet to sounde as lowde and shrill as is possible. It is good also when your horse stands in the stable, to fasten to the head-stall of his coller, in stead of reynes, two long Chaines of yron made with rounde long writhen linkes, which running to and fro through the Maunger, may make a gingling and noyse when the horse mooueth; you shall also sometimes when you ride your horse, cause his head and necke to bee armed with a *Shaferne* and other peeces belonging to a horse: and as you ride euer to be rapping vpon the armour with the great ende of your rodde, that you may acquaint him with the noyse thereof; you shall also at sometimes when the groome dresseth your horse, cause him to bee armed at all peeces aboue the waste, onely his face bare: and being so accounted, to rubbe and dresse him, which when the horse indureth with patience, then the groome shall put vpon his head a close caske, and with it couering his face, goe to the horse, and standing directly before his face, rubbe the horse head and necke all ouer; which done, hee shall giue him bread, oates, or other prouender. When he is thus imboldned,

Of induring armor, staffe, or sw

you ſhall arme your ſelfe at all peeces aboue the waſte, and then taking his backe, you ſhall receiue into your hand a ſmall long Poale, no bigger then a Hawkes Poale, and carrying it vpon your thigh like a Launce, you ſhal ride him into ſome conuenient peece of ground, and firſt vpon the trott, charge it betwixt both his eares; then on the one ſide of his head, then on the other, ſo he may ſee it as it is charged on each ſide of his face, then you ſhall do the like vpon his gallop; And laſtly, as he galloppeth, you ſhall clappe the Poale ouerthwart your breaſt vnder your arme, and ſo break it, that your horſe may heare the noyſe thereof. After you haue practiſed this a good ſpace, and that he ſhewes all liuelineſſe and ſpirite in the action, you ſhall then cauſe another man alſo to arme himſelfe, and being mounted vppon ſome olde ridden horſe, well vſed to ſuch practiſe, he ſhall alſo take another ſuch like Poale, and being come into the field, he ſhall pace himſelfe threeſcore or foureſcore yardes from you, and directly oppoſite againſt you; then ſhall you trott one againſt the other, yet in pathes ſo different, that you may paſſe by each other without touching, or ruſhing one vppon another: and when you come within twice the length of your Poales one of anorher, you ſhall charge your Poales one againſt another, but not touching one the other with your Poales, you ſhall paſſe by each other.

After you haue thus done fiue or ſixe times together vppon a ſwift trotte; you ſhall then doe the ſame vppon the eaſie gallop: and at the laſt, as you come directly one by the other, you ſhall each of you breake your Poales vnder your armes, ſo that your horſes

may

may heare the noyſe or craſh, which done, you ſhall alight, cheriſh your horſe, giue him either graſſe, breade, or ſome thing els to eate, and ſo ſet him vp in the Stable for that time. When your horſe is thus perfite in the vſe of armour and ſtaffe, you ſhall then in the ſtable drawe a bright ſworde, before your horſes face: and firſt making him ſmell to it, you ſhall then rubbe him about the head, face, and necke with it; then putting a Shaferne vppon the horſes head, you ſhall ſoftly and in gentle maner rappe him with the ſworde vppon the Shaferne, and vpon thoſe peeces which are vppon his necke, which when he patiently indureth, you ſhall then with your ſworde in your right hand, mount vppon his backe, and all the way as you trotte to the riding place, you ſhall brandiſh the ſword about your horſes face, ſo as he may ſee the ſword, and now and then with the pommell thereof, knocke vpon the horſes Shaferne: when you come to the riding place, you ſhall there haue an Image made like a man, and armed at all peeces, from head to foote: To this Image you ſhall trotte; and firſt making your horſe ſmell thereto, you ſhall then trott about it, and euer as you pace or trott about it, you ſhall ſtrike vpon it with your ſword, making the armour ſound and ring in the horſes eares, your ſelfe euer cheriſhing and encouraging your horſe in all his exerciſes. This done, you ſhall cauſe an other armed man to mount vppon an old ridden horſe, who comming faire and ſoftly towards you; as ſoone as you ioyne knee to knee, you ſhall with each of your ſwordes rapp ſoftly vpon each others armour, and ſometimes ſoftly vpon your horſes Shaferns, and other armed peeces: then you ſhall cauſe

the other horſeman to retyre backe from you, whome you muſt purſue, ſtriking ſoftly, ſomtimes at the horſe, ſometimes vpon the man: in the ende you ſhall make him turne his backe vppon you, and offer to trotte away, but you ſhall follow him, and ſtrike him ſoftly vppon the hinder parts: which done, you ſhall alight from your horſes back, cheriſh him, and giue him ſome thing to eate, and ſo ſet him vp.

Of fire and gunſhot.

After your horſe is perfite in theſe incouragements, you ſhal then begin to acquaint him with fire and gunſhot after this maner. When he ſtandeth in the ſtable with his head from the Manger, you ſhall take Roſen beaten to fine powder, & lay a good deale in the palme of your hand; then you ſhal take a little peece of a waxe candle, and ſetting it betweene your great finger and your Ring finger, you ſhall throwe the powder thorow the blaze of the Candle, and it will raiſe vppe a great flame, which being done, directly before the face of the horſe, may at firſt mooue amazement in him: But being done fiue or ſixe times together, the Horſe finding neither annoyance by the flame, nor miſlike in the ſmell; he will be careleſſe and ſeeme to delight in the ſight, which as ſoone as you perceiue, then you ſhall in ſtead of the rozen take halfe a thimble ful of Gunpowder, & laying it in the palme of your hand, doe as you did with the rozen. This is onely to acquaint the horſe with the ſmell of gunpowder, which being done, you ſhall then take a piſtoll which goes with a Snaphaunce, and putting powder onely in the pan, and no where elſe, you ſhall ſhoot it off before the horſes face halfe a dozen times together, that he may be acquainted with the ſuddainneſſe

of

of that little noyse, This done, you shall then charge the pistoll, and first shooting it off a prettie distance, from your horse, you shall after discharge it nearer and nearer, till in the ende hee will suffer you to discharge it close vnder his nose, which done, you shall then take his backe and ride him into the open fieldes, where you shall cause some footeman, hauing charg'd a harquebushe with powder to meete you, and discharge it a prettie distance from you, yet iust before your horses face. Then as soone as he hath discharged the peece, let him come to the horse, and giue him either bread or other prouender to eate, then let him charge the peece againe, and discharge it somwhat nearer then he did before, and euery time he dischargeth the peece, let him come and cherrish the horse, and giue him something to eate, till there be such a familiaritie betwixt him and the horse, that euen the horse will take a pride and delight in his shooting, which so soone as you perceiue, you shall vse him to the noyse of shot, both in his trotting and galloping, making him charge the footman home, and to galloppe about him, the Footeman euer obseruing to discharge his peece in the face of the horse; when your horse is thus made perfit for the indurance of the shot, you shall then when you ride him, abroad, make some stander by to flourish an enfigne before him, and then comming towards the horse, set the enfigne so as the winde may blowe the silke about the horses face, the enfigne bearer all the while with his hand cherrishing and fortefying the horse to indure the ratling and weauing of the silke about his eares, which when constantly hee doth, then hee shall take vp the enfigne, and flourish it both about the

horse and your selfe, then setting the staffe downe cherish the horse againe, and giue him somewhat to eate; your shall also encourage you horse verie much, both to this and many other such like strange sights, if as you ride you doe but rattle papers about your horses eares, or any other stuffe, which maketh the lowdest noyse. And thus much for the correction of affrights, and fearefulnesse.

CHAP. 13.

How to correct a horse that is dull of spirit, dull of the spurres, and slouenly in his trott.

SO soone as you haue tamed your Colt, and made him that he will receiue with patience both the Saddle, bridle, and their ornaments, and the Ryder and his postures, and that he will onely walke forward (as not knowing any other lesson) you shall then enter into iudgement of his nature and condition, which you may discerne in his first backing by these carracters. If you finde him light of head, so that hee will carrie it by his owne supporte, and not by the assistance of your hand, and that the tenderneſſe of his mouth disdaineth the touch or feeling of the Trench, if hee be more willing to trott then to walke, to gallop then to trott, or more willing, to bound and leape, then either walke, trott or gallop, if you finde that the quicke motion of your bodie, the

stirring

ſtirring of your legge, or the ſound of your voice, are as great motiues, as either ſpurre or rodde; if this you finde, you ſhall conclude in your iudgement that hee is a horſe of good conſtitution of bodie, light, tractable, valiant and of the worthieſt diſpoſition, ſo that you are by your owne lenitie and temperate arte, onely to ſeeke to moderate and keepe ſuch good ſpirit in his height of goodnes by repreſſing it, till age and ſtrength ſhall affoord better abilitie, and without further ſtriſe or toyle proceede to thoſe leſſons which are fit for a horſe of his courage, which are the large ringes and other leſſons of ſuch like qualitie.

But if you finde your Colte (at firſt backing) to be of a contrarie nature, that is to ſay, of heauie head and countenance, ſuch as your ſtrength ſhall ſooner bee wearie to lift vp, then hee to ouer burthen; and of a ſpirit ſo flemye or melancholly, that he will rather refuſe to doe, then want power to doe, the ſullenneſſe of his nature being a traytor both to arte and his beautie; you ſhall then (hauing backt him, and taught him to goe forward, according to the rules preſcribed in the third Chapter) ride him foorth either into ſome open hard hye way, or into ſome playne fielde where hee may haue no treading but ſuch as is light and eaſie: and carrying your handes vppon the reynes of the Trench, as is taught in the third chapter; You ſhall all the way as he goes, with gentle motions eaſing your handes and drawing him ſoftly in againe by little and little worke vp his head to the full length of his necke, not at any time ſuffering your handes to abide firme without motion; but letting him goe and come continuall with eaſie, ſoft, and vndiſturbing mo-

uings: such as with their greatest straytnesse may not giue him any checke in the mouth to make him stop: nor with their largest liberty (were he a horse of franck spirit) giue him leaue to runne away. This comming and going of your hand will force the dullest horse in the world to rayse vp his head of his owne accord, it sweetens and makes tender his mouth, and makes him plyant to a good rayne and countenance.

To this motion of your hands, you must adde also the motion of your legges by thrusting them earnestly forward with a good stiffe lert vppon your stirrop leathers, and your body likewise by mooving forward to accompany the motion of your legges, yet this mooving of your legges must not be vsed aboue once or twice in ten or twelue paces going, but when you doe vse it, you must doe it violently, for beleue it (as an infallible rule in horsemanship) there is not any motion or torment whatsoeuer, which stirreth more spirit or alacritie in a horse, then this mooving forward of your legges onely, as you shall finde by proofe whensoeuer you please to trie it vppon a horse that is most shamefully tyred.

To this forward motion of your legges, you shall now and then adde (according as you finde the dulnesse of your horse) a good lert with your rodde in his flanke, and vnder his belly (for spurre as yet you must not by any meanes vse.)

In this sorte, and with these helpes, you shall ryde your horse forward in a slowe trott, aboue sixe or seauen-score yardes, and there stop him by drawing your hand somwhat hard and firme to the pommell of your Saddle, and after a little pause, you shall make him goe backe

backe or retyre two or three paces, by drawing your handes to you and easing them againe halfe a dozen time together, euen in the selfe same sort as you did when he went forward, but that it must be a little more firme and hard, yet not so hard as shall striue to compel, but as it were worke him with a milde intreatie.

If your horse shall refuse to retire at these motions, you shall not much respect it, but thrust him forward againe as farre further, and there doe the like, and in this sort vppon an easie trott, you shall ride him foorthright a quarter of a mile, and then taking a large compasse about (of at least fortie or fiftie paces) turne him homeward, and so ride him backe to the stable, not forgetting but both in going foorth and comming home, to make him stop and retire at the end of euery sixe or seauenscore yardes.

It may bee the first morning you ride him, what through the dulnesse of his spirit, and sloathfulnesse of his nature, you shall neither make him trott with pleasure, stop with willingnesse, nor go backe with any arte you can vse, but let not that discourage you, but in the afternoone doe the like againe, by no meanes vsing any violence more then the former motions prescribed: nor exceeding the limits of a quarter of a myle; also it may be the second time he will bee a little tractable as at the first, yet regarde it not, but as you did at morning and noone, doe the same againe, & after the same manner at the closing vp of the euening, at which time if you finde him as peruerse and rebellious as in the other two former times, you shall (as before you did) with all patience bring him home, and hauing dreste him, and giuen him meate for al night, you shal before

you goe to bed, come into the Stable, and taking a wel dryed bulls pizel, nailde and made faſt to a long ſtaffe; firſt cauſe your horſe to turne his fore partes and buttockes from one ſide of the ſtalle wherein hee ſtandeth to the other which he dooing at the firſt ſlouenly, and vnnimbly, you ſhall take occaſion thereupon, and with your buls pizell, beat him about the buttocks, houghes and ſides ſo ſoundly, that you may make his fleſh ſore, not by any meanes leauing to beat him till you ſee him euen with a ſprytie furie and an actiue nimblenes, paſſe and repaſſe in his ſtalle with the ſound of your voyce only: which done, let him reſt for that night, and the next morning as you did before, ſo take him out, and ride him forth right (with thoſe helps and encouragements before taught) at the leaſt halfe a mile and more; only in ſtead of your rodde you ſhall ride with a dride bulls pizell, the correction whereof you ſhall mingle with your former helps, whoſe ſharpnes and torment exceeding much the ſharpnes of the rod, will ſo quicken your horſe vp (eſqecially through the ſorenes of his fleſh, by his former beating) that you ſhall feele him to trot much lighter then before, and to ſhowe much more tractability and obedience. You ſhall (as before you did, this day, at the end of euery ſix or ſeauen ſcore yardes, make him ſtop and retire, obſeruing this rule, that if he doe not retyre vpon the firſt motion of your hand, not to make any ſtay at all, but forthwith to thruſt him forward againe, both with the violence of your body, help of your legs, and a good ſtroake with the buls pizel, giuing him no eaſe nor reſpite till he either ſhowe obedience to your will, or ſome likely token of obedience; which as ſoon as you apprehend, you ſhall

instantly

instantly cherrish him, and giue him somewhat to eate, then trie him againe the second time, and if then he showe more obedience then before, you shal then cherish him, light from his backe and walke him vp and downe awhile in your hand; then taking his backe againe, trott him fairely homeward and as you did this morning, so shall you doe in all pointes againe in the afternoone, onely you shall increase the swiftnesse of his trot: and as you did in the afternoone you shall so doe againe at the closing of the euening, euer increasing the swiftnes of his trott more and more, till you haue brought him that he wil with the motion of your body, raise vp his spirits, and trotte both freely and chearefully: the third day you shall likewise take him foorth, and then you shall trotte him out-right a mile and more, obseruing still to make him stop, and retire euer at the end of sixe or seauenscore yardes, till hee be brought to such perfitnes and true knowledge of your minde, that with the least motion of your hand, he will retyre either as speedily as you will, or as farre as you will, and the swiftnes of his retyring, you must obserue to giue him that leasure, that he may take vp his feete one after the other, and not by ouer much haste take them vp so preposterously that he be in danger of ouerthrowing himselfe, for that were as the prouerbe is, more haste the worse speede, but by taking them vp leasurely, and in order, he will come to that perfitnesse that he will euen trotte backward, with as comely beautie as many horses doe forward. Which is both exceeding gallant to the eye, and exceeding profitable in seruice, showing hye arte in the horseman, and much obedience in the horse.

this

This third day also to the other helpes and corrections, you shal add the help of your spurs, mingling with the help of your rodde or bulls pizell, now and then the euen stroake of both your spurres, the sharpnesse whereof will take from your horse the melancholye thoughts and faintnesse, which are the onely grounds of all his dulnesse, and make him not onely more mindfull of his labour and lessons, but also inspire him with much better spirit and chearefulnesse: for as to horses of great mettal and couragiousnesse, all torture, extremity, & prouocation is to be auoided, so to these melancholye and dull lades, there is nothing to bee done without violence, quicknes, sodainesse of voice, and helpe of correction; prouided alwaies that such motions be euer attended on with such temperatenes, that by no meanes they drawe the horse either into amazement or desperation; but that hee may knowe that all his punishment dooth proceed from his owne sloath and disobedience.

And albe I doe to the reclayming of this dulnesse, prescribe you but onely three dayes labours, yet you must vnderstand that if euery one of these daies works aske you a weekes worke, you must not thinke much, or holde your time mis-imployed. For mine owne part I haue beene my selfe three monthes in bringing a horse to spirit and lightnesse, and in the end thought it the best part of my labour.

After your horse will trott forward freely, and with good courage, stoppe and retyre at your pleasure, You shall then for a weeke or tenne dayes, onely exercise him in trotting forward or round about some great heathe, plaine, or greene fielde, first a mile, then two mile,

mile, after three mile, not stopping him aboue once in a mile, or a mile & a halfe, and by this exercise, & continuall labour, at least once in a day, or not aboue twice at the most, you shall bring him to such lightnesse of head, nimblenesse of foot, and sence of correction, that nothing you shall put him to (as long as you keep your selfe within the limits of reason) will be either troublesome to you, or labourſome to the horse.

Some there are, as namely *Grison* and the Schollers, who to the reclaiming of a horse subiect to this dulnes & sloathfulnes of spirit, would haue you ride him vpon new plowde lands; reasoning thus: that the deepnesse of the landes will make him pluck vp his feete, bestirre himselfe with more labour, and so consequently bring him to more quickenesse and sharpnesse of spirit. But (vnder the reformation of his more auncient knowledge) I am of a cleane contrary opinion, and so is also *La Broue* who absolutely holds deepe lands, and rough waies, the worst meanes to bring a horse to spirit or lightnesse, for if dulnes proceede from the coldnesse and weakenesse of nature, ingendring faintnesse and sloath, then must that which bringeth foorth toile and labour, without any ease or relliſh of pleasure, not onely increase that faintnes, but bring it to the very height of all cowardise, as thus for example; a Horse that is sloathfull and dull, in so much that you shall hardlie force him to go vpon the plaine & smoothest ground; thinke you he wil trott in deep landes, where stopping euery foote in earth aboue the pasterne, and sometimes wherewith his best force, hardly drawing his legs after him, shall feele nothing but toyle beyond his strength? no it is most impossible, but forthwith he growes desperate,

and where before vpon the plaine ground hee would haue gone a little by this ouer-fore vſe, he will neither vpon plaine nor deepe ground goe at all; and from hence many times ſpringeth the groundes of reſtifnes, tyring and baſenes of courage: yet I doe not ſo much diſlike the vſe of the new plowde ground, that I vtterly prohibite it; but as I diſcommend it for theſe faint and dull horſes, ſo I commend it for ſuch horſes as are of too fiery mettall, who out of the pride of their courage will obſerue no temper in their going, but one while trotting, another while prauncing, and another while offering to gallop, they both diſorder themſelues and trouble their rider; for theſe double minded Iades, whoſe fantaſticall lightnes and incertaine ſpirits tranſports them beyond all compaſſe of moderation, there is nothing better then the new plowde landes, which with the labour and toyle whereunto they will put a horſe, they eaſily correct his madnes, and makes him with carefulnes and diligence attend to his labour, and the will of his rider.

Now if your horſe haue mettall, courage & ſtrength inough only out of his ſtubbornnes of nature, will not ſhowe it, you ſhall then not only ride him in deepe groundes, but alſo prouide that thoſe grounds be aſcending, and mountaines, by labour whereupon, he ſhall be compeld to take vp his feete more roundly and with greater ſtrength then on the leuell earth, and be forced to more vſe of his ſtrength then on the other groundes; which when at any time he ſhall ſlacke, and for ſuch ſlackneſſe feele correction, he will forthwith thruſt out the beſt of his powers, nothing being more contrary to his nature & courage, then the indurance

of

of torment. When you haue by the method before taught, brought your horſe to a quicknes and lightnes of ſpirit, that he will trot freely vnder you, anſwere to the motion of your bodie, and yeeld with obedience to the commaundment of your hand, yet when you ſpur him, you finde him more to be moued with the ſharpnes of that correction, then with the eaſe of the other helpes, as if he had no more feele of your ſpurre then of the calfe of your leg, or the lert of your ſtirrop leathet: when this you finde, you muſt conclude that your horſe is dull vpon the ſpur, and if you let him paſſe with that fault vnreformed, then when other helps ſhall faile you, there ſhall be nothing left, wherby either to bring grace or quicknes to your horſes leſſons, or to ſhowe by the teſtimonie of his obedience, by what arte and rule you hold him plyant to your commaundent. When therefore your horſe is dull vpon the ſpurre, you ſhall at the firſt forbeare to ſpurr him for any ſleight fault or omiſſion, but rather vſe the correction of your voice or rod, but when he ſhall fall into any groſe error (eſpeciallie ſuch an error whereof he hath had fore-knowledge; then you ſhall ſpurre him ſoundly, that is, you ſhall giue him halfe a dozen ſtrokes together, as neare as you can all in one place, and that cloſe behinde the hindmoſt garthe, making euery ſtroake at the leaſt to drawe blood, which done and the fault amended, you ſhall then cherriſh him, and by no meanes ſpurre him againe, till you haue the like occaſion, which once offered, doe as you did before: and thus I would haue you doe three or foure times in a morning, obſeruing not

by

by any meanes to giue that ſtroake, which ſhall not fetch blood, nor to ſpurre him for any fault at all, but ſuch as ſhall deſerue and haue at leaſt halfe a dozen ſtroakes together. Your horſe being thus well ſpur'd and blood drawne vpon both his ſides, as ſoone as you bring him into the Stable, cauſe the Groome to bathe both his ſides with olde piſſe and ſalt, rubbing the ſame into the ſore place ſo violently, that it may ſearch into the very bottome of the prickes. This medecine will keepe the ſore place either from rotting or ranckling, yet notwithſtanding it will keepe the ſore place ſo tender and ſore, that the leaſt touch of your heele will bring him as great torment as before the greateſt ſtroake with your ſpurre did.

After your horſe hath beene thus dreſt, you ſhall the next day following take him forth againe, and as you did before, ſo in all pointes you ſhall doe againe, ſpurring him ſeldome, yet ſoundly, and as neare as you can in the ſore place, and no where elſe. This practiſe being vſed but three or foure daies together, you ſhall finde your horſe ſo tender and ſore vpon his ſides, that the leaſt offer or touch with your ſpurre will mooue him as much as the greateſt ſtroake you can giue him: which when you haue brought to paſſe, you ſhall then with all carefulneſſe forbeare to ſpurre him for any fault whatſoeuer, where there is any other help or correction that will auaile, for it is a moſt certaine rule that there is nothing which ſoonerbrings a horſe to be dul vpon the ſpurres, then often ſpurring him, or when you ſpurre, either to ſtrike your heele falſe, ſo that the ſpurre doth but glaunce vpon his ſides, and giues him a taſte, but not a perfite feeling of the prickes, which we call

call tickling a horse with the spurres, or els to hold the rowels of your spurres in your horses sides still, after you haue striken him therewith, as for the most part, Lawers, Marchants and Schollers do: for these maner of compunctions, and disorderly torments, doe not onely make a horse dull and careless of the spurre, but also so faint harted, that a horse will euen tire outright when hee is in his best strength and lustinesse: Whence it comes to passe (& I haue often approued it vpon the hie way) that when a horse hath beene to all mens seemings so extreamly tyred with an ignorant rider, that he would goe no further: a horsman lighting vpon the same horse, hath made him goe with as good courage and mettall as any horse in the companie, his helpe being nothing els but the forbearance of the spurre, and the vse of the other more moderate helpes and corrections: wherefore I conclude, that to bring your horse to a quickneſſe vpon the spurre, is to spurre seldome, but when you spurre, to spurre most surely, and not to spurre at all but vpon great occasion, and that your horse haue a perfite knowledge euer of the offence for which he is spurred.

When you haue thus taken from your horse the dulnes of his spirit, & the dulneſſe of the spur, you shal then considerately looke how he carieth his bodie, and demeaneth his legs, that is whether he trott cleane, gallantly, and a with good & graceful countenance, for so to trott is the first lesson or motion that a horse must learne; but if you finde that he trotteth slouenly, and foule, that is, he either taketh not vp his feete roundly and loftily; or he waueth or rowleth as he goes, or taketh too wide strides, or els setting downe his feete vn-

certainely both often ſtumble and ſnapper; if any of theſe faults you finde, you ſhall thus correct it: Firſt if he take not vp his feete loftily and roundly, if he be a horſe of young yeares, or of faint nature, you ſhall then onely trott him vp and downe in ſome harde ground, which is full of Thiſtles, or ſhort pricking graſſe, or Whinnes, as I declared in the former chapter of ouer-reaching: but if he be a horſe of better age, and fiercer courage, ſo that when you trott him amongſt the ſharp prickes, hee will fall to bounde or leape ouer them, then you ſhall onely exerciſe him a weeke or more, ouerthwart a new plowed field: and when he begins to grow ſlowe therupon, then you ſhall bring him to the hard Thiſtle earth, where the ground beeing more firme, he will then take more delight to trot therupon: this practiſe, when the labour of your hand, and other helps failes you, will neuer faile you. But if he waue or rowle in his going, or take too long ſtrides, and that you finde the reſtraint of your hand will not reſtraine the libertie of his feet (as before I told you in the chapter of ouer-reaching) you ſhall trott him forth-right in ſome furrow digged full of little ouerthwart gutters, one within leſſe then a foote of another.

Now wheras in that former chapter I bid you digg your large rings full of ſuch little gutters, you muſt there vnderſtand, I ſpeake of ſuch horſes at the firſt, trott faire and comely: but by exerciſe of their leſſons, and by compulſion to trott ſwiftly, take to them ſelues the libertie of long ſtrides, ouer-reaching, and foule trotting. But heere I ſpeake of ſuch horſes who naturally trot long and foule, before either they come to know the waight of the man, or the vſe of any ring

or

or other lesson: insomuch that these gutters & degrees must be made in some straight furrow, wherein as hee learnes to goe, so he may learne to forget his fault. But if it happen as necessarily it must, that by this practise he learne to trot short and cleane, yet notwithstanding he still waueth and rowleth in his pace, you shall then onely for a weeke or ten dayes, trott him along by a straight wall (the vse and benefit of which wall is more largely discribed in a Chapter following) and you shal not make any doubt but that error will be sufficiently amended. Now lastly, if by the incertaintie of his treading, he be much subiect to snapper and stumble, you shall then if he be young & weake spirited, at such time as the nights are darkest, when neither your selfe nor the horse can discerne either the way before or vnder you, ride him forth into some plaine grasse field which in times past hath bene errable, & still retaineth hie ridges, and deepe forrowes; and there exercise him for an houre or two ouerthwart and crosse those leas or ridges, first vpon an ordinary rack, or footpace, then vpon a slow trott, & after as he growes cunning vpon a swift trott, which sometimes may bee mingled with two or three strokes of a gallop: thus exercising him seauen or eight nights, you shall make no doubt of his amendment. You may also, if you please, when you haue your horse skilfull vpon this kinde of ground, ride him vpon some plaine or leuell earth, as either Heath or Moore, which being full of myerie Ruttes, or gutters, the horse by lighting vnawares into them, will growe so carefully fearefull, that he will take vp his feete so roundly, and set them downe so surely, that he will seldome or neuer stumble. If your horse be of great courage, and

full strength, it shall not be amisse after you haue exercised him, and made him by night perfite vpon these two fore-named groundes, if then for two or three nights you trott him swiftly ouer a new plowed fielde, which will both make him take vp his feete, and also acertaine his pace most sufficiently; I haue seene some horsmen, that to help this fault, haue ridden their horses hoodwinckt; but for mine owne part I much disalow it. For besides that the depriuing of the sight taketh away from the horse both hope and delight, it also stirreth in him that amazement and excesse of feare, which many times robbeth him both of remembrance and attention to the businesse about which he goeth: besides, the blind-folding of him is such an actuall and grosse correction, that what fault soeuer is by it reformed, the liberty of the sight againe, brings with it such delight, & contentment, that the former reformation is quite forgotten, and he remaines the same horse hee was before, both in disorder and faultinesse. Many other deuises and compulsions there be to amend these errors, albe it be but for a short time, which forasmuch as they haue onely beene brought forth by couetousnes, practised by craft, and credited by ignorance and folly, I will banish them this place, where nothing but Art should haue lustre; and referre them to the mystery of Horse cosing, wherein I will set them downe in their true colours. And thus much for the dulnesse of spirit, sence, or pace.

CHAP. 14

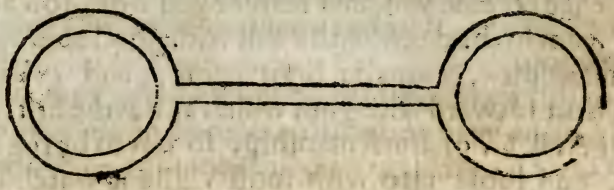
CHAP. 14.

Of the treading of the large ringes, and of their vse.

After your horse will with obedience and patience receiue you, and deliuer you both too and from his backe, when he will with good courage, sencible spirit, comelie light reyne, and gallant pace trott forward with you; which as it is the first lesson or A. B. C. of horsemanship, so it is to be regarded, and lookt into with most vigilant watchfulnesse, becausse what sleight fault or omission you shall escape in that time of beginning, will so strongly increase in his other lessons, that in the end they will proue incurable: when as I say you haue brought him to this first goodnesse, you shall then proceede to the large ringes, after this manner.

You shall trot your horse forth into some broad grauelly or sandy way, where the print of your horses feet may the best be seene, which hauing breadth enough for the largenesse of your ringes, you shall first hauing trotted forward 50. or 60. paces, pace out a large ring vppon your right hand, at least fortie paces in compasse, and hauing pac'd it three or foure times about, so that your eye may well discerne the compasse of your ring, which if it carrie not the proportion of a true round, then be assured there is a fault in the carriage of your hand, which after you must indeauour to amend.

You shal then trot him straight forward fortie yardes, or there abouts, and then make out another ring (of the same largenesse and compasse vpon your left hand) by trotting it about three or foure times also, so that both your rings being ioynd together by the furrowe which passes between them, they will carry this figure or proportion.



When thus you haue markt out both your ringes, you shall then instantly enter into consideration, vpon which hand your horse with the most willingnesse, nimblenesse, and best grace, couetteth to trotte, and on the contrary hand, on which he is only vnwilling, you shall labour him at the least three or foure turnes more then on the other, making both your beginning and your ending, on that hand on which hee is most imperfect; as thus for example, if your horse (as for the most part all horses are,) be more vnwilling to trotte vpon your right hand then on the left, you shall then trott three or foure times about vppon your right hand againe, so that beginning and ending vpon your right hand, that hand may exceede the other by so many turnes as you made in your first beginning, which done,

done, you shall then trott him downe the straight furrow to the verdge of the left ring, and thereby moderately drawing in your hand, cause him to stop, which done, after a little pause, you shal make him retire three or foure paces, & then cherrishing him, let him rest a good space, then gently putting him forward againe, walke him so softly as foote can fall about the left ring, then down the straight furrow to the right ring where you may begin the lesson againe as before.

Now I speake of the right hand, so I meane likewise of the left hand, if he be either harder or lesse nimble thereupon.

In this sort I would haue you exercise your horse dayly, till he be so perfect, that euen of himselfe he will trott these large ringes with such courage, lightnesse, arte and nimblenesse, that he will neither stand in need of helpe or correction, which when you perceiue, you then shall trott him a dozen or fourteene times vppon that hand of which he is hardest, then as oft on the other hand, then as oft vpon the first hand againe, then foorthright, then stop, retire, and cherrish. During the exercise of these large rings, you shall diligently keepe these obseruations: first you shall be carefull with the gentle motions of your hands, to keepe his mouth in sweetnes and tendernes, neither pulling so hard at the Trench, as to make the horse gape, nor giuing his head such libertie, as to bring him to a loose reyne, but to make him trot with all pride and comelines of countenance. Next you must obserue that his head and necke stand streight, looking directly forward, and not a wrie or inward to that hand of which he trotteth; for surely if whereof you shall euer carry the outmost reyne a litle

straiter then the inmoste, holding it of the two, more tollerable that the horse carrie his head rather from his ringe, then inward towards his ring; for the first will showe him firme and all of one peece, which is the greateſt beautie and glorie of a Horſe; the latter ſhewes him weake neckt, crookt, and apt for diſorder; the bringing of his head into the ring, being the firſt meanes that caſts his hinder parts out of the ring.

Next you ſhall obſerue, that of what hand ſoeuer you trott your horſe, you ſhall for a help in his beginning vſe the calue of your contrary legg, or the thruſting forward of your contrary foote, and contrary ſtirrop leather, or your rodde vpon the horſes contrarie ſhoulder, or els before the eye of the horſe on the contrarie ſide: as for example, if you trott on your right hand, you ſhall help your horſe with the calue of your left legge, with your left foot, & with your rod before his left eye, and ſo on the left hand with the like helpes on the right ſide. Your voice alſo is both a very profitable help and a great encouragement to a horſe in the treading of theſe ringes, as namely either in his ſloath, or forgetfulnes, to crie *via*, *via*, or *how*, *how*, with a ſhrill voice, and accompanying it now and then either with a lert of your rodde, or the thruſting forward of your feete ſtiffe vpon your ſtirrop leathers.

I haue found it excellent good alſo, and it is well allowed of both by *Griſon* and *La Broue*, if in the beginning of the treading of theſe ringes (chiefly when your Colt is young and fooliſh) you make an olde ridden horſe to leade him the way, and to tread out the rings before him, for it will both giue him good encouragement, and alſo keep him from a amazement & diſorder,

yet

yet your horſe being brought to the carriage of his head, to perfitneſſe of his pace, & readines of the way, ſo that he will keepe an euen path, before he come to the vſe of theſe ringes, this help of an old ridden horſe will be a great deale the leſſe needfull.

Some will wonder, and happily out of that wonder mightily condemne me, becauſe the faſhion of my rings are different from all thoſe ſhowed by former Authors; for *Griſon* and other writers, would haue the firſt rings to be ioyned together, and then as it were from betwixt them to goe the ſtraight furrow, where they would haue the horſe ſtoppe and turne about in a narrow compaſſe.

Theſe ringes they would haue to bee trodden out vppon newe plowed grounde, they would haue a certaine number of turnes to bee obſerued of both handes, with diuers other ſuch like Cautions, to which I am clearely oppoſite: for firſt, that the ringes ſhould be ioyned together I diſlike, becauſe the chaunge being ſo ſodaine, and vnexpected, and a colt ſo Ignorant and vnnimble, the ſodainnes therof cannot chuſe but either breede diſorder, or make the colt weake neckt, becauſe ſuch quicke changes, doe euer compell the ryder to vſe that reyne of the inſide more then in arte it ſhould be: then when he commeth at the ende of the ſtraight furrowe, where hee muſt ſtoppe, that there he ſhould turne about in any narrower compaſſe then the former ringes, is againſt arte, becauſe a horſe ought not to bee taught any ſtraighter compaſſe till the larger be made perfit. Next that they ſhould bee trodden out vppon newe plowed ground, that is no good generall ride. For (as before I ſaid) it is

but for such Horses as out of the greatesse of their courages are of such distempered humors, that they will neither goe nor learne with patience, which faults being (as they ought to be) reclaimed before he bee brought to the vse of these ringes, why after the fault is amended, the horse should indure punishment, I neither vnderstand nor allow: wherefore for mine owne part, I would haue the ringes made on such ground as might be most easie for the horse to treade vpon, surest for foot-hold, and most pleasant for the horse to delight and continue vpon.

Lastly, for the certaine number of turnes, which they would haue obserued, as so manie times two, or so many times three and such like, by no meanes either increasing, or decreasing, that I am as much against as any of the rest, for this Horsemen knowe, there is no creature whatsoeuer which doth so much obserue custome, or beares in his remembrance the forme and manner of things taught him, as the Horse dooth, so that holding him to any constant number, or any prescript forme, when you shall eyther exceede or deminish what you haue accustomablie vsed; you put such doubtfulnesse in his minde, that from thence proceedeth disobedience and restifnesse, wherefore for mine owne part, I both haue and euer shall (till I be controled by a much better master) obserued neuer to obserue any certaine number in my turnes, but euer to proportiou them according to the aptnesse, strength, and agilitie of my horse.

But leauing to discourse vppon other mens mistakinges, and to returne to my former purpose.

VVhen

When your horſe hath beene exerciſed ſo long vpon theſe two diſtinct and ſeuerall ringes, that hee will pace or trott them either ſlowe or ſwiftlye with all comelinas and perfitnes, which commonly in a month or leſſe you may bring to paſſe, and that you finde in his doing thereof neither error nor diſobedience, you ſhall then begin by little and little to make him gallop thoſe rings; as firſt in the ſwiftnes of his trott to gallop two or three ſtroaks, and then to trott againe, then gallop fiue or ſixe paces more; then trott againe, and thus increaſing by ſtroke and by ſtroke, till in the end findeing in him both a willingnes and an abilitie, you make him gallop the whole ringe about, taking into your minde this *maxime* (which is allowed both by *La Broue* and others,) not by any meanes to let your horſe gallop till he be moſt perfit in his trott; leaſt by making a confuſion in his paces, you vtterly diſable him for any pace whatſoeuer: during the time that you thus teach your horſe to galloppe theſe ringes; you ſhall diligently keepe this obſeruation, firſt not to correct him either with ſpurre or rod for any offence he ſhall commit in galloping, but vpon the apprehenſion of any fault to ſtay him from galloping, and to put him into his trott againe, and in his trott to correct ſuch ordinarie errors as ſhall happen, as the writhing of his bodie, bowing of his necke inward, or the caſting out of his hinder partes.

Secondly, you ſhall obſerue that in his galloping he carrie his head in as conſtant and firme a place, and his necke with as comely and graceſull a reyne, as when hee trotteth in his greateſt pryde, ſo that if either hee offer to thruſt out his noſe

or

or to presse and hang his head vpon your handes, you instantly stoppe him from galloping and make him trott againe, labouring him therin till out of the pride of his courage he will gallop and keep his best beauty, which when he doth, you shall not then continue him so long therin till he be wearie, and so growe in dislike of his owne goodnes, but after two or three stroakes, performed to your contentment, you shall put him againe into his trott, and cherrish him. This order obserued with care and diligence, you shall make your horse take more delight in galloping then trotting, and after hee feeles the ease which commeth by the constant carriage of his head, he will not disorder it, or beare it in other place, albe an ignorant ryder should thereto compell him.

Lastly, you shall obserue in his galloping, that hee take vp his legges roundly and loftely one after another, that forelegge which is outmost, going euer as it were before the other, and his hinder leggs following the fore-legs one after another, both closely & roundly together, the beating of his hooses going so distinctly one after another, that they make as it were a kinde of Musique in their sounding. To these obseruations you must accompany the helpe of your bodie, which being as it were a fixt member with the horse, must in euery motion moue as he moueth without either disorder or contrarity. You shall also to quicken him in his galloping; helpe him now and then with the calue of your legge, or by letting him heare the noyse of your rodde ouer his head: for other helpes of more violence, I doe not allow.

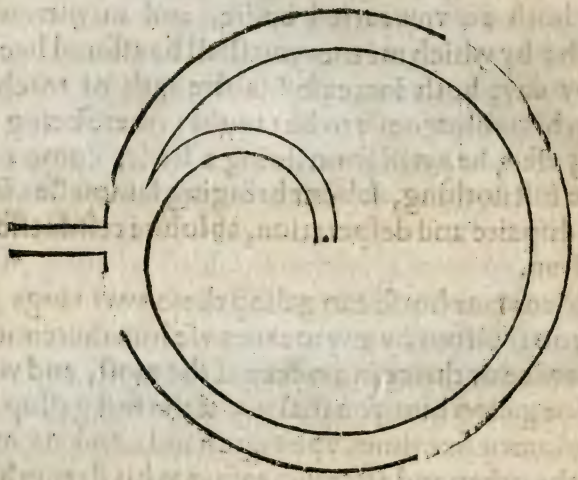
Now for as much as young horses partly out of their owne

owne willingneſſe, partly out of a naturall feare they beare vnto their riders, will in theſe firſt leſſons ſhewe more aptneſſe and ſtrength, then either their knowledge apprehends, or their powers are able to maintaine: you are therefore with great conſideration to regard that you put not your horſe to ſo much as he will of himſelf do, but that you euer in all his doings, (much more in his beginning) leaue him in his beſt ſtrength, with both an vnwearied bodie, and an vntroubled mouth; by which meanes you ſhall be aſſured hee will day by day, both increaſe his ſtrength of teaching, and in his willingneſſe to be taught: where being contrarily vſed, hee will from doing a little, come in the end to iuſt nothing, labour bringing faintneſſe; faintneſſe diſpaire and deſperation, abſolute reſtifneſſe and rebellion.

When your horſe can gallop theſe two rings perfitly, you ſhall not by any meanes vſe him thereunto aboue twice or thrice in a weeke at the moſt, and when you doe gallop him, you ſhal not at the firſt gallop him aboue fiue or ſixe times vpon one hand, and as much vpon the other; and after increaſing as his ſtrength ſhal increaſe, till you finde him of the abilitie that he is able to indure it for a whole mornings worke: which when you perceiue, you ſhall then leaue the vſe of thoſe two ſeuerall rings, and onely trot out one ſingle ring of not aboue thirtie paces in compaſſe, which hauing trotted about vpon your right hand three or foure times (ſo that you may diſcerne the ring perfitely) you ſhall then by drawing your left reyne a little more firme: and laying it ſomewhat cloſe to the horſes necke, and holding your right reyne no more but ſtraite, and laying the

calfe

calfe of your left legge close to the horses side, drawe him into the middest of the ring, making a semi-circle from the vrge of the ring to the center of the same, according to the proportion of this figure.

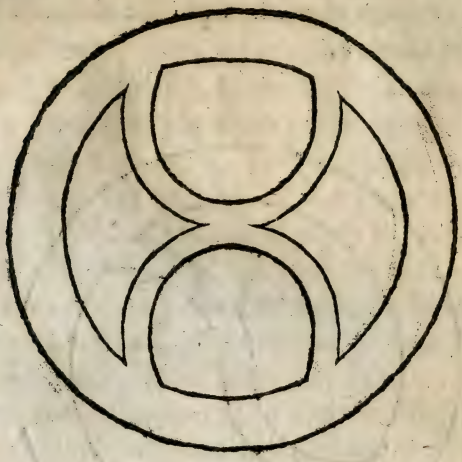


Then changing your hand (that is to say) drawing your right reyne a little fyrmer, and laying it closer to your horses necke, and keeping your left reyne stiffe, and laying the calfe of your right legge to the horses side, you shall make another semi-circle on the left hand from the center of the ring, to the opposite vrge of the other side of the ring: which two semi-circles will

will make within the ring a perfite Roman S. according to this figure.



When you haue thus done, you shall trott your horse about the large ring vpon your left hand, three or foure times, and then in that maner and forme, and with those obseruations before prescribed, you shall make your changes againe in two other semi-circles, which meeting euen in the center, will make within the large ring two compleat rings or circles, according to the forme of this figure.



In this ring you shall exercise your horse the space of three weekes, or a month, according to his strength and aptnesse, making him pace it, and doe his changes first vppon foote pace onely: when he can pace them perfitely, then you shall make him trott, and make his changes vpon his trot, both slowe and swift, and when he is perfite vpon his trot, then you shall (as you did in the first rings) by degrees, and by little and little make him gallop it, and make his changes vpon his gallop, obseruing that in his changes vppon his gallop, you make him take vp his forefeete a little more roundly, and loftily together then in his ordinary gallop, & that his hinder feete follow his fore-feete a little closer and swifter: which you may doe, if onely when you begin to straiten your reynes, you either thrust your feet forward hard vppon your stirrop leathers, or shake your rodde ouer his head, that hee may heare the noyse therof, or els moue your body forward: which motion must

must be so couert and close, that albe the horse feele it, yet no by stander may perceiue it.

Also that his head and necke (as well in the narrow changes, as in the largenes of the ring) doe keepe the beauty and true proportion of a good reyne, without either writhing, bending, thrusting out the nose, or striuing for better liberty, any of which faultes when you shall perceiue, you shall instantly correct it before you proceed any further, as either by drawing the martingale a little straiter, or carrying the reyne of your trench a little straiter on that side from whence it bendeth, & also by carrying a tender & sweet hand vppon his mouth, which being kept in good temper, brings euery other part of his body into obedience.

This galloping of these large rings, is the first most constant ground-worke which sweetneth a horses mouth, makes it tender and obedient, certaine and immouable, and stirreth vp life and courage, nimblenes, and lightnesse in a horse, with many other such like benefits.

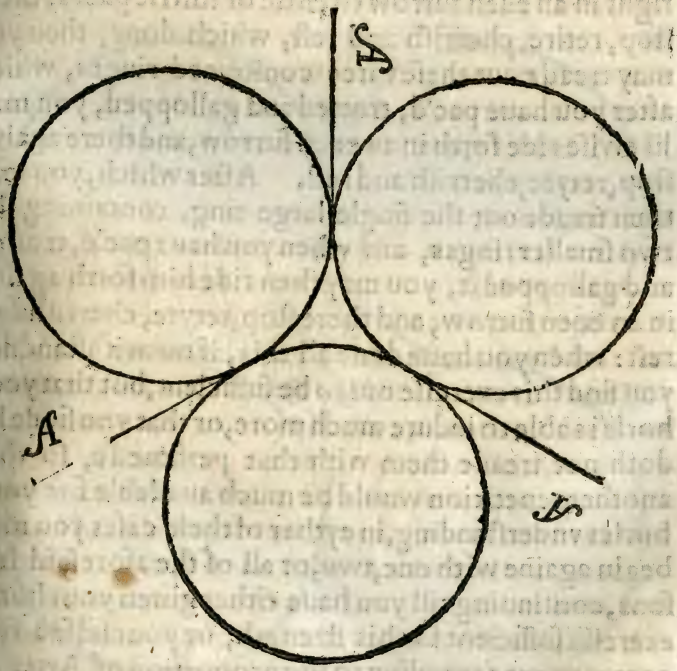
When your horse is perfit vpon this ring, and will both trott and gallop it lustely, and with a good courage, you may then according as you feele his strength and ability to indure labour, encrease his tournes and his exercise therupon, making it sometimes his whole mornings worke, sometimes halfe, sometimes more, sometimes lesse at your pleasure: prouided alwaies that the most turnes you giue him at one time, before hee come to a full stop or rest, be not (after he haue pac'd the ring twice or thrice about) aboue sixe times about on each hand vppon his trott, and sixe times on each hand vpon his galloppe: then stoppe, retire, cherrish,

and ſtand ſtill a good ſpace; then as before walke him foote pace about the large ringe halfe a dozen times to get him breath, then thruſt him into his trot againe, & as you did before, ſo now againe firſt trott him, then gallop him, then ſtop, retire, cherriſh and reſt.

It may be your horſe by long vſe & continuance vpon this ring (as horſes are naturally ſubiect to obſerue olde cuſtomes) will with all perfitneſſe, ſtrength, and liuelyhood, goth pace, trott, and galloppe it, yet if you ſhall chance either vpon the correction of any fault, or vpon the approbation of his credulitie, to put him out of that ring, and offer him another, either in another place, or after another faſhion, then I ſay it may chance that he wil not onely at firſt out of his ignorance, ſtrike and ſhow vnwillingnes to performe your will, but alſo doe that he doth, both with diſorder and diſobedience, or it may be that when the horſe is come to ſuch a perfitneſſe of this leſſon, that like a toward ſchooleboy, he can as it were ſay it without booke, he will then growe ſo careleſſe and negligent of what he doth, that out of the frenzie of his ſpirit, and ſelfe truſt in his owne dooings, he will exerciſe his leſſon with ſuch wantonneſſe & apiſh toyiſhneſſe, that he will blemiſh all that which in the beginning he did with beſt comelineſſe. Laſtly, it may be, that out of the peruerſſenes of his nature (ſubiect to rebell againſt euery new knowledge) when you ſhall either alter his leſſon from the forme of his owne vnderſtanding, or bring him to any labour more then hee hath ordinarily vſed, hee will not onely diſorder, but giue ſignes of plaine reſtifneſſe; any of theſe three errors, when you ſhall by your owne iudgemeut perceiue in your horſe (which euer for the moſt part are

found

found in his galloping) you shall then without intermission thrust him out of this Ring, and trotting him vpon a swift trott a dozen or twentie paces forthright, there treade out first a large Ring on the right hand, then another on the left hand, then a third on the right hand againe; which three rings when they are trodden out, will carry the proportion of this fignre following, the straight lines markt with this letter. A. being the marke of the euen furrow, where you shall both enter in and goe forth of the Ringes.

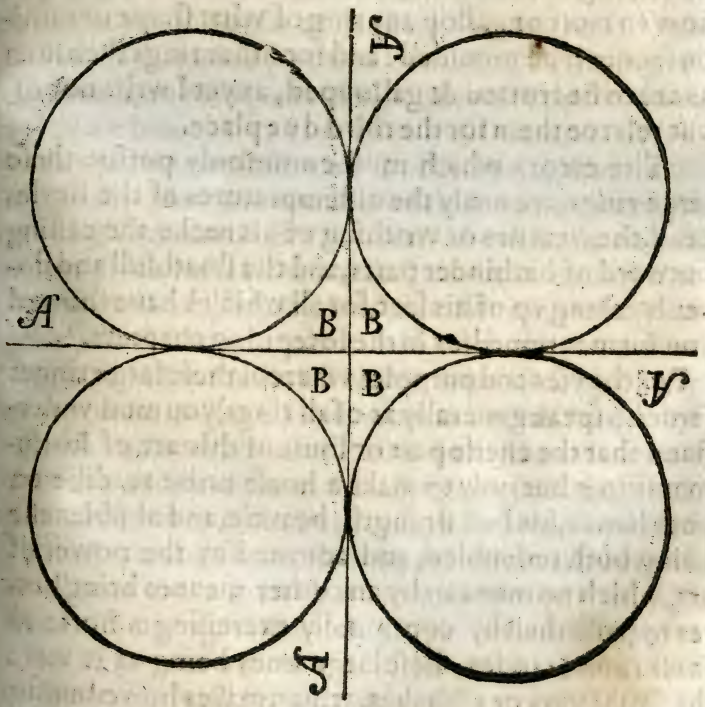


Vpon these three ringes I would haue you exercise your horse first in his trott, and after in his gallop, for many dayes together, obseruing euer both to begin & end vpon that hand of which you finde him the harder and more vnwilling to goe, yet not to keepe him onely to these three ringes, but to mingle with them the other rings before discribed; as thus for example, when you come first to your riding place, you may begin with the two distinct or seuerall ringes, which after he haue pac'd, trotted & gallopped then riding him forthright in an euen furrow twentie or thirtie paces, there stop, retire, cherrish and rest, which done, then you may treade out these three conioyned ringes, which after you haue pac'd, trotted and gallopped, you may likewise ride forth in an euen furrow, and there againe stop, retyre, cherrish and rest. After which, you may then treade out the single large ring, containing the two smaller ringes, and when you haue pac'd, trotted and gallopped it, you may then ride him forth againe in an euen furrow, and there stop, retyre, cherrish and rest: when you haue done all this, if notwithstanding you find this exercise not to be sufficient, but that your horse is able to indure much more, or that you finde he doth not treade them with that perfitnesse, so that another repetition would be much auailable for your horses vnderstanding, in eyther of these cases you may begin againe with one, two, or all of the aforesaid lessons, continuing till you haue either giuen your horse exercise sufficient for his strength, or your selfe a full contentment according to the proportion of Arte.

If it so fall out that your horse in this lesson of these three conioyned ringes, either amazedly sticke as

showing

showing an vnwillingnes to the exercise; or that hee be of so good a temper of mouth, and nimblenesse of bodie, that he craues no more helpe of one hand, then of another, that is, if he turne of both handes with like cunning, you shall then to these three ringes adde a fourth ring of like compasse, which being trodden out, shall beare the fashion of this figure following; the letter A. showing the entring in, and the going forth of the ring: and the letter B. the change or alteration of the hand, as it appeareth.



After you haue exercised your horse vpon these foure ringes so long that you finde in him besides a compleate perfitnes and skill, an extraordinarie lightnes, courage and delight in the lesson, you may then conclude that you haue done as much in these large and plaine compasses as Arte desireth, so that to proceed to any other confused rings such as some authors haue propounded only to amaze weake sences, and stir admiration in none but the ignorant, is both friuolous and needles; the rather sith the horse that is expert in these rings before mentioned, cannot be ignorant how to trott or gallop any ring of what shape or fashion soeuer it be moulded: and for other rings then such as are to be trotted & gallopped, as yet I write not of, but reserue them for the third due place.

The errors which most commonly pursue these large rings, are onely the distempratures of the horses head, the weaknes or writhing of his necke, the casting outward of his hinder parts, and the sloathfull and slouenly taking vp of his feet, for all which I haue showed you former remedies in the foregoing chapters.

For the vses and purposes whereof these large ringes serue (to speak generally as of all rings) you must vnderstand that the cheife part or soule of this art of horsemanship is but only to make a horse turne readilie on both hands, his best strength, beautie, and nimblenesse being both redoubled, and adorned by the power of art, which no man can by any other meanes bring better to passe then by continually exercising a horse in these round circles, these large ones being as it were the first letters or alphabet, which makes him cunning in more curious lessons. But to speake more particularly,

larly, the first two distinct ringes before shewed, are but onely to acquaint the horse with labour, giuing him glimpse or little light of cunning, yet in such sort that it neither distemper his minde, body, nor peace, but keepe them all in concord, and albe he goe round, yet he goes at as great ease, as if he went straight forward. The second ring containing two smaller ringes, that teaches the horse a little more cunning, making him take vp hir legges more roundly and nimbly together, by meanes whereof when he is brought to a straiter compasse, he will neither zbe amaed for want of knowledge, or stagger or reele for want of skill or true vse of his feete, the perfitnes of his ring being a good introduction to all other lessons, how curious or how intricate soeuer.

The last rings which consist of three rings, and foure ringes, both bring to the horse breath and nimblenesse and are of great vse and seruice in the warres, chieflie when a man is to charge vpon shot, or to be imployed vppon a discouerie, or other light seruice, so as he neither may stand still, neither keepe one euen and direct forth-right line in his passadges, but first to gallop vpon one hand then on the other, with such incertainty that it shall be impossible for the best mark-man to take any constant ayme against him; whereupon, as I imagine, it was termed of horsemen, the galloping of the field, And thus much for large ringes and their vse.

CHAP. 15.

Of ſtopping, retyring, aduancing, and the vſes thereof.

ALthough I haue in diuers of the former Chapters ſpoken of ſtopping, and of the time and place moſt meete when to vſe it, yet for as much as I haue not ſo plainely explainde it as is neceſſary for euery ignorant vnderſtanding: I will heere ſomewhat more largely diſcourſe of that leſſon, and firſt that you may knowe what ſtopping is, it is a ſuddaine ſtaying, or deſiſtance from any motion which a horſe vſeth with his legs, as namely when he either walketh, galloppeth boundeth, Coruetteth or ſuch like, and it is done by a ſuddaine and firme ſetting downe of all his fore-legges together without any further motion.

When therefore you will make your horſe ſtoppe which in the firſt beginning of a horſes leſſons, would euer be don in an euen furrow we which goeth ſtraight foorth from your Ringes, you ſhall when you come within three or foure yardes of the end of your furrow, by the liuely motion of your bodie, and by thruſting foorth your feete vpon your ſtirrop leathers, make your horſe trott with more life and quickneſſe, and then with a ſuddaine, firme, and ſomewhat hard drawing in of both your hands iuſt and euen together, you ſhall make him ſtop. The thruſting him forth ſo freelie immediately before the ſtoppe, being an occaſion

to

to make the horse couch his hinder loynes, and to trust more to them then to his fore-parts, and so stop both more comely, and more strongly: but if vpon his first stopping (as it is a fault almost naturally incident to all horses) your horse as you drawe in your hand, doe thrust out his nose, or offer to thrust it downe towards the earth, both which motions shew disorder and opposition; you shall first with your hand giue him a little checke in the mouth; and then holding your handes constant and firme, giue him no libertie of head till he stand still with obedience: but if notwithstanding he vse this fault once or twice more, you shall then make some by-stander to stand before him at the stoppe, who with the bigge end of a rodde, shall knocke him vpon the nose, when he either thrusteth it forth-right, or downeward: but if he yeelde to your hand, and stand iust with good constancie, then both your selfe and the by-stander also, shall cherish the horse exceedingly, and then giue him libertie of head, easing both the Trench and Musrole.

If when your horse stoppeth, he doth not stop euen and iust in the furrow, but thrusting his hinder parts out of the path, stoppeth crosse-wise or ouerthwart; for this fault albe *Grison* would not haue you by any means to vse either the help of your contrarie legge, rodde, or spurre, but onely the assistance of a by-stander; yet I for mine own part, am not altogether so precise, as knowing that albe a horse is but a beast, yet he hath more vnderstanding then any other beast: wherefore if your horse haue this fault of stopping crosse-wise, I would haue you vse the helpe of your legge, or rodde in this maner: if he stoppe crosse, that is thrusting his fore-

parts ouerthwart toward your right hand, and his hinder parts ouertwhart towards your left hand, you shall then by giuing him a pretty sharpe twitch with the left reyne of your Trench, and giuing him a clappe with the inside of your right foot, either vpon his foreshoulder, or before his formost gerth, you shall set his foreparts euen in the furrow againe: with which reformation of his fore parts, it is very hard but hee must also reforme his hinder parts, because the bringing of his fore partes to the left hand euer brings his hinder parts to the right hand. But if it be so that either through his wilfulnes, or want of vnderstanding, he notwithstanding continues in his vice, then you shall make a by stander to remoue his head and hinder parts into the euen furrow, to whose help you shall also accompanie your owne former helpes, that thereby he may come to a better vnderstanding, both of your will, and to what purpose formerly you vsed those other helpes and corrections: which he will no sooner perceiue, but he will dilligently obey.

Now if it fall out so that when he stoppeth, he keepeth his head and fore-partes firme and euen in the path, onely he puts his hinder parts out of the furrow, you shall for amends thereof, whilest he standeth still, first with gentle motions giue him two or three little clappes with the calfe of your legge vpon the contrarie side from whence hee swarueth, accompaning therewithall the vse of your rodde, with which you shall not strike, but onely lay vnto his thigh a little aboue his cambrell, on the contrarie side likewise from whence hee turneth: as thus for example, If he cast his hinder partes out of the furrow towardes

your

your left hand, then you ſhall lay the calfe of your left legge, and your rodde to his left ſide and left thigh, which (becauſe all horſes naturally flie from correction) will make him remoue his hinder partes to the right ſide againe. But if your horſe (contrarie both to Nature and Arte) not onely refuſes to vnderſtand you, but alſo the more you vſe thoſe helpes, the more he augments his fault (as I haue both ſeene, and had horſes of ſuch qualitie) you ſhall then cauſe a ſtander by with his handes, firſt to thruſt his hinder parts into the furrow with all gentleneſſe; but if the horſe ſhew either vnwillingneſſe or contention, then the byſtander ſhal not onely threaten him with his voyce, but alſo giue him a good ſtroke or two with a ſmall cudgell, vpon that hough to which he ſwarueth, and to his threatnings and ſtroakes, you ſhall accompanie thoſe helps of your owne before preſcribed, that your horſe may thereby vnderſtand, that whatſoeuer before you did, was but by gentle meanes to bring him to that, wherto he is now forc'd by compulſion: and be aſſured after you haue vſed this courſe three or foure times, it ſhall be enough: ſo that vpon the leaſt motion either of your legge, or rodde, he will amend his vice, with obedience.

After your horſe is thus brought to know his fault and mend his fault; if then at any time he happen to vſe the ſame fault; you ſhall then obſerue, that ſuch vice neither proceedes from ignorance, follie, or want of Arte, but merely out of the euill habite of his minde, vildneſſe of complexion, and aptneſſe to doe euill; which to reforme, you ſhall in ſtead of the calfe of your legge on the contrarie ſide, giue him the

full ſtroke of your ſpurre on the contrarie ſide, and in ſteade of laying your rodde vnto his hough, giue him two or three good Ierts vpon his hough, augmenting your puniſhment as he augments his fault, and not deſiſting till he reforme his vice, which he ſhall no ſooner doe in the ſmalleſt meaſure, but you ſhall immediately conuert your corrections into cherriſhings; obſeruing this caution (both in this errour and all others) not to continue your correction till he amend the whole ſubſtance of his vice: but whenſouer he doth but hitch, or remoue one foot, or one ſteppe in way of amendes; vpon that diminutiue of goodnes not to omit to leaue puniſhing, and preſently to cheriſh him; nay if he doe but in ſemblance ſhowe a willingnes to amend, though in motion he doe it not, you ſhall cheriſh him for that good ſhow onely, that being thereby fortified and encouraged, he may with more willingneſſe purſue amends and goodnes.

When your horſe thus with the temperate draweing in of your hands will ſtop iuſt, firme, ſtraight and ſtrongly, couching his hinder legges in comely order, and carrying his head conſtantly without diſorder, you ſhall then after he hath ſtopped and pauſed a while, as it were to fetch his breath, and calld together his wits, make him retyre and goe backe in this maner. Firſt, you ſhall drawe both the reynes of your Trench euen together a little more hard then ordinarie, towards the pommell of your Saddle. And if your horſe happen (as it is moſt likely) out of his want of knowledge to ſtand ſtill, and rather, preſſe his mouth vpon the Trench, then by going backe yeeld to your hand, in this caſe you ſhall immediately eaſe your hand, and with the ſame mo-

tion

tion of eaſe, drawe it tenderly in againe, dauncing as it were with your handes, and making them come and goe with ſwift, yet very ſoft motions, till in the end he remoue ſome one of his feete, which how confuſedly ſoeuer he doth, yet notwithſtanding cheriſh him, that hee may vnderſtand your meaning is but the remoouing of his legges, which done, begin againe, and labour him as before, it may be then he will remoue two of his legges, at which againe pauſe and cherriſh him; continuing thus to doe till you haue made him goe backe a ſtep or two, which when he doth, you ſhall immediately cheriſh him, light from his backe, and giue him ſomewhat to eate: then hauing walkt vp and downe a while, you ſhall take his backe againe, and ſolicite him as before: obſeruing, that at the firſt beginning of this leſſon, you neither reſpect nor correct your horſe, becauſe he goeth backe either ilfauouredly or vnnimbly, becauſe this leſſon of all other leſſons is moſt vnnaturall and fearefull, as well becauſe hee hath not the vſe of his ſight therein, as alſo it is a motion quite contrary to that he firſt learnd of nature; ſo that at firſt you muſt be ſatisfied, if he doe but go backe though with little or no comelineſſe.

After you haue brought your horſe to goe backe a ſtep or two, if then he ſticke, and will goe backe no further, you ſhall then by no meanes hale or pull at his mouth, but vſing the former tender motions of your hand, turne the point of your rodde downward before his breſt, not ſtriking him, but letting him feele the rod at which if he ſtirre not, you ſhall then giue him a Iert or two with your rod vpon the breſt, if that auaile not, then you ſhall giue him a good ſtroake firſt of the one

ſide

ſide, then of the other with your ſpurres, at which if he either ſtart, preſſe forward, or goe ſidelong, be not you mooued, but ſtaying him, vſe againe the ſame helpes and the ſame corrections without ceaſing, till you haue made him retyre at leaſt ſixe or ſeauen paces, which when he doth (albe neuerſomuch il fauoredly) immediately forget not exceedingly to cherriſh him.

If it ſo fall out that your horſe at his firſt beginning to learne to goe backe, either out of his dulneſſe of ſpirit, or doggednesſe of nature, will notwithſtanding all your paine and gentle inſtructions, either diſobediently rebell, or like an inſenſible blocke ſtand ſtill without ſpirit or motion; in eyther of theſe extreamities, you ſhall make a ſtander by to ſtand at the place of ſtoppe, who as ſoone as you offer to make your horſe retyre, ſhall with a rodde in his hand threaten him but not ſtrike him, ſaying vnto him *backe, backe*: but if the horſe notwithſtanding continue in his ſtubborneneſſe, he ſhall then with the bigge end of his rodde, giue the Horſe a rappe or two vppon the noſe; yet this correction I would haue to be verie ſeldome vſed for feare thereby the horſe growe fearefull of the man, which is a vilde error, but rather to make the ſtander by to take the horſe by each ſide of the Muſroll and ſo thruſt him backe, but by no meanes let him handle the cheekes of your bytt, (albe it be the vſe of many horſemen,) for feare the diſtemprature of his hand breed diſorder in the horſes mouth.

After the by ſtander hath thus three or foure times thruſt your horſe back, and by that meanes giuen him a full knowledge of your meaning, if then your horſe ſhall

ſhall not vppon the firſt motion of your hand retyre and goe backe, you ſhall then neither ſpare the correction of your Spurres, by ſtriking them one after another, neither the vſe of your rodde by Ierking him ſoundlie ouerthwart the breſt and ſhinnes, nor the threatning of your voyce, nor any puniſhment, thoſe three helpes, can inflict vpon him, till with obedience hee fulfill your minde, and retyre at the firſt motion.

This leſſon of retyring, you ſhall not ceaſe dayly to labour him in, till hee be ſo perfect, that hee will retyre when you will, as farre as you will, and as ſwiftly as you will, yea euen with ſuch ſpeed that taking his legges croſwiſe, nimbly, and cleane from the ground, he may not onely ſeeme to trott, but trott indeed backward, which is a leſſon which ſhowes in the ryder great art, and in the horſe great nimbleneſſe and obedience.

All the obſeruations you ſhall reſpect in this leſſon; is that your horſe in his retyring, carrie his head and reyne cloſe and perfect, and yeelding his head inward to your hand, and not outward from your hand, which if he doe, you ſhall correct him by drawing the Martingale ſo much ſtraiter, as his head in thruſting out ſeemes to haue got libertie.

Next you ſhall obſerue that he retyre backe as iuſtlye, and in as euen a furrowe as he trotted forward, not thruſting his hinder partes awry, or going backe croſwiſe or vneuen; which if he doe, the ſame corrections which are preſcribed for the amendment of the like fault in the ſtoppe, will reclayme his error in retyring. Laſtly, you ſhall obſerue that in your Horſes

retyring,

retyring, you a little drawe your owne legs backward; yet not so much that either it may be so grosse perceiued by your beholders, that you may loose the beautie of your seate, nor with that closenes that you touch the horses sides, and moue amazement, but in such moderate and comely order, that it may bee onely by your selfe and no other iudged; then when your horse hath retyred so far as you thinke sufficient, you shall immediately thrust your feet forward stiffe vpon your stirrop leathers, which will presently stay him from retyring any further.

Of aduancing

When your horse will stop firmely and surely, with a good grace and an humble obedience, and when hee will retire backe, either as swiftly or as slowlie as you will, and as farre as you will; you shall then teach him to aduance before, which is not onelye an exceeding great ornament and grace vnto all the horses lessons, but also so necessary and profitable, that without it a horse can neither manage, turne vpon either hand, or doe any other *ayre* or *salt* with beautie or comelines.

To aduance before, is to make a horse raise both his forefeet together from the ground, & set them downe instantly in the same place, with as good comelinesse as hee tooke them vp, wherefore the fittest time and place to make a horse aduance, is at the stoppe onely, and you shall doe it in this manner.

After you haue trotted your horse in some grauelly or sandy way, about a dozen or twentie yardes, you shall there stop him, and in the verie instant that you stop him (that is euen as you drawe vp the reynes of your Trench) you shall clap both the calues of your legges hard to his sides, holding the reynes constant& firme

firme ſtill, but if at firſt he will not aduance (as there is no likelihood he ſhould) not yet vnderſtanding your minde, but rather offreth to retire backe, you ſhall then by thruſting your feet forward ſtiffe vpon your ſtirrop leathers, not onely keepe him from retiring, but alſo thruſt him forward into his trot againe as far as before; where ſtopping him, and giuing him againe the ſame help, with the calues of your legges, it may be then the horſe perceiuing you will neuer ſuffer him to goe forward nor backward, neither yet to ſtand ſtill, he will out of the amazednesſe of his owne coniectures, ſhew ſome ſtrange motions, all which you ſhall diligently heede, obſeruing that if he take vp but one foote, and ſet it downe againe, that inſtantly you eaſe your hand, and cheriſh him: which done, trot him forth againe, and vpon the ſtop doe the like, not ceaſing vntill you haue inforſt him to take both his fore-legges from the ground, in a round and comely order, and ſo ſet them downe againe. But if you ſhall perceiue that in this leſſon he ſheweth exceeding ſloath and dulneſſe, and out of the peeuiſhneſſe of his nature (albe hee vnderſtand your will) yet will not performe your will, in this ceaſe you ſhall now and then, in ſtead of the helpe of the calues of your legs, giue him your ſpurs one after another, but in any wiſe not both together, for that will bring him not to aduancing, but to bounding, an Arte yet too early for his learning: you may alſo for your better ſpeede, and to moue ſpirit and quickneſſe in the horſe; now and then as you help him with the calues of your legges, giue him a good iert or two with your rodde ouer the left ſhoulder. To ſome horſes of good mettall, the ſhake of the rod will be ſufficient vſe.

When you haue brought your horse that hee will aduance with the helpe of the calues of your legges only, you shall then accustome him to doe it twice, thrice, or foure times together, euen so oft as it shal please you to giue him warning by the former helpes; not forgetting to cherish him exceedingly, so oft as he doth performe your pleasure.

Now for obseruations in this lesson; first you shall obserue that you make him stoppe and aduaunce vpon his foote-pace, then vppon his trott, both slowe and swift, and lastly, vppon his gallop, yet let your greatest exercise at the first be vppon a swift trotte, for it sooneſt brings a horse to lightnesse, nimblenesse, and vnderstanding.

Next you shall obserue, that when you stop your horse, and giue him the help of the calues of your legs, that you carry your leggs so euen and straight by your horses sides, that as it were by an vnperceiued motion you may helpe your horse, & not be discerned by ignorant gazers; which indeed is the true grace of horsmanship, and not like our *S. George* riders, carry your legges beyond the fore-shoulders of your horse; so that euery time you bring them to the horses sides, you fetch a compasse, as if you would strike your legs thorow him, both to the scorne of Art, and the dislike of all iudiciall spectators, which fashion is by much too much practised here in England, and makes many times our riders excellent inward knowledges to be vtterly condemned for their outward practise, and for mine owne part I neuer saw, either *Italian*, *Frenchman*, or other stranger, equall some of our *English* riders in any thing, but in the couertnesse of their motions; which I must confesse is

wondrous

wondrous praiſe-worthie, becauſe by ſuch Art a horſe appeares to do what he doth, rather by nature then mans induſtrie; where on the contrary part, when the motions are ſo groſſe, the horſe (how well ſpirited ſoeuer) ſeemes to doe nothing but like a cart-iade which hath the whip euer vpon him.

Next you ſhall obſerue that when your horſe aduaunceth before that he couch his hinder loynes towards the ground, and that he ſo conueniently truſt vpon his hinder feete, that he ſlide vpon them, and as it were digge vp the ground before him; which if he do not, you ſhall then obſerue euer to ſtop him vpon hanging or deſcending ground with his head downe the deſcent; inſomuch that vpon neceſſitie, he cannot aduance, but he muſt couch his hinder partes.

Then you ſhall obſerue that your horſe aduaunce not too hie or reare vpright, or that raiſing vp his fore-legs, he caſt them not out ill fauouredly, as if he would ſpraule or ſtrike with them; any of theſe faults if you perceiue, you ſhal vſe theſe remedies formerly preſcribed in the chapter againſt horſes that will reare vpright.

Laſtly, you ſhal obſerue that your horſe do not aduãce at any time, no not ſo much as at his ſtop except you giue him the helpe of the calues of your legs; for auoidance wherof, and foraſmuch as horſes naturally after they haue got the tricke of aduancing, will vpon any ſleight correction or diſpleaſure, fall to aduaunce and riſe before, you ſhall therfore neuer (but vpon great extremitie) vſe the help of your ſpur in aduancing, nor to ſtop oft in a ſhort courſe, neither ſhall you (although it be the rule of *Griſon*) teach your horſe to aduaunce by

the help of your voice, as by crying *Hup, hup*, or ſuch like, nor with the ſound of your rodde onely, without the help of your legges, for ſuch cuſtomes doe bring diſorders breeding in the horſe ſuch an extraordinarie lightneſſe, that he will aduance when you would haue him goe forward, and in his wanton or ſullen motions be ſo contrarie to your will, that he will fall in the end to plaine reſtifenes.

Now for the vſes and benefits of theſe three leſſons, there is none ſo ignorant that knowes not the neceſſity of ſtopping, becauſe it is the onely ground of order and obedience, and alſo that it ſhould be ſudden, and in an inſtant, becauſe in ſeruice the preſſing forward of one yarde more then ſhould be, is oft times the loſſe of both horſe and horſman, with many other reaſons both probable and effectuall, which I will omit, becauſe I will not be too tedious.

Next for the vſe of retiring or going back, it is almoſt as neceſſarie as going forward; for as it chargeth and annoyeth the enemie; ſo this auoydeth and ſaueth the Rider, giuing him leaue in his combate to take his beſt aduantage: it maketh a man retreite honourablie from his foe, both with his face vpon him, and vnder the gard of his owne ſword and other defences, where contrarywiſe, if a man ſhould euer turne his backe, he doth not onely depriue himſelfe of all ſafetie, but euen giues himſelfe to the aduantage of his enemy: it is alſo very profitable in trauaile, or iourneying, as if a man in an vnknowne way ſhall be ſo compaſſed about eyther by bogges, waters or ditches of daunger, that he can not goe forward, neither turne of either hand, if then his horſe cannot retyre, into what a perplexitie

and

and miſchiefe is he drawne? Laſtly, going backe, ſetleth and ſtayeth the horſes mouth, makes him light and eaſie of reyne, and in the end makes him ſo nimble of his feete, that not any other leſſon but is learned after with a great deale leſſe trouble and vexation.

Now for the vſe of aduancing(as before I ſaid,)it is both an ornament to the horſes leſſons, and the firſt introduction which makes a horſe turne gallantly and ſtrongly,it brings a horſe to knowe the vſe and power of each of his feete, making him doe as much with three feete,two feet,and ſometimes with one, as other horſes do with all foure. And thus much for ſtopping, retyring, and aduauncing.

CHAP. 16.

Of yarking behinde, and the vſe thereof.

AFter your Horſe will ſtoppe cloſe and firme, retyre readily, and aduaunce gallantly, if then (your horſe being of complete age and ſtrength, which is fiue yeares old at leaſt,) you finde him of ſuch quick ſpirit and liuely courage, that he hath as it were a naturall inclynation to lightneſſe, which you ſhall perceiue both by his tractabilitie and quicke aprehenſion of his leſſons,& alſo by his agilitie & nimblenes in doing of his leſſons; when this you finde,it ſhall not be amiſſe if then you teach him when he ſtoppes and aduanceth, that he alſo yarke behinde; which for mine

owne part how euer other precept writers haue set downe compulsorie meanes, which way to bring a horse vnto it, yet would I neuer haue horse vrg'd thereunto, but when you finde him so naturally adicted, that euen of himselfe he begins the practise of the lesson: for besides that it is a lesson of great strength, violence, and hard vnderstanding, it is also so subiect to straines and painefulnesse, that it oft beates the limbes, and bringes both disease, and the effects of age, before nature would be acquainted with it; But being so that you haue a horse apt thereunto, and that he wants but onely Arte and your help to make him perfect, you shall then when you haue trotted your horse about twentie paces, euen in the very instant that hee stoppeth and aduaunceth, you shall giue him a Iert or two with your rodde in his flanck, to make him gather vp his rumpe, not ceasing till hee take his hinder feete from the ground, which as soone as you shall perceiue him to doe you shall immediately stand still and cherrish him, nay if you finde he takes vp but one legge, albe he strike it out illfauoredly like a cowe, yet shall you cherish him for so doing, that he may thereby vnderstand to what end your correction serueth. When you haue thus done, you shall labor him againe, euer obseruing in the verie instant of his aduauncing to Iert him vnder the flanke with your rodde, till in the end you make him yarke out both his hinder legges, iust and euen together: which when he doth, you shall cherish him, light from his backe, and giue him somewhat to eate; which done, you shall take his back, and doe as you did before, labouring him dayly in this lesson, with such diligence and paine-

painefulneſſe, that in the end if when he aduaunceth you doe but Iett your rodde by his ſide, and not touch his ſide, he will foorthwith yarke out both his hinder feete euen and cloſe together.

Now whereas ſome giue out precepts to bring a Horſe to his lightneſſe or yarking behinde, firſt in the Stable, by beating him vppon the rumpe with a ſharpe rod, the *perch* or ſuch like inſtruments, I for mine owne part, cannot but much diſcommend them; both becauſe it is a motion of all others, which in the Stable ſhould be leaſt vſed; as well becauſe of the vncomlineſſe thereof in the houſe, as alſo the danger of the ryder or beholders, if he ſhould hap (as it is vſuall with ſuch horſes) to throw off any of his ſhoes, for caſting filth or durt in their faces which ſtand behinde, that is moſt common, yet moſt loathſome. Againe, a horſe that is ſo vnapt to yarke behinde, that he will not learne it in the field, except firſt it be made a houſe leſſon; truelie I holde ſuch a horſe vnfit to learne the leſſon at all.

Now for obſeruations in this leſſon, you ſhall firſt obſerue that your horſe neuer yarke out his hinder legges, when his fore-legges are vpon the ground, for that is groſe, vncomely, and like a Cow, but that he yarke behinde, when all foure feete are from the ground, contrarie to which when he doth, you ſhall immediately giue him the euen ſtroake of both your ſpurres together, and it will not onely reforme him, but alſo bring vp his legs with more Spirit. Secondly, you ſhall obſerue that when he yarketh, he yark out his hinder feete euen and cloſe together, not one further out then another, neither ſtryding one from another, nor more awry of one ſide then the other, any of

which when he doth, you ſhall immediately vpon that ſide on which he moſt offendeth, giue him the ſtroake of the ſpurre, and not of the other.

Laſtly, you ſhall obſerue that hee neuer yarke but when you giue him the helpe of your rodde, neither that you carry your hand in this leſſon with any more hardneſſe or intemperance, then when you taught him the ordinarie ſtoppe; by which meanes if he ſhall preſſe forward at his firſt teaching, you ſhall neede no other correction then to make him retire back as much as againſt your will he preſt forward.

Now for the vſe of this leſſon, it is onely to make your horſe light, nimble, and apt to ſuch *Ayres* and *falts* aboue ground, as are to be taught after; either for your owne inſtruction in the art, or for the delight of others; it is good alſo in ſeruice, if after you haue incountered your enemie, he ſeeke to catch aduantage by comming behinde you; or if you ſhall be compaſſed about with moe then one enemie, in any of theſe caſes, if your horſe will yarke behinde, you ſhall finde it very profitable both for your owne ſafety, and the hurt of thoſe which ſeeke your deſtruction. And thus much for making a horſe to yarke behinde.

CHAP. 17.

Of turning vpon both hands, and the ſeuerall kindes of turnes.

OF turnes there be diuers & ſundrie kindes, which for in our Engliſh tongue we haue no proper nor diſtinct names, I thinke it not amiſſe to vſe thoſe

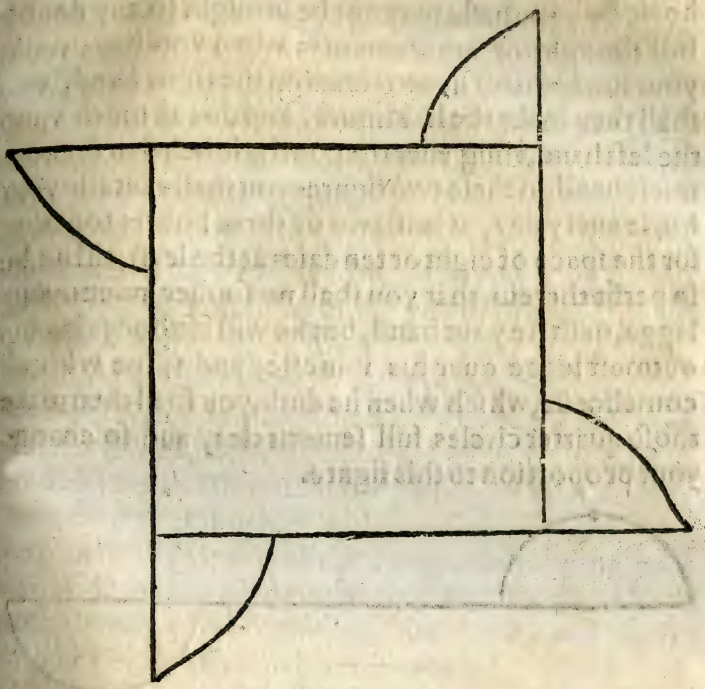
those titles, which the auncient *Italians* vsed; being both proper and significant; as the *Incauallare* which is the first straite or narrow turne that a horse should learne, which indeede importes a lapping or folding ouer of the outmost legge ouer the inmost; yet is not done in any such straitnesse, but that the horse hath libertie to vse his hinder legges, as well as his fore-legs, and so to goe as it were in a narrow ring.

The next they call *Ciambetta*, and that is when a horse turneth his whole bodie, keeping firme vpon the ground but onely one hinder foote. And this turne of all other is the straitest. Then is there another turne which they call *Terra, Terra*, and that is when the horse doth with equall motions raise vp his fore-legges both together, and pursuing them after with his hinder-legs, beats a ring round about, either of large or straite compasse, and this turne of all other turnes is of most vse, best beautie, and greatest profite. From this turne is deriued diuers other turnes, as that which is called *Carogola*, or snaile-turne, or that which they call *Serpegiare*, and such like, of all which we will speake in their seuerall places; for as touching that method which hath formerly beene prescribed of halfe turnes, whole turnes, and double turnes, although they in teaching be of good vse, yet to the ignorant Reader they giue not a full satisfaction.

Wherefore first of all to begin with that turne which the *Italians* call *Incauallare*, you shall thus instruct your horse: first riding him in some grauelly or sandie way, you shall gently walke out a straite ring on your right hand, being at the most not aboue eight yards in his greatest compasse, and in the making ther-

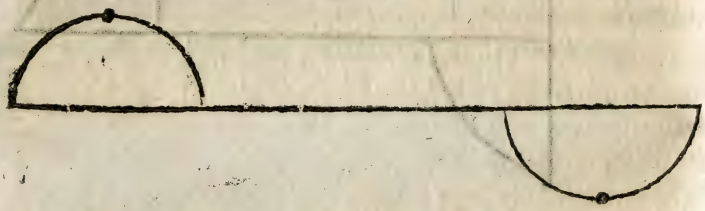
of you ſhall haue an eſpeciall regard by the carriage of the left reyne of your Trench ſomewhat more ſtraite then accuſtomably; that your horſe carry his head and necke very iuſt and eeuen without bending or looking inward to your right ſide, which done after a little pauſe, you ſhall then walke him in an eeuen line, about two yardes, or two yardes and a halfe at the moſt forward, and there, by laying your left reyne cloſe to his necke, your left legge cloſe to his ſide, and your rodde vpon his left ſhoulder, make him bring his body about, and make iuſt one quarter of a compleate Circle vpon your right hand; then walk him againe in an euen line as farre further and with the ſame helpes, and on the ſame hand make another quarter of a circle, doe thus the third time and the fourth time, till the lines wherin you walke preſent vnto you this figure following.

In



In this figure you ſhall walke your horſe about at leaſt a dozen times vpon a hand, making at euery point your quarter circles cloſer and cloſer, till you perceiue at laſt he lap & throw his outmoſt leg ouer his inmoſt. It may be that at the firſt practiſe of theſe ſquare circulars, the horſe will be ſo vnnimble, that he will knock one legge vpon another, and not lap them ouer in order as becommeth, but of that take you no reſpect, for euen thoſe knocks ſhall be corrections ynow to bring him vnto reformation; let your care be only to preſerue his reyne, necke and head, conſtant and firme, and to take that leaſure and time in this leſſon, that your horſe

horse by your haste may not be brought to any doubtfull thought or amazements; when you haue walkt your horse thus a dozen times on the right hand, you shall then make the like figure, and doe as much vpon the left hand, vsing euer the contrarie helps to the contrarie hand, in these two figures you shall exercise your horse euery day, at least two or three houres together for the space of eight or ten daies at the least, till he be so perfit therein, that you shall no sooner moone your legge, or stirre your hand, but he will eftsoones lap his outmost legge ouer his inmoste, and turne with all comelinesse, which when he doth, you shall then make those quarter circles full semecircles, and so change your proportion to this figure.



In this figure, you shall exercise him a weeke at the least till he be so perfect, that by his nimblenes and quicknes, thereupon you finde him both apt and cunning enough to make those semicircles whole rounds, which the *Italians* call compleat single turnes, or if you list he will do them (onely with the help of your hand) full twice about, which is a iust double turne, and as you finde him perfect vpon any hand, so you shall alter the ring, and practise him vpon the other, till he be vpon both so cunning, that neither hath aboue other any superioritie.

When

When your horse will thus doe this *Incaualiare* in a ring, which must be from the center to the verdge, but iust the horses length, you shall then for a dozen turnes together, nay sometimes twentie turnes, exercise him onely therein, making his hinder feete onely moue in the Center, and his fore-feet lapping the outmost, ouer the inmost to beate out the proportion of the outmost ring: In this sort, after you haue laboured him, and made him perfit, you shall then after he hath made two or three turnes on your right hand, cause him to retire three or foure paces, and then without any stay doe as many times on your left hand, then retire as farre againe, and doe as before on the right hand againe, and thus till he be perfit, you shall practise him: onely helping him with your legge, rodde, and the motion of your bodie, leaning a little on the contrarie side to that whereon he turneth, till custom haue brought him to that cunning, that your hand onelye shall be helpe sufficient for this motion.

Now for as much as some horses, partly out of folly, partly out of vnnimbleneſſe, and partly out of euill inclynation, are many times more apt to turne vpon one hand then vpon another; nay some so dogged, that they will turne on one hand and not on the other at all, I thinke it not amisse, before I proceed any further, to showe you how you shall reclaime so foule an error: first if it proceed from folly & vnnimblenes, then onely custome and practise will amend it, for the one brings knowledge, the other agilitie, but if it proceede from euill inclination, or stubbornneſſe of will, then must there be some more extraordinarie art vsed, and in it many excellent horsemen haue laboured both their

their wits and bodies, finding out remedies of sundrie natures, all which though experience haue found them profitable in some Horses, yet the same experience hath also found them vtterly fruitlesse in horses of other conditions, for there is nothing more hard to reclaime then this vice, insomuch, that I dare not confidentlie say this one practise shall reclaime this fault in any Horse whatsoeuer; albe the goodnesse thereof haue beene esteemed neuer so generall: but to returne to the fault it selfe, if your Horse will turne readily on the right hand, but most vildely or not at all vppon the left, (though in nature Horses euer doe turne more readily on the left hand then the right) you shall then treade out your first square with quarter circles on your left hand, and exercise him thereon, then on the right hand, and then on the left againe, both beginning and ending vppon that hand on which he is most vnreadie: you shall also to the other helpes before prescribed, adde this, to carry euer your left reyne a little shorter then the right. Some will in this case of vnwilling turning, haue a Foote-man stand before the horse with a rodde in his hand, who when you would haue your horse to turne, as you vse the helpe of your legge and hand, shall with his rodde strike the horse on the right side of the nose, and threaten the Horse by crying *Turne heere* and *turne there*, but in my conceite though it were the precept of *Grison* himselfe, I holde it barbarous and vnprofitable, for it will both bring the horse to weakenesse and incertaintie of his head, to rearing and plunging; And lastly, to such a cowardly fearefulnes, that he will hardly after indure any man whatsoeuer.

Others

Others haue vſed to tye a thong of leather, to the eye of the Trench, on the left ſide, and the other ende (the thong being drawne verie ſtraight) to the formoſt gyrth on the ſame ſide, and then turning him looſe into ſome ſtraite Lane, either betweene two walles, or elſe betweene two hie fences, and there your ſelfe being at one end, and ſome other Foote-man at the other with roddes in your hands to driue him vp and downe from one end of the Lane to the other, forcing him euer to turne vppon the left hand, as of neceſſitie he muſt doe, becauſe he cannot turne vpon the right hand, his head being ſo tyed ſo much to his left ſide, but this is more friuolous then the former, and neither hath taſte of Arte nor agreement with good ſence. For beſides that, the manner thereof is full of franticke violence and amazement, rather making a Horſe mad with his fault, then giuing him knowledge how to amend his fault: it is alſo ſo ſubiect to indiſcretion and miſgouernment, that it is impoſſible to worke any good effect out of ſuch looſe tryall. Another way is vſed to amend this fault by tying a corde either to the chaine or Cauezan, and bringing it through the ring on that ſide of which he is vnwilling to turne, and making a by-ſtander holde the cord in his hand: if when you would haue your horſe turne on that hand, he refuſe, then ſhall the by-ſtander giue him a good twitch with the corde, and make him turne whether he will or no. This is ſomewhat more tollerable then the other, yet not of ſufficient goodneſſe, for it marres the horſes reyne, and makes weake the necke, both which muſt be with all care preſerued.

Now for changing the hooke of the Curbe to that

ſide

side of which the horse is hard to turne, and hauing sharpe prickes thereon next the horses lippes, or to place sharp nailes through the ports mouth of the byt, on the contrarie side to that on which the horse will not turne, or if he will not turne on the left hand, to turne him so oft on the right hand, that you euen tyer him, and so through his dislike of turning on that hand thinke to make him turne on the other: although these be *Grisons* precepts, and may worke some effect to this purpose: Yet for mine owne part, I would haue them sildome vsed: for the prickes on the Curbe makes a horse loose the delight in the Curbe, which is the onely figure that shoes a sweete mouth; and the prickes in the ports mouth, makes a horse shake his head, & vse fantasticall countenances, which are mightilie to be eschewed, but for tyring him in that lesson wherein hee doth well, is so prepostorous, and giueth him such discouragement, that he will neuer doe any thing but ill afterward. But to come to corrections of some better nature, if your horse refuse to turne as before I saide on your left hand, you shall to the right eye of the Trench, fasten a small twound chaine, which chaine you shall bring from thence betwixt the horses neather lippe, and his chappe thorow the left eye of the Trench, and therby casting a knot vppon the chaine, keepe it that it slip not backe, nor fall from betwixt his lippe and chappe, then the remainder of the chaine you shall beare in your left hand like a false reyne, and then practising your horse in the first square roundes, if he sticke or refuse to turne on your left hand you shall then at first twitch the chaine gently, that he may but feele the correction, but if notwithstanding

he

he perseuer in his stubbornesse, you shall then drawe the Chaine hard, and compell him to turne whether hee will or no, ioyning to this correction a good stroake or two with your spurre on the contrarie side. And as I prescribe this rule for the left hand, so if he be harder to turne on the right hand, (which is more common) you shall but then alter your chaine, your helpes and corrections to the other side, and it will worke all one effect.

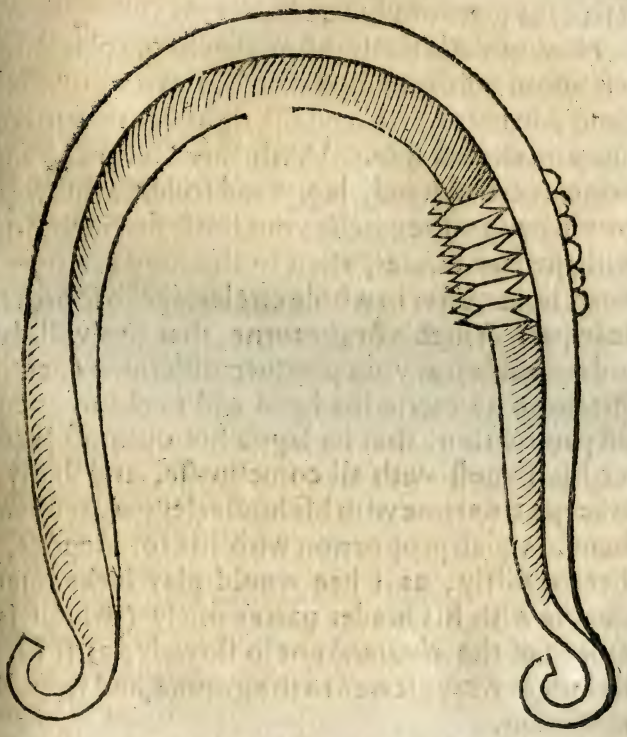
I haue seene some, that in stead of this chaine, haue vsde a small cord, but it hath so gald and cut the horses mouth, that I haue seene foule Cankers growe therby; so that I conclude the Cord to be exceeding ill. I haue seene others, that vsing this Chaine, haue ridden into a new plowde fielde, and there haue trotted him too and froe, as it were in a managing furrowe, and when he hath shewed any disobedience, they haue not onely tormented him with the Chaine, and the threatnings of their voyce, but they haue also spurred him exceedingly, on both sides, beate him betweene the eares and about his sides with a cudgell so exceedingly, that I haue seene some horses growe desperate and some so dejected, that they haue stood still, and would not stirre though a man should haue kild them. This violent course is to be shund. And the grauelly or sandy way, and the gentle manner of instruction, which carries knowledge with it is the best way to reclaime this fault; yet obseruing this rule, when you either vse this Chaine or any other correction, neuer to desist or suffer your horse to come out of the square rounds, till with Help only, and without the vse of correction, hee performe your pleasure, no not though you bee

you be compelled to continue him therein from morning till night: for to leaue him when he doth euill is to fortefie him in all euill, as alſo to torment him when he doth well, is to make him loath well dooing, and holde his goodnes his worſt error, wherefore as you muſt labour and trouble him till he do well, ſo when it is done you muſt not forget to giue him eaſe and cheriſhings.

But to a come to concluſion of theſe many remedies for this ſingle fault, you ſhall vnderſtand there is one more remayning, in my iudgement, and as I haue found by practiſe, farre exceeding the reſt; wherefore I would aduiſe all men not to vſe any other till this faile, and thus it is.

If your horſe be harder to turne on the right hand then on the left, you ſhall take away the muſrole made of wrythen Iron, and in ſtead thereof, put vpon him a Cauezan, which hauing a ſhort leather faſtned to the two ringes, whereto to put the Martingale, it muſt alſo haue two reynes to runne croſſe-wiſe thorow the ringes, which you muſt carrie in your hands with the raynes of your Trench. This Cauezan muſt be made ſmoothe without teeth or nickes, but onely for the breadth of two or three inches on the left ſide, which muſt not onely be full of ſharpe teeth, but alſo haue certaine ſharpe punches or prickes to runne thorow the Cauezan, and ſtand euen with the teeth, ſo that when you ſhall at any time drawe the right reyne, the teeth and prickes may both bite vppon the ſide of the horſes face, and when at any time you eaſe your hand, that then the Cauezan may carrie ſuch compaſſe, that it no longer preſſe or hurt the horſe: for you muſt euer obſerue,

obserue, that your correction continue no longer then the reformation of the vice: the fashion of the Cauezan is contained in this figure.



I haue seene this Cauezan made with a little stiffe plate of steele, full of holes, through which the prickes and teeth did passe, so that when you doe drawe the reyne and presse the plate, then the prickes would run

into the horses cheeke, and when you did ease your hand, the plate of steele would thrust the prickes from the horses face; this was not amisse, but verie necessarie, neuer the lesse, if the Cauezan be made in round and iust compasse, it will hurt no more then if it had the plate of steele.

Now as these teeth and prickes being plac'd on the left side of the cauezan, make a horse turne on the right hand, so being plac'd on the right side they make him turne on the left side. With this Cauezan, and the helpes of the hand, legge and rodde, as aforesaid, I would haue you exercise your horse first in the squares with quarter circles, then in the long furrowe with semycircles, after in whole circles, and so foorth till he be so perfect in this straite turne, that hee will double and redouble it at your pleasure: obseruing euer that in this turne he carrie his head and necke in euen and iust proportion, that he lappe his outmost legge ouer his inmost with all comelinesse, and lastly that he keepe true time with his hinder legges, and remoue them in equall proportion with his fore-legges, neither so swiftly, as if hee would play Iacke ouer the Chaine with his hinder partes onely (which is the fashion of the *Almaines*) nor so slowely, as if his hinder legges were glewed to the ground, and would haue no motion.

When your horse is perfect in his turne, the next strait turne is called *Ciambetta*, and *Grison* writes therof a very tedious and long discourse. The māner of the turne is to make a horse take vp both his fore-legs from the ground, and not to set them downe till he bring his head to the place where his buttockes stood, which he alles-

calles a halfe turne; but if hee bring his heade to the place where before it stoode, then it is a whole turne, and if he doe it twise together, then it is a double turne. In this turne, the horse must keepe firme vppon the ground but onely one hinder foote, which makes the turne so weake, incertaine and vncomely, that (as there is good cause) it is meerely out of vse with all good horse-men: for if a man shall come to ioyne with his enemie at the sworde, if in euery straite turne a horse take three of his feete from the ground: how easie a matter is it for the enemie by rushing in vpon him, to ouerthrow both him and his horse to the ground: yet in the dayes of *Grison*, partly because of the straitnesse and curiositie thereof, and partly for want of better experience, it was thought the onely artificiall turne; and questionlesse in his practise he did approoue (as appeares by his writings) many wayes to bring his horse vnto it, as namely by ryding him in a drie dyke, made about nine ynches deepe, and eighteene ynches broade, wherein stopping him, and making him aduaunce before, in the verie instant of his aduauncing to make him turne about, so that his forefeete may not touch the ground till they come where his hinder parts stood; or by exercising the like in some narrow way, deepe worne with water, or by teaching the horse in the stable (by knocking him vnder the knee with a sticke) to holde vp one of his legges as long as you list, with many other such like experiments, which because the turne is both naught, dangerous, and out of vse, I will not clog your memories with the idle ceremonies thereof, but thinke this I haue already spoken of, to be with the most, vnlesse the

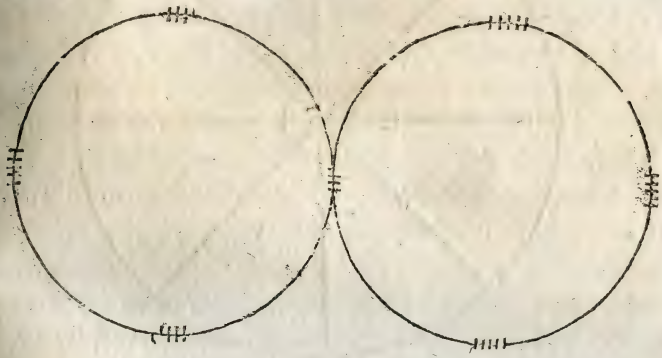
matter were to better profite or purpose.

The turne Terra Terra

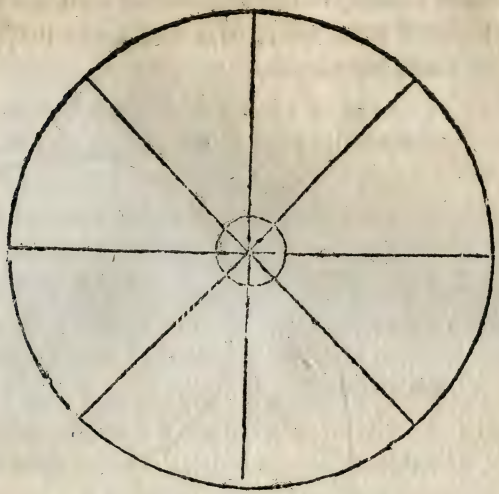
The next turne, and of all the most artificiall, and profitable turne, is that which I tearme (wanting a more proper name) *Terra, Terra*; for there is in it both beautie, arte, strength, and profite. And albe it carrie a larger compasse then the former turnes, yet when it is brought to perfitnesse, you may make it as straite as any of the other, and with a great deale of lesse danger. The way to bring your horse vnto this turne, is after you haue made him perfite vppon the *Incaualare*, first in the square, with quarter circles, then in the semicercles, and lastly in the whole rounds; you shal then in some grauelly or sandie way, marke out a Ring vpon your right hande, which must be at least a dozen yardes in compasse: which done, you shall pace another of the selfe same compasse vpon your left hand, & ioyne it close to the first: then yon shall enter into the first Ring againe, and after you haue trotted your horse once or twice about it, you shall then vpon the trotting of three yards (which is the ful quarter of your Ring) by laying the calfe of your left legge close to the horses side, and drawing your hand a little in, make your horse aduaunce before, and then instantly vppon his aduancing, thrust him forwarde againe into his trot, not suffering him by any meanes to sticke or stay, and so trotting him other three yardes, make him aduaunce againe, and then thrust him into his trott againe other three yards, doing thus till you haue made him to aduaunce foure times in the whole compasse of the Ring, that is to say, once in euery quarter of the Ring, which done vpon the right hand, you shall then make him doe as much vpon your left hand in the left

ring:

ring: and for a better explanation whereof, looke vpon this figure following: and where you see the small strokes there are the foure places where you shall make your horse aduance.



In these rings you shall exercise your horse, onely vpon a swift trot till he grow so light and nimble, that vpon the least motion of your legge hee will presently aduaunce, and away againe without any sticking, neyther disordering his head, reyne, or any other part of his bodie, but carrying euerie member in his place and comelinesse; When your horse is thus made perfite vpon these foure aduancements, then you shall deuide the quarters of your ringes into halfe quarters: And where before he did aduaunce at the end of euery three yards, you shall make him aduance at euery yarde and a halfe, so that then your whole ring shall carrie eight aduauncements, according to the lines in this figure following in the next page.



Vpon this Ring, and with theſe eight aduauncings, you ſhall practiſe your horſe ſo long, till hee either growe to ſuch perfiteneſſe, that if as ſoone as he hath aduaunced and ſet downe his fore-feete againe, going but one foote forward, you giue him the leaſt helpe with the calue of your legge that may be, he will preſently aduaunce againe, and then going againe but one ſteppe forward, aduance againe, doing thus till he growe ſo perfite, that as he aduaunceth with the helpe of your legge; ſo putting your feete forward, he will likewiſe follow with both his hinder feete euen together, and ſet them downe euer in the ſame place, where he tooke vp his forefeete, onely carrying his inmoſt fore-foot, and his inmoſt hinder foot a little more forward then his outmoſt feete. Whileſt he doth

any

any thing in circle; but when he doth it straight forward, then to take vp his fore-feete euen together, and his hinder feete euen also, first not aduauncing thus forward aboue twice or thrice together without cherishing, till he come to that perfection and cunning, that he will with the help of your legge, with these aduauncements beate the whole ring round about: wherin you must obserue, that besides the carriage of his head and reyne,) which must euer be constant, round, and in the best grace,) he doe also follow his aduauncings with his hinder legges so close and iust, that by no meanes he may seeme to sticke in his passage, or appeare as if either his hinder partes were glewde to the ground, or else too heauie for him to raise from the earth, as in these dayes you shall see many horses doe, yea euen sometimes vnder those who take vppon them to be as good as the best schoolemaisters; but it is a fault, vilde and insufferable, springing euer from corruption in teaching, as thus; when a man will bring his horse to make his turne, by forcing him to aduaunce three or foure times together in one place, and then going a steppe or two forward to aduaunce as oft more. And thus by continuance of these many aduauncings, and few steps going, at last the horse is brought to take vp both his hinder feete together, and so to follow his fore-feet, setting the turne round about; but those many aduancings together in one place, is euer the cause of a horses slouthfull bringing on of his hinder partes, because hee thinkes (according to his first custome) that he should not remoue vppon the first aduauncement, or if he doe remoue, it is so little, that it is almost as good as nothing at all, wherefore if you will

haue

haue your horſe cunning and gallant in this turne, by no meanes let him aduaunce aboue once in his firſt teaching, before he ſteppe forwards.

You ſhall alſo obſerue in this turne that your horſe keepe true time and leaſure, that is, that he aduaunce not faſter or ſlower at one time then at another, neyther take greater ſtrydes at one time then another, but euer obſerue that iuſt time and meaſure, which he vndertakes at his firſt beginning; the fault whereof (when at any time it happens) muſt euer conſiſt more in the horſeman then in the horſe; for the horſe neuer aduauncing, but when you giue your helps, looke what time you obſerue in your helpes, neceſſarily the ſame time hee muſt keepe in his motions, and in this time keeping lieth much arte, becauſe euery leſſon that is rudely done without it, is better vndone, as hauing in it neither grace nor profite.

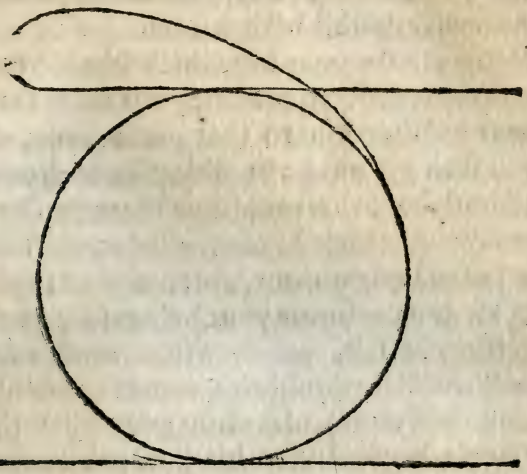
When your horſe will with theſe aduancings beate this large ring about, both ſtrongly, iuſtlye, and with a good grace, you may then drawe your ring to ſo ſmall a compaſſe, that with foure aduancings, you may make a compleate circle, according to the ſmall ring in the Center of the former ring: obſeruing this generall note, that in your firſt teaching, vpon euery ſingle turne ſetting, that is, vppon making one circle compleate, you cherriſh your horſe, but by no meanes ſuffer him to ſtand ſtill, but vpon the finiſhing of his turne, to make him then trott about the ring that hee may recouer new breath, and in his trotting cherriſh him; and looke whatſoeuer you doe vpon the right hand, forget not to doe the ſame vpon the left hand alſo; or if he be apter to one hand then the other, looke

vpon

vpon which hand he is moſt vnapt, and vpon that hand you muſt euer double his exerciſe.

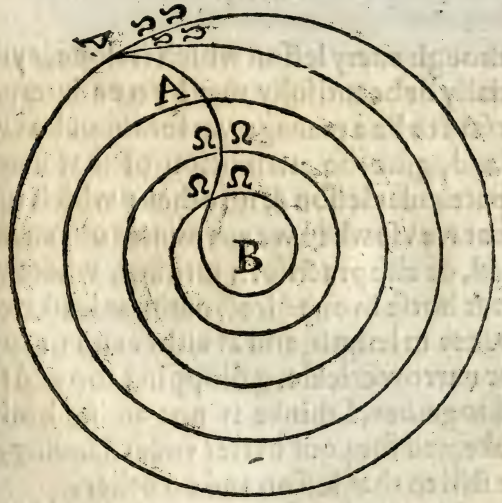
After you haue once begunne with this turne, you muſt not ceaſe dayly to practiſe your horſe therein, till you haue brought him to that perfiteneſſe, that with the leaſt feeling you can poſſible giue with your legge, he will both begin and continue his turne, by meanes whereof you ſhall not be compelled to vſe thoſe groſſe and farre fetched motions, which many of our Engliſh Riders vſe, but performe your helpes ſo couertly, that though they be felt, yet they ſhall not be diſcerned. You may then alſo double his turnes; and where hee went but once about, make him goe twice, thrice, or foure times, according to his ſtrength and courage; you ſhall then alſo leaue theſe large double rings, and onely marke out one ſingle ring, bearing but halfe the compaſſe of the former. And after you haue paced and trotted it about, you ſhall then giue him the helpe of your leg, and make him (as was before ſhewed you) beate the ring round about, rayſing vp his fore partes, and following them ſwiftly with his hinder partes, till he haue gone twice, thrice, or foure times about, according to your pleaſure on your right hand; which done, you ſhall then trott him againe about the ring foure or fiue times to recouer his breath, and then trotting him out of the ring, take a little compaſſe about, and turne him vpon your left hand, on which hand you ſhall doe in all points as you did vpon your right hand: the maner and proportion of your change you ſhall behold in this figure following.

When



When by exercise vppon this Ring, you haue brought your horse both to perfitnesse and constancy; in so much that he performes euerie lesson with great Art, nimblenesse and lightnesse, you may then aduenture to proceede further, and put him to the *Caragolo*, or Snaile ring, wherein you are to vse no other Art or helpes then were vsed in the former rings, for the difference is onely in the continuance of the labour and the fashion of the roundes and not in any other substance: for as in the former ringes you kept one certaine line without alteration; so in the *Coragolo* you shal do otherwise, for when you doe it, you shall at first marke out a ring of about a dozen or fourteene yards in compasse, which after you haue pac'd and trotted, you shall then by giuing the helpe of your outmost legge to the straitnesse of your hand, make your horse beate the Ring round about, and when you come to the closing of the

the Ring, by drawing your handes a little more straite and inward, keep him still in his aduauncing, and drawe the ring to a lesser compasse, which second ring, when you come to close, you shall as you did before againe straiten: and thus straitning ring after ring, bring your horse within the compasse of his own length, which is the straitest turne that may be, & there finish and close vp your turne, which done, trott him crosse the Ring to the largest compasse, and thereby changing your hands, turne vpon your left hand, and doe in all points as much as you did vpon your right hand, the fashion of this Snaile Ring, you may beholde in this figure, the first letter A. being the entrance into the ring, the letter B. the closing vp of the turne, and the second A. the changing of the hands.



When your horse will p erfectly set this turne you may

may then conclude him to be perfit in all turnes, for there is none more hard or full of difficultie, and it is very much commended by *Claudio Corte*, a man verie famous in this arte, yet for mine owne part, after you are once assured that your horse will doe it sufficiently, you shall then practise your horse therein very seldome for it weakneth a young horse exceeding much, and abateth his mettall greately, especially if it should be made a dayly lesson. And thus much for turning, and the seuerall kindes thereof.

CHAP. 28

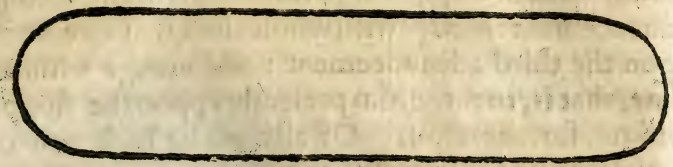
Of Managing, and the seuerall kindes thereof.

ALthough euery lesson which is doue, eyther artificially or beautifully, may by true interpretation be said to be a manage, yet forasmuch as we heere in England, giue the attribution of that name onely to one particular lesson & no other: which indeede is onely that we vse when we encounter our enemie with the sword, or else practise in turning, where we vse to gallop our horse in one direct path, at least twentie or thirtie paces in length, and at either end to turne in a straite or narrow crickle, gallopping too and froe many times together, I thinke it not amisse both for custome sake, and for your better vnderstanding, to holde the title still to that lesson and no other.

Now of this kinde of *manage*, which onely is proper to the sword, *Grison* writes both diuersly, and makes diuers

diuers kindes thereof, as *manage* with halfe time, that is after he hath ſtopt, not to turne him till the ſecond aduancement: *manage* with whole time, that is to turne vpon the third aduauncement: and *manage* without time, that is, to turne him preſently vppon the ſtoppe without further reſpit. Of all theſe he hath written both largely and ſeriouſly, and doubtles in his dayes, and vppon the firſt foundation of this art, they were found not vnneceſſarie; yet in theſe dayes of ours, where art is brought to a better perfection, they are all found vſeleſſe and inconuenient, the two firſt hauing in them a kinde of ſloath or delay, both diſcommendable and vncomely, the other a kinde of quuickneſſe or ſodainneſſe full both of danger and incertaintie: wherefore to come to the true manage indeede, which hath in it both Beautie, Art and Profit, you ſhall after this manner bring your horſe vnto it, firſt in ſome grauelly or ſandie hye way, you ſhall trotte your horſe forth-right in one path, about ſome 20. or 30. paces, & at the end thereof trotting as it were a halfe moone vpon your right hand, trott downe another direct path to the point where you began, and thereby making an other halfe moone vpon your right hand againe, ioyne the two pathes together at the end alſo, ſo that then the figure wherein you ſhall trott, will preſent to your eyes this proportion following in the next page.

When



When you haue walked and trotted in these two pathes twice or thrice about, you shall then thrust your horse forth into a little more swifter trott then before; and when you come at the end of the path, you shall by drawing your hands a little straiter inward, and by giuing the helpe of the calues of your legges, make your horse stoppe and aduaunce, and presently vpon the aduaunce thruste him forwarde with your feete againe, and then giuing him the calues of your legges againe, making him aduaunce againe, you shall as you did in your former turnes, make him beate that semicircle about: which when he hath done, you shall then put him into his trott, and trott him swiftly downe the other path, where stopping him againe, and vsing the former helps (as you did before) you shall now beat the other semicircle about on the same hand also with aduancings as before. When you haue thus done vpon the right hand three or foure times together, you shall then doe as much vpon your left hand, continuing this exercise so long, till he grow so perfit and cunning, that when he comes to the stoppe he will euen of his owne accord, set the halfe turnes without almost any assistance; which when you perceiue, you shall then put

him

him from his trot, and make him doe the same vpon an easie and stately gallop.

In this lesson you must be very diligent to helpe and assist your Horse in euery needfull time, because in this lesson is comprehended many other lessons, as the grace and perfection of his gallop, the strength and certainty of his stop, and the agility and nimblenesse of his straite turnes.

When you haue made your Horse perfite vpon these Semicircles, and double pathes, then you shall bring him into whole roundes and single pathes after this manner. First you shall pace about a small ring vpon your right hand, not aboue six yardes in compasse, which being plainly marked out that you may discerne it, you shall then from that ring trot downe an eeuen path the length of thirty paces, and there marke out an other ring vpon your left hand of the same compasse also, then you shall put your Horse into a slow gallop, and so gallop to your first ring, where when you come, by drawing your hands a little inward, and giuing him the calues of your legges somewhat harder then vsual, you shall make him raise both his fore-feete from the ground, & then following them closely with his hinder legs, beat the ring round about, as he did in his turnes. Then you shall gallop him backe againe, and doe the like vpon the left hand, galloping him thus from ring to ring, in one direct path, till hee haue set vpon either hand at least three or foure seuerall turnes, in which you shall neither finde difficulty nor disorder, if before you bring him vnto this lesson (as is before prescribed) you haue him very perfite in his strait turnes, I meane onely the *Incauallare*, and the turne *Terra, Terra*.

Some of our Horſemen of beſt reſpect in this kingdome, doe for the manage not ſo curiouſly reſpect the ſetting of any turne, but being come to the end of the managing path, onely gallop the ſtraite ring about with a little more firme loftineſſe, by drawing the brydle hand in, letting the horſe feele, ſee or heare the rod of the contrary ſide, the man carrying his bodie vpright, & at the cloſe of the ring with his contrary ſpur to giue him a good ſtroake or lobbe to bring him with ſpirit againe into the managing path. This leſſon of all other is to be done with great alacritie and cheareſulnes both of the man and horſe.

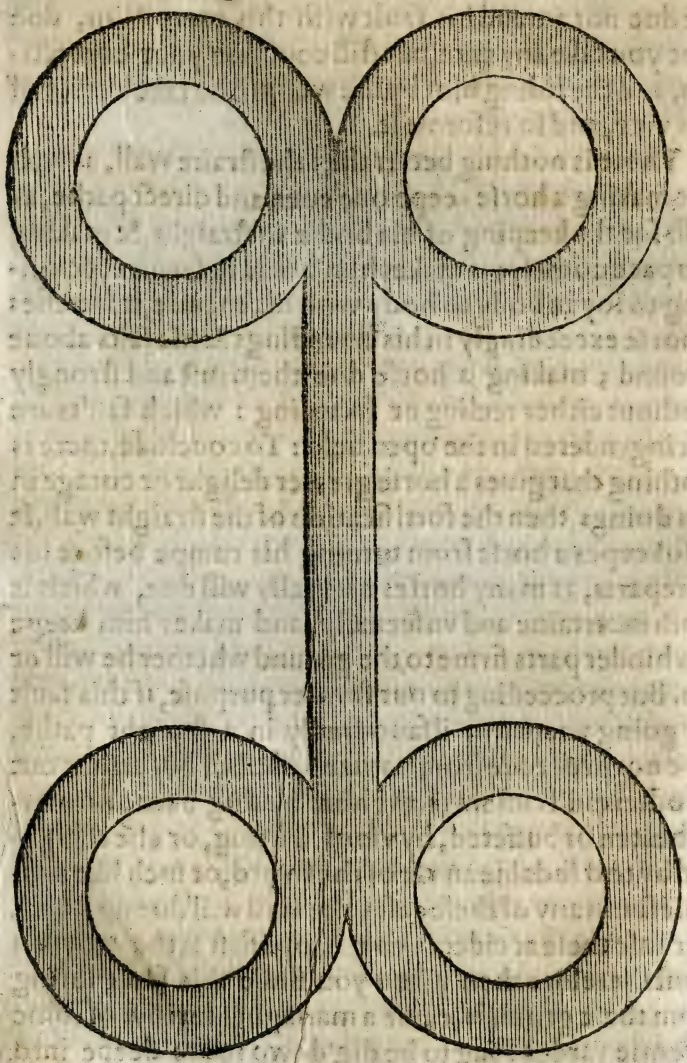
Now for obſeruations in managing, you are to obſerue all thoſe rules which you did obſerue in your ſtraite turnes, you are likewiſe to obſerue in his galloping, that he keepe his path iuſtlie and euen, without either ſwaruing of one ſide or other, or caſting his hinder partes out of the path, as many horſes naturally will doe, which is a moſt vild fault in this leſſon aboue all other, becauſe if he keepe not his path iuſt, hee can neither be good for ſword nor Launce. If then your horſe haue this fault, and that the fault proceede from nature and folly, you may redreſſe it, if you ride him euery day, by ſome euen or ſtraight wall, hauing your rings at each end of the wall, and the wall ſo plac'd that you may ride by either ſide of it. As you trott him along this wall, if your horſe caſt his hinder parts from the wall; you ſhall firſt giue him a good iert or two with your rodde vpon his hinder houghes, which are from the wall, and if he take no notice, nor amend therupon; you ſhall then giue him a good ſtroak or two with your outmoſt ſpurre, iuſt by his hinder garthe, but by no meanes

The benefit of the ſtraight Wall.

meanes in the flanke, as many of your riders vse to doe: for it is both vncomely and disorderly, and if at the first he doe not amend his fault with this correction, doe not you take any care, but still continue your correction, and the riding him by the wall, till he take notice of his vice, and so reforme it.

There is nothing better then the straite wall, as well for making a horse keepe one euen and direct pathe, as also for the keeping of his bodie vp straight, & making his pace comely; it makes him bolde in seruice, & willing to ioyne body to body with his enemie, it fortefies a horse exceedingly in his boundings & hie salts aboue ground; making a horse doe them iust and strongly without either reeling or swaruing: which faults are oft ingendered in the open field: To conclude, there is nothing that giues a horse greater delight or corage in his doings, then the fortification of the straight wall. It also keepes a horse from turning his rumpe before his foreparts, as many horses naturally will doe, which is both incertaine and vnseemely, and makes him keepe his hinder parts firme to the ground whether he will or no. But proceeding to our former purpose, if this fault of going vneuen or ilfauouredly in a straight pathe, doe not proceede from nature or follie, but rather out of other euill customes, as either hauing beene formerly beaten or buffeted, by vse of Tilting, or else affrighted by too sodaine an vse of the sword, or such like mischiefes: in any of these cases, the wall will doe no good, because these accidents euer happē first at the wall: you must therefore then when you finde this fault spring from these grounds, cause a managing furrow of some twentie yardes long to be dig'd two foote deepe into

The figure to be cut in the Earth.



the ground, and to be two foote and a halfe broade in the bottome, hauing at either end likewise two ringes digged also of like depth and wideneſſe, and being in compaſſe each ring about eighteen or twenty yardes: the proportion of which Ringes are contained in this figure afore going.

In theſe deepe Ringes, and this deepe furrow, you ſhall exerciſe your Horſe firſt vpon pace, then vpon trot, and laſtly vpon gallop, changing your handes as you ſhall either finde him apt or vnapt, till hee be both ſo perfite and ſo well fortified, that hee will goe at an inch without either ſwarueing his body or any other member, which be aſſured in leſſe then a weekes ſpace you may moſt eaſily bring to paſſe, ſo that afterwardes he will in the plaineſt field keepe his path as iuſtly as in this deepe furrow. An olde drie ditch is alſo for this fault as good as this dig'd furrow, and where you can finde ſuch a one, you may there ſaue this labour.

Next you are to obſerue, that when your Horſe hath fet the turne about, and is come euen to the cloſing vp of the circle, and ſo to depart downe the ſtraite furrow againe, that euen in his departure from the circle, you giue him the eeuen ſtroake of both your ſpurres together with a firme hardneſſe, that you may make your Horſe depart away with a liuely and good courage, which is an excellent grace in a manage; and if you do it ſo violently, that you make him raiſe all his foure feete from the ground, and as it were at the laſt cloſing of the ring, euen to bound it away is much more beautifull, which the eeuen ſtroake of your ſpurres will bring him vnto in leſſe them two mornings.

Laſtly, you ſhall obſerue, that if your horſe be one of

thoſe horſes which our Engliſh Horſe-men call hot-mouth'd Horſes, that is, which will for a time, and whileſt they are well pleaſed doe any thing with obedience and order: But if once they be moued to anger, or to labour more then is agreeable with their owne willes, they will preſently fall to flat running away, not that they take delight in running away, for the labour is worſe then their other exerciſe, but that they imagine by running away, to runne from thair paine.

When this fault you finde, you ſhal then make your managing courſe in ſome faire hie-way, neare to ſome deepe new plowed landes, and if after you haue giuen him halfe a dozen turnes vpon each hand, and done as much as you can with good order to vexe him, if then he fall to runne away, you ſhall immediatly thruſt him vpon the new plow'd lands; and there threatning him with your voyce, and correcting him both with your rodde and ſpurres, neuer leaue him till you haue made him vpon thoſe deepe landes, both gallop large ringes and ſtraite ringes too and froe, in ſuch a confuſed manner, that hee may apprehend the true order of no one certaine leſſon, but euen toile and turne vp and downe at your owne pleaſure, till you feele either his breath or ſtrength weaken by your labour; then bring him to the hie-way againe, and hauing walkt him vp and downe in the Managing furrowe and ringes, till hee haue recouered breath; then fall to manage him again as at the firſt. This correction if you vſe but twice, I am verily perſwaded it will neuer need the third time.

And thus much for Manages, and the kindes therof.

CHAP. 19.

Of the passing of a swift Cariere.

THis word *Cariere* is by many ignorant Men and some Schollers taken for leaping, bounding, and saultes aboue ground; for I sawe in a late translated Author, where speaking of those lofty ayres, hee calles them *Carriering* Horses; an Epithiton most vnpropper: For indeede *Cariere* is but onely to runne swiftly; and to passe a *Cariere*, is but to runne with strength and courage such a conuenient Course as is meete for his ability; which euery Horse-man must measure according as hee findes the spirit and shape of his Horse: The heauy and vnweldie Horse hauing the shorter Course, and the light spirited and fine shap't Horse the longer: Yet for as much as there is a mediocritie and indifference amongst the most part, I thinke, and it is also confirmed by many good Horse-men, that foure-score and tenne paces is a very conuenient *Cariere*, neither being too long for the slowe Horse, nor too short for the swift. Wherefore when your Horse is most perfite in all the lessons before specified, (and not before) you shall then make him passe a *Cariere* in this manner; being comd into some large and euen hie-way without either ruttes or gaules to occasion stumbling, after you haue pac'd him three or foure times on your right hand, about a little narrow ring; you shall then trot him straight forward (as neare as you can gesse) at least foure-score and

ten paces, and there walke him three or foure times about a narrow ring on your left hand, and then setting his head directly downe the way you came, make him stand still a pretty space, setling your selfe euen & firme in your saddle, easig your hand, and cherishing your horse, which done, yeilding your body a little forward and ierting your leggs forward with all your strength, stifly vpon your stirrop-leathers, and crying with your voice *hey* or *hoe*, start your horse suddainly, into a swift gallop, and then giuing him the eeuen stroake of your spurres twice or thrice together, make him runne with all the strength and fury hee hath, till he come to the verge of your first ring, & there, by drawing both your handes hard into the pomell of your saddle, and laying the calues of your legs close to his sides, make him stop close vpon his buttocks, and aduance with all twice or thrice together, and then stand still a good space, whilst you cherish the horse and ease your hand, which done, you may then walke him about a narrow ring againe on your right hand, till hee haue recouered breath and strength, and so trot him home to the Stable.

Now that your Horse may at the stoppe couch his hinder legges the better, and so make it more close and beautifull, it shall be good that you chuse such a peece of ground to passe the Cariere vpon, as may at the last end where your Horse shall stop, bee somewhat descending downe the hill, yet so, that it may bee grauelly and firme ground, on which your Horse may valiantly trust his feete; and not slippery or grasse ground, which once sayling a horse, will make him euer after, out of his distrust both haue worse will, and stop with much lesse beauty.

After

After you haue paſt your Horſe a *Cariere* or two, and finde that hee will doe it ſtrongly, ſwiftly, and obediently, you ſhall then not paſſe him a *Cariere* aboue once in two or three monthes; eſpecially after he comes to weare a bitt; for nothing doth diſtemper a Horſes mouth ſo much as paſſing many *Carieres*. And thus much for this leſſon.

CHAP. 20.

When and how to bitt Horſes, and to make his head conſtant.

AFter your Horſe hath beene thus farre trained vp, and taught perfitly in all theſe former leſſons, onely with the Trench, Martingale, and Muſroll, and that you finde hee doth euery leſſon with a comely grace, good courage, great lightneſſe, and ſetled conſtancy, you ſhall then take away his Trench, and in ſtead thereof put into his mouth a plaine ſmooth Cannon bitt, ſomewhat formerly worne, of the proportion and ſhape of the firſt figure of Cannons formerly deſcribed, and this bitt you ſhall at the firſt putting on anoynt with hony and ſalt; the Kurbe thereof muſt bee round, ſmooth, long, and very full, by any meanes not preſſing, but onely lying gently vpon the neather lippe. The cheeke of this firſt bitt muſt bee ſtraight, according to the firſt figure of Cheekes, and the length according to the proportion of the Horſe, as thus for example: When your horſe ſtandeth in his beſt glory, and reyneth moſt comely, and

and cloſeſt, as you may make him doe if you ſtand by him, and holde either a peece of bread, or a perfumed gloue to his noſe; or if you make a ſtrange horſe ſtand before him, as it were to ouer-face him. Take then your ryding rodde, and meaſure him from his neather tuſh to the vpper part of the fore point of his ſhoulder, and iuſt ſo long muſt the cheeke of your bitt bee from the eye of the bitt, to the neathermoſt part thereof.

Now when you haue put this bitt into your horſes mouth, and placed it in his due place, which is euer aboue the neather tuſh, ſo as it may touch, but not reſt vpon the tuſh, you ſhall then take the laſt Cauezan formerly ſhewed, which conſiſts all of one peece, not hauing ſharpe teeth, but blunt teeth, as appeares by the figure, and with long reynes of good round rope, being both ſoft, & but halfe twound, put it vpon your horſes head, placing it iuſt vnderneath the noſe-band of your brydle, which is ſo much lower then your Muſroll lay by the iuſt breadth of your noſe-band; inſomuch that the Cauezan ſhall reſt vpon the griſtle of the horſes noſe, which is the tendereſt part of the horſes face. Now for as much as the weight of the yron, when you eaſe the reynes of the Cauezan will fall down, and peraduentnre ſlip ouer the horſes noſe, you ſhall vnderſtand that all your Cauezans muſt haue their out-ſides couered with leather ſtrong and good, ſo that the yron may not be ſeene; then through this leather you ſhall put a ſtring, with which ſtring you ſhall tye the Cauezan vp to the noſe-band of the bridle, and the noſeband in any wiſe at the firſt you ſhall buckle cloſe and ſtraite about the horſes chaps, leaſt at the firſt wearing of a bit, which is a mouth more full and large then the Trench,

he

he take vnto him the foule vice of gaping. When your horſe is thus trimmed, after he haue ſtood a while vpon the bitt in the ſtable, and felt the Kurbe and other implements, you ſhall then bring him to the blocke, and take his backe. As touching the carriage of the reynes of your bitt, I haue formerly ſhewed you: and for the reynes of your Cauezan you ſhall carry them in all pointes as before I taught you to carry the falſe reynes of the flying Trench, which is, the left reyne in your left hand, and vnder your left thumbe, and your right reyne in your right hand, of an euen length with the other. After you are well ſetled, and euery thing about your horſe orderly diſpoſed, you ſhall then thruſt forward your horſe, and trott him faire and ſoftly into ſome large ſandy hie-way, bearing his head onely vpon the Cauezan, and letting him but feele the bitt and no more, no ſooner drawing it with the leaſt motion, but inſtantly eaſing it againe. You ſhall the firſt day neither put him to large Ring, nor any other leſſon, but onely trott him ſtraight forward, and make him ſtoppe and retyre, vſing the helpe of the bitt little nothing at all. After you haue thus ridden him the firſt day, you ſhall the next day likewiſe alſo ride him ſtraight forth-right, and onely ſtoppe and retyre alſo, yet that day you ſhall carry an indifferent hand, which is to ſay, you ſhall beare him as much vpon the Cannon as vpon the Cauezan, as thus: When you drawe vp the reynes of your bitt, you ſhall let looſe the reynes of you Cauezan, and when you draw downe the reynes of your Cauezan, you ſhall eaſe the reynes of your bitt, and with theſe equall and indifferent motions, you ſhall exerciſe him the ſecond day,

bringing

bringing him to a little more familiarity and acquaintance with the bitt, yet euer preſeruing his mouth in all ſweetneſſe poſſible: When you haue done thus two dayes together, you ſhall then the third day put him to the ſame exerciſe and no other, onely you ſhall beare his head, for the moſt part vpon the Cannon, and little or nothing at all vpon the Cauezan, except in time of neceſſity, as to helpe him in turning, or to giue ſweetnes to his mouth, leaſt in reſting his head too much vpon the bitt, his mouth ſhould looſe ſome part of it's tenderneſſe: By theſe three dayes exerciſes, the horſe will growe both to vnderſtand the bitt, and to take knowledge as well of the helpes, as of the corrections, hee will finde pleaſure in the Kurbe, and a conſtant reſt in his mouth whereon to ſettle and firme his head.

Now for the Cauezan, this is the helpe that it bringeth; it is in correction and vſe of ſo neare an alliance with the Muſroll and Martingall, binding and looſing in the ſelfe ſort that they doe, ſo that the horſe imagining hee is within his former olde bandes, he dare neither toſſe vp his head, nor duck it downe, but beares it in the ſame conſtant manner which formerly hee did, till being acquainted with the bitt, and finding the eaſe and ſtaiedneſſe therof, he will not then vſe any of thoſe vilde qualityes, albe hee haue neuer ſo great liberty. Againe the Cauezan is as ready a helpe in euery turne as the Trench, and puts into the Horſes vnderſtanding the vſe of the Kurbe, which way it bindeth when it moues a Horſe to turne vpon the right hand, when vpon the left, and the reynes thereof, you ſhall vſe as you vſed the reynes of your Trench, as thus: When you turne vpon your right hand, you ſhall drawe the left reyne

reyne of your Cauezan firme, and lay it close to the left side of his necke, to keepe his head and necke straight, and the right reyne you shall drawe a little more then ordinary, giuing him as it were a warning of his turne, and so immediately ease it againe.

After these three dayes exercises, you shall then put your horse to the large rinnges in the selfe same manner as you did at his first breaking; as first pacing, then trotting, and lastly gallopping, yet so that he be perfit in euery one of them seuerally, before he proceed to other, and not trot before he can pace readily, nor gallop till he can trot most perfectly. From two ringes you shall put him to three, from three to foure, and frō foure to one large ring, containing two smaller rings within it, all which are in their figures formerly described; & in all these ringes as you labour your horse, you shall euer by little vse your Cauezan lesse and lesse, and your bitt more and more, till you haue wrought in your Horse this contrariety, that as at the first the Cauezan was of most vse, and the bitt but either a cipher or a very small helpe, so you must now bring your bitt to be onely of vse, and the Cauezan to lye vpon the horses face to little or no purpose, by degrees, long labouring, and gentle motions, bringing your Horse to such a perfect knowledge and delight in the bitt, that when at any time you turne or change from hand to hand in your ringes, you shall if you turne vpon your right hand, no more but turne the thumbe of your bridle hand which standes vpright, but a little downewards, toward the right shoulder of the horse, and when you turne vpon your left hand, you shall but turne your bridle hand a little backwardes towards the left shoulder of the horse,

horſe, the knowledge of which two motions, the horſe will ſuddainly learne, if at firſt teaching you euer accompany with them the vſe of the Cauezan in the very inſtant that you mooue your handes: you ſhall alſo make your horſe ſo perfit vpon the ſtop, that if he be in the fulnes of his Cariere, you ſhall not by any meanes drawe your bridle hand aboue the height of your Saddle pommel, nor when you make him retyre, you ſhall not draw your hand higher then halfe ſo farre as at the ſtop, for the bitt being an Engine of the greateſt commaundment, which raiſeth vp a horſes head and body, both in pace and other motion, with more eaſe then any other inſtrument; if therefore your ſtraininges, ſhould be as hard vpon it, as vpon the Trench (which hath no violence more then what it takes from your hand) you could not chuſe but diſorder, or elſe take from the horſes mouth the beſt ſence and feeling: therefore in any caſe let your ſtrainings vpon the bitt be tender and temperate, yet not ſo very ſoft, but that both you and the Horſe may haue a full conſtant feeling of one another.

Now for obſeruations and notes in this firſt bitting of a Horſe, there bee many, as firſt when you haue put the bitt on, to looke within the mouth of your Horſe, and ſee whether your bitt lye in his due place, then that the mouth of the bitt be neither too bigge nor too little for the Horſes mouth, but of a iuſt proportion and fulneſſe, for to bee too bigge makes a Horſe gape, hurts his vpper barres, and dulles his mouth, and to be too little makes a horſe draw his tongue ouer the bitt, thruſt it out of his mouth, either of one ſide or other; and laſtly (giuing him no perfite

feeling)

feeling) takes from him all perfit tenderneſſe. For them and other faultes whatſoeuer, you may finde remedies and alteration of mouthes in the former Chapter treating of Bitts: You ſhall alſo obſerue that the Kurbe lye vpon the neather lippe, in his due place, yet ſo looſe and without preſſing, that albe your Horſe keepe his teeth faſt together, yet he may play with his neather lip vpon the Kurbe, which is a great ſigne of a ſweet and tender mouth.

Next theſe, you ſhall obſerue the ſhape of your horſe, and if you finde hee haue ſuch a long, large, Swan like neck, that notwithſtanding the ſtraightnes of your bitt cheeke, which is onely to put vp his head, he yet bringeth it ſomewhat rounder then you would haue him, and ſo looſeth ſome part of the beauty of his reyne, you ſhall then ride him with the broken cheeke according to the ſecond figure of Cheekes, where the neather partes are broke more outward then the vpper, and if one breach bee not ſufficient you may vſe two, if two faile, three doubtles will worke your pleaſure, and put vp his necke ſo hye as nature will giue it leaue, but if contrary to this ſhape, a horſe haue a ſhort neck, and a narrow chaule, ſo that your ſtraight cheeke puts vp his head hie enough, but yet it bringeth not in his mozell, nor boweth his necke to any proportion; In this caſe you ſhall ride him with the broken cheeke, but the breach ſhal be made inward as the other was outward, and if one breach be not ſufficient, you ſhal make two, or elſe three, till you haue brought his head to the place you deſire: you ſhall alſo obſerue, that by no meanes at the firſt bitting of a horſe you draw your bit raſhly or ſuddainly; for that is the firſt occaſion which

makes

makes a horſe thruſt out his noſe, and rebell againſt the bitt, but taking leaſure, and drawing the reynes gently, giues him ſuch a knowledge, that he will yeeld and follow the bitt: which once vſed, hee will neuer after contend.

Now for the Cauezan, you ſhal obſerue, that if your Horſe be of hard head, and ſhort necke, ſo that he preſſes and hangs vpon this Cauezan of one peece, which is of all the gentleſt, you ſhall then in ſtead thereof vſe the wrythen Cauezan, conſiſting of two peeces, which binding ſomewhat ſtraiter, is of ſo much the more force in puniſhing, and breedes a quicker obedience.

But if your Horſe haue beene before time in ſome ignorant horſ-mans hand, who for want of Art to vſe gentle Cauezans, hath ſo duld and hardned your Horſes head, that neither of theſe Cauezans will preuaile, nor bring lightnes to your Horſes head, then in ſuch extremity you may vſe the other Cauezan, conſiſting of two peeces, with ſharpe teeth, or that which is of three peeces, ſo you haue this diligent care, that by no meanes you either fridge haire, or take any skin from the horſes face, which is a fault both diſgracefull to the horſe and man: to the Horſe, as taking away the beauty of his countenance, and to the Man in ſhewing the hard rudeneſſe of his hand without either moderation or temper.

The Chaine with teeth, and the Chaine with teeth and ringes toothed, are both more ſharpe then the former Cauezans, and may (where the rider hath ſo lady-ſoft a hand, as not to bruiſe or wound) be vſed in caſe of great extremity, and not otherwiſe.

Now ſome that happily looke not into the true method

method of my precepts, may taske me of some oppositions or contrarieties in my writings, because in the second Chapter of this booke, I there discommended all these sharpe Cauezans, and yet in this Chapter doe (after a certaine sort) allow them; but they must carry in their memories these considerations, that I discommended them vtterly as the first instruments or sternes wherewith to gouerne a Colt at his first backing without any other assistance; snd I allow them after a horse is ready in euery lesson fit for seruice in the warres, for the making him firme, steddy, and perfit vpon his bitt, or where ignorance and a rude hand hath done hurt, there with Art and cunning to amend those faultes with the helpe of these instruments.

Now when you haue vpon the smooth Cannon, and Cauezan, made your horse perfite and ready in all the lessons which are formerly taught; so that hee will doe them with a good grace, and a free spirit, you shall then lay away the Cauezan, and in stead thereof ride him with a smooth Cannon, and a flying Trench, according to the figure in the fourth Chapter, putting to the ringes of the flying Trench a paire of false reynes, answerable to the perfite reynes of the Bridle, the carriage of which reynes, are also shewed in the same Chapter, and keeping the proportion of the cheeke as before.

Vpon this Bitt, and with these false reynes you shall practise your horse both in large ringes, straite turnes, and all other lessons which are formerly taught in the selfe same manner, as you did with the Cannon and Cauezan, vsing the same helpes, corrections, and obseruations which you did in the vse of the Trench,

Musroll, and Martingall, till your horse be so perfite, that a curious eye shall not iudge hee hath any other helpe in his motions then onely your imagination; which lesse then two monthes will fully compleate and perfite. At which time (if your horse be of full strength, spirit, and nimblenesse) proceede to the other lessons, which are Ayres and Saults aboue ground: and though not fully so necessary as the former for seruice in the warres, yet are they such, as not without profite may be practised in those places: And for pleasure of Princes, and health of a mans body, are both delightfull and commodious.

CHAP. 21.

Of bounding aloft, and the manner thereof.

WHen you haue made your Horse perfite in all the lessons before taught: If then you finde in him a naturall inclination of lightnesse, and a spirit both apt to apprehend and execute any Sault aboue ground, as hauing both good limbes, and a cleane strength. The next lesson you shall teach him, shall bee to bound or rise aboue ground with all his foure feete, eeuen and iust together, carrying his head in a iust and due place, without loosing his reyne: and gathering his body round and close together, rising and falling againe in one and the selfe same place; which manner of bounding aloft is fittest and easiest to bee taught at such place as

as you ſtoppe your Horſe, as thus for example; When you haue trotted your Horſe a dozen or twenty yardes forward in a ſandy way, you ſhall there make him ſtoppe and aduaunce at leaſt twiſe together, obſeruing euer that at his ſecond aduauncing you giue him the eeuen ſtroake of both your ſpurres together, cloſe by the hind moſt girth, at which if at firſt hee onely but ſhew amazement, or aduaunce higher as not yet vnderſtanding your meauing: You ſhall then trott him as farre forward againe, and there (as you did before at his ſecond aduauncement) giue him the eeuen ſtroake of your ſpurres a little harder then you did before, at which if hee riſe not, you ſhall then not onely ſpurre him againe, but alſo giue him a good iert with your rodde vnder his belly, which putting him into a little more amazement, forth-with trott forward againe, and as you did the ſecond time, doe ſo now the third time, onely forbeare your rodde as much as is poſſible, becauſe the correction thereof tendes to another purpoſe, and this vſe your ſpurres, which ſhould onely raiſe your Horſe vpon all foure. When you haue done thus three times together, doe it the fourth, fift, & ſixt time, euery time increaſing your correction till he raiſe all his foure feete from the ground, which whenſoeuer hee dooth, or how ill-fauouredly ſoeuer he dooth, yet notwithſtanding cheriſh him exceedingly, and bee aſſured that in twiſe or thriſe bounding hee will amend what fault ſoeuer was in his firſt beginning: And ſurely except hee bee a very jade, and ſo not fitte for ſuch practiſe, you ſhall not giue him this helpe of your ſpurre twiſe before hee will bound from the ground vpon all foure.

There be some Authors that would haue a Horse to doe this bound or leape with the helpe of the calues of your legges, and not with the spurres, saying, that the calues of the legges will make a Horse rise higher then spurres, but the reason is neither good, nor the practise to bee allowed. For if you make your horse bound with the helpe of your calues of your legges, then you make that helpe vse-lesse for all other purposes; so that when your horse should but aduance, hee will bound; when he should beate a turne, it will be all in boundes: And to conclude, he must either haue spur-galde sides, or else with euery lesson hee must mixe boundinges, which being both vnfitte, and out of order, you shall onely follow the course first preseribed.

There be some Horse-men, that when their Horses doe bound, would haue them in the same motion also to yerke out their hinder legges; as an *Ayre* both full of Art and comelinesse.

As touching yerking behinde, and the way to bring your horse vnto it, I haue sufficiently written already in the sixteenth Chapter: Wherefore, if in this lesson also you would haue him yerke, you shall doe no more but in the very height of his bounding, giue him euery time a good ierte with your rodde vnder the belly, to which after hee is any long time acustomed, and doth vnderstand your meaning, hee will grow so perfite, that hee will neuer bound, but hee will yerke withall, albe you neither giue him helpe nor correction.

Now for obseruations in this lesson, besides the beauty and comelinesse of his reyne, there are but two any thing materiall; the first is, that if hee rise not so hye with his hinder partes, as with his fore-

partes,

partes, that you accompany with the helpe of your spurres, a good iert with your rodde vnder the Horses belly, as neare the flanke as you can strike it.

The second is, that if in his bounding hee doe not keepe his ground but presse forward as if hee strouе how farre hee could leape, and not how hye he could leape, that in such a case, looke how much ground he gettes in his leape, that so much you make him retyre backe; and being come to his first place, there make him bound againe.

Now for the vse of this lesson, it is thus: If when you ride your Horse before any great assembly, vpon the finishing vpp of euery lesson, whether it bee Ring-turne, *Manage*, Strait-turnes of all sortes, or what lesson soeuer; vpon euerie stoppe and conclusion, (as the last of all labour) you make your Horse bound and yerke out withall, it is most comely; if you shall set the turne *Terra, Terra*, altogether vpon boundes and yerkings out behinde, (as I haue seene diuers Horses doe) especially a red Roan'd horse of the Earle of *South-hamptons*, it not onely showes in the Horse a good courage, cleane strength, and a strong chine, but in the Horse-man a readie hand, a quicke legge and a most perfite seate: And thus much for bounding aloft or leaping.

Chap. 22.

Of the Coruet, Caprioll, gallop Galliard, and going side-long.

THis *Ayre* or *Sault* which wee call Coruet, albe it be deriued from the Spanish word *Corua*, which is the hinder heele of a Horse, yet wee haue the best Presidents for the doing thereof, from the auncient *Italians*, the motion is a kinde of dancing which the horse is made to vse by taking his fore-legges a good height from the ground, and his hinder legs not halfe so much, prauncing vp and downe all in one place, and in the fiercenes of his countenance and carriage of his body seeming as though he would runne, and yet is restrained. The labour thereof, albe he take his fore-feet vp higher, consisteth most in his hinder partes, because he must couch and bowe them more nimblie, and also presse them downe the harder. The manner to bring him vnto it is thus: Hauing trotted him forth-right in some sandy hie-way, at least a dozen paces; stopp him, and with the helpe of the calues of your legges, make him there aduance three or foure times together, all in one place; then trot him as far further, and there make him aduance at least a dozen times, continuing thus to make him aduaunce at the end of euery dozen paces, sometimes six times, sometimes eight times, sometimes more, till in the end you feele him lift vp his hinder partes; which if he doe he nuily or slowly, you shall then with your rod iert him vnder the belly, yet so tenderly,

derly, that the noise thereof may more moue spirit in him, then the smart, by meanes whereof he wil instantly take both his hinder feet from the ground, and as he aduanceth before, so he wil also moue his hinder parts and keepe a prauncing with both partes indifferently.

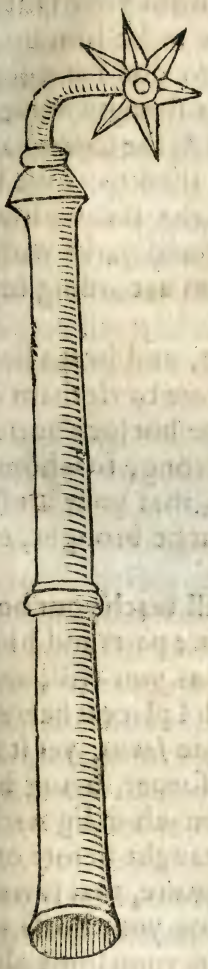
Now if you finde that in his dooing of the Coruett hee stand too vpright vpon his loynes, and doe not bowe as hee ought, you shall then teach him the Coruet vpon the knowle of some Hill, his head being turned downe the descent.

Now whereas the *Italians* (from the imitation of the *Spaniards*) doe in the Coruet vse to ride shorter then in any other lesson, and to that purpose haue set downe certaine precepts, I for mine owne part doe not like such rules, neither would haue any man alter his Stirrops from their true place: For what lesson soeuer will not be done with the helpe of the legg in his best carriage, is either a lesson vnfit to be taught, or else doth carry in it the vse of some barbarous correction.

After your horse is perfit in his Coruet, the next *ayre* you shall teach him is that *fault* which *Grison* and the other *Italians* call *Caprioll*, and wee heere in *England* the Goates leape. It differeth from the Coruet a great deale more in motion then in teaching, for whereas the Coruet is an *ayre* onely to be done as it were in one place, and the hinder feete not to rise any thing neare so hie as the fore-feete, the *Caprioll* contrarily is an *ayre* altogether to be done forward, and the hinder partes euer to rise in equall height with the fore-partes, the manner to teach your horse to doe it is in this sort; you shall ride him vpon some sandy or grauelly earth, and there stopping him, you shall make him aduaunce

twice or thrice together, then you shall trot him not aboue a step or two at the most, and there make him aduaunce twice more; then another step or two and aduaunce againe. And thus aduauncing at the end of euerie two steps for the space of thirtie or fortie paces going, you shall bring him to such a custome, and lightnes in his aduauncings, that in the end in stead of the two steppes, hee will with the helpe of the calue of your legg, raise vp his rumpe and hinder partes, and so passe from stop to stop in aduauncings before, and persuites behinde of one equal height and order; in which if you finde hee any thing at all sticketh, and doth not raise his hinder partes so hie as you would haue him, you shall then turne your rodde in your hand with the point backward, iust ouer the middest of the Horses rumpe, and your hand close against your right side, then when hee aduanceth; in his passage forward you shall shake your rodde ouer his rumpe, and now and then jert him vpon the same, making him thereby to gather vp his loynes from the earth, and to passe with better comelinesse, But if either out of his heauy composition, or stubbornnesse of his nature, this gentle correction doe not auaile; you shall then ride your Horse into some narrow hollowe hie-way, where hee cannot flie out of either side, or into some olde drie ditch, and there as you practise him in the same lesson, you shall cause a stander by to come behinde you with a long instrument of yron in his hand, bowde at one end, and hauing therein like a great extraordinary rowell of a Spurre; which instrument is called a *Peerch* and is made after the fashion of this figure following in the next Page.

The



The Peereh.

With this *Peereh* the ſtander by ſhall ſtrike your Horſe vpon the rumpe, and make him raiſe vp his hinder partes, whilſt your ſelfe ſhall onely but helpe him with the calues of your legges, and the forward ierte with your ſtirrop-leathers: And thus dooing but two or three morninges together, you ſhall neuer after neede any other helpe, more then your rodde turned backward, or the ſound of your voice crying *Hey, Hey*, or *Hoe, Hoe*.

The next leſſon to this, is the galloppe *Galliard*, which *Griſon* demonſtrateth to bee done vpon the gallop, as thus: Putting him into a luſtie ſtrong gallope to cauſe him at the end of euery two paces of the gallop to bound aloft, and yerke out his hinder legges withall, and ſo to doe for the ſpace of twentie paces or more, according to the ſtrength of the Horſe, and this, from the deriuation of the worde Gallop-galliard is very probable; yet with vs this leſſon is not of ſuch vſe, but wee rather doe it in the Coruet or Caprioll, as thus: After your Horſe hath beaten the Coruet three times together, then

The Gallop-Galliard.

then giuing him the euen ſtroke of both your ſpurres, and a good ierte with your rodde to make him bound aloft, and yarke out withall, and ſo doe for a dozen bounds together, or ſo many as his ſtrength may conueniently endure: and ſo likewiſe in the *Capriole* after hee haue made three leapes, then to giue him both your ſpurres together, and the iert with your rodde, and ſo make him bound and yarke withall, doubling theſe leapes and boundes according to his ſtrength.

Theſe leſſons are all very forcible, and beat a horſes limbes exceedingly, wherefore you are to vſe them very ſildome, and to teach them to none but ſuch horſes as are both couragious, actiue, and ſtrong, to whom nature hath been ſo good a miſtreſſe, that your art ſhall not create, but keep in exerciſe what he brought, euen from the wombe of his damme.

The next and laſt leſſon you ſhall teach your horſe, is to goe ſidelong, both with his fore parts and hinder parts in equall motions, as far as you will, and as little a way as you will: and though I place it heere the laſt amongſt thoſe lofty *ayres* and hie *faults*, yet it is as neceſſarie as any other leſſon whatſoeuer, being both of great vſe in the wars, and of much delight in the place of pleaſure; yet ſhould it be taught before other leſſons be perfitted, it is of that nature, that it would breed diſorder: wherefore to bring your horſe vnto it, you ſhal thus doe: as you ride him vpon ſome plaine peece of ground, if you would haue him to goe ſidelong to your right hand, you ſhall turne your bridle hand a little ouer to his right ſhoulder, and lay your left legge cloſe to his ſide, ſo that he may not onelie

feele

feele your legge but your ſpur alſo, yet in ſuch ſort that your ſpur doe not pricke him, and if at the firſt hee will not remooue his legges, you ſhall continue ſtill to holde your legge cloſe, and let him feele the ſpur more and more; if then hee remooue contrarie to your minde, that is, rather to the left hand then to the right, you ſhall not reſpect it but ſtill keep your legge cloſe, and increaſe your correction till in the end he begin to remoue his legges right: which as ſoone as euer you perceiue, immediatly take away your leg, cheriſh him, and make him a while ſtand ſtill.

After a little pauſe, doe as you did before, exerciſing him therein, til with the leaſt motion of your ſingle leg he will goe ſidelong as far as you will haue him: this done, you ſhall make him doe as much to his left ſide, by turning your bridle hand a little backward, and laying your right legge cloſe to the horſes ſide. When your horſe will thus goe ſidelong of which ſide you will, you ſhall then by oft practiſing him therein, make him goe ſide long ſo faſt, as if he did euen trot, which is both gracefull and profitable; but if in this leſſon you finde his foreparts (becauſe they are much the nimbler) to goe faſter ſidelong then his hinder parts, ſo that he drawes his hinder parts after him, in this caſe you ſhal turne the point of your rodde downeward, croſſe ouerthwart his houghes beneath his thighes, and lay it cloſe vnto them, and if at the feeling thereof he doe not preſentlie amend his fault, you ſhall then giue him a good iert or two orethwart his houghes, and that will make him bring on his hinder parts roundlie.

When

When thus your Horſe will perfectly goe ſide-long off which hand you pleaſe, you may then by the helpe of your contrarie legge, and a little more firme carrying of your bridle hand, make your Horſe both Coruet and paſſe the Caprioll ſide long to which hand you pleaſe, which is a fault much vſed amongſt the *Italians*, yet for mine owne part I would haue it practiſed but ſeldome, becauſe in my conceite the beſt grace that thoſe Ayres carry, is when they are done ſtraight forward, for then they ſhow their beſt ſhapes, and the trueſt Art in the Horſe-man, approuing that his legges keepe one eeuen time in their motions, and giue one equall ſence in their touchinges; where ſhould he doe rudely, that is, ſtrike one legge harder then another, or mooue one legge faſter then another, why theſe diſorders are the meanes which will make a Horſe doe theſe Ayres ſide-long as well as the vſe of the beſt Art.

Now to conclude: In theſe leſſons, and all other, you are diligently to obſerue true time and meaſure in your dooings, neither ſhowing furie or amazement in too much haſte, nor want of Art or agilitie in too much ſloath or dulnes, but holding as your chiefe Iewell this golden treaſure, excellent *Mediocritie*.

And thus much for theſe leſſons of Pleaſure.

Chap. 23.

Of running at the Ring, and the vse of the Launce.

WHen your Horſe is compleatly perfitted, in all the former leſſons of ſeruice and pleaſure, and that by labor and Arte you haue brought your worke to a wiſhed end, it then remaines that you make vſe of the benefit of your former labours; either if you liue in the land of peace by imploying your horſe for the exerciſe of your body, and ſometimes for your benefit in trauaile as occaſion ſhall be miniſtred, or if you liue in the place of action, by putting him to ſeruice, and the encounter of your enemies. Yet by the way I muſt giue you this one note more, which is, you muſt vnderſtand that the Canon bittes formerly deſcribed, being mouthes of ſuch exceeding ſmoothnes and fulneſſe, if you ſhall either trauell your horſe thereupon in long iourneis, or vſe them in the trouble & turmoile of the warres, where the ouerplus of exerciſe brings a horſe to a certaine faintneſſe and wearineſſe; In any of theſe caſes, the horſe being compeld to reſt much vpon theſe full ſmooth mouthes, will in the end grow both dull, inſenſible, and hard of mouth, wherefore as ſoone as you haue perfitted your horſe in all his leſſons and brought his head and reyne to a ſetled conſtancie, you ſhall then according as you finde the temper of the horſes mouth, bytte him with either *Scatch*, *Mellon*, *Peare*, *Campanell*, or ſome other mouth formerly deſcribed

ſcribed vnto you, faſhioning the cheeke thereof according to the third figure of cheekes formerly deſcribed, onely the length thereof muſt be according to the proportion of the horſes necke, for if the horſe haue a long vpright necke, and his head reſt comely vpon the ſame, then the cheeke would bee two inches ſhort of the higheſt part of his breſt, but if his necke be ſhort and vpright, or long and round bending a little downward, then the neather part of your bitt cheeke muſt come full to the vpper part of his breſt, but no lower.

Your horſe being thus bitted and well ſetled vpon this bitt, if you haue a delight in the exerciſe of armes, and the vſe of the Launce, it ſhall be good for you to practiſe twice or thrice a weeke to run at the ring, that is, to ſet a ſmal ring of yron about eight inches in compaſſe at the moſt, either vpon the top of a tilt bar, or vpon a ſtaffe fixe foot from the ground, cloſe by the midſt of the furrow, where you paſſe your *Cariere*, and then ſtanding with your horſe and your Launce in your hand, 45. paces or more from the Ring, trie how neere you can goe to runne your ſtaffe thorow the Ring as your horſe paſſeth his *Cariere*.

Now for as much as in this leſſon, there be many nice and curious obſeruations, and alſo great arte both in the gouernment of your horſe and of your hand, and for as much as this leſſon being truely and artificially learned, containeth all other leſſons whatſouer wherein the Launce is imployed, I will (according to mine own experience & inſtruction) ſhew the manner therof, wherein if either I faile in arte or garbe, I humbly ſubmit to the correction of thoſe of better iudge-

ment,

ment, hoping that albe I ſhowe not all thinges in their beſt perfection, yet I will ſhow nothing which ſhall carry in it any groſſe abſurditie.

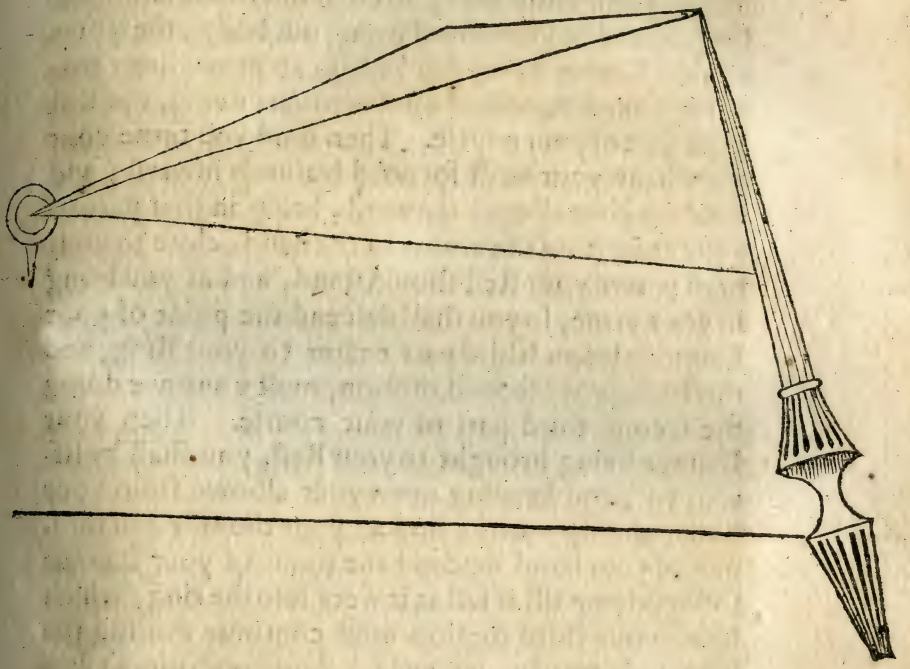
Now therefore if you will practiſe to runne at the Ring, after you haue plac'd your ring in his due place, (which ſhould euer bee in the middeſt of your *Cariere*) your Horſe then being brought to the field, to the end of the *Cariere*. As ſoone as you come vnto him, you ſhall ere you mount, looke that your Bridle and Bitt bee in there due places, that your Saddle bee faſt girt, and your Crooper buckled at his iuſt length; then taking the reynes of your Bridle into your left hand, holding them as hath beene formerly taught you: You ſhall then mount vpon his backe, and then placing your ſelfe iuſt, eeuen, and vpright in your Saddle, with your feete firme vpon your Stirrops and your toes bending rather inward then outward, Some by-ſtander ſhall then deliuer into your right hand a Launce, which you ſhall receiue by no part but that, which is purpoſely made for your hand.

As ſoone as you haue receiued the Launce, you ſhall place the butt end thereof vpon the midſt of your right thigh, bearing the point thereof ſtraight and vpright, ſo as the out-ſide of your Launce may anſwere the out-ſide of your right eye, onely the point thereof muſt a little thought leane forward. Being thus ſeated in your Saddle, and your Launce thus truely plac'd, you ſhall then put foorth your Horſe, and pace him to the end of the *Cariere* where you intend to ſtart, and there make him ſtand ſtill, and pauſe a good ſpace, during which reſt, you ſhal conceiue in your minde foure lines

which

which you shall imagine to passe from your Launce to the ring. The first an euen straight line from the neather end of your Launce or mid thigh, which answering the height of your horse, passes in one euenes to the ring, & serues for a demonstration of the streightnes of the furrow wherein you runne, or the euennesse of the tilt barre, in which furrow or barre should there be any crookednes, there could not chuse but in the running be disorder. The second line you are to conceiue is from your right eye or thicke part of your Launce, to the very center of the ring, from which your eye in running must not swarue. The third line is a direct line downward from the point of your Launce to the center of the Ring, and your fourth line is from the point of your Launce also to the center of your ring, but it is deuided into three parts: the first third part (which is at the starte of the *Cariere*) being a straight euen line, the length whereof you must cary your Launce in an euen line without bending, being from the taking your Launce from your thigh to the vttermost putting out of your hand, & it must contain a third part of your half *Cariere*: the second third part is a line bending inward, & is from the putting out of your hand to the bringing of your hand to your rest, and it containeth a secõd third part of your half *Carier*: the last third part of this fourth line is a little more descending then the second, and is from the bringing of your Launce to the rest, to the very touching or taking of the Ring. The proportion & fashion of which lines for your better satisfaction, you shall behold in this figure following in the next page.

After



After you haue taken these lines into your consideration, and from the leuell of your eye, taken the direct line from your eye to the Ring, you shall then start your Horse into his *Cariere*, yet by no meanes suddainly, or with any fury, but first putting him forward a step or two gently, then thrust him foorth into his *Cariere*,

and as soone as he is started, you shal take your Launce from your thigh, and putting your arme outward, bring your hand downe as low almost as your midde thigh, your arme being stretcht out to the vttermost length, and held outward from your body, the point of your Launce being still kept in an eeuen line: this being your first motion must continue doing, the first third part of your course. Then must you turne your hand from your wrist forward leasurely inward; and holding your elbowe outward, bring in that part of your arme from the elbow to the hand, close to your breast where your Rest should stand, and as you bring in your arme, so you shall descend the point of your Launce a second third part nearer to your Ring, and this being your second motion, must continue doing the second third part of your course. Then your Launce being brought to your Rest, you shall by lifting vp, and keeping open your elbowe from your body, and by putting downe your thumbe and forepart of your hand descend the point of your Launce softly downe till it fall as it were into the ring: which being your third motion must continue dooing the last third part of your course: And thus hauing taken the Ring, you shall runne your Horse to the end of the *Cariere*, raising your staffe againe to his former place, with the same three motions, that is, the First taking your staffe from your Rest, the Second to bring your hand to your thigh, and the Third to bring vp the neathermost end of your Launce vpon your thigh, as it was before you started: And these three latter motions you shall doe so speedily, that they shall all three bee finished in one third part of the course, running

ning

ning the other two partes of the course out, with your Launce on your thigh gallantly, and when you come to the vtmost end of the *Cariere*, you shall there stoppe your Horse close, firme, and iust, making him aduaunce once or twice, and then after a little pause, to turne him about and set his head forward againe towards the Ring as hee was before: So that if you please, you may passe another *Cariere* backe againe to the place where you first started, doubling your courses as you finde strength in your Horse and ability in your owne body.

Thus you see the whole substance of Art in this course at the Ring; is contained in three distinct motions, the first in discharging your Launce from your thigh, the second bringing it vp to the Rest, (which is on your breast against your right pappe) and the third, the fine descending down of the point of your Launce, till it meete with the marke wherat you runne. Where it is to bee noted, that after you haue once started your Horse, and begun to discharge your staffe from your thigh, you shall not stay or rest, but as if all your motions were but one motion, be continuallie mouing, till your Launce euen as it descends, fall iust into the Ring. You shall also obserue that by no meanes you coutch your Launce lower then the Ring, and so bring it back vp againe to take the ring, for that is an error of great grosenes; neither shal you turne your hand so much in to your left side that you put your Launce wide of either hand the Ring, and then bring it back againe to hit the Ring, for that is almost as ill as the other; you shall obserue that you carry your elbowe, and that part of your arme from your elbow to your shoulder of one iust height, giuing your hand liberty to gouerne your

Launce euery way, and not by thrusting down your elboe, to hugg or gripe your Launce, whereby it shal be carried in an eeuen line, iust from your right shoulder, and so not come neare the Ring by diuers yardes, because the ring is euer plac'd wide of your left shoulder, this fault you shall amend onelie by carrying vp and opening your elboe, and so by turning in your hand, charge your Launce directlie ouer the left eare of your Horse, which (the length of your Launce considered) will carrie it directly vpon the Ring which stands a little wider vpon your left hand: You shall also obserue that in the passage of the *Cariere*, you sit fast, firme, and vpright in your saddle: neither bending so much forward, that (like an ordinary Horse-runner) you loose the beauty of your person, nor bending so much backward that the horse may seeme to carry you away contrary to your will & liking; or to your great disaduantage, when either in Tryumphes you shall be cald to run at the Tilt, or in the Field, when with your Launce you shal incounter with your enemy: for you must vnderstand that both running at the ring and tilting haue one and the selfe same motions, helps & obseruations: and he that can hit a ring of 5. or 6 inches, cānot misse a man of much greater quantity. But sitting gallantly and vprightly, you shal only turne your right shoulder a little thought more inward then your left.

Lastlie, you shall obserue to carrie your bridle hand close vnder the pommell of your Saddle, somewhat lower then the midst, neither giuing the reynes such libertie that you shall haue no feele of the horses head, nor restraning them so hard, that hee cannot run forth with his greatest courage, but holding an indifferent meane,

meane, torce your horſe with ſpurre and legge to paſſe his *Cariere* with all ſpeed poſſible, and in ſuch ſort, that when you come to the ſtop, you may not draw vp your bridle hand aboue the top of the Saddle pommell, nor ſeeme in that motion either to haue your ſeate troubled, or to bend your body backeward; and in the whole paſſage of the *Cariere*, if you run either alongſt a wall, or a Tilt barre, you ſhall turne your bridle hand a little backeward towards your left ſide, to keepe your Horſes fore-parts cloſe to the wall or barre, and when by your horſes ſlouth, occaſion is giuen you, you ſhall ſpurre your Horſe rather vpon the right ſide, which is from the barre, then on the left ſide next to the barre.

Now foraſmuch as both the former motions, and theſe obſeruations will ſeeme exceeding difficult to an vnexperienced hand; And foraſmuch as Tilt barres and places conuenient for his practiſe, are euer about the Pallaces of Princes, where is continuall concourſe of people, to whome ſchollers at firſt are loath to proſtitute their ignorance: If therfore you would practiſe in a more priuate manner, it ſhall not bee amiſſe for you then, in ſome remote peece of ground, which is both leuell and hath good foot-holde, by ſetting vp ſtrong ſtakes & ſuch like ſtayes, firſt to paſſe one line or ſtrong rope from the height of your mid thigh as you ſit on horſe-backe, the whole length of a *Cariere*, which may ſerue as the figure of a barre; then in the midſt thereof, to ſet vp your Ring, of the height formerlie deſcribed in this Chapter: Then ſhall you by the helpe of higher ſtakes, paſſe another ſmaller line frō your eye or mid-Launce, iuſt to the center of the ring; then by the help of two long Poales, paſſe a third ſmall line from the

top of your Launce (as it ſtandes vpon your thigh) to the center of your Ring alſo, carrying the firſt third part of that line in an eeuen ſtraightnes, and the other two parts deſcending, according to the figure before ſhewed. And when you haue thus placed your lines, you may then (as if you were at a tilt barre) ſtart your horſe into his *Cariere*, and by the directions of the lines direct the motions of your Launce, till by continuall vſe and practiſe, you become ſo cunning, that you are able to doe euery motion to a haire, without any aſſiſtance, either of line, or other modell, more then the skill onely of your hand and body, which you ſhall doe much the better, and ſooner attaine vnto, if you cauſe ſome man of good vnderſtanding (to whome you haue declared both the beauties and faultes of the courſe) to ſtand by you in your firſt practiſe, and without flattering you, to tell what faults you commit in euery courſe, which when you know, you muſt by labour and induſtrie reforme, till you come to the full perfectiō you wiſh for. And thus much for this Warlike and Noble practiſe.

Chap. 24.

Of the teaching of young Schollers: and the riding of a ridden Horſe to the beſt ſhow.

ALthough the preceptes and rudiments formerly expreſſed in this booke, may bring a man (if hee be of good courage, wit, memorie and actiuitie) that was neuer trained vp in the rules of Horſe-manſhip, to frame a Horſe to ſome indifferent faſhion of good

good riding: Yet forasmuch as the rules are very intricate, horses natures & conditions exceeding various, and the motions a man must vse full of Art and contrarietie, so that it is impossible without some instruction into the Art, some construction of the Art, and some long practise how to doe with Art, but a man must spoile and marre many Horses e're hee attaine to the making of one; which to eschew, I would aduise euery noble spirit, of what quallity soeuer he be, not to meddle with the making of any young Horse, till hee haue frō some good Horsman learned how to ride a ridden horse; wherfore to giue you some tast of the rules of a Horse schoole, which like an A.B.C. or Primmer and not like a Grammer may prepare you, and make you more capable of better demonstrations, I will in this Chapter set you downe some principall obseruations.

First therfore, when you begin to learne to ride, you must come to the Stable, in such decent and fit apparell as is meete for such an exercise, that is to say, a *Hat* which must sit close and firme vpon your head, with an indifferent narrow verge or brim, so that in the *faults* or *bounds* of the horse, it may neither through widenes, or vnweldines fall from your head, nor with the bredth of the brim fall into your eyes, and impeach your sight, both which are very grosse errors. About your necke you shall weare a falling *Band* and no *Ruffe*, whose depth or thicknes, may either with the winde, or motions of your Horse, ruffell about your face; or according to the fashion of the *Spaniards*, daunce Hobby-horse-like, about your shoulders, which though in them it is taken for a grace, yet in true iudgement it is found an errour. Your *Doublet* shall bee made close and handsome

The Horsemans apparel.

to your body, large wasted, so that you may euer be sure to ride with your points trussed (for to ride otherwise is most vilde) and in all partes so easie, that it may not take from you the vse of any part of your body. About your waste you must haue euer your *Girdle*, and thereon a small dagger or punniard, which must bee so fast in the sheath that no motion of the Horse may cast it forth, and yet so ready, that vpon any occasion you may draw it. Your *Hose* would bee large, round, and full, so that they may fill your saddle, which should it otherwise bee empty and your body looke like a small substance in a great compasse, it were wondrous vncomely. Your *Bootes* must be cleane, blacke, long, and close to your leg, comming almost vp to your midde thigh, so that they may lie as a defence betwixt your knee and the tree of your saddle. Your *Boot-hose* must come some two inches higher then your Bootes, being hansomely tied vp with pointes. Your *Spurres* must bee strong and flat inward, bending with a compasse vnder your ancle: the necke of your spurre must be long and straight, and rowels thereof large & sharpe, the prickes thereof not standing thicke together, nor being aboue fiue in number. Vpon your handes you must weare a hansome paire of Gloues, and in your right hand you must haue a long rodde finely rush-growne, so that the small end thereof bee hardly so great as a round packthreed, insomuch that when you mooue or shake it, the noise thereof may be loude and sharpe.

A Schollers first mounting

Being thus accoutred like a Gentleman and a Horse-man, and the Horse (on which you are to ride should bee very readie) perfite, and staid in all lessons whatsoeuer, dooing them with an extraordinary pride

pride and loftineſſe: being brought to the block, where you ſhall get vppe, you ſhall before you come to the blocke, put off your ſpurres; becauſe hauing not learned the vſe of your legges, you cannot know the vſe of your ſpurres: and then mounting the blocke, turning your left ſide cloſe to the ſhoulder of your horſe, with your backe towards his head, and your face towards his buttockes, you ſhall take vpp the bitt reines into your left hand, and place your hand and fingers as is ſhewed you before in the fourth chapter of this booke: Which done, you ſhall take the remainder of your reines vpp in the right hand, which ſtretching out to their vttermoſt length, you ſhall pull ſo euen that one of the cheekes of your bitt ſhall not hang ſider then the other, and withall drawe your bitt to ſuch a limit, that with the ſtraightneſſe thereof your horſe ſhall not offer to goe backe, nor with the looſenes offer to goe forward. When you haue thus aſſured your bitt, and the reines thereof, you ſhall with your left hand placed cloſe vpon the Saddle pommell (ſtanding in the manner aforeſaid) lift vp your left foot, and put it into the ſtirrop, neither ſo farre that your ſtirrop may beat againſt your ſhinne, nor ſo little a way that you ſhall be forced to get vp by the ſtrength of your toes onlie; but indifferentlie, a little ſhort of the hollowneſſe of the ſoale of your foot: which done, you ſhall without any heauings, or anticke ſhowes (as if you would leape ouer your horſes backe) gentlie and with an actiue nimbleneſſe raiſe vp your bodie, by laying your right hand vpon the hinder croope of the ſaddle, and bringing your right leg in an orderlie circle or compaſſe, ſet your whole bodie firme and iuſt in the middeſt

middeſt of the Saddle, where contrarilie, ſhould you ſtand with your face and breaſt againſt the Saddle, and ſo bring vp your bodie and right legge, you would not onelie with your waight and force, hazard the pulling of the ſaddle vnder the horſes bellie, but alſo your motion would be ſo ill fauoured and ſlouenlie, that in appearance you would looke like a Thatcher that were climbing vp a Ladder.

The Schollers ſeate.

When you are hanſomlie ſeated in your ſaddle, that is, when you haue placed the hinder parts of your buttocks faſt againſt the hinder part of your Saddle, the neather part of your bellie againſt the fore-part of your Saddle, and both your knees hard and firme vnder each of the fore-Pillowes of the Saddle, and when you haue againe ſtretched out your Bridle reines, and made both the bitt cheekes of an euen ſideneſſe, you ſhall then by mooving your feet forward, put foorth your horſe ſoftlie a pace or two from the blocke, and there againe ſtand ſtill whileſt the groome dooth buckle vp both the ſtirroppes cloſe vnder the skirtes of the Saddle: for you muſt vnderſtand that till you haue gotten the perfitneſſe and certaintie of your ſeat, and that you haue out of your practiſe and iudgement, found when and where you ſit moſt ſure, where moſt vnſure, fortifying your ſelfe in that which you find the beſt, there is nothing more hurtfull then to ride with ſtirrops, and the reaſon is, becauſe (till you haue found your ſeate) you will ſo much truſt vpon yonr ſtirrops, that when the horſe ſhall doe anie thing roughlie, you will with preſſing your feet violentlie vpon them, either (if you ride long) looſe the place, and faſt holde of your knees, or elſe (if you ride ſhort) raiſe your whole bodie

bodie from the Saddle in a moſt vncomelie manner.

And againe, the ſtirrop being to the horſe both a help and a correction; if till you know how to carrie and vſe your legges, you ſhould by anie meanes weare them, your ignorance and vnskilfull motions would ſomtimes correct where there were no cauſe, and ſomtimes helpe where there were need of correction, all which to preuent, you muſt patientlie endure a while to ride without ſtirrops.

When your ſtirroppes are thus buckled vppe, and you ſeated as aforeſaide, you ſhall then (carrying your rodde vpright by your right ſhoulder, or croſſe your breaſt vppe by your left ſhoulder: the firſt preſenting the launce, the latter the ſword, & your legs ſtraight, your heeles and toes of one euen height, and your toes turned a little inward toward the horſes ſhoulder) put foorth your horſe, and trott him with a good grace to the place of riding; where hauing the figures of your rings formerlie made, ſo as you may plainlie diſcerne them, you ſhall then firſt trott one large Ring three times about vpon your right hand bowing your bridle hand a little downward towards the horſes right ſhoulder: and if the horſe be verie ſlothfull or hard to turn about, you ſhal thē giue him a good iert with your rod ouer the left ſhoulder: whē you haue trotted three times about vpon your right hād, you ſhal then by turning your bridle hand a little backward towards the horſes left ſhoulder, trot another large ring three times about vpon your left hād: which done, chāging your bridle hand againe, you ſhal trot three times more vpon your right hand: and then being come to the place where you firſt began, you ſhal thereby, drawing

The ſchollers leſſons.

ing

ing your bridle hand euen vp almoſt to the top of the ſaddle pommell, make the horſe ſtop cloſe and firme: which done, after a little pauſe, you ſhall by drawing in your bridle hand, make him retire backe: then eaſing your hand, let him ſtand ſtill & cheriſh him. This leſſon you ſhal repeat ouer fiue or ſixe times in a morning, till you be ſo perfit that you can doe it with a good grace, carrying your head, bodie, hands, legges, and euerie other member in their due place without diſorder (as is formerlie ſhewed you) which that you may attaine to with more certaintie and leſſe omiſſion, it is good, if you want a ſchoolemaſter, to let ſome man of diſcretion to whom you haue declared your obſeruations you are to keepe, to ſtand in the center of your rings, and to tell you of all your faults; as when either your bodie, head, legs, or hands, moue in anie vncomly order, by which you ſhal as eaſilie correct them, as if you had a skilfull maſter by you.

When you haue made perfit firſt your leſſon, you ſhal then after you haue trotted your rings about, by the moouing of your bodie and legs forward with a liuelie ſpritines, thruſt your horſe into his galloppe, and in the ſame manner as you trotted your rings, you ſhall now gallop them, obſeruing in your galloping the ſame vprightneſſe of bodie, conſtancie of hand, and comelineſſe of legges, which you did in trotting: the ſtander by continuallie telling you of your eſcapes and errors. But if in this leſſon of gallopping, your horſe ſhow anie ſloathfulneſſe, you ſhall reuiue him with a good iert or two of your rod on the contrarie ſhoulder: and if he take not vp his feet nimblie and truelie, you ſhal giue him a good clap or two with the calues

of

of your legges vpon his sides : and when in his gallop you stop him, you shall lay the calues of your legges to his side, and make him aduance,

This lesson when you haue got so perfectlie by long practise and reformation, that you can doe it cunninglie without anie disorder, your next lesson shall bee to practise to set the turne *Terra, Terra*, which you shall do first by walking your horse in a narrow ring, the compasse wherof is before set down: and hauing walkt your horse three or foure times about on your right hand, you shall draw vp your bridle reines, and clapping the calue of your left legge close and hard to the horses side, make him aduance, and then with your bodie helping him forward, make him beat the ring round about, helping him in euerie aduance with the calue of your leg, & in his going forward with your body, & the sound of your voice, by crying *hey, hey*, or *hoe, hoe*, and when he hath finished his turne, thrust him into his trot by easing your hand, and then stop him, and cherish him. This lesson you must practise til you haue it so perfit that you can make your horse do it with the least feeling of your leg that may be, and you must alwaies obserue in this lesson, that when you begin to raise your horse, you euer let your outmost legge (which is the leg of help) fal neere to the horses side, so that when you helpe your horse, the motiō may be fetcht so smal away that a by stander may not behold it, and you shall make your horse doe this lesson more cheerfullie if in euerie motion of the horse you shake your rod ouer the horses eares, that he may heare the noise, but in anie case, as you shake your rod, keepe your arme and elboe close to your side, and not let your arme (as if you had not the

gouern-

gouernment thereof) flie at foule libertie, both to your owne disgrace and the breach of your horses time in his lessons, which is so carefullie to be regarded, and is by nothing sooner broke then by the least disorder of your bodie, armes, legs, or other members.

After you haue made all these lessons perfit, so that you can doe them with a good grace, you may then aduenture both to put on your spurres, and to weare your Stirrops, the vses, helps, and corrections of both which, and the times when you shall imploy them, are alreadie sufficientlie declared: so that for any lesson you are to practice after you come to weare spurs and stirrops, as namelie *Manages* of all kinds, the *Coruett Caprioll* and other *ayres* aboue ground, I refer you to the former Chapters, where the manner of doing them is amplie enough set downe: so that this which I haue alreadie writ, I thinke will be sufficient to satisfie anie ingenious scholler, who desirous to be a Horseman, is compeld to be his owne tutor.

Now when you finde that you are able to ride a riden horse, both with good arte and comelinesse, if then it shall be your chance to ride either in anie assemblie, or in the presence of some great Potentate, it is not vnnecessarie for you to know how in such a case to behaue your selfe, and how to put your Horse to the best show.

If therefore you shal come to ride your horse before a man of worth; if you haue libertie to chuse your ground, you shall chuse such a place as you may haue a prettie short managing furrow in the same, and the man of reputation to stand a little distant from the midst thereof. Then you being mounted and seated in

good

good fashion, you shall trot foorth your horse in the verie pride and gallantrie of his pace, and as you passe by the person of esteem, if he be either Prince, Nobleman, or a man of great place, you shall as you trot by him, with an humble bowing downe of your bodie towards the Crest of your horse, doe him solemne reuerence, and then raising your bodie vp straight again, you shall passe to the end of your short furrow, where you shall presentlie set the turn *Terra, Terra*, single once about, and then putting your horse into the *Capryoll* bring him in those hie Saults downe the straight furrow againe, till you come against the person of note where presentlie by the stay of your hand, you shall put your Horse into the *Cornett*, and so as it were in slowe motions daunce before him a little space.

Then (if he be a Horse of great courage) put him into the galloppe Galliarde, till hee come to the other end of the furrowe, and there setting another single turne *Terra*, *Terra*, at the closing vp thereof, and when the Horses head is toward the great person, you shall make him bound aloft vpon all foure, and yarke out his hinder feet withall, and so stand still till he haue taken new breath, your selfe rubbing him vpon the necke with the great end of your rod, which a horse takes great delight in, and is indeed a great cherishing.

This done, if you be assured of his strength, and good winde, you shall trot him towards the great person, and there casting an indifferent ring about vpon your right hand, you shall beat the *Carogolo* or Snaile-turne, and when you come into the center, where the horse turnes vpon al foure, you shall not there staie him

or

or bring him forth of the ring, but changing your hand, you ſhal cauſe him to make as many ſtraight turns vpō your left hand, and then as before you did by degrees ſtraighten your rings on your right hand, ſo you ſhall now inlarge them vpon your left hand, keeping one due time and meaſure, till you come to the place where you firſt began your turne, where for the finiſhing vp of the worke, you ſhal make your horſe bound aloft, and yarke withal, and then ſtand ſtill with your face oppoſd againſt the great perſon. This done, (after your horſe hath taken breath) you ſhal make him retire backe verie ſwiftlie, thē you ſhal trot him forward again, euen cloſe to the great perſon, then you ſhall make him goe verie ſwiftlie ſidelong from him, then you ſhall make him come ſidelong almoſt to him againe. When you haue done al this, if in your horſe ſtil remaine good ſtrength, it ſhall not be amiſſe if you manage him vp and downe for ſome two turnes at moſt vpon a hand, vpon a loftie gallop, & in a furrow not aboue 16. yardes at the moſt: then ſtopping him directlie againſt the perſon of eſtate, doe him againe ſolemne reuerence, and ſo depart; for theſe leſſons doe containe all leſſons whatſoeuer (how euer the face of them doe alter) and all art and skill that can poſſible be included in this manner of riding, ſo far foorth as either mine experience vnderſtands, or my wit is able to deliuer: both which I will proſtitute and humblie yeeld to the controll and cenſure of our famous and well knowne horſemen, but armed with all violence poſſible againſt fooles, paraſites and men of oſtentation.

The end of the ſecond Booke.



CAVALARICE,

Or

That part of Arte wherein is contayned the choiſe, Trayning, and Dyeting of hunting Horſes, whether it be for Pleaſure or for Wager.

Newly corrected and augmented.

The third Booke.

By Geruaſe Markham.





LONDON

Printed by *Edw: Allde* for *Edward White*, and are to be ſold at his ſhop neere the little north doore of Saint Paules Church at the ſigne of the Gun. 1616.





To the most Noble and most mighty *Lord*, LEWES *Duke of* Lennox, *Earle of Richmond* and *Darnley*, Baron of *Tourbutton* and *Methuen*, great Chamberlaine and Admirall of *Scotland*, Lord Steward of the Kings House, and Knight of the most noble order of the Garter.

THE greatest and most excellent name which the famous Poet Virgil *could finde out wherwith to adorne, the most renowned King* Picus, *was to call him a Horse-man: and that the* Pegasian *Horse was not onely fained to bee begotten by the sonne of* Neptune, *but also to be the first founder of the learned Well & the Art of memory: Then I doubt not but this famous Art of Horsmanship, which with my best indeauours I haue carefully collected, will in your Graces most noble thoughts finde both defence and acceptance; and rather sith it is an Art wherin I holde your grace as excellent as any Prince of Christendome; and is such an ornament of State, that there is no actiue greatnes vnblemished which pleadeth absolute ignorance in so Royall a profession. Now albe this part of Horse-manship, which I consecrate to your Noble name, bee not contained within the rules or principles of the Italian or French riders (who albe they can ride well, yet are ignorant how to make a Horse ride long) yet your grace whose daily experience and knowledge both of the worth and vse of these hunting Horses, can best iudge the profit of the Art as well in pleasure, as in vrgent occasions, will I hope neither esteeme my labour vaine, nor fruitles, for the Countrey wherin I liue: And strengthning that hope with the Noble fauours which you extend to your admirers:*

I liue to be commaunded by you,

GERVASE MARKHAM.

To all Huntſ-men and louers of *Hunting*.

THere is not any pleaſure (Gentlemen) in the iudgement of my ſence, which I can allow to be held equall with Hunting, both for the full ſatisfaction it giues to the minde and body, and alſo for the noble figures and imitations it carryes in the exercife of the delight, as long as it is accompanyed with his true members, which is a ready Sent; perfit Dogges, and aboue all a pure winded Horſe: For if hee bee wanting, the other not obſeruing the leaſure of your foot-ſteppes, will flie ſo faſt from you, that there will be left nothing but imagination to content you; which to preuent, and that you may enioy your delight without impeachment, I haue publiſht this worke; which being purpoſely fram'd for a generall good, and not a priuate vſe (as my firſt little Treatiſe was) will (I doubt not) giue you all that reaſonable ſatisfaction, which is requiſite to bee deſired, either in this or any thing belonging to this part of Horſ-manſhip, wherein as you ſhall reape profite, ſo let me bee repay'd with thankes, that when you haue what you wiſh, I may not want what I deſire:

And ſo farwell.

G. M.

CAVALARICE.

The third Booke.

CHAP. I.

Of Hunting Horſes in generall, and of their Chaſes.

OF all the Field pleaſures wherewith olde Time and Mans inuention hath bleſt the houres of our recreations, there is none ſo excellent or ſo worthily to be purſued as the delight of Hunting, being compounded like an harmonious conſort of all the beſt partes of moſt refined pleaſure, as *Muſicke*, *Dauncing*, *Running*, *Ryding*, *Hauking*, and ſuch like; Nay, what Houſe-ſport is it which hath not from it ſome imitation? as Cheſſe, Cardes, Tables, or any ſuch like, where there is purſute one after another: It is the figure of a well compoſed battaile where the ſtronger chaſeth the weaker

to the point of deſtruction : It reſembleth the ſtate of a good Common-wealth, where the vertue of the Magiſtrates purſue and finde out the euill pathes of their contraries: And to conclude, being the beſt of ſportes, what ſhould a man ſay more then that it is moſt excellent. But letting paſſe the maine body of the paſtime, let vs returne to the principall member of the ſame, which is the hunting Horſe, whoſe ſtrength and puiſſance carries our bodyes, and enriches both our eyes, eares, and other ſences, with all the delights that are therein contained.

This hunting Horſe both for his vertue, ſtrength, goodnes, and indurarnce, I place next to the Horſe of ſeruice, for two cauſes. Firſt, becauſe themſelues both for their courages, lineaments, and educations are ſeruice-able in the warres, and in all other places : In the warres, as in ſuddaine and deſperate exploites, as vpon ſurprifes, *Ambuſcados*, long marches, or ſuch like: or vpon diſcoueries, ſcowtes, or any thing elſe wherin either the ſtrength of body, purity of winde, and the puiſſance of his mettall is to be diſcerned; In the land of peace, as vpon the neceſſity of ſome long and tedious iourney, wherein either a mans life or eſtate is ingaged; or for a mans pleaſure in this ſport of hunting, or for his profit, where a man hath tyed himſelfe to any great match or wager: In any of theſe caſes it is almoſt a thing incredible to ſpeake, what a good Horſe being rightly dyeted and kept (and therwithall orderly trayned) will performe, but that in this Iland of great *Brittaine* we haue before our eies cõtinuall & daily witnes; and yet I muſt needes ſay, that if the Records of auncient writers bee true, theſe horſes in our daies are nothing ſo tough and induring

induring as were the horſes of former Ages: For one Author writes, that the *Sarmarians* being intended to take vpon them any long iourney, would keepe their Horſes faſting for two dayes before, but onely for a little comfortable drinke, and then would gallop them an hundred and fifty miles without breathing: Others tell vs other tales of as much incredulity, of the Horſes of *Scithia*, *Greece*, and *Barbary*, by which wee may gather, that queſtionles Horſes haue indured labours beyond imagination; and truly in theſe our dayes ſhould a man but compute anc meaſure, the many miles, the rugged and deepe wayes, and the intricate & winding paſſages which a hunting Horſe paſſeth in a day, in one of our Engliſh hunting matches, & therwithall takes into his conſideration with what wonderfull ſwiftnes, ſtrength and ſpirit, they are performed, hee ſhall finde them little ſhort of thoſe olde reports, & far beyond either our hopes or expectations; yet thus much I muſt let you vnderſtand, that there is not any horſe which naturally out of his owne ſpirit, being put to his owne choiſe of foode, and to the liberty of his owne order in feeding, which is able to doe the leaſt part of thoſe infinite labours which we ſee daily performed by horſes of contrary keeping: Neither can any horſe (how choiſely fed or dieted ſo euer he be) performe any extraordinary labour or imploiment, if to the perfectiõ of his feeding he haue not conuenient and moderate exerciſe; ſo that in concluſiõ to attaine to the ſubſtance & depth of this Art, you are firſt to learne by ſhapes, markes, and other ſemblances how to chuſe a Horſe moſt fit for this purpoſe of induring vnſpeakable trauell. Secondly, how to dyet and keepe him that he may performe as much as is

comprehẽded within the power either of his ſtrength, ſpirit, or winde, without either danger of life, or hurt of inferior member. Thirdly, & laſtly, what manner of exerciſe is moſt conuenient & wholſome for perfiting and bringing to paſſe your own deſire in this Art or ſcience. Theſe three heads or rootes bearing vp the bodies and trees of this knowledge, from whence ſprings many other branches. Now for aſmuch as many of our Engliſh Horſ-men, and thoſe not of the Comparatiue, but Superlatiue degree, who hauing ſpent their dayes only in the riding & trayning vp of great Horſes for ſeruice, vtterly neglecting as vndeſirous to know the ſecrets of this Art wherof I meane now to intreate, & haue ſome of thẽ in mine own hearing held long, but weake) arguments, both againſt hunting & dieting of horſes, may impugne and kicke againſt thoſe precepts which I ſhal diſcouer, let me vnder the reformation of their skills be bold to tel them that ſuch neglects take from their arts much reputation and glory. For who can call himſelfe maiſter of that Art in whoſe eſpeciall principles he is vtterly ignorant? as for example, if I haue Art to make my horſe in euery turne, winding and interchangeable motiõ to exceed in nimblenes either Cat or Monkey, & in euery bound, ſalt, or ayre aboue ground to outmach either want Kid, or ſporting Faune; yet in the ſame exerciſe want skill, either how to preſerue his wind from breaking, his greace frõ melting, or his ſpirit from tyring, I ſay then my firſt Art were better vnlearned, then for want of this latter to do euil by miſimploiment: & ſuch are horſ-men that can ride, but cãnot dyet. Again *La Broue*, who is the grand-maſter of the *French Cheualaria*, & whoſe precepts carry general authority with our

Engliſh

Engliſh Riders, he ſaith, that for great horſes for ſeruice in the wars there is nothing more profitable then ſometimes to hunt them, and ride them after ſwift chaſes, both becauſe it makes a horſe light & nimble, enabling his winde and making him fit for trauell, & alſo breeds in him a kind of ciuilitie and acquaintance with other horſes, and takes from him euill thoughts and malitious humours, prouing by his propoſition, that this hunting of Horſes brings to a horſe two benefits, that is, nimbleneſſe and ſtrength, and takes from him two vices, barbarous ramedegneſſe & fantaſtick reſtifneſſe.

Now if you will hunt your horſe after ſwift chaſes, and know not how to prepare and diet him, for ſuch violent exerciſe; I will be your moſt aſſured warrant, that you ſhall either ſoone ſpoile your horſe or elſe behold no hunting, but your owne imaginations.

And for as much as I haue hitherto generallie ſpoke of hunting, which word appertaines to chaſes of all kinds whatſoeuer, I will before I proceed anie further, tell you what kind of hunting and which chaſe is fitteſt for your horſes ſtrength and exerciſe. To tell you of all the chaſes, which at this day is either hunted amongſt vs, or in other nations, or but to reckon halfe ſo manie as *Geſner* hath collected into his volume, as namelie of the *Lyon*, the *Leopard*, the *Panther* and ſuch like, were but as a priuiledged traueller, to tell you a long tale of that which rarelie or neuer ſhall come within your experience; and becauſe the end of mine endeauours is the benefit of this nation, which firſt gaue me breath, I will trouble you with no other Chaſes, then thoſe which are exerciſed in this kingdome, and are moſt fit for men and horſe to purſue.

First

The Otter. First for the chaſe of the Otter, although it be a cunning chaſe, and exceeding pleaſant to thoſe taſtes that can reliſh ſuch moiſt delights, yet to exerciſe your horſe therein, I much diſlike, becauſe the Sent lying for the moſt part in the water, and he that will faithfully follow it, muſt hazard his horſe to the danger of ſwimming, it cannot chuſe but be both vnwholſom and vnprofitable.

The Fox or Badger. Next this is the chaſe of the Foxe or Badger, which although it be a chaſe of much more ſwiftnes, & is euer kept vpon the firme ground, yet I cannot allow it, for the training vp of horſes, becauſe for the moſt part it continues in woody and rough grounds, where a horſe can neither conuenientlie make foorth his way, nor can tread without danger of ſtubbing, or other as miſchieuous inconueniences.

Of the Bucke or Stagge. The chaſe which is much better then any of theſe, is the hunting of the Bucke, or Stag, eſpecially if they bee not confined within the limits of a parke or pale, but haue liberty to chuſe their waies acording to their own appetites, which of ſome Huntſ-men is cald hunting at force. This chaſe is much better then where a Deare is kept within bounds, becauſe when he is ſo ſtraightned, for the moſt part hee keeps the thicke wood, where a horſe can neither enter, nor a mā take delight to follow: where otherwiſe when he is at liberty, he will breake foorth his chaſe into the wind, ſomtime foure, fiue, and ſixe miles foorth-right, nay I haue my ſelfe followed a Stagge better then ten miles forth right, from the place of his rouſing to the place of his death, beſides, all his windings, turnings, and croſſe paſſages.

This chaſe for the time it indures, is moſt ſwift and violent, ſo that by no means it can be allowed of, for the training

training and bringing vp of young horſes, but rather to be an exerciſe for a horſe of ſtaid yeers and long practiſe.

Beſides, the time of the yeer, for theſe chaſes, is from midde *May* to midde *September*, which is the whole continuance of al Sommer, & the dry time of the yeer, whē the ſun burneth hotteſt, and the earth is hardeſt, ſo that if a man ſhould hunt a horſe of puiſſance and worth, at ſuch an vnſeaſonable time of the yeere, the heat of the Sunne mixt with ſo extream a labor, would both parch and melt him, & his own waight beating vpon the hard earth, would both ſurbate and bring him to an incureable lameneſſe.

Now you muſt vnderſtand, that although I diſallow this chaſe for the training vp of the beſt horſes, yet I do not meane it ſhold be depriued the company of horſes: for being of all chaſes with vs the moſt worthieſt, & belonging only to Princes and men of beſt quality, there is no horſe too good to be imployed in ſuch a ſeruice; yet in that all noble ſpirits delight to keepe an order & profitable comlineſſe in all their pleaſures, tis fit they know that the horſes which are apteſt and beſt to be imployed in this chaſe, is the Barbarie, Iennet, or light made Engliſh Gelding, being but of a meane or middle ſtature.

There is a certaine race of little horſes in *Scotland* called *Galway* Nagges, which I haue ſeene hunt the Bucke and Stagge exceeding well, and indure the chaſe with good coruage; and not any of theſe horſes but will endure the hard earth without ſurbating or lameneſſe, much better then horſes of great puiſſance & ſtrength.

But to conclude, & come to the chaſe, which is of all chaſes The Hare.

chaſes the beſt for the purpoſe whereof we are now to intreat; it is the chaſe or hunting of the Hare, which is a chaſe both ſwift, pleaſant, and of long endurance; it is alſo a ſport euer readie and equallie diſtributed, as well to the wealthie Farmer as the great Gentleman: It hath his beginning contrarie to the Stag or Bucke, for it begins at Michaelmas when they end, and is out of date after Aprill, when they come firſt in ſeaſon; ſo that Princes, whoſe pleaſures are their greateſt labours, may with theſe two delights finiſh vppe the yeares circuit. And this ſport being a winters ſport, is ſo much more full of labour, and though the deepnes of the ground ſhowes the horſes ſtrength ſo much the better, yet the toile is not ſo vtterlie without eaſe and reſpit, but that by the manie ſtops and ſtaies which are made therein, the horſe recouers his winde, and his ſtrength new increaſeth, as when the dogs are at any default or loſſe, or when the ſent is ſo cold that the dog cannot purſue it with any furie. Theſe ſtaies and recouerings of wind in the horſe (my maſters) the northerne riders call Sobs.

If you demand of me if you may not bring your horſe as well to perfection without hunting, as with hunting, I anſwer no, for to toile a horſe vp and down in the field after nothing, and in no certaine way or path, where he neither knowes whether he labours, to what end he labours, nor when he ſhall finiſh his labouring, ſo to do, I ſay brings to the horſe amazemēt, wearines, and diſlike in his exerciſe, for as an old beaten poſt Iade will runne his knowne courſe, and ſtage, with all courage and good ſpirit, yet if you put him but to twelue ſcore beyond his Inne, or turne him into any other path which is out of his

his remembrance, will presently stand still, and tyre most shamefully: Euen so the the best mettald Horses, if they be chaste and rechaste, without either delight or some incouragement, will by degrees growe worse and worse in their labour.

Now for the following of Houndes, Horses euen naturally haue taken great delight both in their cry, and in their company, and will (as I haue often noted) when they haue heard the cry of Houndes by pricking vpp their eares, gazing aloft, and forcing to runne or gallop, shew the pleasure they take therein; and for mine owne part I haue ridden an olde hunting Horse, that when pleasure and forgetfulnesse hath so rudely transported me, that I haue vn-Huntsman like ridden in amongst the Dogges, yet haue I found, that no negligence of mine could make the Horse touch or treade vpon a Dog: but shewing more loue then I did iudgement, hath contrary to my minde shunn'd and auoyded them: From whence I gathered, that questionles that Horse (and as he, so others) take a singular delight and pleasure in the exercise.

There is also another Chase (if I may without offence so tearme it) at least a sport I am sure it is; and that is when swift Houndes hunt a Catt, which is by some Huntsman drawne in a long string three or foure mile at the most vp and downe the Fields, either crosse plowed landes, or thwart greene fieldes, leaping Ditches, Hedges, or other Pales, Rayles, or Fences, or running thorow Waters, as the leader of the Catte shall thinke best for the aduauntage of the Horse, for whose benefit hee rideth. Of the Traine sent.

This chase or sport we here in England call a Traine sent,

ſent, becauſe the ſent which the Houndes hunt is trained alongſt the fields, acording to the diſcretion of the leader therof, and not according to the wil of the beaſt. This chaſe of all chaſes is the ſwifteſt, becauſe the ſent therof is hotteſt, ſo that the Hounds run it foorth with all the power they haue, making neither ſtoppe nor ſtay till they either ouer-take the traine, or els the man ſtay and goe no further, in ſo much that with the verie eagerneſſe of the chaſe, and franticke running of the Hounds, bee they Dogges of neuer ſo free mouthes, yet they ſhall not be able to open or ſpend their mouthes, or if they doe open, it will be verie ſildome.

This chaſe is altogether vſed for the tryall of matches between Horſe and Horſe, becauſe it is euer readie when Hares are incertaine, and the ſwiftneſſe therof brings a Horſe ſooner to the height of his ſpeede, and to the ſenſe of wearineſſe, than any other whatſoeuer.

It is alſo very good and profitable for the trayning vp of a young Horſe, after you haue brought him to cleanneſſe, and ſome little perfection of ſpeed, if once or twice in a weeke, at the latter end of the day, when you haue finiſhed the hunting of the Hare, you cauſe one of theſe traine ſents to be made, vpon ſuch earth as your Horſe takes moſt delight to runne vpon, and of ſuch length as you ſhall thinke fit for his ſtrength (the vtmoſt of any traine ſent being not aboue foure myle) and then laying on freſh dogges (which dogges indeed ſhould be kept for no other purpoſe; for to hunt traine ſent dogs with good Hariers, they will with their madnes and flinging ſpoile the chaſe) make your Horſe run the traine with good courage and liuelineſſe, and ſo in his

his warmneſſe trot him home.

There is yet another chaſe which Horſe-men call the Wilde gooſe chaſe, and it is neuer vſed but in matches only, where neither the hunting of the Hare, nor the running of traine ſents is able to decide the doubt which Horſe is the better. In this caſe Horſe-men foūd out (for the auoyding of controuerſie) this chaſe, which is called Wild-gooſe chaſe, reſembling the manner of the flight of Wilde-geeſe, which for the moſt part flie euer one after another, keeping as it were an equall diſtance one from another, ſo in this chaſe, after the Horſes are ſtarted, and haue runne twelue ſcore, then which Horſe can get the leading, the other is bound to follow whether ſoeuer he goes, and that too within a certaine diſtance, as within twice or thrice his length, or elſe to be beaten vp by the *triers* which ride by to ſee faire play, being gentlemen or others choſen for the purpoſe. And if either Horſe get before the other twelue ſcore yards, or according as the match is made, then the hinder Horſe looſeth the match: And if the Horſe which came firſt behind, can get before him which firſt ledde, then is hee likewiſe bound to follow, till he can either get before, or els the match be won and loſt. Of the wild-gooſe chaſe.

In this Wild-gooſe chaſe, there is no order or proportion to be vſed, but the formoſt Horſe to leade how and which way he pleaſe for his beſt aduantage, which is the reaſon that in this wild-gooſe chaſe there be many aduantages, ſuch as hereafter ſhall be more at large declared. And thus much for the hunting horſe, and the chaſes fitteſt to be hunted.

Chap.

Chap. 2.

The chusing of the Hunting Horse, and of his shape.

ALthough some men holde an opinion, that euery Horse which can gallop, may bee made an Hunting Horse, and albe wee daily see that many Horses, which indeede can doe no more but gallop (and that not long together neither) are ordinarily vsed in this exercise of Hunting, yet I am of that minde, that if a Horse haue not some vertue more then ordinary, as either in his swiftnesse, toughnesse, winde, or courage, that hee is not worthy the name of a Hunting Horse, and neither doth deserue the labour, cost, and good foode which hee must eate, nor the grace to bee imployed in such an honourable pastime.

Now therfore to saue ill imploied cost, and the repentance which followes houres that are in vaine wasted, you shal (being admitted to pursue this pleasure) be exceeding carefull in the choyce of that horse which you intend for hunting: For as before I tolde you in the breeding of Horses, some are good for seruice in the Wars, some for rūning, some for coach, some for cart, and some for the hamper, now all these in their kindes good, yet very fewe excellent In generall for all these vses whatsoeuer, and those few which are so well compounded, both of minde and body, that they are fit for any purpose, they onely & none else are most excellent for

Hunting, as hauing the ſtrength of the War horſe, the toughneſſe of the Hunting horſe, the good pace of the Trauailer, the ſwifneſſe of the Runner, a good breaſt for the Coach, a ſtrong ioynt for the Cart, and a backe like a beame for the Hamper.

But for aſmuch as there be three eſpeciall caracters or faces, by which a man ſhal chuſe a good hunting horſe, to wit, his breed, his colour, and the ſhape of his lineaments, I will by them ſhew you what obſeruations you ſhall regard when you make choiſe for this purpoſe.

And firſt for his breed, if he be either baſtard *Courſer*, baſtard *Ienet* or baſtard *Polander*, his breed is not amiſſe; for I haue knowne of all theſe ſortes of baſtards excellent hunting horſes. Now if you demand what I meane by this worde *Baſtard*; it is when a horſe is begotten by any of theſe Country horſes, vpon a faire Engliſh mare, or by a faire bredde Engliſh Horſe vpon any of theſe country Mares; but neither to flatter other Countries, nor to take from our owne that which is due vnto it, the world doth not affoord in all pointes (both for toughneſſe and ſwiftneſſe, being ioyned together) a better Horſe then the true bred Engliſh horſe for Hunting: which aſſertion ſhould I maintaine by the beſt proofe, which is example, I could repeat ſo many inſtances as were ſufficient to fill vp the reſt of this volume, but I will not at this inſtant bee ſo troubleſome.

Next to this Breed, you are to reſpect his colour and markes, which for aſmuch as I haue moſt amply ſet them down in the firſt Chapter of the former booke of Riding, I will referre you thereunto, and not tyer your eare with oft repetitions: Your laſt obſeruation is his ſhapes, which although alſo I haue in the other booke ſet

downe largely, yet I muſt here giue you other notes becauſe a hunting Horſe hath certaine proportions, & ſecret figures, which doe more agree with goodneſſe then beauty. Firſt therfore, you ſhall looke to the ſhape and proportion of his minde, obſeruing that it bee milde, tractable, louing, and familiar with the man, free from dogged malitiouſnes, malancholy ſullennes, or lunaricke frenzie; but for wantonnes, running away, leaping, plunging, or other apiſh trickes (ſo they proceed not from hate or enuy) neuer reſpect them, for they are (like the conditions of ſhrewd boyes, which we ſay will make good men) no other but the faces of good ſpirit and courage: and being tempered with Art, make the Horſe not worſe but much better.

Now for his outward ſhape: his head ſhould be ſomwhat long, leane, & large, with a ſpacious wide chaule, both thin and open; his eare if it bee ſhort and ſharpe, it is beſt, but if it bee long and vpright, it is a ſigne of ſpeede and good mettall. His forehead long and riſing in the middeſt, the feather thereof ſtanding aboue the top of his eye; his eyes full and round; his noſtrils wide, and without rawneſſe; his mouth large and hairy; his throppell within his chaule as much as a man can gripe and by no meanes fleſhly or ſo cloſed with fatneſſe, that a man can hardly finde it, (as many fine ſhaped Horſes are;) the ſetting on of his head to his necke would be ſtrong, but thinne, ſo as a man may put his hand betwixt his necke and his chaule, and not Bull-cragge-like, thicke and full, that one cannot eaſily diſcerne where his chap lyeth: his creſt ſtrong and well riſen; his necke ſtraight, firme, and as it were of one peece with his body, and not as my Countrey-

men

men say) withie-cragg'd, which is loose and plyant. The throppell or neather part of the necke which goes from the vnder chappes to the breſt, ſhould when the Horſe reyneth be ſtraight and eeuen, not bending like a bowe which is called cock-throppled, & is the greateſt ſigne of an ill winde: If the neather chappes, and that neather part of the necke alſo be full of long haire, and bearded downe to the ſetting on of the breaſt, it is a ſigne of much ſwiftneſſe: a broad ſtrong breſt, a ſhort chyne, an out ribbe, a well hidden belly, ſhort and well knit ioyntes, flat legges, exceeding ſhort, ſtraight and vpright paſternes, which is a member aboue all other to bee noted: his hoofes both blacke and ſtrong, yet long and narrow: and for his maine and taile, the thinner the more ſpirit, the thicker the greater ſigne of dulneſſe; to bee (as ſome tearme it) ſickle hought behinde, that is ſomwhat crooked in the cambrell ioynt, as Hares and Greyhounds are, is not amiſſe, though it bee a little eye-ſore. And for mine owne part I haue ſeene many good which haue borne that proportion.

And thus much for the choiſe of Hunting Horſes, their Breedes, Colours, and outward lineaments.

Chap. 3.

At what Age Horſes ſhould Hunt: of their firſt taking from Graſſe, and of their Houſing.

ALthough I haue often ſeene (and thoſe which follow this pleaſure doe daily ſee) Horſes trayned vp to Hunting at foure yeares of age, and ſome not

ſo much: yet for mine own part I would haue no horſe trayned in that exerciſe till he be paſt fiue at the leaſt, as hauing changed all his teeth, & his ioynts being come to their vttermoſt largeneſſe, for to put him to the violence thereof in his former tenderneſſe doth not onely weaken his ioyntes, and makes him putt out ſorances, but alſo euen appaals his minde, and takes away much of his naturall courage, bringing rhumes to the heade, ſtifneſſe to the ioyntes, melancholy thoughts to the minde, and all other effectes of olde age, before thoſe which ſhould be his beſt dayes, come to be numbred.

Your Horſe therefore being full fiue yeares olde and the aduantage, you ſhall take him frō graſſe about *Bartholmew*-tide, or within a Weeke after at the furtheſt, for then Froſtes beginning to come in (which nip and kill the pride of graſſe, making it not ſo nouriſhing as before it was) and the cold deawes falling from aboue, making the Horſes haire begin to ſtare (which though but few Horſ-men regard, yet is a rule as worthy as any other to bee reſpected) it is fitt that you ſuffer your Horſe to runne no longer; but in any caſe take him into the Stable whileſt his haire lyes ſmooth and cloſe to his necke & body: and that his ſtomacke haue receiued no ill ſuſtenance, by the rawe coldneſſe of the ſeaſon.

When your Horſe is thus taken from graſſe, and ſet vp in the Stable (the ſcituation, faſhion, and cōmodity of which ſtable, is ſhewed hereafter in the fift Booke) you need then but onely looke vpon him, and your eye will tell you whether hee be fatt or no: If he be fatt, (as of neceſſity hee muſt bee) hauing runne all the former Summer, vnleſſe hee be vnſound & diſeaſed, and ſo not fit for your purpoſe, you ſhal then let him ſtand all that nigh-

night, and the next day vncloathed, and giue him no foode but a little Wheate ſtrawe, and water, and two houres before you giue him any water, you ſhall giue him foure or fiue handfuls of Rie, well ſunn'd, or dried. This Rie will cleanſe away his graſſe, empty his great bagge, and yet keepe him in good luſt and ſpirit.

The ſecond day at night you ſhall make a Groome rub him all ouer with a hard wiſpe, and then girde about him with a Surſingle (ſtopping it with ſoft wiſps) a ſingle Canuaſſe cloath, then if his Wheat ſtrawe bee ſpent, put more into his Racke, and throw ſome alſo vnder his body to lye vpon, and ſo let him ſtand that night, and the next day alſo with nothing but Wheat ſtrawe, Rie and water.

The third day at night you ſhall rub him againe ouer with nothing but an hard wiſpe, then cloath him againe, and let him ſtand with nothing but wheat-ſtraw till the next morning, at what time as ſoone as you come vnto him, looke firſt vpon his dung, and if you finde that all the dark greene colour which formerly it had, is gone, and there is no ſigne of graſſe left in his body, but that now his dung is of a pale yellow colour, neither inclining to blackneſſe nor drineſſe, you ſhall then neither giue him any more Wheat-ſtrawe, nor any more Rie.

Now by the way, although I haue giuen you this rule of giuing your horſe Rie, for the firſt three dayes after he is taken from graſſe, yet you ſhall out of your owne diſcretion gouerne it according to theſe obſeruations: Firſt if your Horſe bee new taken from graſſe (becauſe all graſſe is ſcowring) if his dung be more ſoft then ordinarily other horſes be, which is a ſigne he is of a cold

conſtitution, and ſubiect to much ſolliblenes, you ſhall then forbeare the firſt night, to giue him any Rie at all, becauſe *Nature* being a better worke-miſtris then *Art*, takes vpon her that labour: And if the other two daies alſo his body holde the ſame temper; you ſhall then alſo forbeare giuing him any Rie, and in ſtead thereof, giue him after each watering three or foure handfuls of Oates, well dry'd and ſifted, the Oates being good, ſound and full, and not like your Southerne Oates light and empty, which in the North we call skegs, and is the foode which onely doth ſooneſt deceiue a horſe: but if you finde after your horſe hath ſtood at Wheat-ſtrawe a day or more (which indeed is a very binding food) his body begin to dry, and that his dung come from him in hard round pellets, not without much ſtraining, and ſome paine (as you may perceiue by the thruſting out his belly) then you ſhal giue him Rie in the manner before preſcribed, and not otherwiſe, for although it bee comfortable, yet it is a kinde of ſcowring, and not to be giuen to a Horſe in any ſort, but by the way of medicine. And thus much for their Age, taking from Graſſe and firſt Howſing.

Chap. 4.

Of the firſt fortnights Dyet, Exercise, and Dreſſing.

WHen your Horſe hath his belly taken vp, and the graſſe ſcowred foorth, you ſhall then lay your hand vpon his ſide by his ſhort ribs, and to his fillets, and if you feele his fat to be ſoft and apt to

preſſe down vnder your hand, you ſhall then know that his fat is vnſound, and not good, ſo that the leaſt violent exerciſe will ſoone melt it: and being once molten, if then by art, medicine and good keeping, it be not auoided or taken away, then the fatt belonging to the outward parts of the body falles into his legs, making him haue ſwolne legs, gowty and vnnimble, which though vnskilful Farriers attribute to other cauſes, yet this and no other is the originall; and that you may be the more aſſured therof, you ſhall know it by theſe obſeruations: his leggs will only ſwell when he ſtandeth in the ſtable, but when you ride or exerciſe him abroad, the more you chafe him, the more the ſwelling will fall, and hee will come home at night with his legges as ſlender as if they had no imperfectiõ; but the next morning they will be ſwelled as big as they were before. The reaſon hereof is this, the greace which is falne downe into his leggs, with ſtanding ſtill cooleth, & ſo conicaleth and bindeth togerher, with other groſſe humours, (which euer accompany and flowe vnto the weakeſt partes,) not onely ſtopping the naturall courſe of the bloud but alſo occaſioning paine and much ſwelling; whereas when he comes to be laboured or exerciſed, the heat of his trauaile, (like fire to froſt) diſſolues what his reſt had bound vp, and ſo melting the greace againe, diſperſes both it and the other vnwholſome humours generally into euerymember of the horſes body which is applied with like labor; and ſo his legs comes to their firſt ſmalnes: then when reſt comes againe, the griefe begins again with rather more, thẽ leſſe torment, & this diſeaſe with many is held incurable, but therin they are miſtaken; yet howſoeuer it be to be cured, I know it is ſo diffi-

cult, that a man cānot haue to great a regard to preuent it. Now for the inward fatt, which is that which remaines within his ſtomack, in his ſmall guts & his great bag, if that after it be once molten be not ſcowred and taken away, but ſuffered to remaine in his body and putrifie, it breedes thoſe mortall and deadly diſeaſes, of which a horſe ſeldome eſcapes, as peſtilent feauers, frettings of the guts, conſumptions, and ſuch like. The effects of this miſchiefe being not diſcerned or appearing to outward ſence many times, till at leaſt halfe a yeare after, whence it comes to paſſe that multitudes of Horſes are loſt in this Kingdome onely for want of ſome four-pence coſt, and a little preuention; men oft imputing to ſodain death, witchcraft, & ſuch like toies, the death which themſelues wilfully gaue, & might as eaſily haue ſaued: which to preuent, you ſhall obſerue this method; after you haue laid your hand vpō his body, and found his fat ſoft & vnſound, you ſhal then alſo thruſt your hand betweene his nether chappes, and if there you finde much fatnes, great round kirnels, or any thick & vndiſſolued ſubſtance; you ſhal then know that as he is outwardly full of vnſound fatneſſe, ſo hee is inwardly ſtuft with much glut & purſines, ſo that neither his winde can haue free paſſage, nor his body indure much labour; your Art then muſt be to harden, & make his outward fat ſo firme & vndiſoluble, that it bee a fortifier and augmenter of his ſtrength, and to clenſe away his inward glut with ſuch cōfortable medicine and moderate exerciſe, that his winde, courage, and poures of his minde, being freed of all groſenes, may appeare in his labour to be more then redoubled; which thus you ſhall doe: Firſt you ſhal take away his wheat-ſtraw and inſtead

in ſtead thereof, you ſhall put into his racke a little bottle of hay, as bigge as a penny bottle in an Inne; which hay would be ſound and well gotten, yet rough, courſe, and not exceeding pleaſant in taſte; whereby the horſe taking no great delight to feed thereupon, may rather chew and eat it to ſcoure his teeth, then either to fill his ſtomacke or ſatisfie his hunger.

As ſoone as you haue taken the ſtraw foorth of his racke, and giuen him hay, you ſhal then in the morning by fiue or ſixe a clocke, which is the houre your groom ſhould come into the ſtable, make him after he hath put away the horſes dung, thruſt vp his litter, and made his ſtall cleane and ſweet; take a ſmooth ſnaffle, waſht either in ſome faire water, or in a little beere, and putting it in the horſes mouth, turne his head to that part of the ſtall where his hinder parts ſtood, and there hanging the reyne vpon ſome pinne or hooke placed for that purpoſe, Firſt let your Groom vncloath him, then currie, rubbe, picke, and dreſſe him in ſuch ſort as belongs to his place and office, which manner of dreſſing of horſes, becauſe it is at large prefigured in the fift booke, where I onely write of thoſe duties; I will in this place omit it, and refer you to that place to behold it.

When your Groome hath finiſhed the dreſſing of your horſe, and only girt the cloath about him with a ſurſingle without any wiſpes; you ſhall then take him foorth, and mounting vpon his backe, ride him to ſome faire Riuer or Spring, and there after he hath dunrk, you ſhall gallop him vpon an eaſie falſe gallop for fiue or ſix ſcore yards, and then giue him winde, then gallop him as much more, then giue him winde againe: thus you ſhal do twice or thrice til you haue warmd the water in

his

his belly, but by no means ſo much, that you may either chafe him, or wet any one haire about him with ſweat, which when you haue done, you ſhall pace him faire & ſoftly home, and when you haue brought him into the ſtable, you ſhall make the Groom firſt to rub and chafe his legs with hard wiſps, then to ſtop his ſurſingle with ſoft wiſpes, then to take halfe a pecke of good white Oates which are kilne dryed, and ſifting them well in a fine ſiue, that there may be no duſt left in them; as ſoone as you haue taken off his bridle, and put on his coller, making the manger cleane, put them therin, that he may eat them; then putting his litter downe round about him, ſhut vp your ſtable windowes cloſe, and ſo depart till one a clocke in the afternoon, at what time you ſhall come to him againe, and firſt making your Groom put away his dung, and what other filthines ſhall be about him; then cauſe him to turne vp his cloath, and either with a hayr cloth, or with a wet hard wiſpe cauſe him to rubbe down his neck, buttocks, and legges; then let him ſift another halfe pecke of Oats, & giue them to the horſe, then putting down his clothes let him ſtand till it be betwixt three and foure a clocke in the afternoon, at what time let the Groom come to him, & as he did in the morning, let him firſt put away his dung, then put vp his litter, waſh his ſnaffle as he did before, put it vpon his head, turne him about, then vncloath him, and as he dreſt him in the morning, ſo let him dreſſe him againe in the afternoone, and as ſoone as he is dreſt, and his cloathes girt about him, you ſhall as you did before, take his backe, and ride him to the former drinking place, and when he hath drunk, gallop him gently as you did before, with as great care, and

with

with not one iot of more toile to the horſe, then bring him home, and as you did in the morning, ſo now let the Groome rub his legs, ſtop his ſurſingle, put downe his litter, and giue him another halfe pecke of ſifted Oates: then let him ſtand till it be betwixt eight and nine a clocke at night; at what time you muſt come to him againe, make your Groom to put away his dung, to rubbe his head, necke, legges, and buttockes, then to giue him new freſh litter, and another halfe pecke of well ſifted Oates, and ſo to let him ſtand for all the night till the next morning. Thus as you haue done this day, you ſhall not faile to doe euery day for a fortnight together, wherin you are to note your howers for dreſſing, drinking, and exerciſe are two; Morning and euening. For feeding foure: Morning, Noone, Euening and Night.

Now during this firſt fortnights keeping, you are to take into your minde diuers eſpeciall obſeruations; as firſt you ſhall obſerue the nature and condition of your horſe, whether he be louing, or churliſh, fearefull or frantick, and according to his nature ſo to behaue your ſelfe vnto him; as if he be louing to requite him with loue againe, and doe all things about him with gentlenes; if he be churliſh, then to doe all things about him with a bold courage and a threatning voice; ſhewing your ſelfe to be a commander, and giuing him no good countenance, but when he doth carry himſelfe with obedience: if he be fearefull, then you ſhall fortifie him with cheriſhings, and doe nothing about him raſhly: and if he be frantick you ſhall by your correction ſhew your ſelfe to be his maſter, and neither when you dreſſe him, or doe any thing elſe vnto him ſhall you come to

him

him but with a rod in your hand. After this, you ſhall obſerue the ſtrength of his body; whether he be ſlowe at his meat, or retaine a good ſtomacke; if you perceiue he be but of a queaſie and dainty ſtomacke, then you ſhall giue him the leſſe at a time, and bee feeding him the oftner, but if his ſtomacke be ſtrong and good, the proportion before ſet downe cannot be amended; then you ſhall obſerue the nature of his diſgeſtion, that is, whether he hold his food long in his body, or diſgeſt and put it out more ſpeedily, which you ſhall know by his dunging, for if he dung oft and moiſt, then he holds not his food long in his ſtomacke: if he dung ſildome and hard, then hee keepes his foode, and it is a ſigne of a drie bodie. Now if hee doe holde his foode long, you ſhall vſe once or twice a weeke, whether he haue exerciſe or no exerciſe to giue him with his Oats a handfull or more of hemp-ſeed; if he doe not retaine his foode, but haue a quicke diſgeſtion, he is eaſier to worke vpon, and you ſhall keepe him with drie prouender. Laſtly, you ſhal obſerue whether he be a groſe and foule feeder, or very curious and dainty: groſe and foule, that is, when he hath no other meat, hee will eate his litter vnder him, gnaw vpon the Maunger and boards about him, or eate mudde walles, or thatch if any be neere him, and ſo feede as it were & be fat in deſpight both of labour & his keeper; Curious and dainty, that is, though you giue him neuer ſo good meat, keep neuer ſo good howers, and let him haue neuer ſo much reſt, or neuer ſo much abſtinence, yet he will not eat to fill his belly; and when he comes to labour, he will looſe more fleſh in a daies hunting, then he will get againe in a whole weeks reſting. Now

if

if you do find your horſe thus curious and daintie, your beſt courſe is in his daies of reſt, to let him be his own dieter, that is, you ſhall euer let meat lie in the manger before him, yet change it oft; that is, look what you giue him in the morning, if you find any of it in the manger at noon, you ſhall ſweep it away, and ſift him freſh, then that which you take away after it be well ayred & ſund againe, will be as good as it was before; and looke how you doe at noon, ſo you may doe at euening and night alſo. You muſt alſo change the nature of his meate and not keepe him to one kind of food, but giue him ſometimes Oates, ſometimes bread, holding moſt to that food which hee beſt liketh; you ſhall alſo in the time of his reſt, let a paile of water ſtand by him, that he may drink at his pleaſure, for ſome horſes haue ſuch hot ſtomacks, that if they may not almoſt to euerie bit haue a ſup, they cannot poſſiblie eat; and yet for all this you ſhall obſerue your ordinarie howers for watering him abroad alſo, and vſe the exerciſe as is aforeſaid; but if your horſe be groſe, fat, & a foule feeder, which is calld a kettie horſe, then after you haue done as much as is preſcribed for your daies labor, you ſhal not faile morning and euening, for this firſt fortnight to aire him as is ſhewed you in the next Chapter.

CHAP. 5.

Chap. 5.

Of the ayring of hunting horſes.

THe ayring of hunting Horſes is but at three ſeaſons onely to be vſed; that is either in the firſt fortnight when they are firſt taken from graſſe, at what time they are ſo fat and foule, that they cannot be put to any labour without danger: or when they are in diet for ſome great match or wager, ſo that they muſt be kept in good breath with moderate exerciſe, preſeruing their chiefe ſtrength and powers till the time of their trialls: or when a horſe hath got any ſtraine, griefe or miſchance, ſo that you may not ride nor gallop him, yet you would keep him in good breath till his ſorance be amended: vpon any of theſe occaſions, ayring is your onely remedy; and this it is, and thus you are to vſe it. Early in the morning a full houre & a halfe before Sun riſe, you ſhall come to your ſtable, and after you haue made your Groom to put away your horſes dung, and to rub his head, necke, legs, buttocks, and body all ouer with a hairy cloath, then girding his cloaths about him with a ſurſingle, and making them faſt and cloſe before his breſt, you ſhal the waſhing his ſnaffle in a litle beer, put it in his mouth, then bringing him foorth, take his backe, and with a faire foot-pace ride him vp to the top of the knole of ſome hill, & there walke him vp & down no more but in a foot-pace, till you ſee the ſunne be riſen vp faire in your ſight, then walk him fairlie home to the ſtable, and there let your Groom dreſſe him as before, then ride him to the water, after his water gallop him, then bring him home, rub him, and giue him prouender,

uender, & vse him in all things as is before taught you; only when the sun is as it were at the instant setting; or but a little before; as you did in the morning, so you shal do in the euening, take him foorth & ayre him, but then you shall not goe to the hills, but downe to some faire vallie or meddow through which some riuer runs, and there alongst the riuer side you shal aire him at least for an houre and a halfe, and so bring him home, cause him to be well rubd & chaft, giue him a handfull or two of prouender, and then follow your former directions. During the time of your ayring your horse thus, you shal see him gape, yawne, and as it were shrug his body, and take a delight & pleasure in it, you shall in ayring, when your horse will at any time take occasion to stand still, as it were to gaze about, or to listen to any thing, giue him good leaue; and in all his ayring suffer him to take his pleasure. The profit which doth redound by this airing is this, it makes a kettie ful horse emptie both his bellie and bladder; & the sharp aire which in the morning is the purest vpon the tops of hils, and most cold and subtil that which comes in the euening from the humiditie of the water will so pierce into the poers of the horses bodie, that it will euen clense & expell many grose & suffocating humors: it doth also temper and clear the bloud, makes the flesh firm & hard, & tempers the fat with such good qualities, that it is nothing neer so readie to be dissolud or molten. To conclude, an ordinary daies hunting takes no sorer of a horse then one of these earlie or late airings; After you haue thus for a fortnight applied your horse with airings, and moderatlie exercised him after his drink, then you may the next fortnight with more boldnesse aduenture him into stronger labour.

CHAP.

CHAP. 6.

The second fortnights dyet and first hunting.

AFter you haue with ayring and moderate exercise after his drinke, brought your horse to some pretie state of body, which is, that his flesh ouer his short ribs, will not feele so soft, and loose vnder your hand as before it did, neither the thin part of his flanke is so thicke, and full in your gripe, as it was at his first taking from grasse, nor that you doe finde the kernels and grosse matter gathered together vnder his neather chaps altogether so great as at first they were; then you shall proceed to a more strickt clensing of his body after this manner. Early in the morning about an houre or more before his accustomed time, your Groom shal come into the stable, and as soone as euer he hath put away your horses dung, he shall looke what meat your horse hath left in his manger, and if there be anie, hee shall notwithstanding make cleane the manger, and sifting the horse two or three handfuls of fresh Oats, giue him them to eat, and as soon as he hath done eating, he shall bridle him vp, turn him about, & then fall to dresse him. After he is dreſt, the Groom shall take a good hunting Saddle, with handsome Stirroppes and strong wollen garths, and girt it vpon the Horses backe, then hee shall throw the cloathes ouer the saddle, and so let the Horse stand vpon the Bridle, till the

Hounds

Hounds and your ſelfe are readie to goe foorth on hunting, which would be an hour or there abouts after ſunriſe at the furtheſt, then you ſhall take your horſes back, and that firſt day follow the hounds verie gentlie, gallopping verie ſildome, and no long time together, but croſſing the fields to your beſt aduantage, both obſerue to make in with the Hounds at euerie default, and alſo to keepe your horſe (as neere as you can) within the crie of the dogs, that he may take delight in their muſicke; and when you finde the chaſe to runne ouer any faire earth, as either ouer More, Medow, Heath, greenſwarth, or graſſe leyes; all which my countrymen of the North call ſkelping earths, becauſe a horſe may without any great toile or paine throw out his legges and bodie, and gallop ſmoothlie thereupon; you may then thruſt out your horſe, and for a quarter of a mile, or halfe a mile, (according as the chaſe holds out) galloppe him faire & ſoftlie vpon the hand after the Hounds, that hee may learne how to handle his legs, how to lay his body, and how to change and alter his ſtroake according to the change & alteration of the ground, as if the ground be plain and leuel, then to lay downe his body, ſtretch foorth his legges and to goe more ſpeedily away, but if the ground bee ruttie and full of falſe treading, (which we call broken ſwarthe) or if it be ouer ridge and furrowe, ſo that the horſe in his gallopping riſes and falls, then he muſt gather vp his body round & cloſe, ſtrike ſhorter and thicker, to the intent he may auoide ruttes, or ſetting his foreſeet in the bottome of furrowes, which if at any time by miſchance he doe, yet carrying his bodie ſo round and vpright, hee will euer haue that ſtrength at commandement, that he wil neither ſtumble nor fall ouer: to which perfection you can no way bring him, but by moderate

exerciſe and cuſtome, and keeping him euer within his winde, that whenſoeuer he ends gallopping he may be in his beſt ſtrength, & haue alwayes a deſire to do more then you will ſuffer him; thus and by the rule of theſe obſeruations you ſhal hunt your horſe til it be betwixt two and three of the clocke in the afternoone, at what time you ſhall couple vp your Hounds, and then conſider the eſtate of your Horſe, whether he haue had any great exerciſe or no; that is, whether he haue ſweat any thing or nothing (for to ſweat exceeding much the firſt day you muſt by no meanes ſuffer him) and if you find he haue ſweat a little, then you ſhall ride him gently home; but if he haue not ſweat at all, then you ſhall vpon ſome faire skelpe earth gallop him, till you make him ſweat; but you muſt do it ſo gently, that you neither grieue him with the labour, nor make him deſire the quickning of the ſpurre in his gallopping, but that all he doth may be done as it were out of his own voluntary wil & courage. When you haue made him wet the haires that are at the rootes of his eares, and ſome few vpon his necke and flanke with ſweat (which are all the places you muſt at firſt by any meanes make him ſweat in) then you ſhall ride him gentlie home: and as ſoone as you are lighted from his backe, you ſhall cauſe him to be ſet vp in the ſtable: then tying his head with the Bridle vp to the rack (where there muſt neither be hay, nor any thing elſe) make two grooms at the leaſt, one of one ſide the horſe, and another of the other, with good ſtore of freſh ſtraw, which muſt lie vnder him, rubbe his head and face firſt, then all his foure legges, then his necke, body, belly, buttockes, and generally euerie part of the Horſe, till they haue not left about him anie one wet or foule haire, then let them vngird his gyrths, and take off his Saddle,

and

and immediatlie clap about his bodie and his heart two yardes of ſome thick ſtrong cotton, then lay on his cloathes which ordinarily he wore, and hauing girt them on with the ſurſingle, let it be ſtopt round about with ſoft wiſpes, and ſo let him ſtand for the ſpace of two houres or more: then you ſhal come vnto him and vnbridle him, and then ſift two or three handfull of Oates, and mixe with them a good handful of Hempſeed, and giue it him to eat: then put into his racke a little bottle of Hay, and ſo let him ſtand till betwixt eight and nine a clocke at night, at what time comming to him, you ſhall giue him to drinke a ſweet maſh of ground mault and water lukewarme, which if at firſt he be dainty to drinke on, reſpect not, but placing it in ſuch ſort vnder him, that he cannot throw it downe; let it ſtand by him all night, that hee may drinke at his pleaſure. Then you ſhall cut him in ſmall peeces the value almoſt of halfe a pecke of ordinary hunting bread (the making and nature whereof ſhall bee preſcribed vnto you in the next Chapter) then putting another ſmall bottle of Hay into the racke, thruſting vp his litter hanſomelie, that his bedde may be ſoft, and rubbing his head, necke, and buttockes downe with a haire cloath, let him ſtand till the next morning.

Now foraſmuch as in this firſt dayes hunting, there are many obſeruations to be noted, I thinke it not amiſſe to giue you a taſt of them before I proceed any further: firſt therefore you ought to obſerue, that in the morning whē you come into the field, you doe not put your horſe to any gallop for at leaſt two hours; which time you ſhal ſpend in trotting, & walking him after the dogs, & many times ſtanding ſtill, to make your horſe dung, and empty his bellie, which whēſoeuer he doth, you ſhall cheriſh

him, and with oft ſtanding ſtil, and now & then whiſtling your horſe, doe what you can to prouoke him to piſſe, (which is the wholſomeſt thing of all others) then when you find that your horſe by his often dunging & piſſing is reaſonably well emptied, you may begin to gallop him in manner before ſhewed.

Next you ſhall obſerue the nature and inward quality of your Horſe; which is whether he be of a temperate and ſober ſpirit, one that will doe no more then you put him vnto, nor ſtriue to go faſter then you would haue him; or whether he be a Horſe of fiery and forward ſpirit, one that will chafe, frette, and ſweat as much for anger that hee is kept backe and reſtrained, as the other when he is runne a whole ſent and ſoundlie ſpurred: if you find him of dull and ſober mettall, then you ſhall galloppe him the oftner, but the leſſe while together, that you may bring him to delight in hunting, now and then awakening him with your ſpurres, but by no meanes (as I ſaid before) bringing him to the height of his winde, or the vttermoſt of his ſtrength. But if hee be a Horſe of hot and free mettall, then you ſhall gallop him the ſeldomer, but the ſorer, thruſting him now and then vpon deepe and ouerthwart earth, that by feeling the paine of labour, and the daunger which his fierce and mad running drawes him vnto when he is ready to ouerthrow in euerie furrow, hee will euen by thoſe corrections, and the benefit of his owne knowledge, come to a mote moderate temper in his running, and ſo much the better and ſooner, if you (as in true Art you ought to do) by no meanes either with ſpurre or rod compell him to doe any thing; but that all the miſchiefes hee feeles, may onelie come by his owne voluntarie furie; you but onelie giuing libertie to his frowardneſſe: then you ſhall

ſhal obſerue vpon what earth he gallops moſt vnnimbly, and vpon that earth vſe to gallop him moſt, yet with ſuch leiſure and gentleneſſe, that he may haue both time to know, and time to amend his fault.

Laſtlie, you ſhall obſerue after your Horſe begins to eat bread, whether vpon that food he be quicke or ſlowe of diſgeſtion, as before in the firſt fortnight; and if you find that he be quicke of diſgeſtion, that is, that he keeps his bread but a little while in his bodie (as for the moſt part your fierie and free Horſes doe) then you ſhall but onelie lightlie chip your bread, and ſo giue it him both cruſt and crumme together: but if he be ſlow of diſgeſtion, which is, that hee keeps his meat long in his bellie, then you ſhall cleaue your loaues in the midſt, and giue vnto your Horſe nothing but the crumme onlie; for the crumme is quick of diſgeſtion, and ſoon turns to blood, cruditie, and excrements: and the cruſt is ſlow of diſgeſtion, and askes (by meanes of his hardneſſe and dryneſſe) a double time before it be concocted.

After you haue thus ſpent your firſt hunting day; as ſoone as the next morning appeares, you ſhall come to the ſtable, and the firſt thing you doe, ſhall be to make your keeper thruſt the horſes dung from his litter, on which you ſhall looke, and by treading vpon it with your foot and opening it, you ſhall ſee whether you can find any greaſe either without or within it, or whether it be ſlimie or greaſie outwardly, if there be neither greaſe nor other ſlimie matter to bee perceiued, but that his dung holds the ſame ſtate and colour which formerly it did before he was hunted, then you ſhall know that your firſt daies hunting did take nothing at all of your Horſe, but that his bodie holds one certaine ſtate ſtill; which is a warning vnto you that you may the next hunting day

almoſt double your exerciſe; but if you find that there be any little greaſe come from the horſe, or that his dung be but outwardlie greaſie, which you ſhal know by the ſhining of his dung, or by white ſpots, like ſope ſpots, which you ſhall ſee within his dung, or if his dung be of a darke colour, or harder then it was, then you may be aſſured that both your horſe is extreame foule, and that your labour was fullie ſufficient, ſo that the next day you hunt you ſhal increaſe his labour but a little more. When you haue taken theſe obſeruations from his dung, you ſhall then make your Groom dreſſe him, and after he is dreſt, as you did the firſt fortnight, ſo you ſhall then ride him to the water, gallop him after his drinke, and then giue him either 5. or 6. handfuls of wel ſifted Oates, or a good quantitie of bread cut in ſmall peeces, which you thinke he hath beſt ſtomacke vnto; as thus, if the laſt meat you gaue him before were Oats, then now you ſhal giue him bread; if it were bread then, now Oats: for the oftner you alter, the better will be his apperite: yet you muſt make bread his principall food, becauſe it is moſt ſtrong, moſt healthfull and beſt nouriſhing both of winde and bodie. Thus you ſhall keep this day of reſt as you kept him the firſt fortnight, the next day following you ſhal hunt him againe as you did the firſt day, only a little increaſing his toile according to his nature, ſtrength, and aptneſſe in hunting, and when you bring him home, to obſerue all the rules, diets, keeps, foods, and obſeruations which are formerly deſcribed in this and the other Chapters. And thus you ſhal hunt your horſe in this gentle maner foure times a week for a fortnight together, feeding him onlie with ordinarie bread and Oates, & giuing him no ſcowring, but maſhes and hempſeed.

Chap. 7.

Of hunting breade, both ordinarie (as for trayning of Horſes) and extraordinary for matches or Wagers.

THere is nothing doth ſo much ſtumble mens minds, and make them afraid of keeping hunting horſes, as the verie remembrance and charge of keeping them, which by the follie of ignorant and fooliſh keepers, who to make the arte and ſecrets greater then indeed they are, or to giue a falſe colour to their owne knowledges (as if in their skils were myſteries beyond coniuration) or elſe as I think to get vnhoneſt polling pence to their owne purſes; they tell noble ſpirits & good minds (whoſe births and places are far beyond comerce with theſe vnder offices (yet deſire to haue euerie thing in beſt perfection) of ſuch ſtrange and vnneceſſarie expences, of ſuch huge and monſtrous proportions for food, and ſuch diuerſities of corne, and of ſo much difficultie and attention, that as if a hunting horſe would almoſt leaue no corne for the poore to feed on; or had a ſtomacke as infinite as ſuch a keepers follie; they make good minds ſo wearie of the pleaſure, and ſo fearefull to meddle with a charge worſe then vſurie, that they by all meanes poſſible not ſhunne the ſport, but ſay, as I haue heard ſome Gentlemen doe, that one hunting horſe is more chargable then the keeping of halfe a dozen ordinary iourneying Geldings; but they are deceiued, for this

I dare auouch to al the world, and I would haue all gentlemen know it, that if he which vndertakes to keepe a hunting Horse be a man skilfull, honest, & of good conscience, then look what allowãce any Nobleman or gentleman will allow to his footcloth or horse for his owne saddle, (which cannot be lesse then a pecke at a watering which is two peckes a day) that euen that allowance and fortie shillings a yeer more, shall keep any hunting horse whatsoeuer as sufficientlie, either for pleasure or else for match, as if you should allow him ten folde double the proportion, and hee which demaunds more, wrongs both himselfe and his master.

Now he that either loues sport or a good horse, and wil not allow one forty shillings a yeer to see him in best perfection, for my part I could wish he might be depriued pleasure, and haue a torment, in my conceit worse then the rack; that is to ride of a Iade that is tyred. But to proceed to my purpose, and that you may see the greatest charge which belongs to a hunting horse, I will follow on the manner of bread making; and first for the ordinarie bread, which is that wherewith you must feede the most part of the yeer: you are thus to compound it;

Ordinarie Bread.

Take a strike of cleane Beanes, two peckes of wheat, and a pecke of Rye, grind these together, and then sift them through a temse, then knead it with good store of barme & water, but let your water be scalding hot, that it may take away the strong sauour of the Beanes, when you haue knodden it well, then lay a cloath ouer it, and let it bee also well trodden, then moulde it vppe into great loaues, like Housholde loaues, hauing as neere as you can gesse, about a pecke in a loafe; then bake it as you bake good houshold bread, and no otherwise, and let it be at least two dayes old before your horse

horse taſtany of it. But if the horſe for whome you make this bread, be exceeding ſollible & much ſubiect to loſenes in his body, then you ſhall put in no Rye at all: but if he be of a hot body, and ſubiect to more then ordinary drineſſe, then you ſhall ouer and beſides the Rye, put to the former proportion of corne, about two pound of ſweet butter. The natures of the aforeſaid graines are theſe; Firſt the Beanes are the moſt ſtrong and naturall food for a Horſe that can be, being neither ſo purſie, fulſome, nor breeding ſuch raw crudity as Peaſe do, and therefore where Beanes are to be got, I would haue no Peaſe vſed. Then the wheat is comfortable, light of digeſtion, and ſooneſt conuerts to good blood. Laſtly the Rie is ſollible & euacuating, ſo that being mixt with the other two graines which are drie and binding, it makes the bread of a reaſonable and indifferent compoſition. The barme makes the bread light, ſo that it doth neither load nor cloy the ſtomack, the ſcalding water takes away the ſtrong ſauour, and the butter is a purge comfortable wholſome, and not againſt nature.

This bread hath in it ſufficient ſtrength and vertue, to bring a horſe to good ability of body, and pureneſs of wind, neither would I haue any man either for the trayning vp of young Horſes, or for the ordinary pleaſure of hunting, to vſe any other bread but this only: but if you make any match for any great wager, wherein you are to be exceeding circumſpect and carefull, for in their loſſes do indeed conſiſt the charge and care of hunting horſes, and to which I wil neuer giue any man incouragement, yet if you haue made a match, and that your horſe muſt be brought to the vttermoſt perfection that may be, then you ſhall make him another ſort of bread ſomewhat finer then the former after this manner; you ſhall take of

cleane

cleane beanes, well dried a ſtrike, of oat-meale two pecks and of Rye two peckes, grinde all theſe together, and boult them through an ordinarie bolting cloath, then take as much new ale, and the barm beaten altogether, as will ſerue to knead it, and if you will beſtow the whites of fortie egges vpon it, the bread wil be ſo much the better both for the horſe and his winde.

After the dough hath been well knodden with hands, you ſhall then cauſe the Baker, hauing his feete cleane ſcoured and waſht, to goe into the trough and tread it exceedingly, then you ſhall couer it with cloathes, and let it lie till it ſwell euen to the toppe of the trough, which it will in ſhort ſpace doe: then knead it again, and ſo mould it vp in great loaues as you did before with the former bread, & ſo bake it ſufficientlie, but by no meanes ouer bake it. Better bread then this cannot be made for hunting, and though there be ſome horſemen of my knowledge, which will beſtow vpon bread a great deale of more charges, as by putting hot ſpices and other ſuch like toies therein, thinking that more coſt brings more worſhippe, yet knew they how vilde and vnwholſome it is, ſurelie they ſhould neuer reape for their labours, ſo much as God a mercie, for take it from me for a generall rule, whēſoeuer you ſee anie man vſe ſpices to a hunting horſe that is ſound & of good conſtitution, he is neither good keeper, nor can giue any good reaſon for his doings, more then our common Smithes doe for their medicines, which is, they haue ſeen ſuch a man do it before them.

CHAP. 8.

CHAP. 8.

Of all manner of purgations or scowrings that are fit for hunting horses, and of their natures, vse and operations.

PVrgations which are the emptiers, and voiders of all superfluous humours, which doe annoy the bodie with their euill qualities, bringing either sicknesses, vlcers, or mortalitie, I doe not meane amplie to dilate vpon in this chapter, because they are more properly belonging to the sicke horse then to the sound; and their simples so curious, strange and violent in working, as goes beyond the skill of euerie ordinarie keeper; and for as much as I haue in the book of diseases spoke as much as is necessarie cõcerning them and their natures in case of sickneſſe, I will here onelie trouble you with those purgatiue receits, which are onelie meete for hunting-horses, or running horses, being sound of bodie, and in perfect strength and liuelihood, which are called of the Northerne men scowrings, which in true signification is the same that a purgation is, yet in that their workings are somewhat different, because the purgation doth cleanse away those sicke and vnwholsome humors which are growne to an euill alreadie, the scowring none but those which in time would grow to be contagious, I will let onelie the names hold the differences between them; and onelie here speake of scowrings. The first scowring, & which is of al other the gentlest & most wholesome, is the *mash*, and it is made in this manner:

take

take a pecke of grouud mault, and put it into a paile; then take a gallon and a halfe of water boyling hot from the fire, and put it into the mault, then with a staffe, mash and stirre them together at least halfe an houre, till taking the water vpon your finger, you feele it as sweete as honie (for euer the sweeter it is, the stronger it is) then let it stand till it be luke warme, and then giue it your horse. This mash is to be giuen to anie horse after his labor, especiallie to such as are weake or leane, for as it scowreth away molten grease and loose humors, so it comforteth the spirits and ingenders strength, it is good also for a fat horse (as is before shewed you) vpon his first labour, so that you vse with it (as is likewise shewed you) another scowring which is of a stronger nature, for to vse it only of it selfe, it will feede a horse and make him more fat and pursie, it is also exceeding good, and onlie to be vsed in any sickneese whatsoeuer, for to speake the truth of it, it is the horses Ale-bertie.

Of Hempseed.

The next scowring is hempseede cleane dreſt to bee mingled with his Oats, the nature whereof is exceeding gentle and without all offence to the stomacke, it is the best scowring to begin ne withall, for it doth neither offend the horse in eating, nor workes vpon any matter but what nature is willing to expel, and his office is only to purge the stomacke and intralls.

Rosemary and Butter.

The next scowring is, take Rosemarie and chop it verie small; then take a quarter of a pound of verie sweet Butter, and worke them together, then breake it in peeces, and rolle it into sundry pellets, somewhat bigger then the Wall nut, and then holding vp the horses head, put them gently down his throat, then ride the horse gently vp & down half an houre after to make the scowring worke. This is good for a fat horse, after you haue

giuen

giuen him ſuch a ſweate that you are ſure you haue melted ſome of his inward greaſe, it ſcowreth the ſtomacke and intrals, and a little perfumeth the head, and waſteth the groſſe matter betweene his vnder chappes, and about his winde-pipe: it is to be giuen to a horſe earely in the morning when he is faſting.

The next ſcowring is Sallet oyle halfe a pinte, and of milke new from the Cowe a pinte; brew them together, and giue it to the Horſe with a horne. This ſcowring is much ſtronger then any of the former, and will in the working make a Horſe ſicke for an houre and more, it alſo purgeth the ſtomacke, and intrals of all molten greaſe or other humours which former labour hath diſſolued, it is beſt for a fat horſe, eſpecially when after you haue giuen him inward heates, and finde that out of the hardnes of his conſtitution, the other former ſcowrings will not worke, or bring any thing from him: you ſhal as ſoone as you haue giuen this ſcowring, ride your horſe gently vp and down for halfe an houre, and then ſet him vp ſo as the Horſe may lie downe at his pleaſure. The time to giue it is in the morning. Sallet oyle and Milke.

The next ſcowring, is to take a pinte of Muskadine, and halfe a pinte of Sallet oyle; and mixing them together, to warme them vpon the coales, and ſo to giue it to the Horſe with a horne. This ſcowring hath all the effects and vertues which Sallet oyle and Milke hath; onely it exceeds in this, that it is much more comfortable, and as it ſcowreth, ſo it giueth ſtrength and luſt, neither doth it leaue that fleamie ſubſtance behinde which Milke doth, inſomuch that it is good either for fat horſe or for leane, (if the leane haue any groſſe humour to worke vpon) this ſcowring is not amiſſe to be giuen to a Horſe at his Sallet oyle and Muskadine.

firſt

firſt taking from graſſe. After he hath receiued his firſt ſound ſweate, it purgeth the intrals: the houre to giue it is earely in the morning, and his exerciſe to bee ridden gently halfe an houre after it.

Sacke and Sallet oyle. The next ſcowring is ſacke a pinte, and ſallet oyle halfe a pinte mixt together, then warm'd vpon the coales, and giuen to the Horſe with a horne, it is an excellent ſcowring, and moſt wholſome for any horſe of what ſtate of body ſoeuer he be, for it both clenſeth the body and the head and alſo it cures any colde, and leaues no groſſe humours that can any way trouble the winde.

Now you are to note that theſe three ſcowrings laſt rehearſed, to wit, Sallet oyle and Milke; ſallet oyle and Muskadine, and ſallet oyle and Sacke, are very carefully to be vſed and with great conſideration; as firſt they are not to be vſed often, but either when by outward teſtimonies you know that your horſe is inwardly foule, and that you haue giuen him labour ſufficient to diſſolue it, or when by apparant heauines or other ſtoppings, colds or obſeruations, you ſee your horſe begin to wax ſicke, and not otherwiſe: Againe, you are to obſerue, that if ſicknes either by ſuddain colde or other miſgouernment ſhall happen vnto your horſe, when he is cleane in body from glut or fatt, or if your horſe be of ſuch a ſollible conſtitution, that he is but too apt to ſcowre (yet neceſſity compels you to vſe one of theſe ſcowrings) in ſuch a caſe looke which of the ſcowrings you vſe, and to it you ſhall adde at leaſt two or three ounces of Sugar-candie, ſo that nature hauing whereupon to worke, the medicine ſhall vſe his force without impediment.

Butter and Garlicke. The next ſcowring, is to take twenty cloues of garlicke cleane pilled, and to bruiſe and ſtamp them in a woden-diſh,

diſh, then to take a quarter of a pound of ſweet butter, and to roule vp the garlicke in foure or fiue pellets bigger then walnuts, and ſo to giue them to the Horſe, and thruſt them downe his throate: This ſcowring is to bee giuen to any horſe of what ſtate of body ſoeuer he bee, if he be ſubiect either to colde or poſe in the head, for it purgeth onely the head and winde-pipes, and diſolueth the groſenes betweene his chaps, the time to giue it is in the morning faſting, and to be ridden moderately halfe an houre after, and you may if you pleaſe giue it three mornings together, if either your horſe haue taken any fleight colde, or that you finde the kirnels vnder his chaps are impediments to this winde.

The next ſcowring is to mixe Butter and Saunders together, and to make round pellets and giue them to the Horſe, it is the ſame in nature and operation that Butter and Garlicke is, but not altogether ſo ſtrong, and therefore not of ſo fit vſe; it onely purgeth the head, and is to be giuen with the ſame manner and order as the former. To put muſtard ſeed now and then amongſt your horſes Oates, purgeth the horſes head, giues him occaſion to neeſe and ſnore, and is very wholſome, ſo that if you vſe it euery day once, it cannot chuſe but bring profite, and helpe your horſes winde much. Butter and Saunders.

The laſt ſcowring is; take a good quantity of Boxe leaues, and put them into a pewter diſh, then ſet them before the fire, and let them dry leaſurely, till they be ſo hard that you may cruſh them to powder, then when they are bruiſ'd, take the ſame quantity of Brimſtone, beaten likewiſe to powder, and mixe it and the boxe leaues well together, then when your Horſe comes in from hunting, after he is rubd, dreſt, and hath ſtood vpon Boxe leaues & Brimſtone.

the

the brydle a good ſpace, then the firſt meate that you giue him muſt be a handfull or two of well ſifted Oates, and a prety quantity of this ſcowring ſtrinckled amongſt them; yet you muſt doe it ſo cunningly and daintily, that your Horſe may not finde fault at it, or through the ſauour thereof refuſe his meate. This ſcowring purgeth the head, ſtomacke, and euery part of the body, it killeth the Maw-worme, Bottes and grubbes, which three ſortes of wormes being bred in the ſtomacke, doe exceedingly torment the Hunting and Running horſe, becauſe being kept ſo much faſting, the worme wanting humours to worke vpon, doth gnawe and gripe vpon the ſtomack, ſo that if they be not kild, the griefe of them will keepe the horſe from his beſt dooing.

This ſcowring is eſpecially to bee vſed when your Horſe is clenſed from glutt or fatt, and when you haue him either in dyet for match or wager, it is mearely without all hurt, and hath no working in it contrary to nature. And thus much for ſcowrings, their natures and operations.

Chap. 9.

The third fortnights Dyet, and of the firſt thorowe Sweatings.

After your Horſe by the two former fornights dyet, is come to ſo good an eſtate of body, and ſo well inſeam'd that you finde hee is able with good ſtrength and winde to runne vpon any reaſonable and indifferent

indifferent earth) two or three mile without much ſweating or blowing, if you would force him thereunto, and that now the fleſh of his bodie doth begin to grow verie hard, his flanke thinner and cleaner then at your ſecond fortnights beginning, you ſhall then this third fortnight increaſe his labour, and come to acknowledge of the vttermoſt of his inward powers, and how apt or fit hee is, or will bee for this pleaſure to which you employ him, and you ſhall doe it in this ſort. According to the manner preſcribed in the ſecond fortnight. After your groome hath earlie in the morning giuen your horſe a pretie quantitie of bread or wel ſifted Oats, and that he hath dreſt him, ſaddled him and bridled him, you ſhall then take him foorth a hunting, and after you are come into the field, and that your horſe hath emptied himſelfe in ſome reaſonable ſort (which queſtionleſſe he will haue done by that time you can poſſible finde a Hare, except your ſport be extraordinarilie readie) you ſhall the firſt chaſe the dogges break foorth, a little fauor your horſe, yet not ſo much that you let the chace runne too farre before you, but keeping your horſe vpon a reaſonable gentle galloppe; follow it to the verie ending. This firſt chaſe will (as the Northerne man ſaies) racke your horſes winde, and ſo prepare him to his labor (with which he hath had a little acquaintance a fortnight before) that if at firſt he were not emptied enough, he will now emptie himſelfe thorowlie, and make himſelfe fit for the vttermoſt you can put him vnto, which done, all the day after you ſhall hunt him ſoūdly, that is to ſay, you ſhall follow the hounds as cloſe as either is fit for a good Huntſman, or the halfe ſpeed of your horſe is able beare you, nay if you put him to a three quarters

...peede it

it ſhall not be amiſſe; but to put him to the vttermoſt of his ſpeed, you ſhall neuer do in the third fortnights training, except you put on a reſolution neuer to haue your horſe good after; if this day affoord you ſuch paſtime, and the chaſes hold out ſo long, & are ſo manie that they haue put your horſe three or foure times into ſound ſweats all ouer his bodie; and that you ſee the ſweate which riſes vnder the Bridle, and about the Saddle and girthes, to riſe vpon a white foame, which is a great ſign of glutte and foulneſſe, then vpon the finiſhing of your ſport, which would be about three of the clock at the lateſt, you ſhall ride him home, and there rubbe him, drie him, and cloath him vppe warme (as was before ſhewed you.) But if your ſport haue beene ſo ſlacke, that the following of the dogges hath not put your horſe into anie great ſweat at all, then towards the euening when it is almoſt time to goe home, you ſhal make ſome horſeman with a Cat in a ſtring to leade a traine ſent, vpon ſuch ground as you know your horſe takes delight in, for at leaſt three or foure mile: then laying your dogges vpon it, follow the traine with a three quarters ſpeed till it be ended, which will heat your horſe thorowlie, and then gentlie ride him home, & vſe him as aforeſaid: then two howres after, when you vnbridle him, giue him Oates and Hempſeed together, which muſt be as a preparatiue to a ſtronger purgation: then giue him hay; and before you goe to bed a maſh. The next morning the firſt thing you doe, you ſhall giue your horſe the ſcowring of butter and roſemarie: and after you haue chaſed him, ſet him vppe, and let him ſtand an howre or two, then giue him ſome bread, and about one of the clock in the afternoon water him, and giue him ſome more bread; then let him

ſtand

ſtand till your ordinarie howre, and then dreſſe him, water him, and giue him more Bread or Oates, and vſe him in all things as formerlie in his daies of reſt.

The next day following take him foorth on hunting againe; but in anie caſe hunt him nothing ſo ſore after the Dogges as you did the other day before, till it be afternoon, and then if you find in him good ſpirit and life I would haue you to giue him a chaſe or two after the Dogges ſoundlie; and towards the euening to make him another traine ſent, and to runne it ſomewhat more throwlie then the former, that you may make him ſweat hartilie; then bring him home, rubbe him, dreſſe him, drie him, and cloath him vp exceeding warme: then after he hath ſtood two or three howres vpon his bridle, you ſhall giue him the ſcowring of Sack and Sallet oyle, adding thereunto a good quantitie of Sugar-candie, or that of Muſcadine and Sallet oyle, putting likewiſe vnto it great ſtore of Sugar-candie: but that of Sacke, Oyle, and Sugar-candie is much the better, eſpeciallie if your Horſe be ſubiect either to colde or poſe in the head. As ſoone as you haue giuen him this ſcowring, you ſhall tie him ſo that he may lie downe, and ſo let him reſt till nine of the clocke at night, at which time you ſhall giue him as much warme water as he will drinke, and a good quantitie of bread and Oates, well ſifted and mingled together: then making his bedde ſoft, let him reſt for all that night.

The next morning, as ſoone as you come vnto him, you ſhall firſt looke vpon his dung, whether hee haue voided anie greaſe or no, whether hee haue, or he haue not, it ſhall be no great matter, for the force of this laſt ſcowring will worke two, three, and ſometimes foure

Notes from the horſes dung.

daies after: then whether his dung keepe the perfect colour, or no, or whether it looke more darke or black, or whether it looke more redde and hie coloured. If it looke of the right colour, (as is before shewed) then it is a signe of health, strength and cleanneſſe; if darke and blacke, then it is a signe that there is molten greaſe, and other ill humours in his bodie which are not scowred out, if it looke more redde and hie coloured, then it is a signe he is inwardly hot, and that his blood is a litle distempered, which moderate diet, and coole exerciſe will soone amend: if his dung be looſe and thinne, it is a signe of weakneſſe, if hard and in round pellets, then it is both a signe of hot bodie inwardly, and that he feedes groſelie, eating either too much hay, or elſe some part of his litter, which you may amend by increasing the allowance of his prouender: but if it keep an indifferent mean, betwixt both theſe, being neither too hard nor too ſoft, but as it were like the ordure of a man, and that it ſtinke, and be ſo ſtrong that you ſhall be enfor'd to burne perfumes in your ſtable, then is it ſuch as it ſhould be, and is a signe your horſe is cleane, ſtrong, healthfull, & of good courage.

Notes from his eating.

After you haue noted the temper of your horſes body by his dung, then you ſhal looke into the maunger what meat he hath left vneaten: & by the computation of that which he hath left to eat, conſider how much he hath eaten; then if you find he hath eaten nothing at all, or verie little, you ſhall then vnderſtand, that either the former dayes hunting hath diſſolued much groſe matter in his bodie, vpon which the ſcowring working ſomwhat ſore makes him a little ſicke, and ſo doth forbear his foode, or elſe your former daies labor was a little more violēt then

in

in discretion it should haue been: but which soeuer it be it matters not, for his stomack will quickly come againe with moderat labor. If you find he hath eaten all his prouender and left none in the manger, then you must know that ouernight you gaue him not so much as you should haue done, and therefore it shall be good that the next night you double your proportion; for it is a principall rule you must holde in this kinde of dieting to giue your Horse euer more meat then he will eate, and not as trauellers and Poulterers doe, keepe your Horse euer with an vnsatisfied stomacke: for by that meanes being euer kept sharpe like a hawke (as if hee laboured for his bellie) whensoeuer he comes to a good or full meale, he cānot chuse but surfet. The keeping of a hunting horse is (and the keeping of other horses should be) contrarie; for you must by little and litle giue them so much, that in the end they will eat no more, and then if you throw neuer so much before them they will eat no more then shal suffice nature, being to themselues better physitions then anie man can bee: but if you once stint them, or keepe them hungrie a meale or two, then according to the old prouerb, be sure the third will make a glutton: wherefore hauing by little filled your horses bellie before you serue him for all night, be sure then to giue him so much that you may find some vneaten in the morning.

Now lastlie, if you doe find a little in the maunger, so that you see he hath eaten a good proportion, then you may be assured he is strong and lustie, and hath in him no touch of sickneſſe. After you haue taken these notes from his dung and meat, you shall then cause the groom to dresse him, water him, and vse him in all points as in his former dayes of rest, giuing him both good store

of meat, and chaunge of meat: that is, one while bread, and another while Oates, giuing him moſt of that hee takes moſt affection vnto. The next day following this day of reſt, you ſhall take your horſe foorth on hunting againe, but not to the end you ſhall put him to anie labour, but onelie to keepe him in breath, and to procure him a ſtomacke to his meate; for all this day you ſhall not by anie meanes galloppe him, except now and then fiue or ſixe ſcore yardes; but onelie trott him from hill to hill, that you may ſee and heare the Hounds, but not follow the Hounds, and thus ſpending the day till euening, bring your Horſe home without hauing any one haire wette with ſweat, obſeruing all the day as you ride, as oft as your Horſe doth dung, to turne about and looke vpon it, for there is no queſtion, but that day hee will voide verie much greaſe and filthineſſe; when you come home let him be verie well rubd, dreſt, and warme cloathed vp; and verie well fedde that night both with Oates and Bread, As for his water, you ſhall that day both water him in the morning as you ride him into the field, and alſo water him in the euening as you bring him from the field, and giue him no ſcowring at all. The next day after this, being a day of reſt and feeding, you ſhall vſe your horſe as in the dayes of reſt before ſpecified, where you are onelie appointed to feede hard, but to giue no ſcowring. In the ſame manner and with all the ſame obſeruations that you haue ſpent this weeke, you ſhall alſo ſpend the next weeke following, without any augmentation or alteration, and then be wel aſſured you ſhall haue your horſe in as good winde, ſtrength, and cleanneſſe, as is either fitte or neceſſarie for a hunting Horſe, ſo that afterwards obſeruing moderately to hunt

twice

twice or thrice a week according to the ſtrength & conſtitution of his body: and euery night when as you come from any ſore hunting, to giue him hempſeed & a maſh. You ſhal keep him all the yeer fit for your pleaſure, and without any danger either of winde breaking, burſting, blinding, foundring, or ſuch like infirmities, make him performe in labour as much as is contained within the compaſſe of his power; onely thus much you muſt know by the way, that after once you haue brought your horſe to be cleane, which you ſhall perceiue both by his long induring of labour without ſweating, by the cleareneſſe of his wind, when he will runne three or foure mile, and ſcarce blow at it, and alſo feeling his flanke to be thinne as containing nothing but a double skinne, and his chaps ſo cleane either from fat, glut or kernels, that you may hide both your fiſts between them; then you muſt by no means giue him any ſcowring after his riding except it be now and then vpon ſome ſore daies hunting, either a little hempſeed, or elſe boxe leaues and Brimſtone; or if he haue a little poſe in his head, then a little muſtard-ſeed in his prouender; other ſcowrings you ſhall vſe none, vnleſſe it be when there is apparāt ſicknes. Alſo after you haue made your horſe cleane, you ſhall by no means either through your negligence or for want of riding, ſuffer him to grow foule againe, for ſo you ſhall be oft deceiued and procure your ſelfe a double labour, and not haue one pennie coſt ſaued. And thus much for your third fortnights dyet.

CHAP. 10

CHAP. 10.

Why horſes ſhould haue their ſweats after the Dogs, and of their cloathing.

THere be ſome horſemen which becauſe they haue gotten particuler names; out of their ambitions, to keepe particular reputations, and to make men beleeue there is greater myſteries in their doings, then indeed there is, will when they ſhould giue their horſe anie thorow ſweat, either ſteale from companie or from the Hounds, & where no bodie may behold them, break into a maine chaſe and ſo giue their horſe a ſweat, or elſe taking vnaccuſtomed houres, giue their horſe his ſweats in obſcure places; from the ground of which cuſtome it may bee that ſome will demaund why I doe not obſerue that rule, but preſcribe ſweats to be giuen after the Dogs in anie publique aſſemblie: my anſwer is, that becauſe I am not a Scholler to men, and faſhion but onlie to experience and reaſon; therefore I eſchue al things wherein I can find no probabilitie as I can neither doe in this too curious priuateneſſe; or in binding my ſelfe to anie one remote place.

Now for giuing a horſe his ſweat after the Dogges, in that I find much ſtrength of reaſon; as firſt beſides the pleaſure a horſe naturallie takes to follow hounds (of which I haue ſomewhat ſpoken before) the diuerſitie of grouñds ouer which a horſe is cõpeld to run, as ſomtimes ouer plowd fields, ſomtimes ouer plaine paſtures or medowes, ſometimes ouer lay-lands, or vpon beaten high

wayes,

wayes, ſometimes amongſt moale-hils, and ſometimes amongſt broken ſwarth's, bringes vnto him a two folde profite; one in his experience by making him cunning vpon euery kinde of earth, the other by ſtrengthning his winde and giuing him new breath; with the alterations of the ground, euery Horſ-man hauing this care as well for his owne ſafegard as his horſes, not to let him run ſo violently vpon deepe and dangerous earthes, as vpon ſmooth and plaine groundes; another reaſon is, a horſe that takes his ſweates after the dogs, takes it not ſuddainly; or as a man would ſay with one winde, but temperately and at leaſure, the horſe hardly at any time running halfe a mile together without ſome ſtop or ſtay, for as the Hounds fall in their ſent, ſo the Horſe ſtaies in his running, and recouering new breath, takes his ſweate without any ſence of paine, like a man that were plac'd in a hot-houſe, whereas if to his ſweate ſhould be ioyn'd paine and faintnes, hee would ſoone take diſlike of his labour, and not being a horſe of approued mettall, ſoone fall to tyring. The laſt reaſon is, that gallopping and labouring amongſt other horſes, is ſuch an incouragement and comfort chiefly to a young horſe, that he doth as it were forget his paine, and by ſeeing the labour of his companions; out of an ambition, incident to horſes, couets many times to doe more then any reaſonable horſ-man would haue him; whereas when a man takes a contrary courſe, it cannot chuſe but bring foorth contrary effects, and ſo ſwarue both from Art and reaſon.

There is another error as groſſe as the groſeſt whatſoeuer, which I haue ſeene much vſed amongſt our keepers of hunting horſes, and that is, as ſoone as they haue taken their horſes into the ſtable, then they haue immediately Of cloathing.

diately laid vpon them two or three cloathes, ſome of canuaſe, ſome of wollen, and ſome of ſacke-cloath, without either conſideration or reaſon, almoſt thinking that a Horſe cannot bee in good keeping, if hee be not as it were almoſt ouer-burdned with cloathes; ſome of the beſt profeſſors of this Art (in the worlds repute) not being able to giue a ſound reaſon why a horſe is cloathed at all, much leſſe why they doe weare ſo many cloathes, except it be this, that ſuch a *Iockie*, ſuch a *Florrie*, or ſuch a *Lorrie* did ſo doe, and therfore wee: Which is no good reaſon except Horſes were all of one temper; and indeed the truth is, that if a Hunting horſe were of that ability, that he were able to indure without cloathing, it were not amiſſe to keepe him as thinne as may bee: but in aſmuch as neither their bodyes, nor ſuch extreame labours can indure nakednes, I holde it moſt meete, that they bee cloathed; yet would I haue them to weare no more then ſufficient, nor as if they were olde, ſicke or diſeaſed, to weare furrd coates in harueſt.

Now to knowe when your Horſe hath cloathes ſufficient, or when hee is too light clad, you ſhall keepe well this note and obſeruation: When you firſt take your horſe into the Stable, you ſhall cloath him with a good ſingle cloath of ſtrong Canuas, made long and of good compaſſe, ſo that it may folde double about his hart, and come and tye before his breſt hanſomly: then you ſhall marke how his haire lyes, eſpecially vpon his necke, which at that time of the yeare muſt of neceſſity lye plain and ſmooth: then after more ſharpe weather begins to come in, if then you perceiue his haire to begin to riſe or ſtare, then you may be aſſured he feeles inward colde, and it is neceſſary that his cloathing bee increaſed, ſo that

that then I would haue you lay on another cloath, which if it be made of woollen it is so much the better, and for any of our English horses I thinke will be cloathing sufficient; but if hee be a horse of a more tender nature, as either *Barbary*, *Ienet*, or such like, and that his haire notwithstanding still stares and stands vp; you shall then lay vpon him another cloath, making this your rule, that till his haire lye smooth and flatt to his skinne, hee hath not cloathes enow, and when it doth lie flatt though it bee but with one cloath as single as a sheete, yet it is cloathing as much as hee should weare. Thus if you doe but looke into the true nature and disposition of your Horse, and obserue but the outward Caracters which hee will shew you, it is almost impossible you should erre in his keeping. And thus much for sweating and cloathing.

Chap. 11.

Of making a Hunting match, the obseruations, and aduauntages.

After you haue made your Horse cleane within, and brought him to pureneſſe of winde, great strength, and able performance, when you finde hee is able to indure out a daies Hunting soundly, and to take his heates and coldes stoutly, without either faintnes or shrinking, which is the only testimony and principall vertue in a Hunting horse; and because I haue not hitherto spoken particularly of them, I will tell you before

before I proceed further what heates and coldes are.

Of heats and colds. To indure heates and coldes, is when a Horſe hath runne out a maine chaſe three or foure myles; ſo that all his body is all ouer of an intire ſweate: then the Dogs being at default, or the traine being ended, to haue your horſe in the colde frоſty weather to ſtand ſtill till that ſweate be dryed vpon his backe, nay ſometimes till it be euen frozen vpon his backe, ſo that the colde may pierce him as much inwardly, as before the heate did, and then to breake foorth into another maine chaſe, and doe as much or more then hee did before, his courage appearing to his Rider rather to increaſe then decreaſe. That horſe which can doe thus the ofteſt together, is the worthieſt horſe, and the beſt to be eſteemed; for I haue ſeene many goodly Horſes that for the firſt chaſe, could bee helde within no limits; but after the colde hath pierſt to his heart, his courage hath ſo failed him, that the ſecond chaſe hath craued much compulſion, and in the third he flatly tyred, which hath onely beene for want of exerciſe and hardning: Alſo if you ſee your horſe after his heate when he cooles to ſhrinke his body in, and to draw his foure legges together, then be aſſured his courage failes him, and he will hardly indure another chaſe after, alſo if in his cooling you ſee his gyrths waxe ſlacker then they were at the firſt, ſo that you finde his body and belly ſhrinke and grow ſlenderer then they were, it is the greateſt ſigne that may bee of faintnes and tyring; if a horſe after he comes to be colde, holde his teeth faſt together and will not open his mouth; and if his eyes ſtand firme in his heade, and mooue not ſo quicke as their vſuall cuſtome, both theſe are great ſignes of faintneſſe, ſickneſſe and tyring.

When

When therefore (as I said before) you haue brought your Horse to bee so cleane, that he will both hunt, and take his heates and coldes strongly, and then also either out of his speede and swiftnes, or out of his truth and roughnes is of sufficient power to commaund, or at least in an indifferent sort to accompany in a chase the swiftest Houndes, to which you must haue an especiall regard: For there is no readier a way in the world to cousen your hopes, then by trayning your Horse after slow Dogges, for ouer them he will haue such aduantage and runne so at his owne ease, that you will imagine there is no labour too great for him; whereas when hee comes to runne after swift Dogges indeed, they will draw him vpp to such an extraordinary swiftnesse, that not hauing beene formerly put to the like toyle, the very inacquaintance therewith will make him tyer euen in his best strength, wherefore I would haue all Gentlemen that would as well haue good Horses as good Houndes, euer to keepe two or three couple of Traine-sent dogges the swiftest he can by any meanes attaine vnto, and according as hee findes the strength of his Horse, so to trayne him once or twice a Weeke after them.

Now if your Horse, both in your owne iudgement, and in the opinion of other Horsmen, haue those vertues which are fitt for a beast of best estimation: so that either out of your owne disposition beeing desirous to gaine your Horse a particular reputation, or out of scorne to indure the braues of other chalenges, you will needes make a match or wager vpon his heade, though for mine owne part I would giue no Gentleman encouragement thereunto, because I haue seene in them so much breach of friendshippes, so many iealousies,

and

and ſo many deceits, inſomuch that many times the better Horſe comes from the field the greater looſer; yet becauſe ſuch errors haue no right tytle to the ſport, but onely come in by couetouſnes, and intruſion, and that many Gentlemen notwithſtanding, will make matches; I will according to my ſlender skill and experience, ſhew you the obſeruations and aduantages neceſſary in matching.

Wherefore, whenſoeuer you make any match, you muſt vndoubtedly know the nature, quallity, and diſpoſition of the Horſe vpon which you preſume: that is, whether he bee of hott or colde temper of ſpirit: whether exceeding ſwift and not ſo tough, or exceeding tough, and not ſo ſpeedy: then whether hee delight to labour and toyle vpon deepe groundes, and to climbe hilles, or to runne vpon skelping earthes, high wayes, or ſmooth paſtures; then whether hee be nimble of foote, ſo that he will runne amongſt moale-hilles, downe ſtony craggs, dangerous ruttes, and vneuen wayes; or elſe hauing formerly been beaten vpon his legges, cannot well indure any but ſoft treading: then whether he be of pure and ſtrong winde, ſo that he will runne a long time without ſobbing, or elſe thicke or ſhort winded, inſomuch that albe he is exceeding tough, yet he muſt haue many eaſes in his running.

According to theſe diſpoſitions, you muſt faſhion your match, and preſeruing to your ſelfe your beſt aduauntages, there will be greater hope of your winning: As thus, if your horſe bee of fiery and hot mettall, which for the moſt part are ſpeedy and nimble horſes, louing hard and plaine earthes, and by reaſon of their furies ſeldome able to runne any long time together without

ſome

some sobbe or breathing, then your best aduantage is, if your match be to hunt the Hare first, and the wilde goose chase after, as at three or foure of the clocke in the after noone, then to ease your horse as much as you can all the day, and to let your aduersary leade you continually, and rather to runne without your law then within it, so you keepe your horse from being whipt by the Tryers: then when you come to start the wilde goose chase, to chuse the faireſt earth that is within your eye, or the plaineſt hie-way you can soonest recouer, and so thrusting your horse into his full speede, trie to winne your wager with one winde and good footmanship, but if that faile you, then you must take vp your Horse, and let him gallop as softly as you can, yet by no meanes suffering your aduersary to take the leading from you, but whensoeuer he striues for it by giuing him slippes in winding and turning, seeke to ouer toile him, and make him glad to giue ouer striuing to get the leading, which as soone as you perceiue he doth, and that hee giues as much ease to his horse as you doe to yours; then you shal as soone as you can driue to the next hie-way which leades homeward towardes the stable where you keepe your horse, and then laying your spurres hard to his sides, trie againe the second time to winne the wager in a foorth-right chase, but if it faile againe, then the match is in some danger and the truth and toughnes onely will be victor: If your wager bee to run Traine sents, (which is not so good an aduantage for a horse of this quality) your best course then is, if you can gett the leading of the first trayne, to leade it vpon such earth that if it bee possible that there may be no deepe grounds or plowd fieldes, within three myle of the place where you end your trayne, so that

when

when your aduerſary comes to make the ſecond trayne, he ſhall neither will nor chuſe, but make it vpon skelpe groundes, becauſe there is no deepe earth neare him, for by the order of Riding, hee is bound to begin where you end: The firſt trayne you ſhall forbeare to ride with any ſpeed, which you may doe at your pleaſure, if either you will lay on ſlow dogs, or imperfect dogges. The ſecond traine you muſt be rul'd by your aduerſary; but the third traine which is your owne againe, in it you may trie if you can winne the wager, eſpecially where ſpeed is the onely thing you truſt too by making the trayne fitt for your purpoſe, and laying on Dogges the ſwifteſt you can procure.

Now on the contrary part, if your horſe bee of coole ſpirit, reaſonable ſpeed, yet of an infinit toughnes, ſo that you can hardly either ouer labour him, or ouer ſpur him; in this caſe you ſhall by no meanes agree to hunt the Hare, but onely to follow Train-ſents, in which keeping your aduerſary continually to the height of his ſpeede, you ſhal either goe home a conqueror, or elſe be beaten at your owne weapon, the beſt winde and the beſt truth remaining onely victor: In this caſe you ſhall except againſt running in a hie-way aboue ſo many yardes, as ſometimes twenty, ſometimes forty, as you can agree: you ſhall alſo agree to giue as little law as is poſſible, as thus: That one horſe ſhall not runne ſhort of the other (through the whole chaſes) aboue his length, or if hee doe, then to be whipt vp by the Tryer; you ſhall alſo (eſpecially if your horſe be gelt, & your aduerſaries ſton'd) binde him from all reliefes and comforts, as thus: That there ſhall be no colde water caſt either vpon the horſes ſtones, or into his mouth, nor that any traine ſhall be led

through

through any water aboue fetlock deep, that no man ſhall caſt ſtraw, or ſhall piſſe vnder the hunting horſes bellie, thereby to prouoke them to piſſe alſo; and ſuch like helps which are onlie helps of aduantage; you ſhall alſo agree vpon your place of meeting, where the firſt traine ſhall begin according to the nature of your horſe, for if he be a horſe of great ſpeed, and loues ſmooth earth, then you ſhall haue your meeting amongſt ſome light ſandie fields, or neer ſome drie heaths or plaines, if he be a horſe of ſlownes & toughnes, then in deep clay fields, amongſt low grounds and rotten green ſwarth; if it be your horſes winde you preſume vpon, agree to haue your traines the longer: if it be his ſpeede let them be vpon the faire ground, but if it be his truth, then vpon the deepeſt and fouleſt you can attaine too; a good winde would climbe many hils, but a thicke winde would be kept vpon the leuell: obſerue by no meanes when you make a match to giue any oddes of waight, for at the latter end of the day, when horſes are weak, and but then comes to be felt, half a pound waight is an vnſpeakable aduantage: as for example, let a man when he hath run till he is wearie, but then caſt away his hat, & he ſhall find himſelfe infinitely refreſhed; but let him take vnto him more then he had, but the waight of a riding rodde, and he ſhall find himſelfe double oppreſſed: to match a gelding againſt a ſtone horſe, (eſpeciallie in the ſpring) is a great diſaduantage; for the horſe is in his prime and the gelding in his weaning. Laſtly obſerue to haue your rider honeſt, your trier skilfull, and your ſelfe patient, and be aſſured the horſe will doe his vtmoſt. And thus much for matching.

CHAP. 12

CHAP. 12.

The dyeting of a hunting horſe for a match.

VVHen you haue made your horſe cleane enough for ordinary hunting, and haue out of the ſtrong conceit of his goodneſſe made a match againſt ſome other horſe, and haue reſerued (as neceſſarily you muſt doe) at leaſt a month to bring him to the beſt perfection; you ſhall then put him into the choiceſt diet after this manner: firſt you ſhall looke well vpon your horſe, and conſider in what ſtate of body he is, as whether he be ſtrong of body, that is fat, luſty, full of courage, and in the pride of luſt: ſo that when you but lead him foorth, he will leape and gamboll about you; or whether he be inclining to weakneſſe: that is leane of body, by vſe of much hunting, coole in his diſpoſition and voide of alacrity and cheerfulnes, ſo that he had rather ſtand ſtill then either play or vſe other motion; in which ſtate of body if you find him, then the firſt weeke you ſhall doe nothing but feed him with Ordinary bread and oats, eſpeciallie with bread; till you haue brought him to ſpirit and cheerfulneſſe, exerciſing him ſo moderately, that all be you haue him abroad euerie day, or euerie other day at leaſt, yet it ſhall bee but onelie to keepe him in winde and breath) which muſt carefullie be kept from corruption) and not either to make him ſweat or once to feele the paine of labor, and in this feeding him you ſhall take great paines; as being continuallie euerie hower giuing him ſome thing, as either bread or well dryed Oates, and giuing it ſo by little and little,

little, that you may entice him to eate a great deale, and euer when you depart from him, to leaue meat in his manger, and when you come and find any left, to sweepe it away and giue him fresh, till you haue brought him to heart, and made him wanton, which done, you shall proceede to diet him as shall be presentlie declared. But if your horse be of sufficient hart & strength in the beginning, then you shall for the first weeke hunt him three daies, that is euery other day reasonablie soundlie, in any wise obseruing both in his daies of toile, and in his daies of rest, al the orders which are prescribed in the first week of your third fortnights keeping, mentioned in the ninth Chapter; onelie because it is to bee intended, that your horse is in a reasonable good estate of bodie alreadie, you shall giue him no scowring but box leaues & brimstone, or else either Hempseede or mustard-seede. The second weeke you shall feede him with the best bread, which in the seauenth chapter is cald bread for a match, & though you ride him on hunting euerie other day, yet you shall not gallop him much or make him sweate aboue twice that weeke, riding him more abroad to get him an appetite to his meat, then for the vse of anie labour; and this weeke you shall giue him few or no Oates, but most of the best bread, and for change of foode now and then of the ordinarie breade: you shall obserue this weeke to water him when you ride him abroad both at his going foorth and at his comming home, and when hee is in the stable, to haue a paile of water stāding by him cōtinuallie, that he may drinke at his pleasure: you shal this week abridge him verie little of his hay, but let him haue a litle bottle at due times before him, yet more for scowring his teeth then satisfying hunger. The third weeke

you ſhall hunt him very ſoundly three daies, that is euery other day, as thus: Munday, wedneſday, and ſaturday. Now for munday, being the firſt day of the third weeke, you ſhall onlie hunt him to giue him a warme ſweat and no more, which if hunting the Hare will not doe, then you ſhall ride him two traine ſents at the leaſt, and when you come home, keepe him warme, feed him hard with the beſt bread, and giue him no ſcowring but box leaues and brimſtone. All tueſday you ſhall let him take his reſt, and feed him with the beſt bread in ſuch ſort as is formerlie ſhewed you for his dayes of reſt, onelie you ſhall not let him goe foorth ſo much as to the water, but water him in the houſe. Vpon tueſday at night you ſhall apply him with bread, giuing him a little and a little at once, till it be twelue of the clock at night; and if he grow wearie of the beſt bread, then for change you ſhall giue ſome of the ordinarie bread, and if he grow weary of it alſo, then you ſhal giue him a few Oats. At twelue of the clock at night you ſhal take away his hay, & putting freſh meat in the manger, let him reſt till the ſpring of the day.

Now you muſt obſerue, that although I ioyne you thus almoſt to ceaſles labour; yet my meaning is not that you ſhould be ſo much with your horſe that you ſhould giue him no time for reſt or ſleep (which is a ſecond food vnto his bodie) for that were abſurd, but to take ſuch fitte & conuenient times, when either your horſes reſt is paſt or that you thinke he hath diſgeſted that which before you gaue him: and to that end you muſt haue ſome priuate peeping hole where you may euer ſee whether your horſe be vpon his feet or laid down, if he be laid downe, you ſhall not onlie your ſelfe refrain from comming vnto him, but alſo haue care no noiſe or tumult be neer the ſtable,

ſtable, and as ſoone as he riſes of his owne accord, you ſhall then goe to him, and feede him as is before preſcribed.

Vpon Wedneſday in the morning, as ſoone as you come to him, you ſhall giue him ſome bread, and then let the Groome dreſſe him, ſaddle him, and bridle him; then when you are readie to go forth, you ſhall take a pint of good *Ceres* Sacke, being brued with three ounces of Sugar candie, and giue it him to drinke, and then take his backe, and that day ride all chaſes, & at all horſes, trying the vttermoſt both of his ſtrength, winde and toughnes; which if you cannot ſufficientlie doe with ordinary hunting, then you ſhall in the latter end of the day breake foorth into a maine chaſe ouerthwart the fields, and making your friends to ride at you with freſh horſes; that day trie the vttermoſt of his power, both in ſpeede and otherwiſe, and make ſure that you ſpur him ſoundly, that you may know how truly he wil ſtick to the ſpurs, if need be; yet by the way vnderſtand me not thus liberally, that I meane I would haue you to ride your Horſe, till either you tire him, or make him forſake his galloppe, but onelie till you bring him to the height of his winde and ſtrength, that then you may know thus much he will do without the violence of anie extreame compulſion; and that when you ſpurre him, you feele him increaſe and not diminiſh in his labour: when you haue thus done, & feele that if you ſhould put him to more, then weakneſſe would follow: you ſhall take him vp, and throwing a cloath or two ouer him, you ſhall gentlie ride him vp & downe the field till he be coole, and ſo ride him home to the ſtable, where cloathing and ſtopping him cloſe and warme, you ſhall feed him with the beſt bread, and vſe

him in all things as you did in other former dayes after sore hunting, onely no scowring but box and brimstone. All thursday and friday, you shall let him rest and tumble himselfe in the stable; onelie dressing him twice euerie day at his vsuall houres, and feeding him with the best bread as thorowlie as you can possible: then on Saturday you shall ride him foorth again, but you shall not by any meanes galloppe him, but onelie ride him gently from hill to hill, that he may stretch foorth his legs, take the benefite of the fresh ayre, and recouer his stomacke, which continuallie feeding and lying in the house, will soone depriue him off, you shall not this third day let him abide so long in the field as you were formerly accustomed, but about two a clock at the furthest you shal bring him home, that hee may bee dresst, watered, and fedde in due time; all Sunday is a day of rest, and there is nothing to be done, but to feede him onelie; vpon munday in the morning, as soone as you haue fed him with bread, you shall then ride him foorth on hunting againe, but yet very slightlie, that is, you shall gallop him verie seldom, & but a little while together, only keep him abroad to get winde and a good stomacke. Tuesday you shall rest as before: and on Wednesday, you shall hunt him as sore as you did the Wednesday before; or if his strēgth wil abide it a little more, doing in euery thing as well in the field as in the stable, as you did the other Wednesdaie before, only this Wednesdaie, if you finde your horse to be of lustie and strong bodie, you shall after you come home, and haue cloathed your horse warme, giue him the scowring of Sacke, Sallet oyle and Sugar candie, and vse him as before hath beene prescribed in the ninth chapter, where this scowring is to be

giuen.

giuen. After this daies ſore hunting, and the giuing of this ſcowring, you ſhal hũt or ſtrain your horſe no more by anie meanes till the match day, but onelie ride him gentlie abroad after the Hounds, euerie day or euerie other day to keepe him in breath, and get him a ſtomacke, neuer offering to gallop him: but when you find him ſo wantonly diſpoſed, that euen of himſelf he deſires to ſcope and play, yet then you ſhall forbeare, and gallop him either not at all, or ſo little as is poſſible, your whole labor being imployed by feeding to keep him in ſtrength of bodie, and cleanneſſe of winde.

Now when you come within three dayes of the match day, then both the groomes and the Ryder, muſt bee verie watchfull & obſeruant to attend the horſe both night and day, for then you ſhall ſuffer him to eate as little hay as is poſſible, and indeed no more then ſhall ſerue to ſcowre his teeth, or to prepare his ſtomack the better by the change of foode: and what meat ſoeuer hee eateth, I would haue him either eat it out of your hand, or els to ſtand by and ſee him eate it, being euer readie whenſoeuer he riſes from his reſt to preſent him freſh meate, obſeruing when he refuſes to eat the beſt bread, to giue him ſome of the ordinary bread, and when he wil neither eat of the beſt, nor of the ordinary, then to giue him ſome oats, which oats I would haue to be wel kiln dried, then put into a ſack and beaten as you beat wheat for the pot, then winnowed againe, and well ſunnd, if he wil eat any meat at all he will eat one of theſe three: you ſhall alſo let him drinke verie oft, that he may thereby drinke but a little at once: for to drink much is not good, & to drink nothing at all is the worſt that may be: if he be a horſe of verie groſſe & foule feeding, ſo that he will eat his litter,

and such things as are about him ; then as soone as you haue filld his bellie with good meat, you shall put vpon his head a muzzle, either made of canuase or of leather, which being like a bag with two holes against his nostrils so that he may take his breath (which couering all his mouth, shall keep him that he cannot eat) but when you would haue him: yet this muzle I wold not haue you vse aboue a night or two before your match day; and if your horse be of tender and daintie stomacke, then I would neither haue you vse it at all, nor at all to take his hay from him. The day before his match, I would haue you to spend in trimming your Horse, as colling of his maine, eares, chaps, nostrils, & fetlocks, and vpper partes of all his foure legs, in seeing that his shooes bee good, strong, light, easilie and fast set on, also in annointing all his foure legges, and chafing them with soueraigne ointment and other medicines : all which because they most properly belong to the office of the Groome or keeper, you shall finde them in the fift booke largely declared, where I only write of that office. Now when the night before the match day is come, you shall lodge your selfe in the stable close by the horse ; and hauing candle-light burning, where your self may haue vse of it (but your horse not see it) you must be exceeding watchfull; and as before I said, feede your horse with whatsoeuer hee will best eate, as Bread of any good kinde, Oates Oate-meale, or Wheat-eares, and now and then giuing him out of your hand a locke or two of sweete Hay to scowre his teeth. To euerie handfull of meate he eates, you shall giue him a dish-full of water ; and thus you shall applie feeding of him till within two houres, or three at the most before the houre in which you are to go

forth

forth into the field,& then you shall bridle him vp, cause your groome to dresse him, & in euerie point make him fit for his leading forth. And when you are at the pinch to goe forth, you shall haue ready a pinte of good Sacke, well brued with Sugar-candie, and instantly giue it him with a horne; then throwing the cloathes ouer his saddle, and making them fast hansomly about him, you shal make the groome lead him gently in his hand to the appointed place of meeting, where when your aduersarie hath met you, and that the Tryers are readie, the traine led foorth, or if you hunt the Hare, the Houndes vncoupled, you shall then after you haue drawn vp your girths fast and firme (for as touching your bridle, stirrop leathers, and other implements about your horse, you must looke to their fitnesse before you come foorth of the stable) you shall then mount vpon your Horse, and so fall to your busines.

Chap. 13.

Of the riding of a Match, and of the aduauntages in Riding.

FOr asmuch as the well dyeting and cleane keeping of a horse, is not the only meanes either of winning or loosing of a match, but that there must also bee ioyned thereunto an especiall Art and dexteritie in Riding, whereby through the gouernment of the hand, the constant carriage of the mans body, and the temperate disposition of the minde, neither suddainly tempted to furie, nor too slowe in reuiuing a horse in the time of necessity; I thinke it not amisse in this chapter to speake something touching riding, and the aduantages therein.

And because the hunting of Train-sents is onelie proper to matches and no other exercise, and whosoeuer is able

able to ride a trayne ſent well, and like a Horſ-man, cannot but ride any chaſe elſe very ſufficiently, I will therefore in this place ſuppoſe the match which is to be ridden to bee onely, with traine ſents, and a wilde-gooſe chaſe: Wherefore firſt for the riding of a traine ſent, your beſt aduantage is the goodnes of your ſeate by ſitting firme and ſtrongly in your ſaddle, without either mooning, or jogging too and fro therein, but as if you were made of one peece with the horſe to beare your ſelfe entirely with him in all his motions, and rather with the forwardneſſe of your body to helpe him, then with any backward or contrary geſture to appeare to be borne againſt your will by your horſes fury; for both looſe motions, and contrary motions are troubleſome to a horſe: whence it comes, that for mine owne part I diſlike much the cuſtome of many of our Northerne ryders, who (if you note them in matches) will as they ride ſtand vp ſtraight vpon their ſtirrop-leathers, ſo that if you come behinde them, you may ſee day between their legs; being ſtrongly conceited, that ſuch raiſing vp of themſelues, doth eaſe the horſe and makes him the leſſe feele their burthen; but they are infinitely deceiued, for ſuch raiſing vp of themſelues, dooth both trouble and amaze the horſe, becauſe a man cannot ſtand vp ſtifly on his ſtirrops, but his leggs perforce muſt touch & cleaue to the Horſes ſides (as for the moſt part our match-hunters are) his ſpurs alſo muſt needes fridge vpon his ſides, which doth not onely trouble, but mooue affright in the horſe; and in true rule a Horſ-man ſhould neither let his ſpurre nor leg touch his horſe; but when he will either correct or helpe his horſe. Beſides, the danger in ſuch ſort of ryding is worſe then all the reſt, for when a man ſtandes

ſtandes vpon his ſtirrop leathers, and forſakes the holde of his knees, if the horſe ſhall but chance either to ſtumble, trippe, or ſtart in his running, the Ryder hauing forſaken the ſtrength of his ſeate, muſt of neceſſity fall ouer his horſes eares, and ſo either indanger his necke, or the horſes running ouer him.

Next to the conſtant carriage of your body, you muſt be ſure to carry your armes (chiefly from the elboe to the ſhoulder) cloſe to your body, and not (as I haue ſeene many of our match-hunters doe) let them flie looſely vp and downe as if you had no commaundment of them, or when you are either caſt behinde in a race, or when your horſes ſloath craues the vſe of your rod not to fetch your hand as hie as your head, to giue your blow, and ſo ride laſhing and laſhing, as if at euery ſtroake you would caſt your arme from your ſhoulder, but onely by making vſe of that part of your arme from your elboe to your wriſt, fetch your blow ſtifly and ſharply, and by that meanes one blow ſhall doe more good then twenty; for it is not the farre fetching of the blow, but the quicke deliuerie that breeds the paine of correction; neither the number of the ſtrokes, but the time and manner of ſtriking: for to lie beating a horſe continually (as I haue ſeene ſome doe a whole ſent thorow) doth euen dull and make the horſe careleſſe of the rod, when as vſing it ſeldome and ſharply, it will make him ſpring and ſtraine whileſt there is life in his body. And as you thus temper your hand for your rod, ſo you muſt alſo gouerne your leg and ſpurre, and not for euery ſleight fault or ſloath ſtrike him with your ſpurres, but firſt helpe him with the calues of your legs, and when toyle and wearines makes him careleſſe of them, then you ſhall adde the ſtroake of your ſpurres,

and

and when you ſtrike doe it ſoundly, that you may euerie time make the bloud follow, and in any caſe neuer ſpurr oft together in one place, for feare of making him dull vpon the ſpurres, nor by any meanes turne your heeles inward before the formoſt girth, to gripe him with your ſpurs of each ſide of the hart, which is the tendereſt of all places, till it be at the very pinch of a wager, and that the gaining or looſing of one yard of ground is the winning or looſing of the match, and then you ſhall doe it moſt ſtrongly, & with all thruſt your body forward with good violence. Next theſe, you ſhal obſerue to carry your bridle hand cloſe, hard and firme, ſo that by no meanes your horſe may haue liberty to runne at his vtmoſt ſpeed, nor yet to holde it ſo exceeding hard, that either you make your horſe with pinching writhe his head, & giue ſignes of torment, or for want of conuenient libertie, to make him in his gallop to ouer-reach and ſtrike one foot vpon another, the meane temper therefore is to be obſerued, yet foraſmuch as the ſpeed or ſlacknes of your aduerſaries riding, is an eſpeciall rule that you muſt follow (for if he run away faſt, you muſt not ride ſoftly) it is neceſſary that your own diſcretion be your beſt guide in this matter; only this take for a generall rule in your riding, that by any meanes when you runne or gallop, you oft draw your hands vp & downe both eaſing and ſtraining your bridle, to bring ſweetnes to your horſes mouth; & if you finde your horſe preſſes his head much vpon your hand, and will not open his chaps, which is a great ſigne either of ſtopping of winde, or wearines, then you ſhall not only draw vp your bridle hand, but laying your other hand alſo to the bridle reines, draw the ſnaffle to and fro in the horſes mouth, which wil both make him open his mouth

and

and giue him much comfort. Alſo you ſhal obſerue, that when you ride your horſe at the height of his ſpeede, if then when you ſpur him, you ſee him clap his eares cloſe to his neck, & whisk with his taile, you may then be aſſured that he is at the vttermoſt he is able to do, and if you continue further to torment him, you will either make him grow reſtife or elſe tyer ſuddainly; wherefore in any caſe whē you perceiue theſe ſignes, forbeare to torment him and giuing him all the eaſe that is poſſible let the forward motions of your owne body, and your cherefulnes vpon his back, ſerue in ſtead of a paire of ſpurs to quicken and reuiue him. After theſe obſeruations of your bodie, legs, & hands, you ſhall then note the ground vpō which you doe run, obſeruing to reſtraine your horſe the more vpō faire earth, becauſe out of his own nature he is more willing to runne faſt thereupon, and to giue him a little more libertie vpon deepe earth, as well becauſe hee may make his choice how to handle his feete thereupon for his beſt eaſe, as alſo becauſe it being more full of labor, a horſe is inclined the more to fauour himſelfe therupon, alſo you ſhal vp the hill hold your horſe ſomwhat ſtraite for feare of rūning him out of winde, & alſo doe the like down the hill, leſt too much haſt ſhould make him ſtumble & fall ouer. Next this you ſhal obſerue the māner of the horſes rūning which runs againſt you, and if you perceiue he be a horſe of a fiery nature, 'tis your beſt aduantage to ride directly behinde him, that making a noiſe, and as it were euen treading vpon his heeles, you may put him into ſuch an affright and madnes, that you may make him onelie runne faſter then his Rider would haue him; but alſo with fretting and chafing make him hurt himſelfe as much as if hee ranne at his vttermoſt power;

but

but if your aduerſary refuſe and will not let you ride iuſt behinde him, you ſhall then (eſpecially in the firſt traine when hee is moſt luſty) keepe him to ſuch a ſlow gallop, that with his owne madnes ſtriuing to goe faſter, you may make him ouer-reach, or hew one foote ouer another, which is an ordinary accident in matches, and at the latter end of the day, is felt to bee both painfull and hurtfull; you ſhall alſo obſerue your aduerſary well as he rides by you, and note when and how oft hee ſpurres, which although he thinke to do cloſely & couertly that you ſhall not ſee it, as by ſpurring vpon that ſide which is from you; yet if you marke the Horſe, hee will tell you truely, as either by wisking his taile about, coutching downe both his eares, or holding down one of his eares, and pricking forward the other, or by writhing his body, or kicking his head vp ſuddainly (all which are ſignes of ſpurring) and when you doe perceiue them, and feele that your owne horſe runnes freely without deſire of ſpurre, you ſhall then holde your ſpeede, and not eaſe it by any meanes, that thereby keeping your aduerſarie vpon the ſpurres, you may the ſooner make him wearie; you ſhall alſo note well the carriage of your aduerſaries bridle hand, and if you ſee him ride with a looſe raine, and his horſes noſe carrying ſtraight foorth, then 'tis moſt certaine hee is at his beſt ſpeed; but if you perceiue him ride with a looſe reyne, onely now and then he chockes him in the mouth with his bridle, then 'tis a flatt ſigne hee growes faint, and will preſentlie tyer, if you keepe on your ſpeede ſtill, and giue him no eaſe of breathing: You ſhall alſo obſerue vpon what earthes hee rides moſt vnnimblie, and vpon that earth when you run, you ſhall ride the faſteſt, that your aduerſarie being

compeld

compeld to follow you, may with ſtumbling and reeling either ouer-reach or hurt himſelfe.

Now when you haue ridden all your Traine-ſents according vnto your match, and that you are come to runne the Wilde-gooſe chaſe, you ſhall vnderſtand that in riding of it, there are diuers obſeruations verie neceſſarie, which cannot be vſed in any of the former ſents, as namely when you firſt ſtart the Wilde-gooſe chaſe, and haue gotten the leading, if then as you are running vnto ſuch groundes as ſhall be moſt for your aduantage; as vnto deepe and foule earthes, if your horſe be ſtrong and rough, or vnto faire skelpe groundes, if your horſe bee ſwift and of fierce mettall, that then if your aduerſarie haue the better winde, and vpon ſpeed come and offer to take the leading from you, you ſhall then ſuffer him to bring his horſe head within your horſes flanke, and then looke on which hand he commeth, as if hee come vpon your right hand, you ſhall then clappe your right legg cloſe to your horſes ſide, and drawing your bridle hand in a little ſtraighter, hurle your horſe roundly about vpon your left hand: this is cald a ſlippe, and with this ſlippe you ſhall make your aduerſaries horſe ouer-ſhoote you at leaſt three or foure-ſcore yardes, and as oft as he ſtriues thus, to take the leading from you; ſo oft giue him theſe ſlippes, till either you come into ſuch ground as is fit for your purpoſe, or elſe your aduerſarie leaue ſtriuing againſt you: It is exceeding good alſo in this caſe, when your aduerſarie ſtriues to take the leading from you; if then (hauing ground fit for your purpoſe, as either ditch, hedge, or ſuch like) you runne your horſe as though you would leape ouer the hedge or ditch, and obſerue that your aduerſarie runne very faſt,

and very neare you: then when you come euen to the brim of the ditch, you ſhall hurle your horſe ſuddainly vpon that ſide which is from your aduerſary, and ſo runne away, and neither leape the hedge nor ditch; by meanes whereof it is great oddes, but your aduerſarie comming faſt after you, and beeing vnprepared, can neither will nor chuſe but either leape the ditch, or runne into the ditch, then if hee doe leape it he muſt alſo leape it backe againe; which double toile and double ground running, will ſoone bring a horſe to faintnes.

Now if your Horſes are of ſuch equall ſpeedes, ſtrengths, and toughnes, that hauing runne and gallop'd whileſt they are able, yet their goodnes cannot be try'd, ſo that they are faine to trott, nay if they come to ſuch weakeneſſe that they are not able to trott, nay ſcarſlie to walke foote pace, as I haue knowne diuers, and ridden ſome of thoſe matches, then you ſhall be very carefull and it will aske you great toile and much Art to bring your horſe to new ſtrength, for firſt if you let him ſtand, then 'tis certaine he will fall downe: If you ſpurre him, you take away the remnant of the ſmall courage is left him, and make him yeeld ſo much ſooner then he would doe, if you thruſt him forward with your bodie, his bodie wanting ſtrength to anſwer yours, will not bee moued with the motion; and if you ſtrike him with your rod, you doe but make his diſpaire the greater: Wherefore in this caſe you haue no courſe but this; firſt you muſt ſit faſt, and as euen in your ſeate as is poſſible (for the leaſt ſwaruing now is the loſſe of the match) and onelie carrying your toes finely inward, you ſhall gentlie with the calues of your legges applie him vpon the ſides with reaſonable faſt motions; which carrying in

them

them neither torment nor trouble, will but onelie keepe him mooving, that mooving will keepe him warme, and that warmth will in the end reuert backe to his heart, and bring him new strength. For the reason of a horses tyring is nothing but this: when the inward heat is by the violence of extreame labour driuen into the outward parts, and there is nothing but coldnesse left to accompanie the heart, then of necessitie must follow faintnesse, then wearinesse, and lastlie flat tyring. There be diuers horsemen (of this manner of riding in this land) who haue better names and reputations for skill then euer I shall deserue, or am ambitious to desire, whom I my selfe haue noted in the depth of these extremities wilfully to loose their wagers, onlie for the wãt of the true vse of the hand & leg, spurring their horses whẽ they ought but to helpe them with the calues of their legs: & but touching them with the calues of their legs, when they should most surest haue spurrd them: & I remember once I saw a match ridden by two of the best reputed horsemen of this nation, & the one of them in my conscience hath no equall; who hauing ridden till they came to the walking, the hindermost beast neither to my sight nor any riders by, had any stroake of spur to be perceiued, yet before they had ended walking, & during the time of walking in stead of helping his beast with the calues of his leggs he spurred so vnreasonably, that one might haue washed their hãds vpon the sides of the beast, so that when the leader begã to get strength, & to be able to gallop, the other fell downe to the earth, where had the horsemen been of equall cunning, the hindmost had made a very iade of the formost. This digression I onlie make but for your better vnderstanding, that you may

know, that it is not sufficient to know how to rub & dresse a horse, how to diet and make him cleane, how to make your match, sit in your saddle, and spur him; but you must also know how to spurre, when to spurre, how to helpe, when to helpe, and all the other rules of a good horsman, or els in your wagers to haue great disaduantage.

As soone as your match is ridden and tryed out, if you find there bee strength in your horse, you may light from his backe, & throwing his cloathes ouer the saddle, ride him gentlie home, but if he be so weake runne that you feele him faint, you shall light from his backe; and if you can get as I would not haue a Horseman without it, three or foure spoonfulls of Doctor *Stevens* water, and poure it into him, then rubbing him, and chafing him a little, cast his cloathes ouer him, and so ride him softlie home.

After hee is come into the Stable, where he must haue litter vp to the belly, you shall first make the Groomes rubbe him as drie as may be, then with a little Sacke heated hot in a porringer, you shall bathe his backe where the Saddle stood, which will keepe him from warbles; then you shall bathe his sides where hee hath been spurred with pisse and salt, then annoynt the for-places with Turpentine and powder of Ieat mingled together, then cloath him vp as warme as may bee, and after hee hath stood an houre or more, the first meate you giue him would bee two or thee handfuls of Wheat-eares corne and all, then giue him a warme mash, and a bottle of hay, then annoynt all his foure legs with Train-oyle warm'd, and so let him stand till night, and then feede him well with Bread and so rest till the next morning.

Chap. 14.

The Tryers office, and the aduauntages they must obserue.

THese *Tryers* are certaine indifferent Gentlemen, choſen by both the parties that make the match, who are to ſee that there be faire play, and that the Articles be fully performed on both parties, each doing the beſt hee can for the aduauntage of the Horſe for the which he is choſen. And theſe *Tryers* ſhould be Gentlemen that are well experienced in Hunting matches, and are both good Horſ-men, good Hunt-men, and light burthens, for they ought to ride by the match-horſes all the day long, to direct and controle the Ryders, if at any time they ride contrary to the Articles, to which end they are to haue diuers freſh Horſes prouided them, that when one failes they may take another.

The firſt thing the *Tryers* ſhall doe when they come into the field, ſhall bee to haue the Articles read aſmuch as concernes the Ryding of the match onely, and to conceiue them ſo well in their mindes, that when they ſee any thing done to the contrary, they may controle or elſe ſtay the Horſes from ryding, till the errour bee either amended, or elſe ſatisfied: then after lottes haue beene caſt which ſide ſhall haue the leading of the firſt Traine, that *Tryer* to whoſe lot it falles, after he hath conferred with the Ryder, and knowes the nature and diſpoſition of his horſe, hee ſhall appoint ſome diſcrete Horſman, that is able to follow his directions to leade out

the traine: he ſhall tell him vpon what earth he ſhall leade it, and how long, or how ſhort hee ſhall make it, according to the Articles. Then after the match-Horſes are ſtarted, the *Tryers* ſhall ryde by them, or behinde them, ſo it bee not within a horſes length, for feare of treading vpon their heeles (which were an in-excuſable errour in a *Tryer*) and if either of the match-horſes ſhall latch or loyter behinde, and not ride ſo neare as hee ought by the Articles, The *Tryer* of the contrarie part ſhall firſt commaund him to ride nearer, which if immediately he doe not, then the *Tryer* ſhall ride to him, and giue the match-horſe a iert with his rodde: if that preuaile not, he ſhall not leaue ierting the Horſe till he haue brought him within the compaſſe of his lawe, and then hee may beate him no more. If it happen that the match-horſe which leades the way, vpon the occaſion of any turne which the traine hath made, doe turne vpon either hand, and then the Horſe, which followes, being a good diſtance behinde, doe for his aduauntage ſeeke to croſſe and thwart ouer to the formoſt horſe (which is moſt foule riding) and ſo to gaine ground: The *Tryer* of the contrary part ſhall ride vp to him, and both commaund him to ride faire, and with his Horſe ſhoulder him vp whether he will or no, till hee come to the place where the firſt Horſe turned, againſt which if the Rider ſtriue, it is lawfull for the *Tryer* to take his Horſe by the head, and make him ride his true ground, for many of thoſe aduantages in a dayes Hunting will amount to more ground, then will ſuffice for the tryall of the match.

As ſoone as the traine is ended, then the Riders are to light from the match-horſes; for there is commonly allowed them betweene euery traine, halfe an houre to rub

rub and trim their Horſes, and to drie away the ſweate. During which time, the ſecond traine is in making; now it is the *Tryers* office whilſt the horſes are in rubbing, that each of them looke not to the Horſe of whoſe ſide hee is choſen, but to the Horſe againſt whom he is choſen, and to looke that the groom which rubs him vſe no deceit in rubbing, as to haue his hands annointed with any comfortable oyles or confections; and then taking occaſion to pull out his horſes tongue to ſtroke or wipe it, which is very foule play, & therfore held vnlawful for any man, groome, or other, to put his hand in his horſes mouth, but onely to rub him with woollen and linnen cloathes till he be drie. The *Tryers* ſhal not ſuffer the match horſes to be rubbed longer then their due time; but aſſoone as the houre is come, to command the Riders to mount, which if either of them refuſe, it is lawfull for the other which is ready, to ride away and leaue him: and beeing gone from him the diſtance which commonly is twelue ſcore, or twenty ſcore, the match is wonne and loſt. If in the traines there be any leapes, the *Tryers* ſhall ſee that if one horſe follow another, that then the hindmoſt horſe leape in the ſame place where the formoſt did leape, or elſe it is lawfull to bring him backe againe; if they ride cheek by cheeke, then they ſhall leape one within a horſe length of another. The *Tryers* ſhall preciſely note the māner of that horſes riding againſt whom he is choſen, and according to the aduantages, which hee perceiues, ſo ſhall hee inſtruct the Rider for whoſe ſide he is choſen, as when to ride ſoftly, when faſt, when to leade, and when to follow. Hee ſhall alſo as he rides marke which groundes are beſt for the Horſe, whoſe part hee takes, and which are the worſt for the Horſe which he is

againſt, and accordinglie, ſo he ſhall appoint the making of the traines. If anie traine ſhall be made longer then the agreement of the Articles, either of the *Tryers* finding of the fault, and beeing ſure it is a fault, it is lawfull for him to ſtay the horſe of whoſe ſide he is, and not to ſuffer him to ride further in that traine; & if the other Horſe will ride forward ſtill, hee may doe it vpon his owne hazard. When all the traines are ended, and that the Wild-gooſe chaſe is begun, the *Tryers* then ſhal with all faithfulneſſe and care keepe the horſes as neer as they can together, and if either of them ſhall fall ſhort one of the other, by no meanes to ſpare whipping of the hindmoſt till either they bring him vp to the formoſt, or elſe that the formoſt getting his law of the hindmoſt, do win the wager; and when the *Tryers* ſhall behold the match brought to this exigent, then he which is choſen for the formoſt horſe, ſhall if need require, ride to the formoſt horſe, and help his rider to whip him on till the wager be wonne.

The *Tryers* ſhall alſo during the wilde gooſe chaſe, take great care that no by ſtander (as it is a common cuſtome) gallop his horſe before the match horſes, ſeeming as though either he rid vpō other buſines, or elſe that his Horſe runnes away with him, when as in truth he doth it to lead or direct one of the match horſes, which haning ſtrength enough to runne, yet will refuſe to runne except he ſee ſome other horſe lead him the waie. The *Triers* ſhal alſo at the latter end of the day, when horſes are almoſt ſpent, take care that the throng of ſuch as ride by, do not preſſe in vpon the horſes, but that they may haue both libertie of way and aire enough: for the breath of other horſes is verie noiſome to a horſe, when he grows weary.

The

The last and principall note of all other which the *Tryers* shall take, is, when he comes first into the field, to marke how the horse is girt, which is of the contrarie part, and by some speciall markes or obseruations about the tabs to know how his garths do hold of one straightnes, or how they alter; for if you find after a traine or two that they growe slacker and are anie thing at all more drawne vp, it is an euill signe, but if after a traine or two more, they slacke againe the second time, or whensoeuer they slack the second time, be most certainlie assured that the horse is faint, neither is he able to indure much riding after.

This rule of all other is most certaine, and doth without deceit declare a horses inward inclination, where on the contrarie part, as long as a horse keepes his body, and holds his garthes fast and straight, so long he is euer in good strength, lust and courage. Manie other obseruations there be, which for as much as they are for the most part gouerned by the Articles and agreements of the parties which are the match makers, I thinke it not fit to trouble you with them at this time, hoping that these alreadie declared, will be sufficient to prepare you for anie match whatsoeuer.

CHAP. 15.

The office of the Groome, and helps in rubbing of hunting horses.

I Doe not here intend to speake generallie of the office of the Groom of the Stable, because the fift booke hath it at large described, but onelie of that little

part of his office, which he is to exercise in the field when a horse doth hunt any match for a wager, and that is, whereas at the end of euerie traine sent, the rider is to light from his horse, and the Groome is to rub him and drie the sweat from his bodie, I would haue euerie groome know that he must prouide halfe a dozen seuerall cloathes, euerie one at least a yard in compasse; three being of canuas and three of good thicke cotten, al these cloathes he must a day or two before the match steepe in pisse and salt-peeter boild together, and then hang them vp in the aire, that they may be drie against the match day, then would I haue him haue two other cloathes, one of wollen the other of canuase, which hauing laine a day or two steeped in the same pisse and salt-peeter, hee shall carrie wet to the field, and as soone as the traine is finished, and the rider dismounted, the grooms shall first with their drie cloathes rub away all the sweat from the horses head and face, and also from his neck, bodie, buttockes, flankes, fore booths, bellie, cods, and euerie other part: and whilst one is busied about these vpper parts, another Groom must be rubbing his legges drie, and as soon as he hath got them drie, he shall then take his wet cloathes, and with them neuer leaue rubbing his legges, and ioynts, till the rider be readie to take his backe againe, and beleeue it the benefit you shall find thus doing is more then you will well credite. Thus shall you doe at the end of euerie traine, and then fear not either faintnes or vnnimbleneſse in his ioynts, which of all other parts of a horses bodie doe sooneſt faile him. And thus much for this part of the Groomes office, and the other knowledges appertaining to hunting horses.

The end of the third booke.



CAVALARICE,
Or
The Tracconer,

Contayning the Art and Secrets which belong to Ambling Horses, and how that pace is to be taught to any Horse whatsoeuer.

The Fourth Booke.

Newly corrected and augmented.

By Geruase Markham.

LONDON

Printed by *Edw: Allde* for *Edward White*, and are to be sold at his shop neere the little north doore of Saint Paules Church at the signe of the Gun. 1617.









To the Right Honorable and most Noble and mighty Lord, THOMAS HOWARD, Earle of *Arundell* and *Surrey*.

THere is nothing (most Noble and mighty Lord) which hath more incyted me to this weary labour (which I hope I haue to good purpose effected) then the grace which I haue noted both your Noble selfe and other Princes of your ranke, liberally bestow vpon the Art of Horse manship both by your own practise and the incouragement of others; which doth not onely assure me that no Peace shall make the glory of Warre neglected, but doth also make me hope to liue to see in this Nation as famous a nurserie of Horse-men and Horses, as euer hath beene boasted in Italy *or* Naples, *and though my boldnesse in daring to present my ruder skill to your honorable iudgement, may iustly be challenged to haue no garments but a naked boldnesse, yet the loue I am bound to beare to that most honorable house (into which you haue now most happily planted your selfe) I hope will be both my defence and protection, by which I knowe you will both take delight to pardon, and my selfe bee proud to esteeme my selfe your seruant.*

GERVASE MARKHAM.

To all those which loue their ease in Trauelling.

AMongst all the partes or members into which the Art of Horſ-manſhip is deuided, there is none ſo generally followed, or hath got more profeſſors to defend it then this Arte of Ambling, and yet is there no part of Horſe-manſhip more miſgouerned or vildely handled by vnskilfull workemen, through whome there is not onely multitudes of Horſes ſpoyled and made inſeruiceable, but alſo a great company of skilfull Horſ-men which know the true vſe of Art, obſcur'd and kept vnder by the vaine boaſtes of moſt ignorant impoſtors, which to preuent and that euen common ſence may knowe how to make the beſt election, I haue in this Treatiſe following, ſet downe the rules both of true Art and falſe practiſe, reconciling them ſo together with the ſtrength of my beſt reaſons, that I doubt not but they will giue to any peaceable minde a full ſatisfaction, in which if any man finde profite, it is the thing I onely wiſh them, and if they vouchſafe me thankes, it is enough for my labour. And ſo wiſhing you all the eaſe that can be coupled to labour, I leaue you to your owne thoughts of me and of my workes.

Farewell.

G. M.

CAVALARICE.

The fourth Booke.

CHAP. I.

Of Ambling in generall, and of the vses and commodities thereof.

I Did some few yeares agone, partly to giue the world a little taste of that knowledge, which many good Horse-men had neglected in their writinges, and partly to shew a long absent friend the remembrance of my loue, writ a little sleight Treatise touching the making of Horses to amble, which because I haue found by many of my worthie friendes gentlie accepted, albe the breuitie and obscuritie might well haue beene controled; I thought it not amisse in this booke to demonstrate the whole Art in as large and ample caracters as is fit for the vnderstanding both of the better or more duller spirit: wherefore

first

firſt to ſpeake of Ambling in generall, it is that ſmooth and eaſie pace which the labour and induſtrie of an ingenious braine hath found out to relieue the aged, ſicke, impotent and diſeaſed perſons, to make women vndertake iorneying, and ſo by their community to grace ſocietie; to make great men by the eaſe of trauell more willing to thruſt themſelues into the offices of the common-wealth, and to doe the poore both reliefe and ſeruice: it makes him whome neceſſity or (as the Prouerbe is) whom the deuill driues, not to be vext with two torments, a troubled minde and a tormented body: to conclude, ambling was found out for the generall eaſe of the whole world, as long as there is either pleaſure, comerce or trade amongſt people.

Now for the manner of the motion, and the difference betwixt it and trotting, it cannot bee deſcribed more plainely then I haue ſet downe in my former treatiſe, which is, that it is the taking vp of both the legs together vpon one ſide, and ſo carrying them ſmoothly along, to ſet them downe vpon the ground euen together, and in that motion he muſt lift and winde vp his fore-foot ſomwhat hie from the ground, but his hinder foote hee muſt no more but take from the ground, and as it were ſweep it cloſe by the earth. Now by taking vp of both his legs together vpon one ſide, I meane hee muſt take vp his right fore-foote, and his right hinder foote, For as in the contrary pace when a horſe trots, hee takes vp his feete as the *Italian* ſaies *Trauatto* which is croſſe wiſe, as the left hinder-foot, and the right fore-foot, or the left fore-foot, and the right hinder-foot; and in that motion muſt lift vp his hinder-foot to the full height of his fore foote, preſenting a kinde of gallantrie or vaulting pride in his pace,

pace, ſo this ambling motion in his ſmooth ſtealing away, and as it were with a ſoft and tender touching of the ground, carryes his burthē away gently without ſhaking, For as if you preciſely marke a Horſe when hee trots vnder a man, you ſhall ſee that the taking vp of his legges croſſe wiſe, doth likewiſe aduance the mans body croſſe wiſe, as thus : The Horſe lifting from the ground his right fore-foote, and his left hinder-foote, raiſeth with them the mans right thigh and his left buttocke, and then ſetting them downe together, giues as it were a kinde of iumpe to the mans whole body, and the higher ſuch a horſe takes vp his hinder foote, the harder is his pace, for indeed it is onely the taking vp of the hinder foote, which makes the pace hard or eaſie; whence it comes that trotting horſes which take their hinder feete gently, and but a little way from the ground, and ſo ſet them downe tenderly, are cald eaſie trotting horſes : So ambling horſes taking vp both their legges, vp together of one ſide, as the right fore-foote, and the right hinder foote, doe in their motion not lift vp but carry as it were in a direct line, the mans right thigh, and his right buttocke, and ſo ſetting down his feete gently, giue the man neither iump nor other diſtemper, but folowing on with his left feet likewiſe, carries the mans whole body away in an eeuen ſmoothnes, Now when a horſe either for want of true teaching, or by ſome other natural cuſtome, takes vp his hinder feete in his amble, either higher then he ſhould doe, or ſets them down harder then he ſhould doe, which you ſhall know by the wauing or ſhaking of the nether part of his taile (for when a horſe goes ſmooth and right, his taile will hang ſtraight and comely) then ſuch horſes are ſaid to roule in their pace, to be rough

and

and vn-easie amblers. Now for the first originall or beginning of ambling, *Plinie* writes it came from that part of the coast of *Spaine*, which wee call *Galicia*, where (saith he) Horses doe amble naturally, and that other men and other Nations from the immitation of them (finding the commoditie of such ease in long and teadious iournies) began the practise of compelling Horses to amble with a certaine deuise made of cordes and lines fettred and bound about horses feet: from whence I gather this, that doubtles the Tramell of which I am to speake more largely hereafter, was the first and most auncientest inuention that euer was found out for the making of horses to amble, and what other deuises or witty secondings haue since those times issued frō mens braines or labors, to bring this worke to passe by any other method, I verily imagine to haue their beginnings from this, as the very fountaine from whence other men draw their riuers.

Now that the horses of *Galicia* doe naturally amble, or that any other horse whatsoeuer doth naturally amble, as in my former small treatise, so in this I differ in the opinion, and thinke as therein I manifest, that where Foales amble, there is either some imperfection of strength, or some casuall mischance, which did alter the first determination of nature: For it is most certaine, that what Horse soeuer doth amble of himselfe without either instruction or compulsion, hath either weakenes in his body, or imperfection in his spirit; so that wanting either abilitie to raise his body aloft forciblie, or spirit to thrust out his natural pride gallantly, he is forcd to bring his feete to this smooth and humble passage.

Now of ambles there bee two sorts, a thorow amble, and a broken amble, or a certaine amble, and incerraine amble,

amble, the thorow or certaine amble is that which is contained in thorow and certaine ſtrides, where the horſe paſſes his feete forth at the length ſmoothly, certainely, and with deliberation in ſhort ſpace, and with few paces paſſing ouer a good quantitie of ground, carrying his burthen iuſt, euen, and without trouble; and this amble is that which appertaines both to thoſe horſes which we call naturall amblers, and to thoſe horſes which being of coole and temperate diſpoſitions, are by arte and induſtrie brought to bee more perfect in ambling, then thoſe which we ſay haue it by nature.

The broken or incertaine amble, is that which is contained within the compaſſe of the ſelfe ſame motion that the certaine amble is; onely it is done in ſhort, quicke, and buſie ſtrides, a horſe taking vp his feet both of one ſide ſo thicke and rouddly together, that a mans eye cannot ſay, that his feete are downe, before they bee vp againe, with many ſteppes, and in a long time going but a little way, which of ſome Horſemen is called a Traine, or Racke, and it is neuer to be ſeene either in Foales, vnridden Horſes, or Horſes that are of any cooleneſſe or ſobrietie in iourneying: but for the moſt part it is euer in hot frantick ſmall Naggs, which trotting exceeding well, are compelled to amble by ſome diſorderly compulſion. It many times comes to Horſes by ouer-riding them; ſo that through wearineſſe, not being able to aduance their bodies ſo luſtily as in their beſt ſtrength, they come to this ſhufling and broken incertaine pace, which is neither amble nor trot, but a mixture of both, as taking his time keeping from trotting; and his motion of legges from ambling, and ſo compound this which is called a Traine or Racking.

Now for the horſe of *Galicia*, that they are more ſubiect to this pace of ambling then any other horſes bred in *Spaine*, I am eaſily induced to beleeue it, becauſe it being the coldeſt, and moſt barraineſt part of that continent, muſt by good conſequence bring the weakeſt and woorſt Horſes, ſo that wanting both the heat of the Sunne, and the nouriſhing benefits which other races haue, out of their want of ſtrength they fall to the pace of ambling: and this beſides we know by experience, that euen the beſt bred *Iennets* in all *Spaine* haue thoſe weakneſſes of ioynts and members, that a man ſhall not ſee one amongſt ten, but is inclined either to a traine or amble. And yet for mine own part, ſhould I haue written of the originall of ambling, I ſhould as ſoone haue taken this Empire of Great *Britaine* for an example, as any part of *Spaine* or *Galicia*, holding, that ſure it is with vs as ancient as the vſe of trauell, or the firſt knowledge of the firſt Engliſh Gelding, which Geldings wee finde more naturally addicted to ambling then any ſtonde Horſe whatſoeuer, which I take to proceede either from the impediment of their ſores when they are firſt gelt, or elſe from the coolneſſe of their natures when thoſe inſtruments of heate and luſt are taken from them.

Now for the vſe of this pace, it is onely for long iournies, where either our neceſſarie buſineſſe, or ſeruice to the State, or any other particular affaire calles vs foorth into the world, and makes vs change our domeſticall quiet, for much labour and toyle in trauell.

Now for the commoditie thereof, it is the eaſe of our bodies, preſeruing vs from aches, conuulſions, cholicks, gallings, and ſuch like torments: it is a maintai-

ner

ner of our healths, by helping vs to vſe the beſt exerciſe with ſufferance and moderation; it is the beſt preſeruer of our eſtates in this world making vs follow our owne affayres with our owne diligence, and not like men impriſoned, to truſt to halfe-ſpeaking Soliciters. To conclude, take away the ambling Horſe, and take away the olde man, the rich man, the weake man; nay, generally all mens trauels: for Coaches are but for Streets, and Carts can hardly paſſe in Winter. And thus much for the generalitie of ambling, and the profit.

CHAP. 2.

Why Foales amble from their Dammes, and how to make them amble if they doe not.

THE reaſons why a Foale may amble, when it ſucks vpon the Damme, or that the firſt pace which it is ſeene to tread may bee an amble, are many and diuers, beſides thoſe which I haue repeated in my ſmall Treatiſe, as namely, weakeneſſes ſpringing from the firſt generation, or conception; or elſe miſchances in foaling: as when a Foale falles in hollow ground, vneuen ditches, or ſuch like vilde places, where the Foale ſtriuing to get vpon the feete, but cannot, doth beate it ſelfe into ſuch weakneſſe, that when it is got vppon the feete, and ſhould goe, it is not able to trott, but euen through extreame faintneſſe ſhiftes his feete into the pace of ambling. Beſides theſe, (as I ſayde) there are other more ſtrong cauſes of Foales ambling, as namely, if a Foale bee foaled

with weake hoofes, ſo that when it comes to ſtand vpon the feete, the cronets of the hoofes do ſinke inward and are painefull to the Foales going. In this caſe the griefe of the hoofes keepe the Foale that it cannot trot, but is forc'd for eaſe ſake to alter the naturall pace, and to amble. This weakneſſe of the hoofes you may plainly diſcerne, both by the faſhion of the hoofe, which will bee flatte and thinne, and alſo by the cronet of the hoofe, which will not bee ſwelling outward as it ſhould bee, but flat and ſunke inward, without any ſemblance: and theſe Horſes for the moſt part doe ſeldome liue long, nor haue many good conditions: another reaſon there is for the ambling of foales, and that is, if any man ſhall come to the Mare when ſhee hath new foaled, and ſcarring the Mare, make the foale ſtart vpon it feete before it bee lickt ouer, or that the ſoles of the hoofes are hardned: if this happen, it is moſt certaine that the foale will not trot, but preſently falles to amble: from theſe and ſuch like occaſions hath ſprung the opinion that foales naturally doe amble, and owners not ſeeing them haue any other paces, ſtrongly imagine that ambling is the childe of nature, when indeede it is the baſtard, begot by miſchance and weakneſſe.

But if it bee ſo, that for as much as thoſe amblers which thus doe amble euen from the wombe of their Dammes, are euer the perfitteſt, ſwifteſt, and moſt certaineſt in their pace, as hardly knowing, at leaſt neuer vſing any other motion. If it be your deſire to haue your foales to amble thus vnder their Dammes, albe for mine owne part I haue little fancie or liking therein, yet it is to bee done three ſeuerall waies: the firſt

and

and beſt is, if you take a Foale when it is two or three dayes olde, and that you ſee it trotteth perfectly, and with a fine ſharpe Butteris or pairing knife, pare the hoofe of the Foale ſo thinne as may be, ſo that it cannot treade vpon the ground, but with much ſoreneſſe, and then put it to the Dam againe, and you ſhall ſee it preſently through the tenderneſſe of the feete, refuſe to trot, and inſtantly ſtrike into an amble. And if after the hardning of the hoofes, you finde that out of ſpirit and courage it fall to trot againe, then you ſhall pare the hoofes againe, and ſo in ſhort time you ſhall ſee it will vtterly forget trotting. The ſecond way, but ſomewhat worſe to make a Foale amble, is to take ſoft linnen ragges, and therewithall to garter vp the Foales hinder legges, three fingers aboue the cambrell, but not to doe it very ſtraight, and ſo to let it run a weeke or ten daies, in which ſpace it is moſt certaine the Foale will fall to a readie amble; which as ſoone as hee doth, you ſhall immediately vngarter his legges: for the vſe of the garters is but onely to bring him to the alteration of his pace. The third way, and worſt way, is to watch the Mare when ſhee is in foaling, as ſoone as ſhe hath lickt it, and done her office, you ſhall goe vnto the Foale, and before it be able to ariſe from the ground, you ſhall with your hands raiſe vp the hinder parts from the ground, making it ſtand vpon the hinder feete, and kneele vpon the fore knees, and ſo ſtaying it by the hinder loynes, compell it to riſe vp before, as for the moſt part Oxen and Kine doe: and if a man will put any truſt in antiquitie, this manner of rayſing a Foale firſt from the ground will make it amble; and for mine owne part, though I haue been too ſcripulous to approue it, yet ſuch ſtrong

reasons to gouerne me, that I doe beleeue it is most possible, and as likely as either of the former which I haue experienced.

Now although these three seuerall practises wil bring to effect the thing you looke for, yet each of them hath their seuerall euils, and doe many times create those mischiefes which doe exceede and blemish the vertues for which they were first put into vse, except there bee such Arte, Iudgement, and discretion mixt with the practise, as may both warrant and defend it from following euils: as first, the paring of a Foales hoofes so young, and bringing him to such a tendernesse of treading, makes him euer after whilst he is a horse, soft footed; and when he comes to tread vpon stonie or hard ground, you shall see him snapper, and many times tread ye to false, onely out of the tickle and quicke feeling of his feete, besides, the paring a hoofe so young makes it grow thicke and flat, so that when the Foale comes to be a horse, hee will neither beare his shooes so well as otherwise hee would haue done, but also bee much more apt to heat, surbate, or founder with sleight trauell.

Now for the second practise, which is the gartering vp of his hinder legs, that will make a foale haue thicke and foule cambrels, insomuch that his ioynts will appeare gowtie and vnsuteable, especially if you garter any thing too strait, it is somewhat dangerous for the breeding of bloud spauens in Foales, because the bloud being stopt so many daies together within the veanes, doth many times corrupt & take part with other grosse humors, which are the causes of that sorance. Lastly, (and which is the worst fault of all) the ambling pace which is got by this experience is nothing comely to the

the eye, (albe it often falls out to bee moſt eaſie) for the gathering of the foales legges makes it cramble with the hinder parts, and goe both crookedly and ilfauouredly.

Now for the laſt practiſe, which is the rayſing vp of a Foale firſt behinde when it is new falne, beſides that, it is not decent to handle or meddle with ſuch young creatures, till their Dams haue diſcharged their kindneſſes, and that they haue taken naturall and orderly ſtifning: It is with Horſemen held both vnwholſome and dangerous to the life of the Foale; for it is moſt certaine, that the compulſion which is therein vſed, brings the foale to a moſt extraordinarie weakneſſe and faintneſſe, from whence, and from no other ſecret, proceeds the alteration of the pace: wherefore ſince there are thus many dangers in theſe two earely tryalls; and that the working of theſe ſingle benefits in foales, may loſe all the future hopes and ſeruices which a man expects when they come to bee horſes; I would for mine owne part wiſh all Gentlemen, how much ſoeuer they are naturally inclined to their owne eaſe, to omit and let paſſe this practiſing opon foales (except it bee at ſome ſpeciall time, when, for the bettering of their knowledges, they will try the examples of their reading) and onely to put in vſe thoſe practiſes which are fit for the horſes of elder age, as foure, fiue, ſixe, or ſeauen, which hauing both ſtrength and power to performe, and abilitie of bodie and member to endure the vttermoſt which Art can inuent to impoſe vpon them, trace more worthy of your labour, and more neere to your preſent ſeruice: and of them I purpoſe wholly to intreat hereafter.

CHAP. 3.

How to teach a Horſe to amble by the helpe of a new plowde field, and the faults therein.

THere both haue beene and are many queſtions raiſed (not by horſemen, for they know the truth of Arte, but by ſuch as beare the falſe ſhapes of horſemen, as amblers, common horſe breakers, (alike in qualitie to Mountebanks and Horſe coſſers) touching the making of horſes to amble, ſome inuaying againſt one practiſe, ſome againſt another, neuer contented with any one certainty, but with that which either they haue moſt vſed, or is laſt in learning, ſo that to reconcile them, and bring them to an vnirie, both in art and opinion, were a labour teadious and infinite, neither will I ſpend mine houres ſo vnprofitably: yet it is moſt certain, there is but one truth, and one true way to hit the marke we ſhoote at, which becauſe my knowledge ſhall neither be a judgement nor Oracle, I will not ſo much arrogate to ſay, this is it; but vnfold at large all the ſeuerall practiſes which either my ſelfe haue experienced, or elſe noted in other mens labours, together with ſuch errors as purſue and follow euery ſuch method, ſo that euery ripe and induſtrious braine, may by comparing the fruits and faults together, eaſilie iudge which practiſe deſerues the beſt entertainment, and is moſt worthy a popular imitation; wherefore to begin with the manner of making horſes to amble, the firſt way that I found, which carryed in it any ſubſtantiall ground of reaſon,

was

was to make a horſe amble with the helpe of a new deepe plowd field, where a horſes legges might ſinke deepe into the earth, and make his labour painfull: and it is to be done in this ſort: You ſhall firſt put into your horſes mouth (if it bee tender and good) a Snaffle, very round, ſmoothe, and full, of a ſize ſomewhat bigger then an ordinarie trauelling ſnaffle, and with that ride your horſe into ſome deepe new plowd field; all the way as you ride into the field, not ſuffering your horſe to trot, but rather to goe foot-pace. Adioyning to this field you ſhall haue, either ſome faire Hie-way, or elſe ſome plaine greene Meare; and then being vpon the Hie-way, you ſhall plucke vp your bridle with both your hands, ſo that your Snaffle may not reſt vpon his chap, but vpon the weekes of his mouth, and then ſpurring him gently forward, ſee if he will alter his pace, which if hee will not (as it is moſt likely) you ſhall then thruſt him vpon the deepe Lands, and there you ſhall toyle him vp and downe for a quarter of an houre, in as ſwift a foot pace as you can make him goe, ſuffering him not by any meanes to trot, although hee be neuer ſo haſtie, nor labouring much to make him amble, though you ſhould finde him willingly inclyned thereunto, but onely keeping him to the height of his foot pace, and bearing your bridle reine aloft, as was before told you. After you haue thus toyled him a pretty while vpon the lands, you ſhal then bring him to the hie-way againe, and then approue to make him amble by holding vp your bridle hand, carrying the reynes thereof ſtraight, and by helping him with the calues of your legges, one after another, and ſomtimes with your ſpurres one after another alſo: as thus; If when he begins to breake and alter his

pace,

pace, hee giue you now and then a little iumpe vpon your right buttocke as hee goes, then you may knowe that he treades falſe with his right hinder legge, ſo that then you ſhall giue him either the calue of your right legge or your right ſpurre hard to his ſide; but if hee doe the like with his left hinder foote, then you ſhall giue him the helpe and correction vpon the left ſide: for you muſt knowe that in Ambling it is euer the hinder foote, and not the fore-foote which treadeth falſe, and if you doe but preciſely marke of which of your buttockes, or of which ſide of your body you feele the moſt ſhaking or jogging, you ſhall eaſilie perceiue which foote treades amiſſe, and therefore it is neceſſarie that before you take vpon you, to teach Horſes to amble, you be ſo well experienc'd in the knowledge and feeling of the pace, that you may at the firſt apprehend the leaſt ſtep that your Horſe can treade amiſſe. After you haue thus the ſecond time approu'd your horſe vpon the hie-way, if yet notwithſtanding hee will not fall to any Amble, you ſhall then labour him againe vpon the deepe landes, in the ſame manner as you did before, onely in a ſwift foote-pace, and thus continue from the landes to the hie-way, and from the hie-way to the landes, without ceaſing, or giuing any reſt till what through his wearineſſe, and what through the reſtraint and helpe of your hand, hee in the end breake his pace, and beginne to ſtrike an amble, which as ſoone as hee dooth, you ſhall cheriſh him therein, and ſo faire and ſoftly ride him home, giue him ſome prouender, and let him reſt three or foure houres: then take him foorth againe, and if you finde him any thing vntoward, or forgetfull of what hee laſt learned, you ſhall then in the

ſame

ſame manner, and with the ſame labour, practiſe him againe, till you make him doe ſomewhat more, and ſomwhat better then hee did at the firſt teaching, and then ride him home againe.

In this manner you ſhall exerciſe your Horſe, at leaſt thrice a day, till you haue brought him that hee will ſtrike out his Amble truely and freely, which beleeue it hee will very ſuddainly doe, becauſe (for mine owne part) I haue neither ſeene, nor in mine owne practiſe found any Horſe which this manner of labour would not bring to ſtrike a faire amble in leſſe then an houre and a halfes trouble, the toyling vpon the landes, and the temper of your hand, which neither reſtraines him ſo much that hee can ſtand ſtill, or vſe diſorder, nor giuing him ſo much libertie that hee may trott or gallop, breeding ſuch a confuſed amazement in his minde, that he can finde no way to eaſe himſelfe, but by the alteration of his pace.

Now whereas the principall reſpect a man is to haue in teaching Horſes to amble, is that they ſtrike their hinder feete home, rather halfe a foote ouer, then halfe an inch ſhort of their fore-feete; this manner of teaching doth performe it without any trouble or toyle of the Ryder, becauſe the Horſe being brought to his amble out of a foote pace, hee dooth euer ſtrike out his feete to the vttermoſt length, and begins his amble in the longeſt ſtrides that may be. Alſo this kinde of inſtruction hath no neede of maſſie or heauy ſhooes, to bring downe the hinder feete, but the very toyle in his foot-pace vpon the deepe earth, is as ſufficient as any poyſe or waight a man can deuiſe for the purpoſe.

Of all the ſeuerall wayes to make a Horſe amble with

with the hand onely, there is none in my conceit so absolutely praise-worthie as this : both because it deliuers the pace in easiest and best manner, which is out of a foot pace, and also is gouerned and accompanied with so many seueral corrections, that a horse cannot so soone erre, as euen the ground on which hee treades (which is deepe plowed lands) and the paine of his owne motions when his feete are misplaced, will giue him notice and helpe for amendment; insomuch, that had not mine experience waded into some better tryals, surely I should giue this method the onely precedencie and superioritie; but so it is, that as it hath in it good show and ground of reason; so it hath also many errors and inconueniences depending vpon it, which doeth blemish much of the better perfection: as first, the carriage of the hand, which gouerneth the whole mouth by the least and worst part of the mouth, which is the weekes onely, doth pull the best setled reyne that is, quite out of order, and brings a horse to the putting out of his nose, a gaping with his mouth, and such a generall incertaintie ouer all his bodie, that albe you bring him to the end you desire, which is to amble, yet hee doth by the maner thereof lose so much beautie, grace, and other more carefull perfections, that a Horseman will euen be ashamed of his labour. Againe, if the horse be young and vnwayed that is thus taught, the very toyling him vpon the deep lands, will bring him to a weakenesse in his limbs, to a faintnesse and dispaire in labour; and instead of those incouragements which his youth and ignorance should haue giuen him, he receiues such distaste and griefe, that he will be worse for trauell whilst he liues after: yet I know this māner of teaching horses

to

to amble, is practiſed by diuers men of the beſt fame in this Art, with whome I haue for mine vnderſtanding many times argued, and though they haue beene out of their long practiſe onely addicted to this rule and none other, yet could they not deny the inconueniences; but haue beene faine to ſtop my diſcourſe with this addage; That there is no profite without diſcommodity: and he that will haue his horſe amble, muſt indure the inconueniences which follow ambling; but haue eſteemed their anſweres like their Artes, that is, to bee meere deceites, Fallaces, and Sophiſtications.

Chap. 4.

Of making a Horſe Amble from his Gallop, or by ouer riding.

FRom this former practiſe of the plow'd landes (according to my imagination) I thinke hath ſprung vp this ſecond practiſe of making a Horſe amble from his gallop, which is deriued from ſelfe like violence, though in another faſhion: for the firſt doth but bring him to his amble by toyling him in his ſloweſt pace, and this by amazing him in his ſwifteſt; and it is to be done after this manner.

You ſhall firſt ride your Horſe into ſome peece of aſcending ground, I doe not meane againſt the ſide of any ſteepe hill, or vpon any hanging ground, but vpon ſuch ground as is onely riſing apparantly to the eye, and no more; then putting your Horſe into a leaſurely gallop for ſome twenty or thirty yardes, you ſhall vpon the ſuddaine

ſudden, by giuing him a hard chock or two in the weeks of his mouth, not make him ſtoppe, but at firſt as it were in a confuſed manner, make him leaue off his galloppe, and ſhuffle his legs diſorderly together (which naturally euery horſe will doe) and ſo by giuing him many of thoſe chocks and breakings off, you ſhal in the end feele him ſtrike a ſtroake or two of a perfit amble, which as ſoone as you feele, you ſhall preſently hold your bridle hand ſtraight, and putting him forward with the helpe of your legs, or with your ſpurres, keepe him vnto that pace as long as you can, ſpurring him ſomewhat hard vpon that ſide of which you ſhal feele him to tread falſe, which is euer that which ſhakes your body moſt: but when you feele him in deſpite both of your helpes and of your corrections, wilfully giue ouer his amble, and that hee will continue it no longer, you ſhall then put him into his galloppe againe, and as you did before, ſo you ſhall againe the ſecond time chocke him in the mouth, and ſo bring him to his amble againe. This you ſhall doe ſo oft, till your Horſe come to the perfit vnderſtanding of your minde, and that he knowes all his corrections, labours and torments onely proceed from the handling of his feet, contrarie to your diſpoſition, which knowledge you ſhal eaſily bring him vnto by making a difference betwixt his well doing, and euil doing, with cherriſhings and puniſhings, neither animating him when hee erres, nor correcting him when hee doth as you would deſire, which obſeruation will ſo fortifie him, that through delight and feare, he will wholly frame his actions and motions according to your will and Arte in riding.

Now when you haue thus by hourely and inceſſant labour,

labour, brought your horſe by little and little, as from one ſtep to two, from two to three, and from three to foure, to ſuch perfitneſſe, that he will amble ſome twelue or twentie ſcore yards vpon plaine ground well and truly, then you ſhall onely by exerciſe and riding him euery day more and more (and putting him euery day to grounds of more incertaintie and roughnes) In the end make him ſo cunning and perfit, that no ground or hie-way will be too difficult for him to tread vpon: and truly, thus much I muſt ſay for Ambling, that as it is a motion of all motions moſt eaſie to be taught vnto any horſe, ſo it is the hardeſt of all other leſſons to bee confirmed and made of continuance in any horſe whatſoeuer, except there bee a certaine naturall inclination in the horſe ſetled and adicted to the pace of ambling, before the beginning of your labour, whence it comes, that many of our horſe amblers will make any horſe amble for a ſmall road, or the length of a Faire or Market; yet when hee comes to incertaine waies, or long iournies, then he is as farre to ſeeke in his eaſie pace as if hee had neuer beene taught the motion; wherfore mine aduice is, when you haue brought your horſe thus from his gallop, to ſtrike an amble (which euen nature it ſelf driues him into) that you be not too haſty either to put him vnto foule, durty, or rough waies; or by iourneying to ouer-toyle him in that hee hath but newly learnt, till by former exerciſe, and increaſing by degrees, you finde him both apt and able to performe as much as you ſhall put vnto him.

This method of teaching I haue ſeen purſued by ſundry of this profeſſion; and haue heard many arguments in defence of it, againſt other manner of inſtructions: but for mine owne part, I thinke of it as I thinke of the former,

former, that the toyle is vnorderly, the vnderſtanding thereof thruſt into a Horſe barbarouſly, and the good effects, which it ſhould worke, are both incertaine and voyde of continuance; it doth, as the method before deſcribed doth; that is, marre the Horſes mouth, diſorder his reyne, and takes from him all the beauties of a good countenance, it puts a Horſe in great danger of ouerreaching, and ſtriking one foote vpon another, from whence many times comes *Quitter-bones*, *Crowne-ſcabbes* and ſuch like ſorances, which are euer to be auoyded, where there is a better way to compaſſe that which wee labour for.

To this manner of teaching Horſes to Amble I may very well ioyne another, which many yeares agone I ſaw practiſed by a *Scottiſh* Ryder, whome then (in my firſt beginning) I had heard great commendations of for this Art; ſo that when I found him curious to ſhow me his skill, I haue watch'd and dogd him in priuate to take notes from his ryding; and I found his order to make a Horſe amble was, firſt to ride his horſe into ſome deepe new plow'd field, and there to gallop him vp and downe till the Horſe for want of winde was not able to gallop any longer, then to giue him breath, and ſo to gallop him againe till hee found the horſe grow faint, and then to bring him from the landes, and ſome eeuen faire way to put him to amble, by the ſtraitning his bridle hand, and holding vp his head aloft, ſo that the Horſe might not well ſee the way before him. The wearines hee had formerly brought the horſe vnto, vpon the deepe lands, would make him vnwilling to trot, the ſtraitning of his head, and putting him forward with his ſpurres, would thruſt him faſter forward then foote-pace, and the want of

of seeing this way, would make him take vp his forefeet in such a fashion, that hee could well vndertake no pace but ambling: this I haue seene him do twice, and sometimes thrice a day, so that what horse soeuer hee began withall in the morning, hee would euer make amble before night, by which meanes hee got much fame and wealth: but for mine owne part, although I know there is nothing brings a horse sooner to amble then wearinesse and ouer-riding; yet that it should be my practise to instruct horses by such a rule, I cannot but infinitely dislike it, and it needes no further discommendations then the bare title it most properly beares, which is to make horses amble by ouer-riding them; and surely I thinke it was first found out, either by some chollericke person, who seeking to make his horse amble by one of the former rules, and finding him not at the first dash to answere his expectation, hath presently out of his furie falne to spurre and galloppe him whilst he could stand, and so almost tiring his horse, hath vpon his wearinesse (as all horses are) found him a great deale more willing to amble: or else it hath proceeded from such a one, who riding some long iourney vpon a trotting horse in hard waies hath whē the horse was weary (as it is the property of al horses) found him of his own accord alter his pace & fal to plain ambling; but whosoeuer, or howsoeuer it was found out, for mine owne part I cannot either cōmend, or giue alowance vnto it, only for your satisfaction deliuer the maner therof, that when your own desire shal take frō you the beleefe of reason, you may then out of your own experiēce, either alow or disalow what herein hath beene dilated vnto you. And thus much for this kinde of ambling which proceedes from the worst violence.

CHAP. 5.

How to make Horſes to amble by the vſe of Waights.

NOT farre different in nature, though much more temperate in qualitie, is this manner of teaching Horſes to amble by the vſe of poiſe or waight, for albe it do not wearie a horſe in bodily labour, yet it weakens and makes feeble his members by ſuffering an extremitie greater then his ſtrength is able to contend with: for if his burthen bee kept within the abilitie of his power, then it works no new thing, but keepes him ſtill in the ſtate of his firſt creation, whence it comes to paſſe, that if you will make a horſe amble by waight, eyther that waight muſt exceede in maſſines, or troubleſomneſſe, or elſe no more preuaile, then if ſuch waight were not vſed at all.

This manner of ambling is very generally vſed in this kingdom by ſundry profeſſors, yet not al of one faſhion; but according to the humors or inuentions, ſo the manner thereof doth alter: for I haue ſeene one horſman bring his horſe to amble by waight after this manner: he hath firſt cauſed to bee caſt in the faſhion and compaſſe of a paſterne, great rowles or wreathes of Lead, of the waight of ſome ſixe pound a peece, and lapping them in liſts and wollen cloth, hath made them faſt about the neathermoſt ioynts or paſternes of the horſes hinderlegges, and then riding the horſe abroad, haue with the helpe of their bridle hand, as is explain'd in former Chapters, tride to alter the Horſes pace; but

but if they haue found, that either the horſes courage, or the ſmoothnes of the way, hath made the horſe either not feele, or not reſpect the waights, but to hold the trotting pace ſtill, then they haue with thoſe waights ridden the horſe into ſome deepe new plowd field, and there with the waights about his heeles to labour him vpon a ſwift foot-pace, till the horſe out of his wearines hath altered, or at leaſt ſhufled his feet ſo confuſedly together, that hee hath gone betwixt an amble and a trot, then the rider hath brought him into the plaine way, where the horſe hath had libertie to caſt foorth his legs, and there with his hand hath put him into his amble, which preſently I haue ſeene the horſe to vndertake; for what through the waights about his legs, & the wearines he was formerly put vnto, it is impoſſible the horſe ſhould trot, and ſo by little and little the rider encouraging him, and the horſe feeling the eaſe of the amble to be much more then his trot, I haue ſeene many horſes made very perfit and ready in the pace. Other horſemen I haue ſeene, which to make their horſes amble, haue laid great waights vpon the hinder parts of the horſe aboue his fillets iuſt behinde the ſaddle, as namely, the waight of ten or twelue ſtone, and ſo to ride him firſt in deepe hie-waies, or plowed ground, and if he doe trot away with any lightnes, then to augment the waight, till he begin to folter or ſtrike his feet falſe, & then to bring him into ſome plaine hie-way, and there to put him into his amble with the helpe of his hand & legs, checking him in the mouth with the bridle, & ſpurring him vpon that ſide of which you feele his hinder foot treade the ofteſt falſe. The waight which is vſed for this purpoſe is moſt cõmonly earth, lead, or ſome ſuch like heauy ſtuffe:

then needeth little or no Arte to bevſed in this manner of teaching, more then to haue this diſcretion, that though the waight be more then the horſe with conuenience can beare, yet not to be ſo much as to bruiſe his limbes, albe ſuch miſchiefes oft ſpring from ſuch teaching: you muſt alſo when you teach a horſe thus to amble by waight, let him haue very little reſt, but be riding and exerciſing him euery houre, or once in two houres at the furtheſt, and as he becomes perfit in his pace, ſo by degrees to make his burthen leſſe and leſſe, till he will amble verie readily without any more waight then the Rider only, and then by little and little to traine him vpon rough and vncertaine waies, as ſomtimes vp the hill, ſometimes downe, ſometimes orethwart lands, or ouer alyes or dry furrowes: and when he knowes how to take his way vpon ſuch vneuennes, then you may preſume his cunning is ſufficient. This manner of teaching a horſe to amble, is both eaſie and certaine: yet in my iudgement not of ſuch value as is worthie of any painfull imitation, becauſe the dangers and inconueniences which doe attend it are more then may bee tollerated in ſo ſmall a benefite: for firſt, beſides the manner of the toile which is vpon deepe lands, and ſo hath all the miſchiefes which are formerly ſpoken of, the waights alſo which are to be borne vpon the hinder paſternes, doe not only beat and bruiſe the ſinewes in thoſe parts, but alſo vpon the leaſt ſlippe or falſe treading, doe hazard thoſe ſtraines which are ſeldome or neuer cured. Then for the waights which are to be laid vpon his backe, which muſt ſo farre exceed as to alter a horſes pace, a man ſhall hardlie carry that temper either of iudgement or hand, as to poiſe him to a due proportion, and then if hee exceede, hee eyther

breakes

breakes the backe, swaies the back, or bringes him to the consumption of the backe, and if hee make it but a little too light, hee either wastes his labour to small purpose, or else bringes to the pace a hacling and vncomelinesse, how euer, this is certaine, that a horse which is trayned to his amble by weight, hath euer for the most part danger or disorder brought to his hinder partes; besides the horse that is thus to be trayned, must bee of such a colde and frozen nature, that he will neither start at boggard, stirre with the spurre, or bee troubled with any passion; for if hee shall, there is not then the least affright which will not put him to the hazard of much mischiefe: and if a horse shall but get the smallest cricke in his backe, it is a griefe that will trouble the best Farrier to know how to amend it, and for the most part they are mischiefes which I haue seene seldome repaired.

Now for the taking away the tendernes and constancy of his mouth, the spoyling of his reyne, and the beauty of his coũtenance, they be so generall both in this, and almost all other courses, which are to make horses amble; that I may very well spare speaking of their losse, because it is most commonly the first worke Amblers goe about to depriue their Horses of those good vertues.

Nowe lastly the labour which a man must take in this manner of teaching is so infinite and incessant, that it both robbes a man of the delight hee should inioy after his wish is effected, and also depriues him of much hope by making him dispaire in so endlesse a labour; to which I may adde this mischiefe, the worst of all other, that I haue not knowne more good horses spoyl'd and made vtterly inseruiceable by any wilfull course whatsoeuer,

euer, then by this preſcript cruell method of making horſes amble by weight, and the former intollerable labours.

CHAP. 6.

Of making a Horſe to amble out of the hand.

SOme horſemen who haue beene of more temperate and milde diſpoſitions, hauing ſeene horſes brought to amble by the rules before deſcribed, and noting the tyranie of the man in tormenting a beaſt that is created for his vſe, ſeruice, & familiaritie, worſe then a rauenous monſter or an impoyſoning Serpent, haue out of their milder cogitations found out another way to make them amble, which though it be ſomewhat painefull to the man, yet it is nothing ſo cruell to the beaſt; and that is, firſt to make them amble out of hand, by which I meane that a horſe ſhall be brought to amble perfitly of himſelfe, without either carrying the man vpon his backe, or hauing any eſpeciall vſe of the mans hand in his ambling, it might more properly be called, Ambling in the hand, becauſe the horſe is brought thereunto, as the man leads him in his hand, and not rides him; after this manner: Firſt you ſhall take your horſe in a bridle, and lead him alongſt ſome ſtraight wall, and ioyning the horſes ſide thereunto, you ſhall place your owne bodie cloſe to the ſhoulder of the horſe which is from the wall, that you may, whether hee will or no, hold him vp in a ſtraight furrow: then with your rod, turned backeward in your hand, ſo that it may reach to his buttocke,

you

you ſhall iert and force him forward, and in the very inſtant that the horſe preſſes forward, you ſhall with that hand which is vpon the bridle, giue him a good chocke in the mouth, that you may make him ſtammer, & ſhuffle his legs confuſedly together; & then preſently eaſe your hand againe, ſo that hee may neither ſtand ſtill, nor goe backward, but ſtill keepe his way forward, and at euery two ſteps to giue him a chocke or two in the mouth to make him ſhuffle his legs, til you perceiue him to take vp two legs of a ſide together, and then preſently to cheriſh him, & then to exerciſe him again after the ſame maner, till you haue made him to ſtrike two or three ſtrokes of his amble together, and then you ſhal cheriſh him more then before. And thus you ſhall continue to doe, till you haue giuen him a perfit vnderſtanding of your minde, and that he may with aſſurance perceiue wherefore hee is corrected, and wherefore he is cheriſhed.

You ſhall, during this maner of teaching, by no means ſuffer him to trot: but if perforce he will, and that at firſt you cannot keepe him from trotting (as it is very hard in the beginning) you ſhall then euery ſtroke that he trotteth, turne your bodie about, and with your rod giue him a good iert or two ouer the hinder houghes, and vnder the bellie, becauſe it is euer his hinder parts which tread falſe in ambling; and then fall to your buſineſſe againe. After this manner you ſhall be euery houre in the day doing ſomwhat vnto him, neuer ſuffering the horſe to reſt an houre at peace, till you haue brought him to the true handling, or the taking vp of his legs, increaſing his labour daily in ſuch ſort, that in the end you bring him to amble the whole length of the wall, or an ordinarie road, which is for the moſt part 5. or ſixe ſcore

yardes: when you haue made him perfite thus farre foorth, you ſhall not then eaſe any part of his toyle, but continue him ſtill in his hourely labour, till you haue made him perfite, and giuen him ſuch delight therein, that hee will amble in your hand, without the vſe or neede of any correction whatſoeuer. This being done, you ſhall then take the bridle foorth of his mouth, and put vpon his head a plaine chaine, or the gentleſt Cauezan, and make him onely with either of them amble as perfitly as he did before with his ſnaffle, obſeruing that as hee growes perfiter in skill, ſo you eaſe his reſtraint, and beare the Chaine or Cauezan as gently as may bee, till hee will amble of himſelfe, without any touch of the Chaine or Cauezan: then you ſhall make him amble onely by the vſe of his coller, without any reſtraint. And laſtly that he will of himſelfe (you running by him with looſe reaynes) amble as perfitely as when hee hath the greateſt reſtraint whatſoeuer.

Now you are to remember, that when you firſt teach your Horſe to amble thus by you, if hee be of a ſlow and dull nature, ſo that when you carry your hand any thing ſtraite he will not preſſe forward, but either ſtand ſtill, or goe backe; or if hee doe goe, it ſhall be ſo ſlowlie that it ſhall not exceede a foote pace. In this caſe you ſhall haue a foot-man to come behinde him with a rod in his hand, who as you reſtraine him, ſhall force him to goe forward, either as faſt or as ſlowlie as you will, till you haue brought him to the knowledge and true vſe of the pace, and then you ſhall vſe his helpe no longer; for whatſoeuer you are to doe after this is effected, onelie vſe and practiſe will bring your horſe vnto, without either ſcruple or amazement; for there is nothing after a

horſe

horſe knowes how to take his legges vpright, which brings a horſe either to perfitneſſe or imperfitneſſe, but onely practiſe. I haue ſeene ſome Horſemen (and my ſelfe alſo haue done the like) which haue taught this kinde of ambling in a cloſe houſe or barne, but it is nothing ſo good, nor ſo voide of difficultie, as is the vſe of the ſtraight wall, if a man can haue one conueniently: but where the ſtraight wall is not to be had, there I preferre the cloſe houſe, becauſe there a man may lead his horſe, either cloſe by the walles, or otherwiſe, if he lead him in the midſt of the houſe, yet the horſe cannot flye much out of order, becauſe the compaſſe of the walles will not giue him any great libertie.

After you haue made your horſe thus perfit, that he wil amble by you in your hand (which amblers call ambling out of hand) ſo that when either you lead your horſe to the water, or to ſport, or about any other exerciſe, he wil vſe no other pace but ambling; then (& not before) you ſhall ſaddle him, and mounting his back by a temperate carriage of your hand, and by laying your leggs cloſe to his ſides, you ſhal thruſt him forward, and make him amble vnder you, which if at firſt (as I haue often found, and it was the firſt reaſon which made me diſallow this practiſe) you perceiue that he falles into a trot, and refuſeth to amble, as if he had neuer beene acquainted with the pace; which indeede is ſo naturall to many horſes, that you ſhall behold many (and my ſelfe haue had the riding of ſome) which ambling euen from their firſt foaling, haue, when they haue come to the Saddle, and carriage of the man, preſently falne to trot, which they were neuer ſeene to doe in all their liues before; by which I haue gathered, that a horſe doth take an extraordinarie

pride

pride and delight in the seruice & carriage of the man. If then your horse thus refuse to amble vnder you, immediately you shall twich vp his head, and giuing him a good chocke or two in the mouth, and striking him with your spurs, one after the other, you shall thrust him into his amble, which your correction and amazement ioyned with his former knowledge, will soone bring him vnto; and then after he strikes a stroke or two, and is cherished, comming to vnderstand your meaning, hee will then fall more readily to his amble, and with so much more comlinesse and truth as hee was formerly experienc'd in the pace before.

Now that this manner of teaching horses to amble, is either so full of art, ease, or comlines, that it deserueth either your labor, or a generall immitation, I am not of the opinion, because as the former methods, so this is accompanied with many foule & grosse inconueniences, such as a horse by no means should be acquainted withall; for besides the losse of time in the man, bestowing a long labour to little purpose, and spending his houres to bring his horse to an vnprofitable exercise, which is to amble without the man; the very manner of bringing a horse vnto it, which is by chocking him in the mouth, & distempering his head, is most vilde & insufferable; for if the horse be of spirit & courage, by such corrections the horse instead of ambling, falls to rearing, plunging, and other restife qualities, one of which wil aske more labor to amend, then to make twenty horses amble: and indeed to say truth, I haue not seene a horse of any good mettall that hath beene brought to amble by this manner of teaching, or if they haue, yet it is impossible that they should continue long therein; for euen their owne courages

rages will transport them, and make them weary of such an intemperate motion: and on the contrarie part, if the horse be dull and heaume, his sloth & vnnimblenesse will be so contrarie and rebellious against this practise, that the Rider had need of a more then an ordinarie patience to endure the slackenesse and vntowardnesse of his incapable spirit, which will neither vnderstand, or if he doe vnderstand, yet will not execute any thing any longer then correction and torment lyes vpon him. Thus you see, that neither the hot fierie horse, nor the dull slowe jade is fit for this kinde of instruction; insomuch, that if you haue no other method to teach a horse to amble by but onely this, you shall eyther runne into many inconueniences, or the losse of your time; or else deale with such horses which are of such well mixt qualities and dispositions, that they are neither too fierie, to rebell or contend against instruction; or not so dul, as not to conceiue what you would teach; or when they do conceiue out of sloth and idlenesse, to leaue your will vnperformed: it is the mediocritie with which you must deale, which being seldomest found, you may liue an age ere you meet with a Horse of that temper. And thus much for the making of horses to amble out of the hand.

Chap. 7.

Of making Horses to amble by the helpe of the hand onely.

Svch horsemen as had practized this former way to make a horse to amble out of hand, that is, before a man come to ride him: when they found that the horse

horſe comming into hand, that is, when hee came to be ridden, was in their firſt iudgements, as imperfite in ambling, as if he had beene neuer taught to amble before, and that they haue beene as it were drawne by a new method to bring their horſes to amble, they haue preſently by looking into the loſſe of the former time, and to the benefit of their preſent exerciſe, condemned the former manner of teaching, and onely held tollerable no other way to teach a Horſe to amble, but the vſe of the hand and legge onelie arguing with other Riders (which did not the like) of the faultes which were in their practiſe; but not beholding any in this which nowe was laſt brought to their memories.

And this manner of teaching horſes to amble ſeemed at the firſt ſo ſtrange and artificiall, that euery Rider of Ambling horſes, was thought vnworthy which taught by any other forme; and euery Horſe-maiſter thought his Horſe not well taught, which came not from his hand, who was reported to teach by the help of the hand onely, the manner whereof is, After you haue put into your Horſes mouth a rough twound ſnaffle, ſuch a one as through the cruelty thereof will commaund from the horſe an extraordinary obedience (for in this manner of teaching, you muſt haue your horſe exceedingly tender mouthed) you ſhal then take his backe, and holding your bridle reyne in both your handes, a handfull one from the other, you ſhall walke your horſe gently into ſome plaine high way, and there firſt thruſt your horſe into the ſwifteſt of his foote pace, and if he offer to trot, you ſhall lift vp your handes, and giue him a good chocke in the mouth with your bridle, and then put him forward againe, holding him at the ſwifteſt of his foot-pace, and

ſo

ſo ride him vp & down for an houre or more, ſtriuing ſtil to make him goe faſter & faſter; and euery time that he doth but offer to trot, to giue him a good chocke in the mouth, and a ſtroke with your ſpurre on the ſide which he treadeth falſe with his hinder foot; and by this meanes correcting him both in the mouth, and vpon the ſides when hee trots, and yet vrging him continually to goe faſter in his foote-pace then he is able, you ſhall in the end bring him to ſtrike foorth an amble, which when he doth, you ſhall then carry your hands conſtantly, and without ſpurring him, ſhew that you are contented with that motion, obſeruing that you keepe him to ſuch a temperate pace, that you, neither by making him go to faſt, vrge him to trot, nor by cauſing him to go too ſoftlie, keepe him within the eaſe of his foote-pace; but let the firſt be made troubleſome to him by correction, the other painefull by too ſpeedie paſſage. This courſe will not onely bring him of himſelfe to finde out the true ſtroke of an amble, but alſo by keeping him in his foote pace, make him to ſtride and ſtretch out his legges, that his pace will be both more comely, more certaine, and more eaſie.

After you haue thus by the helpe of you hand, held ſtraite vpon the bridle, and the correction of your legge and ſpurre brought your horſe from his foot-pace to an amble, you ſhall then continue him, and augment his pace thereupon in ſwiftneſſe, euery houre a little more and more, till you haue made his amble ſwifter then euer was his trot, and that he will ſtrike the ſame, both vp the hill, downe the hill, ouer croſſe paths, rough waies, mirie new plowed lands, or whereſoeuer elſe you ſhall haue occaſion to trauell, which onely continuall exer-

ciſe

ciſe muſt bring him vnto, and his owne nimble cnnning, obſeruing by no meanes to put him too ſoone to trauell, or to amble him long together at any time, till hee be ſo perfit and skilfull in the pace, that hee will take it both cunningly and freely of himſelfe, albe the brtdle reyne lie in his necke, and you haue no vſe of the ſame: You ſhal alſo obſerue, that if this round twound ſnaffle which I did firſt preſcribe vnto you, bee either ſo rough that it cut, or gall the Horſes mouth, or if the horſe bee ſo exceeding tender of mouth, that hee is not able to indure the ſence of ſuch ſharpneſſe, you ſhall then in ſtead thereof vſe onely a ſmooth ſnaffle made full, round, and of an extraordinarie bigneſſe, about which if you folde certaine wreathes of ſome fine linnen cloath, to make it as full and bigge in the Horſes mouth as may bee, it is much the better and more ſweeter, and the Horſe will take his pace with more delight and chearefulnes; but if you feele that albe hee take the ſtroake and manner of his pace truelie enough, yet with the raiſing vp of his hinder feete ſomewhat too high (which motion hee taketh from his trott) you feele hee doth not goe away eſiae inough, in ſuch a caſe it ſhall bee meete for you to make his hinder ſhooes of an extraordinary weight, and thicknes, each ſhooe weying at leaſt fiue pounds, which will ſo tyer and load his feete that he wil be glad to keep them downe and euen ſweepe them cloſe by the earth as hee goes. Now although this manner of teaching horſes to amble bee both generally commended, and moſt of all other waies practiſd in this Nation; yet for mine own part if it be ſo good as men do imagine, I muſt confeſſe my ſelfe to bee a great heritique in my beliefe therin, for I can neither allow it to be contained within any

rule,

rule of good horſemanſhippe, nor that it is worthy any mans labour to endeuour to learne it, both becauſe it is accompanied with as many errors as any other of thoſe methods which goe before it; and alſo becauſe there be a great deale more artificiall waies to bring a horſe to this pace, without the faults that this holdeth, which faults are theſe: The waſting of more profitable time vainly, the marring of the horſes reine, the diſtempering of his mouth, & ſpoile of his countenance, which theſe checkings and ſuddaine chocks do, beſides the breeding of a generall inconſtancie ouer all the horſes body, which is the groſſeſt fault which can at any time bee found in horſemanſhip. So that to conclude, howſoeuer men may be conceited, & ſpeake in the commendations of making horſes amble thus with the hand onely, I for my part cannot be induced either to giue it any tollera-tion in mine owne opinion: or to preſerue it for any o-ther practiſe then only for the knowledge of generall ex-perience. Thus you ſee I haue hitherto ſhewed you ſun-dry waies how to make horſes amble; as namely by the fallow field, by waight, out of hand, with the hand, and ſome others; yet to euery one I haue ſhewed you ſuch errors and inconueniences adioyned, that in my con-cluſion I made them both vnprofitable and not to bee practiſed, wherby I muſt confeſſe I haue hitherto left you in amazement (that ſince ambling is ſo neceſſary, and of ſuch general vſe, that we cannot trauel or iourney with-out it) what courſe is there to be taken to bring a horſe vnto it without either the groſneſſe of theſe former er-rors, the miſexpēce of time, or the loſſe of a horſes beau-tie & good countenance, which laborinth to bring you out of, & that you may ſee what I haue formerly written,

is

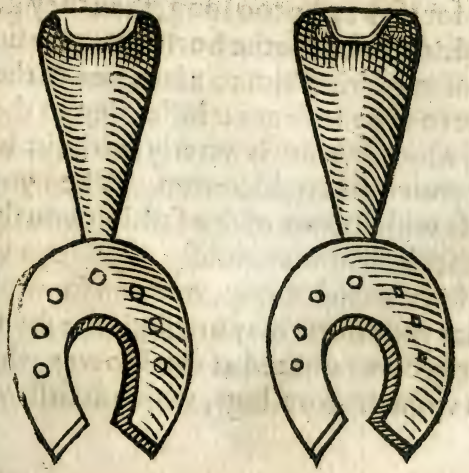
is but tó inable your memories with euery seueral knowledge and experiment which hath at any time been practised for bringing this worke to passe: And that the knowing of errors may inable you the better to shunne errors, I will now proceede to those waies in teaching which are compleate in Art, and worthie imitation, without any error but such as shall proceede from the fault of the Rider.

Chap. 8.

Of making Horses to amble by the helpe of shooes onely.

After these former waies of teaching horses to amble came to be put in practise by men of Arte and skill in horsemanship, and that they came to finde the errors and inconueniences which doe necessarily belong to such insubstantiall instructions, presently they out of their better iudgements and inuentions, began to finde out meanes to make horses amble without either marring their mouthes, vnsetling their heads, or breeding any other vncomely disorders, conceiuing thus: that since the making of horses amble, was but onely to bring them to an alteration of the naturall motions of their legges, why should not those motions bee as well taught without disorder to the head and reyne, as either the *Corvett*, the *Capriole*, and other motions daily vsed amongst horses of pleasure & seruice: and hence it came, that doubtlesse some man, both of good skill and iudgement, found out this way, which I will here deliuer vnto you, and which I haue lately, to good effect, practised,

ſed & found both agreeable to art, reaſon, & al the ſtricteſt rules in horſemanſhip; which is to make a horſe amble with the helpe of two hinder ſhooes onely, & this is the manner thereof: Firſt you ſhall cauſe a Smith to take the meaſure of your horſes hinder feet, and to make him two ſhooes of an extraordinary thicknes, and from the toe or fore-part of the ſhoe, to beat out as it were a thin plate, ſcarſe halfe ſo thick as the ſhoe, and being at the toe of the ſhoe, not aboue two inches, or a little better broad; but at the vttermoſt end of the plate better then 4. inches broad: this plate muſt from the very toe of the ſhoe forward, riſe a little ſhoaring frō the ground, ſo that the horſe ſtanding full vpon his feet, the outmoſt end of the plates muſt be as hie frō the ground as the horſes fetlock, & they muſt haue their ends turned vpward back againe towards the horſes hinder leggs, ſo that as the horſe puts forward his hinder feet, if he chance to hit vpō his forelegs, yet the plates being ſo turned forward, may haue no force to hurt or bruſe the horſe, but only to giue him a flat blow & no more. The faſhion & proportion of the ſhoes are contained in theſe figures.



To appoint or set downe any certaine length for these fore plates I cannot: for they must keep their size according to the proportion of the horse, or largenesse of the stride he takes: for if he be a horse that takes a long step & strikes his hinder foot forth euē close to the setting downe of his fore foot, then these plates may be the shorter: but if he be a horse that takes small steps, and doth as it were set his hinder feete downe where hee takes them vp, then must the plates be made so much the longer: yet because I will not leaue you in amazement, you shall vnderstand that the best obseruation you can take for making these fore plates of a true length, is to let your horse walke in some sandie way, where you may see the print of his feet, and then looke how much you see his hinder foot to tread short of his fore foot, to make your fore plates about some 3. inches longer, & no more: as thus for example, if your horse bring his hinder foot to his fore-foot by 3. inches, then you shall make your plates 6. inches; & so according to this rule, you shall either increase or diminish; of the two choices, rather making it with the shortest, then the longest: for if they be too long, then they giue the sorer blow, and may so bruise the horse vpon the sinewes of the forelegs, as may bring him to a lamenes, & therby not only procure to your selfe great losse, but to the art greater discredit, which in truth is vtterly without blemish, but onely for your owne indiscretion. When you haue shod your horse with shooes of this fashion, you shall first with all gentlenes lead him as mildly as you can vp & downe, either in some euen hie way, or vpon some plaine greene walke, that your horse may first feele the shooes, and that when hee growes amazed at the blowes which they will giue him vpon the fore-legs, which at first will be sharpe

and

and painefull, yet you may ſtay him, and with cheriſhings fortifie him, and incourage him till he come to an vnderſtanding how his torment comes, which only proceedes from this reaſon: that if when he moues his right hinder-foot, he doe not alſo in the ſame inſtant remooue his right fore-foot, then thoſe plates muſt perforce beate him vpon the fore-leg, and make him whether he will or no remoue it, which the horſe no ſooner will perceiue, (and finding the motion which keepes him moſt from torment) but he will preſently follow it, and by no meanes afterward in a whole day hazard the knocke of one blow: I would haue you thus for at leaſt the ſpace of two or three daies to do nothing but lead your horſe vp and downe in your hand, making him one while goe ſoftly, another while ſwiftly, till hee be ſo perfit, that hee will amble in your hand, if it were an houre together, without giuing himſelfe one rap with his ſhooes, and during thoſe firſt two or three daies, you ſhall apply him in this hard leſſon at leaſt halfe a dozen times a day, and when you haue made him ſo perfite that hee will amble by you both readily and cunningly; then you ſhall mount his backe, and ride him either in ſome faire greene cloſe, or ſome euen road way an houre together; in all which time of riding, you ſhall neither chocke him in the mouth, nor diſtemper his reine, but carrie an euen and ſweet hand vpon him, giuing him encouragement in all his doings: for there is no fault which can any way belong to his pace, which the ſhoe will not ſufficiently correct and put in order. When you haue ridden him thus an houre in the morning, you ſhall then ride him as much in the afternoone, and as much alſo in the euening, obſeruing this order for at leaſt foure or fiue daies together; which done, you ſhall then take his backe

in the morning, and ride him without either reſt or ceaſing till it be noone, and then bring him home, and if hee haue gone orderly, and kept his pace in ſuch good and perfit ſort as you would wiſh, without either ſtumbling or willingneſſe to giue ouer his pace, you ſhall cauſe the Smith to take off thoſe ſhooes, and to ſet vpon him a good paire of ordinarie ſhooes, onely in the waight and maſſineſſe, they would be extraordinarie; for they muſt waigh at leaſt as much as two paire of any common ſhoes. With theſe plaine ſhooes without any plates, you ſhall ride your horſe at leaſt a fortnight together, and then remoue them and ſet ſuch ſhooes as are both fit for the horſes vſe and trauell, without either extraordinarie weight, or any other deuiſe whatſoeuer.

Now for any errors or inconueniences, which this manner of teaching a Horſe to amble ſhall bring vnto him, there is in truth none at all: for the Rider hauing free libertie to vſe his hand, bodie, and legges at his owne pleaſure, if then he commit any euill, it is his owne fault, and not the neceſſitie of the inſtruction; for there is not any man, if hee can but ſit vpon a horſes backe, which by this method ſhal not make a horſe amble in as good manner (touching the motion of his legs) as the beſt Arts maſter whatſoeuer: the reaſon whereof is, that the very ſhooes doe of themſelues correct all thoſe vices, which in other practiſes is the dutie of the horſeman to do, as thus for example: if the horſe doe not ſtrike out his feete as he ought to do, but offer to tread ſhort, the very knocks which the plates wil giue him vpon the legs, wil put him to ſuch paine, that he will for very feare, & to auoid the torment, ſtretch his feet forth ſo far as he is able: they wil alſo make him raiſe his fore-feete nimbly from the ground, and

through

through their waight and troubleſomneſſe make him keepe his hinder feet cloſe and neere to the earth, they will make him that hee ſhall not ſtraddle or goe too wide behinde, neither will they ſuffer him to goe ſo ſtraight, that hee ſhall bee in hazard of interfering: to conclude, they doe as much in this worke as any man can wiſh, and is a manner of teaching, which if any wit can iudge, or mine experience were worthie to perſwade, I would haue practiſed before any other way whatſoeuer, except it bee the tramell, which I preferre and eſteeme an equall, both in vertue and goodneſſe.

CHAP. 9.

Of teaching Horſes to amble by the vſe of the Tramell.

THere will bee multitudes which will in their arguments oppoſe themſelues, as violently againſt me as may bee, both to condemne this which I commend, and alſo to diſwade men from the vſe of this practiſe, which I moſt allow; I doe not doubt, for I haue not in Table or Stable diſcourſes, heard any thing more enuaid againſt, then the teaching of horſes to amble by the helpe or vſe of the Tramell: ſome ſaying it lames and ſtraines horſes: ſome, that it makes a horſe not take vp his feete right: ſome, that the pace ſo giuen is not eaſie: with a world of ſuch like diſcommendations: but for mine owne part, I am by experience and practiſe ſo vndoubtedly reſolued, and know ſo aſſuredly the contrarie, that I can neither credit their ſurmiſes,

or loue the experiment one jot worse, no though they should bee esteemed most approued Horsemen, from whose mouthes should come the discommendations, for I know what error soeuer happens to a Horse by this manner of teaching, proceedes either from the indiscretion or ignorance of the Rider, and from no part of the worke, if it bee truely handled; wherefore to those that will credit truth, and obserue those rules which are most agreeable with art & reason, I frame my discourse; and to others who scorne all guides, but the strength of their owne opinions, I wish them saue the labour of reading this booke, which in that case will giue them no satisfaction. And now to my purpose: if at any time you will make your horse amble by the helpe of the Tramell, you shall thus doe; Take any horse of what age, condition, or qualitie soeuer he be, and first place him so with your hand, that he may stand iust and euen vpon all his foure legges, without putting any of them forth, or standing stradling, or crooked; which done, you shall put vpon his right fore-leg (which wee commonly call the farre leg) a broad peece of leather, lined soft with cotten, & hauing at the one end a small buckle, in bredth and shape made like a pasterne, onely it must not bee so thicke and stubborne, but smoothe and gentle; yet verie strong. This peece of leather you shall buckle about your horses farre fore-legge, some foure or fiue fingers or more aboue his knee, and you shall buckle it so gently, that by no meanes it pinch him, or with the straightnes stoppe the passage of the bloud in his veines: also, when it is buckled on, you must so place it, that a strong tournell of Iron being cunningly fastned within the leather, may stand iust behinde his legge, looking towards his hinder

hinder legge: this done, you ſhall take another peece of leather, made in euery proportion like to this former, and buckle it about your horſes farre hinder legge, ſome foure inches, or there abouts, aboue his cambrell, and the iron tournell therof ſhall ſtand before his legge, looking to his fore-legge: then you ſhall take a ſtrong cord made all of haire, and faſten it to both the tournels, making it by no meanes either longer or ſhorter, but of the iuſt and due length which is betwixt his legges; and then looking vpon your worke, yon ſhall ſee that you haue ſo linckt his hinder legge to his fore-legge, that the horſe cannot poſſibly put foorth his fore-legge to goe, but hee muſt draw his hinder-legge after him. When you haue done thus to his farre fore-legge, and his farre hinder-legge, then you ſhall take other two peeces of leather like the former, and another cord of haire of the ſame length, like the former alſo, and in euery reſpect as you haue linckt together his right legges, ſo you ſhall alſo linke together his left legges, which we call his narre legges: then you ſhall take a peece of garthwebbe, and making it faſt to the midſt of the haire rope on the farre ſide, you ſhall then bring the garth-web ouer the horſes backe, and make it faſt to the haire rope on the narre ſide: this garth-web is but only to hold vp the cords from falling to the ground, or troubling the horſe as he goeth. Now foraſmuch as I cannot in words ſo perfitly deſcribe this manner of tramelling as may giue ſatisfaction to thoſe which haue neuer ſeene it before, I thought good by a more liuely repreſentation of this figure to better your knowledge in the doing it; wherefore when your horſe is trammelled aboue the knee, hee will carry the forme of this figure following.



Many I know will wonder at this manner of tramelling a horſe about the knees and houghs, becauſe it hath beene ſeldome or neuer vſed by any man: and for mine owne part I haue neuer ſeene it vſed by others, but haue beene induced thereunto out of mine owne reaſon and practiſe, becauſe the faults and dangers which I can any way behold to belong to tramelling is, if a horſe bee at firſt tramelled vnderneath the knees and houghs, and be of a hot & fierie ſpirit, if then the Rider indiſcreetly ſhall compell his horſe to goe any thing haſtily; or that the horſe, out of his owne furie, will not ſtay the leaſure of the man, in ſuch a caſe the horſe may happen at the firſt ſetting forth of his feet to ouerthrow himſelfe, and then being downe, what with his ſtriuing, and the ſtrength of his tramels, hee may get that miſchiefe which will

neuer

neuer forsake him whileſt hee liues after. This to preuent, I would haue you in any caſe at the firſt to tramell your Horſe aboue knee, as is before ſhewed you, for in ſo dooing you ſhall giue his legges that libertie, helpe and nimblenes, that neither your owne raſhnes, nor the Horſes madnes, ſhall bring him within the compaſſe of any euill, as good proofe in your tryall ſhall witnes.

When your Horſe is thus tramelled aboue knee, which in any caſe I would haue you doe, either in ſome emptie Barne, or in ſome faire greene Cloſe, you ſhall then as gently as you can, lead him forward, and by little and little make him goe faſter and faſter, till you ſee him ſtrike into a faire amble, which he cannot chuſe but doe, becauſe his feete are ſo linkt and tyed together, that hee cannot remoue any of his fore-legges, but the hindmoſt legg of the ſame ſide muſt follow it: you ſhall practiſe him thus, to leade and amble in your hand three or foure times euerie day for the ſpace of two or three daies; then if it be in the Summer time, I would haue you turne him into ſome Cloſe, or conuenient peece of ground (thus tramelled as is beforeſaide) and there let him run at graſſe for the ſpace of a fortnight, or three weekes, not failing, but euery day twice a day to take him vp, and ride him either vp and downe the cloſe, or in ſome other conuenient peece of ground, for the ſpace of an houre together; in which time you ſhall ſee he will get the perfite vſe of his legges, and the true ſtroake of his amble, without ſtumbling or other manner of amazement.

Now you ſhall vnderſtand that this manner of tramelling Horſes aboue knee bringeth one other commoditie, and that is, it maketh a horſe to ſtretch and put foorth his legges in large ſtrides, bringing both eaſe and

comeli-

comelineſſe to his pace, and not to twitch them vp ſuddainely, and ſet them downe againe, as if he did dance, or ſtood ſtamping all in one place; which fault onely proceedes from tramelling a horſe ſomewhat too early vnder the knee, and making his tramels for want of true meaſure a little of the ſtraighteſt.

After you haue thus practiſed your horſe in the tramels aboue the knee, and made him both through riding and running in them at graſſe day and night, ſo perfite, that he will take his pace forward, both cunningly, and ſpeedily, you ſhall then take them off, and put the leathers which are vpon the fore-legges aboue the knees, vnder his knees about the ſmall of the legs, ſome handfull or there-abouts aboue his neather paſternes: and the leathers which were aboue the houghs of his hinder legges, you ſhall put vnderneath his cambrels about an handfull aboue his fetlocks; then you ſhall take the haire cords, and when the horſe ſtands euen and iuſt vpon all his foure legges, each legge ſtanding oppoſite and iuſt one againſt another, you ſhall faſten them of their true length (which is from legge to legge of a ſide) vnto the iron tournels, as was aforeſaid, ſo that when your horſe is thus tramelled vnderneath the knee, he may carrie the proportion of this figure following.

When



When your horſe is in this ſort tramelled vnderneath the knees and houghs, you ſhall then in the ſelfe ſame manner as you did before, when you trameld him aboue the knee, firſt with all patience and gentleneſſe lead him vp and downe in your hand, making him goe in his tramels, which will at the firſt bee very troubleſome vnto him, and a great deale more vnnimble, by as much as they are of more force and correction then the former, as commanding the weaker and more pliant members; but how vnnimbly or vntowardly ſoeuer hee goes at the firſt with theſe tramels, it matters not, ſo that you be but patient, & indure euery diſorder in him without trouble

or

or rigor, for euen the very paine which he ſhall feele when hee giues any diſorderlie twitch or ſtraine, will ſo moleſt and torment him, that he will amend euery thing of himſelfe (if you will giue him time) without any other moleſtation, and I perſwade my ſelfe (for I haue euer found it ſo) that the former cunning which he learned in his firſt Tramels, will haue brought him to ſuch a perfitneſſe, that when theſe are put on, hee will finde no more trouble, or difficultie then if he wore not any tramels at all; but howſoeuer, after you haue thus made him perfect in theſe kinde of Tramels, that he will leade gentlie in your hand vp and downe, either as ſlowlie or as ſwiftlie as you pleaſe, you may then ſet a Saddle vpon his backe, and put the garthweb which holdes vp his Tramels behinde the hinder croutch of his Saddle, iuſt ouer-twhart his fillets, and then you ſhall mount his backe, and ride him in ſome faire euen roade halfe an houre together, and then bring him home to the Stable and giue him ſome prouender, then about two houres after, you ſhall take him foorth againe, and ride him as you did before, and thus you ſhal ride him three or foure times a day, for three or foure daies together; and if it be in the Summer time; if then you let him runne at graſſe night and day with his Tramels on his legges, and ride him as is before deſcribed, it will be much better for his pace; obſeruing, that during all the time of your riding in this firſt beginning, you put not anie thing into his mouth but a plaine, ſmooth, and full ſnaffle, neither ſhall you by any meanes giue the Horſe any chockes in his mouth, or gag vp his head, but beare your hand in an orderlie and conſtant manner like a Horſ-man, being aſſured that what fault ſoeuer the Horſe ſhall commit in his

pace,

pace, or the motion of his legs, the tramels will correct sufficiently without any other assistance. After you haue thus for a fortnight ridden your horse in these Tramels vpon plaine and smooth grounds, you shall then for the next fortnight exercise him in his Tramels vpon rough waies, as where hee may treade sometimes in ruttes, or vpon broken swarthes, you shall also now and then ride him ouer plow'd landes, and sometimes vp hilles, and somtimes downe hils, till you haue brought him to such nimblenesse and courage in his pace, that no ground hee can treade vpon shall come amisse vnto him, you shall also this fortnight bring his pace to all the swiftnes you can; by thrusting him forward with all the life and courage you can deuise, and sometimes by giuing him a good jert or two with your rod, or by giuing him now and then a good stroake or two with your spurres. Thus when you haue brought him to the perfitnes of his pace so that he will doe it both cunningly, readily, swiftly, and without anie stammering or straining of his tramels, so that you might very well aduenture to ride him without any tramels at all, you shall then for a weeke before you take off your tramels (if hee be a Horse which you make for anie great mans saddle) put into his mouth such a Bit as shall be fit and answerable to the temper, sweetnes or hardnesse of his mouth, and with it you shall ride him in his Tramels all that weeke three or foure times a day, first vpon plaine smooth groundes, then by little and little, vpon rougher and rougher, till you haue exercised him vpon euerie kinde of ground whatsoeuer, and that he will take his pace both as readily and as speedily with the bit, as before he did with his snaffle, neither offering to strike falser, shorter, nor with faster motions then hee

did

did with his ſnaffle; when you haue brought your Horſe to this perfection, ſo that neither exchange of way, nor the exchange of Bits or Snaffles moues him to any diſorder, then you may boldlie take away his Tramels altogether: and onely make good thicke thumb roapes of Hay, you ſhal folde and wreath them as you make a ruſh ring about the neather paſternes of all your horſes foure legges, which is betweene the cronet of the hoofe and the fewterlockes, as you may ſee deſcribed in this figure following.



Hauing thus wiſpt all his foure leggs, and made them that they will ſtick cloſe and faſt about his paſternes, you ſhall

ſhall then mount vpon him: and as you rid him with the Tramels, ſo you ſhall ride him with theſe wiſpes, that is to ſay, the firſt weeke you ſhall ride him very gentlie, and onely keepe him in a moderate and reaſonable amble, ſuffering him to take his pace of his owne accord, without either your aide or compulſion; the next weeke you ſhall for the firſt three daies put your Horſe to the ſwiftnes of his pace, and make him amble out thorowlie, giuing him now and then the jert of your rod, or the ſtroke of your ſpurs: and the three other latter daies, you ſhall thruſt him vpon vn-euen and rough waies, where the hollownes and incertaintie of his treading may expreſſe vnto you the perfitnes and vnnimblenes of his pace, and in all this fortnights riding, you ſhall carry your bridle hand a little more conſtantlie and firmlie then you did before when you vſed the tramels, that you may be ready to helpe the Horſe, if at anie time hee happen to treade falſe, which I am perſwaded he will verie ſeldome or neuer do, if you rightly keepe the obſeruations before preſcribed; when you haue thus exerciſed your Horſe with theſe wiſpes, and found his pace perfect as before, then you ſhall take away the wiſpes from his fore legges, and keepe onlie thoſe about his hinder legges on ſtill, and ſo ride him for another weeke, the vertue whereof is that thoſe wiſpes will both make him keep his pace, and alſo cauſe him by keeping his hinder feete neare to the ground to follow his fore legs cloſe, and make his pace more eaſie. After you haue finiſhed this weekes exerciſe alſo, then you ſhall take away his wiſpes which are behinde, and make account that your worke is fully perfited, ſo that now you may aduenture either to ride or iourney your horſe when you pleaſe, and whether you

pleaſe,

pleaſe, for bee well aſſured the pace which is thus giuen vnto a horſe is the moſt certaineſt of all other, and will neither alter nor be forgot, either through difficultie or want of practiſe: for the vnderſtanding and manner thereof, is giuen vnto a horſe with ſuch eaſe and plainneſſe, and the faults are corrected ſo inſtantly, and with ſuch a naturall comelines, that euery horſe takes an eſpecial delight and pleaſure in the motion, and the rather when hee feeles that the pace is (as indeed it is) much more eaſie to his owne feeling then the trott, and as it were a reliefe vnto him when his ioyntes with trotting are feebled.

Now foraſmuch as there bee ſundrie principall obſeruations to be kept and vſed in this manner of practiſe, for want of knowledge whereof many errors both grow and continue in a Horſes doings, from whence hath riſen moſt of theſe imputations, which are laide vpon this Art, making the abuſe of the art and the art it ſelfe all one, I will before I proceede further giue you the full knowledge of theſe rules; that you may be euer the better aſſured to make your worke perfit. The firſt therefore is to note well when your horſe is firſt of all tramelled, and comes to ſtrike foorth his amble, whether hee ſtrike his feete home or no, that is, whether he doe not ſtrike his hinder foote at leaſt ſixe inches farther then where hee tooke vp his fore-foote, as in the true rule of Horſ-manſhip he ought to doe (which Horſe amblers, call ſtriking ouer) you ſhall then to amend that fault if it be whileſt your Horſe is tramelled aboue the knee, then you ſhall make the cord of haire, which goes from legg to legge, a full inch ſhorter then it was, and it will make him ſtrike ouer, but if it doe not at the firſt bring his feet

to

to ouer-goe one another, but as it were to treade ſtep vpon ſtep, that is, to ſet his hinder foote in the ſame place where his fore-foote did ſtand, then you ſhal ſtraiten the cordes a full halfe inch more, and that will compell them to ſtrike ouer very ſufficientlie. But if this fault of ſtriking ſhort doe not happen whileſt the horſe is tramelled aboue knee, as for mine own part, I haue not often ſeene, becauſe the great libertie of his legges makes him naturally treade foorth and take long ſtrides, but that it commeth after a horſe is tramelled vnder the knee, which becauſe of the greater commaundment, makes the horſe treade more ſhort and ſuddainly, then you ſhall onely but ſhorten each of the cords a quarter of an inch, and it will be ſufficient: for a quarter of an inch when the tramell is in that part, is aſmuch as if you did ſhorten it two whole inches when it reſtes vpon the vpper part, and will make a horſe ſtrike as farre ouer; alſo if in his ambling you helpe him by thruſting your legges hard forward ſtiffe vpon your ſtirrops, it will make him bring on his hinder leggs, and ſtrike much farther then otherwiſe hee would doe.

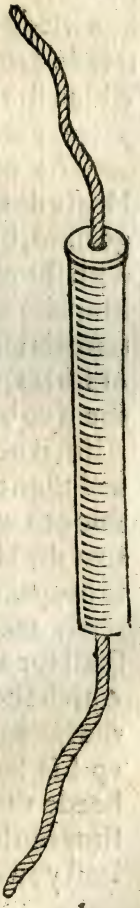
The ſecond obſeruation which you ſhal keepe in your memory, is to marke if your horſe do not erre in exceſſe of this former motion, which is to ſay, whether he doe not ſtrike his feet to far ouer, and take ſuch vnreaſonable long ſteps, that he both indangers to ouerthrow himſelf, and alſo in his ambling claps one foote vpon another, which is both noyſome to the eare; vncomly to the eye and very hurtfull both for the man & horſe, for the man, if he ſhall happen to fall, for the horſe if by clapping one foot vpō another, he either bruſe or woūd his heeles frō whence many times growes dangerous diſeaſes, where

when at anie time you perceiue this fault, you ſhall firſt by the temper of your hand carrying it a little ſtraighter then ordinarie, and feeding the horſes mouth with gentle motions, you ſhall make him treade ſhorter, which if hee be a horſe of fierce mettall he will immediatelie doe without anie other helpe, for his owne pride and ſpirit, ioyn'd with the temper of your hand, will worke all the effect you can wiſh, but if he be a horſe of ſloathfull nature, and altogether giuen to the looſeneſſe of pace, then you ſhall as ſoone as he will in any reaſonable good ſort amble in his tramels put him to amble in rough waies, and after he is growne ſomwhat cunning thereupon, you ſhall then ride him into ſome high way which in the winter time, hauing beene rutted and the prints thereof ſtill remaining in the ground all ſummer, and there exerciſe him vp and downe for at the leaſt an houre or two together, and doe thus thrice a day at leaſt, and in one weeke beleeue it, you ſhall make him treade as orderly and as ſhort as either your ſelfe can wiſh, or the eaſineſſe of that ambling pace, may anie way ſuffer without bringing either diſgrace or hardnes.

The next obſeruation you are to marke, is whether your horſe in his amble do not ſtraddle or goe too wide with his hinder feet, which fault is moſt generall and ordinary with all ambling horſes whatſoeuer, but if you do perceiue that naturallie he inclines himſelfe thereunto, you ſhall then for the preuention therof (becauſe if once hee make it a cuſtome it is almoſt impoſſible after to reclaime it) ride him into ſome great road-way, which hauing been worne and rackt in the winter, will haue a narrow deepe path way worne a foote deepe & more; and therin exerciſe your horſe daily till you perceiue him to

amend

amend his fault, & draw his feet vnto a decent comlines, but if you cannot finde such a rutted way because for the most part they are proper but onlie to clay groundes, it shall not bee amisse then if you get such a straite path or furrow of some twenty or thirty paces in length, beeing twelue inches deepe, and but sixteene inches in breadth, and therin ride your horse being tramelled euerie day, till you beholde that his fault be amended; but if it happen cõtrary to this motion, you do obserue that your horse goes to straite with his hinder leggs, so that he doth enterfaire, or knock one foote vpon another, which is a vice seldome found in an ambling horse, yet if at any time it bee, it is most insufferable, you shall then to amend it whilst you ride him with the Tramels, haue a small line made fast to the vpper part of his docke, which line shall runne through a long pipe of leather, made round and bigger then a mans arme, which pipe shall come from his docke between his hinder thighes, and with the other end of the small line bee made fast to the garthes vnder the Horses belly, the fashion of which pipe and line is contained in this figure.



With this line and long pipe you shall ride your Horse whilest you vse your Trammels, but when you take away your trammels, and put on your wispes, then you shall also lay away this pipe and line; and only be sure to make the wispes as thicke againe vpon the inside of the feete as vpon the outside, and

there is no doubt to be made of the amendment of the euill, except it bee a vice so proper and naturall to the pace, that euen from his first foaling hee hath held it, then your onely remedie is after you haue laide by both tramels, pipes and wispes, to haue an expert Smith, who may shooe him continually with good enterfayring shooes, which if they be made indeed with good art and knowledge, they will keepe him open, and make him treade largely inough, the fashion and property of which shooes shall be shew'd more largely in their proper places.

The next obseruation you are to marke, is if your Horse doe not take his feet cleane and nimblie from the ground, but sweepe them closely alongst the earth, that with stumbling and careleſneſſe, hee oft indangers both himselfe and his Rider, then you shall ride him with his tramels amongst thistles, or amongst short young gorsse, or furres, which pricking his legs, will make him winde them vp both decently and without feare of stumbling: Also, if hee be a Horse of good courage, it is good now and then to amble him ouer plow'd landes, or in plaine smooth waies, at such time as the nightes are darkest, so that the Horse cannot discerne his way: but if he onelie in his pace dash or strike his hinder toes vpō the ground, onely take vp his fore-feete in good order, then you shall for a weeke or more, ride him with shooes behinde which shall haue little loose ringes jingling behinde in the spunges of the heeles, and they will make him take vp his feete sufficiently, yet in any case you must take heede that you ride not your horse with these ring'd shoes an houre longer then the amendment of his fault, least you make him take vp his hinder feete higher then

you

you ſhould doe, which is the ſpoyle of all ambling; for I had rather beare with the lowe ſweeping of his hinder feet, then with his too hye taking them vp: for the firſt is a great ſigne of an eaſie pace, and this latter is a moſt aſſured teſtimony of very hard treading, which being contrary to the worke you labour for, may by no meanes haue any tolleration.

Wherefore for a concluſion of this worke, if you doe at any time obſerue that your horſe doth take vp his hinder feete too high, you ſhall then make him weare his wiſpes ſo much the longer, and if neede bee, during the time of your teaching, cauſe the Smith to make your hinder ſhooes a great deale the heauier, & thus by applying to theſe errors, the remedies which are preſcribed, you ſhall bring your Horſe to all the perfection & goodnes which can any way belong to this eaſie pace of ambling; And if any other tutor in this Art, ſhall either find fault with my precepts, or preſcribe vnto you any other materiall rudiments, which may in your iudgement run in oppoſition with theſe which I haue publiſhed, my deſire is, that out of the wiſdome of an euen minde, and the true iudgement which ſhall iſſue from a laboured experience; to wey and cenſure both our reaſons, and neither out of will, nor loue to nouelty, become a prentiſe to any precepts but thoſe which haue the greateſt alliance both with Art and reaſon; for no man poſſible can haue that perfection either in this Art or any other, which wil not at ſometimes bee accompained with error. And thus much touching mine experience in this eaſie Art of ambling.

The end of the Fourth Booke.



CAVALARICE,

OR

That part of Art which containeth the office of the Keeper, Groome of the Stable, or Coach-man, how Horses shal be ordered both when they rest and when they Iourney: With all thinges belonging to their places.

The Fift Booke.

Newly corrected and augmented.

By Geruase Markham.

LONDON

Printed by *Edw: Allde* for *Edward White*, and are to be sold at his shop neere the little north doore of Saint Paules Church at the signe of the Gun. 1617.









To the moſt Noble and moſt mightie Lord, EDWARD Earle of *Worceſter*, Lord *Herbert* of *Ragland*, *Chepſtowe* and *Gower*, Maiſter of the Horſe to his Maieſty, and Knight of the moſt Noble order of the Garter.

TWo ſtrong motiues (Right Honorable and moſt noble Lord) hath imboldned me to offer this part of my labours to your worthy protection; firſt your owne (not to bee controled) knowledge in all the beſt partes of the Art; and ſecondly your place which makes you the Great maiſter both of the beſt Horſes, and the beſt profeſſors of the beſt Horſe-manſhip; and albe it may bee obiected againſt mee that others of my Country-men haue done ſo excellently in this ſubiect, that mine will proue but a ſurcharge to memory, yet (vnder the reformation of your Honorable fauour) I ſuppoſe they are ſo much clad in forraine attyre, that their precepts are fitter for reading then practiſe; and truely for Griſon *and other of his ranke, (to whome is due all the worthie praiſes that poſſibly can be giuen) and whoſe memory I both loue and admire, this is mine opinion, that were they liuing at this houre, and ſaw but ſome of the Horſ men and Horſes of this Nation, they would confeſſe that time and perfection had purg'd their skils of many groſſe deformities; but of this your Lordſhip can better iudge by your owne knowledge then by my relation, therefore it ſhall bee grace enough for me, if your Honour vouchſafe the view of my paines, and pleaſe to number mee amongſt thoſe which euer will be preſt to doe your Honour ſeruice.*

GERVASE MARKHAM.

To all those which either ride vpon their owne Horses, or are acquainted *with Trauell.*

AS a Horse was at first created for Mans vse and seruice, so I imagine in that creation it was intended that man should in his care and respect of the beast, after his iourney, shew both the thankfulnesse of his nature, and the reward due for necessarie imployment: from whence I gather, and those which either haue beene mounted vpon jades, or for want of gouernment haue had their Horses faile them in their greatest needes can iudge, how necessarie a thing it is to know how a Horse should bee ordered, both in his iourneying, and after the end of his labour; in which if I haue in this Treatise following, giuen you such sufficient precepts as may both enable your Horses, and discharge you of much care and fearefulnesse, I doubt not but whatsoeuer malignitie shall suggest against mee, yet euerie vpright brest will both fortifie and defend me; and so much the rather, in that howsoeuer I may be thought obscure, yet I know I shall not be found absurd. *Farewell.*

G. M.

CAVALARICE.

The fift Booke.

CHAP. I.

How Stables ſhall be made, the ſeate and commodities.

FOraſmuch as all Horſes whatſoeuer, which be of any worth or eſtimation, are during the time of their ſeruiceableneſſe for the moſt part kept in the houſe, both becauſe the time of the yeere, when their ſeruice is moſt needfull, is in the winter ſeaſon; and alſo becauſe the vnrulineſſe of ſtonde Horſes is ſo great, that they cannot be kept in order or good temper, if they bee not continually vnder the commandement of the Keepers hand. I thinke it is fit before I proceede to the office of the Keeper, to ſpeake ſomthing touching the Stable, and ſuch benefits as ſhould perfitly belong

belong thereunto; wherefore first for the site or place where your Stable should stand, I would wish euery Horse-maister, according to the abilitie of his power to place his Stable vpon hard and drie ground, hauing a certaine assent or rising, by meanes whereof conueyance may bee made with trenches or sinckes to carrie away the pisse, foule water, or other wett which shall fall about it. The ayre wherein it should stand, would as neare as you can be very temperate and sweete, hauing no marrishes, or corrupt places about it, especially no Swine-styes, for the verie smelling and rubbing of swine will breede both the *Farcie* and other foule diseases.

Adioyning to your Stable, you must euer haue either some good Well, Conduit or Pumpe, and also some faire Ponde or running Riuer: The stuffe whereon you shall builde your Stable, would if your abilitie will stretch thereunto be either bricke or other rough stone, and the wall at least eighteene inches thicke, if you want bricke or stone, studde and plaister will serue, or if necessitie compell Lome, or Lime and Haire, or any other stuffe which is warme and durable. Your Stable would bee in proportion longer then broad, and not as some vse foure square, placing Horses on both sides the house; which is both ill and vncomely. The windowes of your Stable must bee vpon that side the stable which answers to the Horses buttockes, and would open vpon the East, that a horse may haue the morning Sun: and not as some aduise vpon the North, for though it bee tollerable for some one weeke in the Summer time, yet it will bee most vnwholsome for all the Winter after: each windowe about the Stable must haue a close shut or false windowe of bordes that you

may

may at your pleasure make the Stable as darke as you will, and as light as you will, the windowes also would bee glased that neither Birdes nor other foule may come therein, whose feathers are to a Horse both vnwholsome, and sometimes poysonous; in the midst of your stable in conuenient place, and against which you may make a lodging for your Groomes, I would haue you build a hansome Chimnie, where when occasion serues, as either in time of a Horses sickneſſe or soreneſſe, when medicines are to bee made, you may haue a fire, or for the warming, ayring, and drying of the horses cloathes, which at sometimes is as wholsome for him as his meate. Now for the Plaunchers of your stable, I agree both with master *Blundeuill* and *Collumella*, that they should bee of the best hart of Oake that can be gotten, but that they should lye (as they aduise) sloping, which is to say, higher before then behinde, I am vtterly against it, and holde it of all errors the grosest, as not to bee tollerated in anie place but in *Smithfield* and amongst Horse-coursers: For first it makes a Horse in his standing rest so much vpon his hinder legges, and that with such painfulnes, that it not onely makes him weake pastern'd, but also bringes to his legs diseases and swellings: It makes a Horse also that hee cannot lie easily but taketh most of his rest standing, then which there is nothing more vnhealthfull, wherefore in any case lay your plaunchers as leuell and eeuen as you can deuise to lay them, and in any wise lay the boardes not lengthwaies, that is, from the maunger streight downe to the grub-tree, but lay them ouertwhart the horses stall, so that hee may stand crosse the boardes: let the grub-tree which lies at the neather part of the plaunchers against

which

which the horſe will many times reſt his hinder heeles, be very ſtrong, & betwixt three or foure inches higher then the plaunchers; for the plaunchers muſt bee laide euen, and not one board higher then another, yet they muſt not be ſo cloſe ioyned together, but that the horſes piſſe, and other moiſture may runne through the creuiſes vnderneath the plaunchers. All along as your ſleepers lye to which you pinne downe the boards, muſt a trench or ſinke be digged, of at leaſt foure foote broad, and about three foote deepe, which may conuay away the horſes piſſe and other filthineſſe, either into ſome by dike or channell: the flore of your Sable which is without your plaunchers, muſt be euen with the very height of your plaunchers, that if your horſe at any time ſhall goe backward off from the plaunchers, yet hee may ſtill ſtand vpon a iuſt leuell. This flore would be paued with round ſmall pibble. At the vper end of your plaunchers you ſhall place your maunger, which would bee of very ſtrong boards, ſo artificially and cloſe ioyned together, that neither duſt, nor any thing how ſmall ſoeuer, may ſcatter out of it. Now whereas certaine olde Writers would haue euery horſe to haue a little ſmall locker to himſelfe, to eate his prouender therein, I for my part like it not; for a horſe as he eates his meate, will turne his head now and then of one ſide or other, and then hauing but as it were a little boxe to eate in, each time he lifts vp his head, hee will ſcatter the one halfe of his meate: and againe, it is the delight and nature of a horſe to ſpread his meate as thinne as is poſſible, and ſo to eate with the better ſtomacke, whereas when you lay it in a thicke heape together, he falles to loathe it, and refuſe it; you ſhal euer raiſe your maunger at leaſt foure

foote

foote from the ground, and not haue it aboue nine inches deepe, for the higher your maunger ſtands, the higher your horſe will thruſt and beare vp his necke, which will bee a good helpe to his reyne and countenance: for howſoeuer it is an vſe in *Italie* alowed amõgſt ſome of our horſemen, that there ſhould bee no racke, but that a horſe ſhould receiue all his meate downward towards his feete, thereby not to ſtraine his necke with putting it vpward: yet I am of a conirarie opinion, and would haue a horſe to ſtretch vp his head aloft, and to plucke his hay out of a racke aboue him, knowing that ſuch putting vp of his head doth mend his comelineſſe, and that taking his hay out of his racke, doth not with blowing vpon it make it ſo ſoone loathſome: as for the ſuppoſition of the filth or duſt which ſhould fall into the horſes maine, it is very idle: for if the rack be plac'd right, ſome ſmall duſt (if there bee any) may fall vpon the horſes noſe, but his maine it can neuer touch; wherfore I would haue the Racke to be placed of a proportionable height, anſwerable to the ſtature of ordinary horſes, and let it ſtand ſomewhat vpright, leaning as little forward as may bee. When thus your planchers are laide, and your Racke ſet vp, you ſhall deuide your Stable into ſeuerall ſtalles, to the intent that euery Horſe may lie by himſelfe, and thoſe ſtalles ſhall be deuided at the neather endes with great poaſtes. And if the ſtable be for great Horſes, or young Coltes, then from each poaſt to the manger, ſhall goe a round peece of timber, which hanging either in writhen chaines, cordes, or ſtrong thongs of leather, ſo that it may ſwing which way a man will haue it, which will keepe horſes from ſtriking one at another: or if they do ſtrike, they will defend the blowes:

But

But if the ſtable be for Hunting horſes, or elſe Running horſes, then I would haue you to boord euery ſeuerall partition from the great poſte vp to the maunger, euen ſo hie before that the horſe may not looke ouer it, as well for the warmeneſſe thereof, as alſo that one horſe may not gaze, ſmell, ney, or trouble one another, alſo for Hunting horſes, and Running horſes, yon ſhall line the walles which are before their face with boardes, ſo that they may not gnaw vpon the walls, or lick vpon the lime, which is ſuffocating and vnwholſome; vpon the outſide of each poſt you ſhall haue plac'd ſtrong hookes of yron, on which you ſhall hang euery ſeuerall horſes bridle, his cauezan and watring ſnaffle; then you ſhall haue vpon each ſide of the poſte faſtned in with ſtaples, round ringes of yron, to which when you put on your horſes watring ſnaffle, you ſhall tye him vp whileſt you dreſſe him; then all alongſt the other ſide of the ſtable betweene the windowes, ſhall be placed ſtrong peeces of timber, on which you may hang euerie horſes ordinarie ſaddle, then ſhall you haue in another place great preſſes, in which ſhall bee ſtored all better furniture; then ſhall you haue ſhelues whereon to lay your curry-combes, mayne-combes, dreſſers, rubbers, haire-cloathes, and other clenſing cloathes, both woollen and linnen; in other conuenient places of the ſtable ſhall be placed cloſe binggs, or hutches, for the keeping of prouender, the ſtable would be ſeel'd ouer head, either with plaiſter, or lime and haire: in the middeſt of the ſtable, or according to the largenes of the ſtable, I would haue either one, two, or three lanthornes to hang ſo as they may giue a ſufficient light ouer all the ſtable.

Nowe for the generall vſe of your ſtable, whatſoeuer

Vegetius,

Vegetius, or other auncient *Italians* write, to diſſwade you from keeping it cloſe and warme, as ſuppoſing that it breedes raw diſgeſtion, hurts nature, and ingenders many diſeaſes, yet I would haue no Engliſh Gentleman to holde the rule imitable, for wee daily finde out of our owne experiences, in keeping Hunting and Running horſes, that there is nothing more healthfull, or breedes in a horſe greater ſtrength or abilitie to performe much then the keeping of the ſtable in a temperate and proportionable warmneſſe; but whereas they ſay noyſome vapours and ſmels in a Stable are vnwholſome; to that I agree and would wiſh euery Groome that loues his reputation, to keepe his ſtable as ſweete and as neate as is poſſible by any labour to bee effected, and to that end I would haue all thoſe which are keepers of Running or Hunting horſes, whoſe ſtronger kinde of foode makes their ordure to ſmell ſo much the vileder, neuer to bee without *Storax*, and *Beniamen*, and twice a day at leaſt by burning ſome vpon a Chaffingdiſh and coales to perfume the Stable, which to the horſe is both wholſome, and delightfull. It is the part of euery diligent and carefull Keeper, to haue all his implements, and whatſoeuer hee ſhall neede about his horſe, to bee placed in fit and conuenient places, that when hee ſhall ſtand in need of any of them, he may readily finde them: hee ſhall not ſuffer any thing whatſoeuer to be throwne amongſt the Prouender, or to lie vpon his Hay: for a Horſe will finde diſlike at the leaſt ſent whatſoeuer. Many other obſeruations there are for a diligent Keeper, all which ſhall in their proper places bee amplie preſcribed vnto him.

Chap. 2.

Of a Trauelling horſes meate, and the ſeuerall kindes and vſes.

According to the opinion of the auncient *Italian* writers (whome I did euer read more for knowledge then practiſe) the foodes which belong to Horſes are very many and diuerſlie compounded, as *Graſſe, Hay, Strawe, Oates, Barley, Wheat,* and *Fitches*, or *Peaſe, fitches, Beanes,* and *Wheat-branne* mixt altogether, or common horſe-bread which is made of ordinarie Chiſſell, or branne knodden with water, and the loues in ſome places are rould in ſpelted beanes.

Of Graſſe. Now for the property of theſe foodes: firſt the Graſſe queſtionles is nouriſhing during the time of Summer, whileſt the ſtrength of the Sunne abides within it, and is food good inough for ordinary trauelling horſes, but for ſton'd horſes of great pride and courage, it is ſomewhat too colde and moiſt, and therefore onely to bee giuen phiſically, as for a month together in the beginning of ſummer, onely to ſcowre them, which is called the ſoyle time, and if when you giue them graſſe, you giue them blades of greene corne, it is paſſing good alſo.

Of Hay. Hay is nouriſhing, and filles out the bodie, yet it muſt haue ſome other prouender ioyned with it, or els by reaſon of the drineſſe thereof, it will neither nouriſh ſufficiently, nor diſgeſt in conuenient time, but lying in the horſes body, make his bellie great and vnfaſhionable.

Strawe

Strawe is a hot drie food, and neither nouriſheth nor filleth, therefore it is onely to bee giuen but ſeldome, as when a horſe is new taken from Graſſe, or when he is in ſtrait dyet for Running; more for the clenſing and ſcowring of their teeth, then for any other ſuſtenance. Of Strawe.

Oates are exceeding nouriſhing, light of diſgeſtion, and ingendreth the beſt blood, and whatſoeuer either *Galen*, or any of the *Italians* write, wee finde it by daily proofe, the beſt food that can bee continually giuen to a horſe. Now of Oates there be three kindes; one is a great white Oate, the other a great blacke Oate, and the third a ſhort yellow Oate, called a cut oate, and although ſome of our Engliſh authors preferre the black Oate for the beſt, yet I aſſure you the great white Oate which is full, and heauy, is the beſt and moſt nouriſhing, of which kinde I haue ſeene in *Darbiſhire*, ſome which haue (within a verie little) way'd as heauie as wheate, next the great white Oates, the yellow cut Oate is to bee eſteemed, and the laſt is the blacke Oate, for of all the three kindes it is the lighteſt and leaſt ſubſtanciall. Oates.

Now there is a fourth kinde of Oate, which is a Skegoate, which is a ſmall light naughtie Oate, and indeed is fit for pullen rather then horſes, for it is but one ſmall degree better then Chaffe.

Barley is colde and drie in the opinion of Phyſitions, but according to the naturall working of Horſes, wee finde it hott, drie, and vnſauerie, it nouriſheth not at all, but makes a horſe thirſtie, full of heart burning, and ſubiect to faintnes. Of Barley.

Now if any man demaund if it haue thoſe faultes why it is vſed ſo much in *Italy*, I anſwer, that their Barley and ours is of a contrary nature, & doth not offend ſo much,

yet neither of them both to bee esteemed for good prouender, where Oates are to be got.

Of Wheate. Wheate is the greateſt nouriſher, but yet a food that of all other a horſe will ſooneſt loath and forſake, for it ſuffocates and cloyes the ſtomack, I haue not knowne it vſed in any place but in Spaine amongſt the *Ienets*, nor would I haue it to be vſed at all, for it is neither needfull for the horſe, nor profitable for the owner, if it bee not onely in the time of ſickneſs.

Of Fitches. Fitches are a ranke groſſe foode, ingendering corrupt blood, and vnwholſome humors, and if they be not well dry'd before they be giuen to a horſe, they will breede the peſtilence and burning feauers.

Of Peaſe. Peaſe are a purſie and ſtopping foode, filling vp the wind-pipes, and diſabling the horſe in trauell; if they be not exceeding well dryed, they breede in a Horſe the Botts, Grubbes, and all ſortes of wormes, together with paine in the ſtomacke, lunges, and generally all ouer a horſes intralles.

Of Beanes. Beanes are nouriſhing and ſtrong, and highly to bee preferd before Peaſe or Fitches, becauſe if they be giuen to a Horſe, when they are well dryed they breede good blood, and are more light of diſgeſtion, yet whenſoeuer they are giuen they muſt be mingled with Oates, for to giue them ſimplie of themſelues; they are ſomwhat too cloying, and offend a horſe in his eating.

Of Blendecorne. Now for mingling Peaſe, Beanes, Fitches and Wheat-bran together, it is a moſt vnwholſome prouender, for there is corruptiõ in the Fitches, purſiuenes in the Peaſe, and fulſomnes in the Beanes, ioyn'd vnto a moſt ſcalding and vnnaturall heate in the Branne, ſo that I would wiſh all that loue their horſes not to loue this kinde of foode.

Now

Now lastly for common horse bread, which is made of nothing but Chissell or Bran bak'd, it is neither nourishing nor yet wholsome, but is the originall cause of many filthy diseases, as I haue shewd at large in a former treatise, so that were all Horse-men and Trauellers of my minde; either Bakers should compound their breade better, or neuer sell any to Inne or Stable, for I will stand to it, that bread made of all the dust of a Mill or a Barne-flore, is as wholsome as any that I haue seene come from a common Baker.

Now out of these seuerall Prouenders to shew you which is best, for which purpose you shall vnderstand that for your horse for seruice in the warres, or the horse kept for hie-way trauelling, or long iourneyes, your best prouender is Beanes and Oates well kilne dry'd and mingled together, as thus: to euerie bushell of beanes two bushel of oates; For the hunting or running horse clean Oates wel kilne dry'd, or bread made of cleane Beanes, as is shewed in the booke of hunting: for the cart or plow-horse, Pease, Beanes, and Fitches mixt with Barly-chaffe: as thus, to a pecke of pease, beanes, and fitches, at least a bushell of barley-chaffe. For the horse that is kept for sale, and is in the hands of the Horse-courser, if hee be fat, the best foode is a fewe Pease or Beanes mixt with oate-hulls, which are taken from oates when you make Oate-meale, but if he be leane, olde, or lacke teeth, then either boyld barley whilest it is sweete, or else boild bucke, for both these feede suddainly though corruptly.

Now for the quantitie which you shall allow; I thinke for great Horses, or Princes or Gentlemens priuate saddle horses, which euer should be kept as fatt and faire as may be, that 2. pecks a day is the best proportion; for the

ordinary trauelling Gelding a pecke a day is sufficient, and for the Cart or draught horse your measure must be to fill his belly before his worke and after his worke, or else hee will giue ouer his labour.

Now if there happen into your charge either *Turkes*, *Ienets*, *Arabians*, or other Countrey horses, which haue beene vsed to other foodes then these which we imploy in England, you shall first as neare as you can, either by inquirie of those which formerly had the keeping of such Horses, or by proofes in your own practise, learne what foode the horse best likes, and in what sort he hath beene before kept, and if you dislike either his foode or keeping, you shall not alter him suddainly, but by little and little, bring him to that dyet you shall finde best for his body.

Chap. 3.

Of the seuerall kindes of Waters, which is best and which is worst.

HAuing in mine imagination tolde you sufficiently what foode or meate is best, and most naturall for a Horses body, it resteth now that wee tell you what drinke also is fittest, which by the opinion of all men, and the rule both of kinde and custome is onely water.

Now forasmuch as there be diuers and sundry kindes of waters, as namely the cleare spring, or fountaine, the Ponde, and the running Riuer, and forasmuch as euery one of these according to their scituations, so doe alter in

In their properties, as the fountaine which doth come from the Rocke is smalleſt and moſt ſcowring; that which comes from chalke, limeſtone, or ſalt water moſt nouriſhing, and that which comes from Brimſtone or Sulphure moſt vnſauory yet wholſome: ſo of Pondes that which is fed by a freſh ſpring is ſmalleſt, that which is fed by the land flood beſt nouriſhing, and that which is onely maintayn'd by raine water is moſt infectious.

Laſtly of Riuers, that which comes from a cleare ſpring, and runnes vpon ſand or pibble, being very ſhallowe is euer the ſharpeſt: that which in his running clenſeth common ſhoares, and beares away corruption is the beſt feeding: but that which is deepe, muddy, comes from bogges, and runnes ſloweſt, is naught and offenſiue. Wherefore if your horſe be fatt or ſubiect to groſenes, your beſt water is either the Spring which comes from the rocke, the Pond which is fedde by a freſh fountaine, or the ſhallowe brooke which runnes vpon pibble, for they clenſe the body and raines, purge the kidneys, and coole the blood if it bee inflamed: but if your horſe be leane, olde or tender, then your beſt water is either the fountaine which comes from chalke, limeſtone, or from the ſeas ſaltneſſe, the ponde which comes of the land flood beeing cleared by ſtanding, or the riuer which clenſing Cities or great townes, makes himſelfe cleare with his running; for theſe hauing in them a mixture, or compounded ſtreagth, are the pleaſanteſt and moſt nouriſhing. In the Summer ſeaſon your running fountaine is the beſt, for it is the cooleſt, and in the winter your deepe Well water is beſt, for it is the warmeſt.

Water for a fat Horſe.

Now there bee of our Engliſh writers which would haue

haue your horſe to drinke verie much ; and if hee be not naturally inclined therennto , to rubbe his mouth with ſalt and wine, to make him thirſtie ; but it is a moſt vilde precept, for the leſſe a horſe drinkes at one time, the better it is, for many ſurfeits are taken by drinke, but few or none for want, and therefore if you ſee your horſe ſubiect to drinke much, you ſhall then water him the oftner that he may not drinke much at once. To gallop and chafe a horſe gently after his water, is the wholſomeſt motion that may be, for it keepes him from colde, and dropſies, and diſperſeth the colde vapour of the water through his bodie, and recouers his ſtomacke.

Now for letting your horſe ſtand any long time in the water vp to the knees, as many Horſ-men doe, I for mine owne part like it not, for it numbes and cooles the leggs too much, and makes the horſe apter to ſurbait : onely when you ſhall perceiue your horſes codds or ſheath to ſwell, then I would if it be in the heate of Summer haue you to ſwimme your horſe once a day either ouer ſome deepe riuer, or in ſome deepe ponde ; but if it bee in the Winter, then I would onely haue you to bathe his cods and ſheath with colde water in the ſtable.

Now laſtly, if you haue the charge of great Horſes, who out of their couragious ſpirits are not eaſily to bee ledde, the beſt is euer to water them in the houſe : but if your charge bee of iourneying Geldings, then 'tis beſt watring them abroade, and to chafe them a little in your hand vp and downe after his water, And thus much for Water and the vſes.

Chap. 4

Of the Dreſſing, Combing and Curryingof Horſes, and of their Dyet in the time of reſt.

TO enter into any Phiſicall diſtinctions or alluſions of Dreſſing and currying of Horſes, comparing them with the ſixe ſeuerall kindes of frictions belonging to mans body, or to repeate vnto you vſe-leſſe obſeruations, preſcribed by the auncient *Italians*, which neither agree with our clime nor the conditions of our Horſes, were a labour vaine, and a great depriuing of the induſtrious Keeper of his beſt knowledges; wherefore that I may in the plaineſt manner I can, vnfolde what neceſſary precepts belong to the office, I thinke it not amiſſe to begin after this manner: Firſt after your Horſe is taken into the houſe, you ſhall put vpon his head a ſtrong Coller of broad double leather, with two reynes of leather, or elſe round writhen chaines with ſhort linckes running eaſilie through holes made for the purpoſe in the vpper great tree of the maunger, in ſuch ſort that when the horſe puts down his head, the chaines may fall downe to the ground; and when he thruſtes vp his head, they may riſe to the top of the maunger: now the firſt night that your horſe is brought into the houſe, you ſhall onlie giue him a bottle of wheat ſtraw into the racke, and ſo let him ſtand without litter, or any thing elſe, for that night hee will doe nothing but emptie his bellie of graſſe. The next day about nine of the clocke in the morning, you ſhall take a double rope made

of

of wheate ſtrawe twound exceeding hard together, and with it rubbe his head, face, necke, breaſt, body, bellie, buttockes, and legges, then you ſhall giue him as much water as hee will drinke (and a freſh bottle of wheate ſtraw if the other be eaten) and ſo let him ſtand till foure of the clocke in the euening, at which time, as you did in the morning, ſo you ſhall then rubbe him ouer with new ropes of ſtrawe: then water him, giue him freſh ſtrawe into his racke, and let him ſtand till eight a clocke at night, at which time you ſhall take a great bottle of wheate ſtraw, and ſpread it vnder his body, laying it thickeſt before his fore-legges, both becauſe his head may haue as it were a pillow to reſt vpon, and alſo becauſe Horſes naturally will with their fore-leggs put the ſtrawe backward. This is called littering of horſes: and when you haue thus donne, you ſhall let him reſt till the next morning.

The third day I would haue you come to your Horſe at ſeauen of the clocke in the morning, and the firſt thing you doe after you haue opened your windowes, and waſhed your owne handes, you ſhall take a ſhakeforke, that is to ſay, a forke of wood without any yron about it, and with it you ſhall ſhake vp and thruſt backward all the horſes dung, and wett litter, putting it from the planchers; then you ſhall ſhake vp all the dry litter which is vnſoyl'd, forward: and with your ſhakeforke thruſt it vp as hard as may bee vnder the maunger; then with a ſhouell well ſhodd with yron for the purpoſe, you ſhall ſhouell away all manner of filthineſſe from the planchers, and then with a beeſome either of Birch, or Broome, you ſhall ſweepe the planchers and Stable ſo cleane as is poſſible, & ſo gathering all the filthines into one place,

put

put it either into a Barrow or Basket, and carry it into ſuch backe places as are for ſuch a purpoſe. This done, you ſhall bring into the ſtable a Peale-full of faire water, and place it hard by the hinder part of the ſtall where the horſe ſtandes: then you ſhall take a watring ſnaffle, and a headſtall, and after you ſee that the ſnaffle is cleane without duſt or filthineſſe, you ſhall dip it into the peale of water, and then put it into the horſes mouth, and ſo turning him about, that hee may ſtand with his head where his tayle did ſtand, you ſhall with a ſeperated reyne tye vp the Horſe to the two ringes, which are faſtned into the poſtes of each ſide him: This done, you ſhall take your rope of ſtrawe well twound together, and therewith firſt rubbe the Horſes face and cheekes all ouer, then with your finger and your thumbe, you ſhall twich away all thoſe long and ſtiffe haires which growe cloſe aboue his vpper eye-brees, and cloſe vnderneath his neather eye-brees, for they hinder ſight: You ſhall likewiſe pull away all thoſe long haires which growe about his noſtrels, vnderneath his chappes, and downe his necke to his breaſt; then as you did before, you ſhall firſt rubbe the right ſide of his necke, his breaſt, right ſhoulder, and right legg, the right ſide of his body and bellie, the right buttock and right leg, and then you ſhal goe to the left ſide, and in all thinges doe as you did vpon the right ſide. This done, you ſhall take a great Spunge, and hauing put it into the water, you ſhall take it foorth, and preſſe it a little, then therewith you ſhall rub ouer your Horſes face, then lay by the ſpunge, and with your handes rubbe his face till it bee as drie as may be, then waſh your handes cleane againe, for there will come much filth and durtineſſe from the horſe; and take

the

the wet ſpunge and rub the right ſide of his necke therewith; then with your hand rub that part drie againe alſo, and thus rubbing euerie ſeuerall part of his body with the wet ſpunge as you did with the twound ſtraw rope, and drying them againe with your handes, you ſhall bring away all the looſe haires which are about his bodie: this done, you ſhall picke his ſheath cleane from all durtineſſe, and you ſhall waſh his coddes and make his yerde cleane, then you ſhall lift vp his docke, and with a cleane cloath rub his tuell and the partition of his haunches, then you ſhall take hogs-greaſe, ſoote, and a little tarre mixt together, and dipping a cloath therein, annoint all his foure hoofes, or for want of it, you may rub his hoofes with the vpper skinne of bacon, for it is verie good alſo; then you ſhall take a yard of haire-cloath, and rubbe his head, necke, breaſt, bodie, buttockes and legges all ouer therewith, after it, take a houſing-cloath made of Sackcloath of ſuch largeneſſe, that it may lappe ouer before his breſt, and with a ſurſingle both broade and flatt, gird it about him, putting halfe a dozen ſoft wiſpes betwixt the cloath and the ſurſingle vpon the top of his backe, and halfe a dozen likewiſe betwixt the cloath and the ſurſingle, of each ſide of his heart, iuſt behinde the elboes of the horſe, which doe not onely keep the horſe warme, but withall defend the ſurſingle from pinching or galling: If it bee either Hunting horſe, or Running horſe you keepe, then you ſhall for warmeneſſe ſake wiſpe the ſurſingle round about, yet you muſt bee verie circumſpect that your wiſpes be made very ſoft, great and flat, and not as I haue ſeene amongſt ſome that are eſteemed cunning, ſo little and ſo hard twiſted together, that after a horſe hath been laide downe, you may

may see the print of his wispes in his sides when hee is bared, which both puts the Horse to great paine and makes him more vnwilling to lye downe when hee is wearie.

Now there be some in this Land which cannot indure to haue their Horses cloathed at all; and therfore happily will dislike this precept of mine for the cloathing of Horses, saying it makes horses too tender, and takes from them abilitie of induring hardnes, to them I say they are exceedingly much deceiued, for it is only those hard customes, which makes them vnable to indure any hardnes at all, and the reason thereof is this, that nature by such hardnes and extremity, being put to her vttermost force and strength, to maintaine her liuelyhood, when that hardnes at any time is exceeded, she presently faintes and forgoes all her vigor and vertue; as thus for example: it is asmuch as nature can well do to maintain a horse in any good state & strength, without cloathes in the stable: if thē by extremity he come to be compeld to liue without clothes in the field in the extremity of cold and bitter weather, hauing indured his vttermost before now feeling it exceeded, he presently growes faint, sicke and oft times dies sodainly, wheras on the contrary part, when nature is cherisht & fortefied by the helpe of housing, clothing and such like, he gathers that strength and powerfulnes that no extremity can daunt him, the experience wherof we see daily amongst hunting horses, and in their extreame matches. Againe, to come to a more familiar example, let vs looke into our owne constitutions, what creature is kept more hard, both for hunger and colde then the plow Clowne, and who more dainty and voluptuouslie then the Gentleman? yet bring them both

both to one equall extremitie, and one Gentleman will both indure and bee seruiceable, when a hundred Clownes will dye like sheepe in a rotte yeare, because the straitnesse of their liues kept Nature euer leane and in weakenesse: and of this, when I was a poore commaunder in the Warres, I euer tooke a principall notice; and held it for a maxime, that the more choise either Man or Horse is kept in the time of rest, the more hee shall be able to indure in the time of trouble. When you haue cloath'd your Horse vp as is before specified, if hee be a horse of any esteeme, it shall bee good if you haue a hood for his head and necke made of Sackcloath also, which you shall tye to the noseband of his coller, and to that part of the surfingle, which is ouer his backe: when all this is done, if hee be a horse that will not bee quietly ledde abroad, then you shall bring him a peale full of verie faire water, and let him drinke his fill, then hauing both with a hard wispe, and a clean cloath made his maunger verie cleane, you shall take off his Snaffle and turne him to the maunger, then washing the snaffle and hanging it vp, take halfe a pecke of Oates, and putting them into a meale siffe, dust them verie cleane, and giue them to the Horse to eate, then put a bottle of Wheat-straw into his racke; sweepe the planchers and stable very cleane againe, then locke vp the doore and let him rest till it be twelue a clocke. At twelue a clocke you shall come into the Stable, and first you shall make cleane the stable and planchers; then dipping his watering Snaffle in some faire water, you shall put it on his head, and turne him about as you did in the morning; then you shall take a sharpe paire of colling sheares and colle the inside of both his eares, as close to the skinne

skinne as may bee, and the vpper part of his mayne next his eares, from the noddle or crowne of his head downward into his mayne, for the breadth of three fingers, if hee be a great horſe or trauelling gelding, but if he bee either hunting or running horſe, then for the length of ſixe inches, both becauſe his haires ſhall not flie about his face as he gallops, and ſo trouble him, nor yet cauſe him to ſweate about his eares, to which a horſe is too much ſubiect. When you haue cold his eares and mayn, you ſhal then looke about his chaps, and if he be ſubiect to much haire or roughneſſe in thoſe partes, you ſhall then clippe it cloſe away that thereby you may the eaſilyer feele the kirnels, and groſſe matter which is about the rootes of his tongue, by which you know when a horſe is cleane, when not cleane, when hee hath a colde and when no colde. Laſtly, you ſhall take his tayle in your hand, and ſtretching it downe ſtraight by his hinder legg, with your ſheares clippe it cloſe by the vpper part of his hinder heele, then taking a wet mayn-combe, and a wet ſpunge-combe, firſt his fore-top downe, then his mayne, and laſtly the vpper part of his tayle from the ſetting on thereof, to the vttermoſt end of the ſhort haires. When this is done, and your ſtable ſwept and made cleane againe, it will be at leaſt paſt three a clocke, at which time I would haue you fetch in a cleane peale of water, and place it as you did before, then put your great ſpunge therein, and your mayne-combe alſo; then lay your writhen ſtraw roapes, and your haire-cloath in ſome place adioyning vnto you, then pull your wiſpes one by one from your ſurſingle, and open euery wiſpe, and mixe the ſtrawe with the litter, and not as ſloathfull Keepers doe, make your wiſpes laſt a weeke together, ſo

that

that a horſe had as good lye vpon ſtones, as vpon ſuch wiſpes; then you ſhall vnbuckle your ſurſingle, & roule it vp, that it may be flat and ſmoothe, then take off his cloath, and going foorth of the Stable, ſhake it and duſt it very well, then lapping it vp, lay it by, and as you did dreſſe, trimme and picke your horſe in the morning, ſo ſhall you, without fayling in any one point, dreſſe him in the euening, and cloath him againe as before; then combe downe his fore-top, his mayne, and the vpper part of his tayle, with a wet mayn-combe; then water him and giue him prouender, make cleane your Stable and plaunchers, giue him ſtrawe into his racke, & ſo let him reſt till eight a clocke at night, at which time you ſhall litter him, & ſo let him reſt till next morning.

Theſe three daies being ſpent in this order, your horſe will haue emptied all his graſſe, and his belly will be taken vp well within his ribbs, ſo that now you may both alter his keeping and dreſſing; wherfore the fourth day by fixe a clocke in the morning; I would haue you come into the Stable, and as you did the former dayes, firſt ſhake vp his litter, and make cleane both his racke and maunger, bring in your cleane water, wet his watering Snaffle, put it on his head, turne him about, tye him vp, plucke out his wiſpes, folde vp his ſurſingle and take off his cloath, then you ſhall take a currie combe made anſwerable to the coate and skinne of your horſe, as thus: if your horſe haue a thicke rough coate and a foule skin, then the teeth of your currie combe ſhall be made ſomwhat long and ſharp: if his coate be ſmooth, & his skin cleane, then the teeth ſhall keep their length, but be filde very blunt, but if his coate be like a Mouſe coate, exceeding thinne and ſmoothe, and his skinne very tender, as

for

for the moſt part *Barbaries*, *Ienets*, and *Turkes* are, then the teeth ſhall bee very thicke, yet both ſhort and blunt. With your Currie-combe in your right hand, and your face being placed againſt your horſes face, you ſhall lay your left hand vpon the ſide of his brydle, and fetching your ſtroake from the roote of the horſes eare, to the ſetting on of his necke to his ſhoulder, you ſhall currie him with a good hard hand, not leauing anie part of his necke vncurryed, then turning your face about, and placing the ſide of your bodie to the ſide of the Horſe, laying your left hand vpon his backe, you ſhall fetch your ſtroake from the top of his wythers, downe to the neather part of the pitch of his ſhoulder, and at euerie ſecond or third ſtroake, you ſhall ſtrike your combe before and about his breaſt, and thus you ſhall with a more moderate and temperate hand currie his ſhoulder, halfe breaſt and legg downe to his knee, but in any wiſe no lower; then you ſhall with a like moderate hand, currie his backe, ſide, flanke and that part of his bellie where his garthes reſt, as for the chyne of his backe, and the barre part of his bellie next vnto his ſheath, that you ſhall currie with ſuch a gentle and light hand as is poſſible; then with a hard hand againe, you ſhall currie all his buttocke and thigh cloſe downe to his Cambrels but no further: hauing donne thus much vpon one ſide, you ſhall then currie him as much vpon the other ſide.

Now you ſhall obſerue, that whileſt you currie your Horſe, if hee keepe a fridging vp and downe, or offer to byte, ſtrike, or bee impatient, that then it is a ſigne your Currie-combe is too ſharpe, and you muſt amend it, but if you finde his vncomelineſſe onely proceedes from

ticklishnesse or delight, which hee takes in the friction, you shall then euer when you currie him haue a small sticke in your left hand, and with it correct him for his wantonnes. Hauing thus curried him all ouer the body and raisd vp the dust, you shal then take a dead horse taile nayl'd about a handle of wood, and with it strike off all the dust which your currie-combe raised vp: then you shal take a round rubber, which rubber is a round peece of wood all stucke as thick as may bee with round tuftes of Swynes bristles cut close and eeuen within a strawe bradth or more of the wood, and hauing a loope of leather on the backeside, through which you must thrust your hand, so that the rubber may lye in the very palme of your hand. This rubber (but that it is round and the bristles shorter) is in all pointes like a common rubbing brush with bristles, such as are vsed about foule garments: with this rubber you shall currie your Horse ouer in all pointes as you did with your currie-combe, only your hand shal carry all one weight & temper, and if your Horse bee so finely skinn'd that hee will not indure any currie-combe at all (as there bee many) then this rubber shall serue instead thereof. When you haue thus gone ouer him with your rubber, you shall then with your horse tayle strike away the dust the second time; then you shall take your wett spunge, and first wetting his face and cheekes, you shall with your handes rubbe it drie againe, and not leaue whilest you discerne a loose haire to come away: then you shall looke about his eyes, his nostrels, vnder his chappes, and about his foretop, & if you finde any superfluous haires or otherwise, which grow out of order, you shall either pluck them away, or with your Sizers cut them in order.

This

This done, you ſhall with your wett ſpunge and your handes goe ouer all his body, not leauing whileſt any looſe hayres will come away (as was declared vnto you in the third dayes dreſſing) you ſhall with your wett handes rubbe his eares, both within and without alſo, firſt making them wett, and then rubbing them drie againe: you ſhall alſo not omit with your wett handes, to clenſe his ſheath, his yarde and his cods. This done, you ſhal take a cleane wollen cloath of cotten, and therwithall beginning at his face, you ſhall ſo proceede and rub the horſes necke and body all ouer, eſpecially betweene his fore-legs or fore-boothes, vnder his belly, betweene his flanke and his body, and vpon the chine of his backe; then you ſhall take a haire-cloath, and therewithall rub him all ouer likewiſe, but eſpecially in the places before rehearſed: this being done, you ſhall ſpread your haire-cloath ouer his buttockes, and then lay on his cloath vpon him againe, and hauing girded the ſurſingle, you ſhall ſtoppe him with wiſpes as was before declared: then you ſhall take a wett mayne-combe and combe downe his fore-toppe, his mayne and his tayle, then you ſhall take a peale of faire water, and putting his tayle therein cloſe to his midd ſterne or docke, you ſhall with your hands waſh it very cleane, then taking it out of the peale, you ſhall wring out all the water from the haire into the peale again, then you ſhall tye vp his taile in ten or twelue ſeuerall hankes, that it may drie againe; this done, you ſhall take ſuch hard writhen ſtrawe-roapes as was before declared, rub and chafe exceedingly both his fore-legs from the knee downward, euen to the cronets of his hoofes, & likewiſe his hinder-legs from the cambrels to the hoofes alſo, picking and rubbing his fewter-

lockes with your fingers, leauing neither duſt, durt, nor any skirffe within them, then rub both with the roapes and with your hand his paſternes betwixt his fetlockes and his heeles, then take a haire-cloath kept onely of purpoſe, and as you rubb'd his legges with the hard roapes, ſo rub them with the haire-cloath alſo, then take vp his feete, and with an yron made for the purpoſe, picke all his foure feete betweene the ſhooes and his hoofes as cleane as may bee, then ſtop them cloſe and hard either with Cow-dung, or elſe with Hogs-greaſe and branne molten together; then annoint the outſide and cronets of his hoofes with the oyntment before declared, then waſhing your hands cleane, combe down his mayne and tayle with a wett mayne-combe, then water him, and ſo turne his head to the manger, and put on his coller, then if hee be a great horſe, you ſhall ſift in a ſiue halfe a pecke of Peaſe and Oates mingled, or elſe cleane Oates, which is the fourth part of his allowance, and the maunger being made cleane, giue them him to eate, but if he be but an ordinary gelding, then a quarter of a pecke is ſufficient, which is the fourth part of his allowance alſo, and whileſt he is eating his prouender you ſhall make him a bottle of ſweet hay ſomwhat bigger then a penny bottle in an Inne, and put it into the racke, then ſweeping the ſtable cleane, you may let your horſe reſt till noone.

Now if it bee either Hunting horſe or Running horſe that you keepe, you ſhall when you are ready to depart out of the ſtable put downe the litter vnder your horſe, and then ſhutting the windowes cloſe, depart: In which abſent time you muſt buſie your ſelfe in making your hay bottles, or ſtraw bottles for litter, or if your horſe be too fat and purſie, by mingling wheat ſtraw & hay together

for

for your horſe to eate, or prouiding ſuch neceſſarie implements as are to bee vſed in the ſtable. At twelue a clocke at noone you ſhall come into the ſtable, and firſt hauing ſwept it, and made it verie cleane, you ſhall then take a faire linnen cloath, white waſht, and therewith firſt rubbe your horſes face and necke, then turning vp his cloath, rub downe his buttockes, his flankes, and leskes, then turne his cloath down againe, and then with warm Beefe-broth (which is neuer wanting in great mens houſes) bathe his fore-legges from the knee downward, and his hinder legges from the cambrel downeward, but if you want beefe-broth, then take Traine-oyle, Sheepes-foot oyle, or Neates foot oyle, for any of them is very ſoueraine, either if your horſes legs be ſtiffe and vnnimble, or if they be ſubiect to ſwell, or if his greaſe haue beene molten in them. When this is done, you ſhall ſift him into a ſiue another halfe pecke or quarter of a pecke of Oates, according to your allowance, and giue them him to eate; then hauing made cleane the Stable, let your horſe reſt till three a clocke in the afternoone.

Now you ſhall vnderſtand, that if your Horſe bee of a tender and daintie ſtomacke, and that hee is verie apt to grow gaunt, and to looſe his belly, or if he be leane, then I would haue you to offer your horſe at noone a little water alſo, but not otherwiſe; at three a clocke in the afternoone I would haue you aſſoone as you haue made your ſtable cleane, to vncloath your horſe, and to currie, rubb, picke, dreſſe and trimme your horſe in euery point as you did in the morning: then to water him, and to giue him another fourth part of his allowance of prouender, & another bottle of hay, and ſo to let him reſt till eight a clock at night, at what time you ſhal come to him

and in all pointes as you vſed him at twelue a clocke at noone, ſo you ſhall vſe him at that time; then putting downe his litter, and making his bed, and giuing him the laſt fourth part of his allowance of prouender, and hay to ſerue him for all night, let him reſt till the next morning. After the order that you haue ſpent this day, you ſhall ſpend euery day whileſt your horſe reſtes without exerciſe, that is to ſay, dreſſing him twice a day morning and euening, and feeding him foure times a day, that is, morning, noone, euening and night, as for his water it muſt bee according to the conſtitution of his body: If hee be fat and foule, twice a day is ſufficient: if of reaſonable temper thrice: if leane & weake, then foure times. Euery Keeper ſhall obſerue, by no meanes to come to his Horſe ſuddainly or raſhly, but firſt to giue him warning, by crying *ware I ſay*, or *Holla*, or ſuch like wordes: hee ſhall neuer come or ſtand directly behinde a Horſe, but alwaies vpon one ſide or other; if your horſe bee of bolde or fierce courage, you ſhall euer keepe a paire of paſternes made of ſtrong double leather, and lyn'd with cotten, put through two tournels fixt to a chaine twelue inches long, about his fore-legges vnderneath his fetlockes: If your horſe haue a quallity that hee will either teare his cloath or pull his wiſpes out of his ſurſingle, you ſhall then tye a long ſtaffe alongſt his necke, the one end being made faſt to his coller, hard by the rootes of his eare, the other end to the ſurſingle cloſe by the vpper wiſpes, ſo that he cannot writhe or turne his head backward; if your horſes mayne bee too thicke or ilfauour'dly growne, you may with a taſſer made of yron with three or foure teeth, make it both as thinne as you pleaſe and lay it vpon which ſide of his necke you pleaſe.

And

And thus much for the Dreſſing and Trimming of a Horſe, during his time of reſt: which method if you diligently obſerue, you ſhall bee ſure to haue his coate as ſmooth and ſleeke as glaſſe, and his skinne ſo pure and cleane, that (did you rub him therewith) hee would not ſtaine a garment of veluet.

Chap. 5.

Of a Horſes labour or exerciſe, and how he ſhall be ordered when he is iourneyed.

VNder this tytle of Exerciſe I intend to figure thoſe moderate and healthfull motions, which increaſing the naturall heate of thoſe moouing partes which ſuſtaine the body, giue both ſtrength and liuelyhood to all the inward Organs and veſſels of life, as when a man either for his owne practiſe, or to continue his horſe in thoſe leſſons which he hath formerly learnt, or when hee would procure his horſe an appetite, or giue him the benefite of the freſh ayre, he doth in the morning ride him not till hee ſweate, but till hee haue brought him to the point of ſweating, and this exerciſe dooth the moſt belong to great Horſes trayned for ſeruice in the Warres.

Now vnder this tytle of Labour, I cõprehend all neceſſary trauell or iourneying, wherein being drawne by our worldly buſines, we are forc'd to trauell our horſe both to the decay or hazard either of his ſtrength or courage.

Now for theſe two, namely Exerciſe which doth the more it is vſed, bring the horſe more ſtrength and vigor;

and labour which the more it is vſed, the weaker and fainter it makes him, doth belong two ſeuerall orders of gouernment or keeping; if therfore your charge be the keeping of a great Horſe whoſe exerciſe is but to be ridden an houre or two euery other morning, you ſhall thus prepare him thereunto: at eight a clock at night, which is the night before your horſe is to bee exerciſed; after you haue made cleane your Stable, rubbed your horſe with your cloathes, and littered him, you ſhall then ſift him a double allowance of prouender, that is to ſay, that which is due to him at that time, and alſo that which he ſhould haue the next morning; then looke what hay you did ordinarily allowe him other nightes, you ſhall now giue him halfe ſo much this night, and ſo let him reſt till fiue of the clocke the next morning, at what time as ſoone as you riſe (hauing made cleane your ſtable) and put vp his litter, you ſhall wet his watering ſnaffle, and put it on, and turne him about, then looſing his ſurſingle, and taking off his cloath, firſt with a haire-cloath rubbe his face, necke, and bodie all ouer, then with a woollen cloath, and a linnen cloath doe the like, eſpecially rubbe his legges paſſing well; then take his Saddle, hauing three garthes, and a paire of ſufficient ſtirrops, and ſtirrop-leathers, and ſet it vpon the horſes backe in due place, that is, (if the horſe bee not low before) rather more forward then backeward, and gird it on in this manner: take the garth which is faſt to the formoſt tabbe of the right ſide, and buckle it to the hindmoſt tabb on the left ſide, and the hindmoſt garth on the right ſide, to the formoſt tabbe on the left ſide, and the middle garth to the middle tabbe on both ſides, and this is called croſſe girding, being the comlyeſt, ſureſt and leaſt

hurtfull

hurtfull manner of girding, for it galles the leaſt, and holdes the ſaddle faſteſt: you ſhall not at the firſt gird the garthes hard, but in ſuch ſorte that the Horſe may feele them and no more: this done, you ſhall buckle on his breaſt-plate, and his crooper, making them of equall ſtraitneſſe: then you ſhall lace on his ſaker or docke, and make faſt his twinſell to the hindmoſt garth on the left ſide; then with a wett mayne-combe, combe downe his fore-toppe and mayne, and then throwing his cloath ouer him, let him ſtand *till* you haue warning to bring him to his Ryder, at what time you ſhall take his bitt, and hauing both the Chaule-band, and the noſe-band open, and the Kurbe looſe, your ſhall firſt wett it in a peale of cleane water, then laying the reyne ouer your left arme, you ſhall take the vpper part of his head-ſtall into your right hand, and laying the mouth of the bitt vpon your left hand betweene your thumbe and your little finger, you ſhall put the bitt to his mouth, and by thruſting your thumbe and little finger betwixt his chappes, compell him to open his mouth, and to receiue the bitt which by obſeruing this order, hee can neither will nor chuſe but doe: when the bitt is in his mouth, you ſhall then buckle his Noſe-band, Chaule-band, and Kurbe in thoſe due places, as you haue ſeene his Ryder formerlie doe; then you ſhall wett his fore-top, and winde it vnder the forehead-band of his headſtall; then hauing comb'd his mayne againe, and drawne his garthes to their places, you ſhall buckle a paire of large cloſe ſpectacles made of ſtrong leather before his eyes, which will occaſion him to lead quietly: then with your right hand you ſhall take him by the left ſide of the headſtall cloſe vpon the Portſmouth, and with your left hand holde both the reynes

cloſe

close together hard by the bitt, and so passing [illegible] by his left shoulder, lead him either to the [illegible] or to such place as the rider shall thinke conuenient. [illegible] soone as the rider hath put the reynes ouer the horses necke, you shall presently shift your right hand to the right side of the headstall, and laying your left hand vpon the right stirrop leather, you shall whilst the rider mounts the horses backe stay the Saddle that it swarue not; then when the rider is setled, you shall vnbuckle the spectacles, and take them away, referring the Horse to the discretion of the Rider.

As soone as the horse hath beene exercised sufficiently, and is brought home, the rider shall no sooner dismount his backe, and deliuer him into your hand, but you shall first vnloose his Kurbe, and then presently lead him into the stable, for of all things I cannot indure this walking of Horses, knowing that it was a custome first foolishly inuented, and now as vnprofitably imitated; for there is not any thing which sooner makes a horse take cold, or breedes worse obseruations in the body then this cooling of horses by walking. When you haue brought your horse into the stable, where you must haue formerly prouided great store of drie litter, turning his head downe from the maunger, and hanging the reynes of the bitte vpon some hooke for the purpose, you shall first rubbe his face, then his necke, fore-boothes, belley, flancks, and legges with drie strawe, so cleane as may be; then with a wollen cloath you shall rubbe him all ouer againe, not leauing any place which he hath wette with sweate till it be as drie as may be; then you shall loose his garths to their vtmost length, and thrust round about betwixt his garthes and his body as much drie strawe

ſtrawe as you can conueniently get in, then vnlace his ſaker and take it away, tubbing the docke of his tayle dry with a wollen cloath, then caſt his cloath ouer the Saddle, then take off his bitt and put it into a peale of water, then waſh his watering ſnaffle and put it on, tye him to the ringes, and ſo let him ſtand for at leaſt two houres, during which time you ſhall take his bitt out of the water, and with a drie linnen cloath rubbe it as drie as may bee, and then hang it vp: you ſhall alſo wipe his ſaker within, folde vp the ſtringes, and lay it by alſo.

Now when your Horſe hath ſtoode vp thus vpon his brydle at leaſt two or three houres, and is ſufficiently cooled, you ſhall then come to him, and firſt taking off his cloath, you ſhall looſe his garthes, and take away his ſadle, which done, you ſhall firſt with drie ſtrawe, and then with drie cloathes rubb his backe till there bee not one wet haire left, then you ſhall lay on his cloath again, and girding it ſlacke with the ſurſingle, you ſhall ſtoppe him round about the body with great wiſpes: then you ſhall with hard wiſpes of ſtrawe, and woollen cloathes, rubbe all his foure legges exceedingly, then combe his mayne and tayle with a wet mayn combe, take off his ſnaffle, turne him to the maunger, put on his coller, ſift and giue him his allowance of Oates, and putting a bottle of hay in his racke, let him reſt with his litter vnder him till the euening: then you ſhall hang the Saddle where the Sunne ſhines hotteſt that the pannel may dry, and if the Sunne ſhine not, then you ſhall drie it before the fire, and then with a ſmall ſticke beat the pannel, and make it ſoft; you ſhall alſo rub the ſtirrops, ſtirrop leathers, garthes, and euery buckle about the Saddle exceeding cleane: then in the euening about foure of the

clocke

clocke you shall currie, dresse, rub, picke, anoynt, water and feed him, as hath bene formerly shewed you in his daies of rest, keeping euery tittle, & euery obseruation

Now if your horse be not for exercise but for labour, and iourneying about your worldly businesse, you shal then thus prepare him, first the night before you are to take your iourney about eight of the clocke, as soone as you haue made cleane your stable, rubd and littered your horse, you shal first giue him ss much water as he will drinke, then a double allowance of prouender, and as much hay as he will conueniently eate, then you shall annoynt all his foure legges with trayne oyle, and see that his shooes be good, strong, tough, easie, and his feete well stopt, and so let him rest till very early in the morning, at what time you shall currye and dresse him as sufficiently as in any of his dayes of rest; then you shall gird on the saddle in which you meane to ride, which would bee both easie, light, and square, easie for your owne seate, light that it may not sodainely make the horse sweate, and square that it may not pinch, gall, or wound him; when he is sadled you shall giue him a little water, but nothing nere so much as he would drinke, and his full allowance of prouender, which as soone as he hath eaten, you shall bridle him vp, and trusse his tayle short aboue his houghes, and so let him stand till you be ready to take your iourney.

After you are mounted you shall for the first houre or two in your iourney ride very temperately, as not aboue three miles an houre, in which time your horse will be reasonably emptied, and then you may put him foorth as your iourney requires, it shall bee good if in your iourney you come to the descent of any great hill

to

to light from your horſes backe, and to walke down the the hill a foote, taking occaſion by ſtanding ſtill a while, or by whiſtling to ſee if your horſe will piſſe, which if he refuſe to doe, then it ſhall be good for you your ſelfe to piſſe vnder the horſes belly, & it will without all queſtion prouoke your horſe to piſſe, you ſhall in your trauelling as neere as you can keepe one certaine pace in your trauell, and not one while gallop, another while amble or trot, and another while go foot pace, or ſtand ſtill, for there is nothing which either ſooner tyres a horſe or brings him to ſurfeites, or takes from him delight in his labour. When you come within two, or three, or foure, miles of the Inne where you meane to reſt all night, you ſhall in the conuenienteſt place you can finde, as either in ſome running brooke or riuer, or ſome faire freſh pond, water your horſe, ſuffering him to drinke as much as he will, and in this watering of your horſe you ſhall obſerue to ride him into the water a handfull at the moſt aboue the knees, and no further, for to ride him vnder the knees will indanger the foundring him in his feete, and to ride him vp to the belley will hazard foundring him in the body.

After you haue watred your horſe you ſhal gallop him gently vpon the hand for twelue ſcore, or there about, and then in his ordinary iourneying pace, ride him to his Inne, and as ſoone as you are lighted, preſently ſet your horſe vp into the ſtable, by no meanes (although it bee the general cuſtome of our Nation) ſuffering any Oſtlers or idle boyes to waſh him, for it is the onely venemous poyſon & worſt euill you can beſtowe vpon your horſes body; ſometimes foundring him, ſometimes thruſting him into the fute of an Ague, and when it workes the beſt,

beſt yet it ſtrikes ſuch an inward cold into his bodie that the Horſe is worſe therefore ſometimes for a yeare after: when you haue ſet your horſe vp, tyed his head to the emptie racke, and put great ſtore of litter vnder him, you ſhall then firſt with drie wiſpes rubbe his bellie, fore-boothes, and vnder his flancks betwixt his thighes and body, then ſhall you rubbe all his foure legges paſſing cleane with your hands wet in water, ſcowring all grauell and durt both out of his Fetlocks, Paſterne, and euery other crannie which is about any ioynt, eſpecially at the bottome of his breſt betweene his fore-legs, and betwixt his ribs and his elbowes, and alſo betweene his flanck and his body, then with drye wiſpes you ſhall rubbe and make cleane his face, head, necke, buttockes, and euery other member, not leauing whilſt there is one wette hayre about him, then ſhall you with drye wiſpes make cleane his ſtirrops and ſtirrop leathers, and vnlooſing his garths one by one, make them cleane alſo, then making your houſing cloath ready (without which I would haue no keeper to ride if his horſe be of any eſtimation) take off your ſaddle, and with drye ſtrawe rubbe his backe very ſoundly, then laying a good deale of ſtrawe vpon his backe, gird his cloath ouer it with your ſurſingle, and ſtop him round about with great wiſpes, then you ſhall vnlooſe his tayle, and if it bee durty you ſhall waſh it in a peale of water, and after you haue wrung it well you ſhall tye a great wiſpe of ſtrawe within it, to keepe it from his legges. If you haue no houſing cloath for your horſe then you ſhall not ſo ſodainly remoone your Saddle, but after your horſe is ſufficiently rubd you ſhall then ſtop his garthes with great wiſpes round about. Many Horſe-men vſe as ſoone as they bring

bring their Horſe into the Stable, to knit a thumbe roape of hay or ſtrawe as ſtraite as may bee about the vpper part of the horſes docke, and doe imagine it will preſerue him from taking colde, and doubtleſſe it is verie good indeed.

After your Horſe is in this wiſe rub'd, dry'd, and clenſed from ſweate and filthineſſe, you ſhall then take vp his foure legges one after one, and with an yron pick all the durt and grauell from betwixt his ſhooes and his feete, and then ſtoppe them vp cloſe with Cowe dung, then you ſhall put into his racke a penny bottle of hay on which you ſhall let him towſe and pull, with his brydle in his mouth ſtill, whileſt you ſhake vp his litter hanſomly about him, take your ſaddle, and if the pannel bee wett, drie it by ſome fire, then with a ſticke beate it and make it ſoft, then pull off your owne bootes, and refreſh your ſelfe to your owne contentment, in which buſines hauing imployed your ſelfe an houre or more, then come into the ſtable and take your horſes brydle and put on his coller, then waſh the bitt or ſnaffle in faire water, drie it with a linnen or wollen cloath, and ſo hang it vp hanſomly; then after your horſe hat eaten hay a quarter of an houre or more, you ſhall in a ſiue fift him halfe a pecke of cleane Oates, or Peaſe and Oates, which your Horſe likes better, and giue them him, then if hee haue eaten all his hay, you ſhall giue him another bottle, and ſo let him reſt till your ſelfe haue ſupped. After ſupper you ſhall come to your Horſe and turne vp his cloath euen to his ſurfingle, and either with a haire cloath or with drie wiſpes, you ſhall rub his bodie all ouer, eſpeciallie vnder his belly and betweene his leggs: then you ſhall looke vpon his backe, whether your ſaddle haue

pinchs

pincht or wrung his backe, and if it haue, you shall lay a little wett hay vpon the swelling, and presentlie cause some Sadler to mend your saddle, then you shall looke if the heate of your saddle haue not raised any warbles or little knots vpon his backe, which is verie common with fat horses, and if it haue, you shall bathe them with a little Sacke heated in a saucer, and they will be well the next morning. This done, you shall sift him another halfe pecke of Oates, and giue them him, then whilst hee is eating them, you shall with hard drie wispes, rubbe all his foure legges as drie as may be, and then take a quart of mans vrine, and put thereto foure ounces of salt-peeter, and hauing boyl'd them vpon the fire, and stirred it well together, take it off, and beeing reasonable warme, bath all his legges therewith exceedingly: then let him stand for an houre or two after, then you shall take a Peale-full of colde water, and put thereto as much hott water as will make it luke warme, and so giue it your horse to drinke: then sift him another halfe pecke of Oates, and giue them him: then giue him as much hay as will serue him all night, the proportion whereof you may gesse by his former keeping; and putting his litter close and warme about him, let him stand till the next morning, at what time (according to the haste of your affaires) you shall come to him either earlyer or later, and the first thing you doe after you haue put away his dung, you shall put off his cloath, and currie, rubbe, and dresse him sufficiently, and in such manner as hath beene formerly declared vnto you: then cast his cloath ouer him, and let it hang loose about him, then bring him a little colde water, and let him drinke, but not halfe so much as hee would; then giue him another halfe pecke

of

of Oates, and whileſt hee is eating them put on your bootes, and prepare your ſelfe for your iourney, which done, come to your Horſe; and if hee haue eaten his Oates, then you ſhall ſaddle him, truſſe vp his tayle, brydle him, and tye him vp to the bare racke, hauing taken his hay away, then take vp all his foure feete, and plucke out the Cowe dung wherewith you ſtopped them and picke them exceeding cleane; then let him ſtand till you be ready for your iourney.

Now if it be ſo that the occaſion of your iourney be ſo great, that you cannot obſerue any trauelling pace, but are forc't to gallop your horſe at leaſt twentie, or thirtie, or fortie mile together; in this caſe, I would not haue you by any meanes to water your horſe brfore you come to your Inne, but hauing ſet him vp warme, and rubbed him drie, as is before ſhewed; you ſhall then before you giue him hay, or any thing elſe, take a pinte of very good Sacke, and warming it luke warme, giue it your Horſe with a horne, and ſo let him reſt halfe an houre after, and then giue him hay, and order him as was before ſhewed, onelie in ſteade of warme water late at night, you ſhall giue him a warme maſh of Mault and water, for that with the helpe of trauell, will bring away his molten greaſe; if the next day following you are to ride him as violently alſo; you ſhall then when you are readie to take his backe, giue him a pinte of Sacke and Sugar-candie well brew'd together, and in your trauell euer fauour him as much as you can in the beginning, and put him foorth as violently as you pleaſe at the latter end of your iourney. If you happen vpon ſuch an Inne where you can neither get Sacke nor Sugar-candie, then if you take ſtroug Ale brewed with great

ſtore of Ginger, Sinnamon, it will bee as good.

If your horſe bee of a tender and daintie ſtomacke, ſo that hee will refuſe his prouender (as for the moſt part hot mettald horſes and young horſes vnacquainted with trauell will doe) then you muſt take the greater paines, and be euer feeding them, neuer giuing them aboue an handfull at once, till they haue eaten to your contentment. You ſhall alſo change their meate oft, as thus: after an handfull of cleane Oates, you ſhall giue an handfull of Peaſe and Oates; and after peaſe and oates, halfe a dozen bits of bread. And thus by alteration of foode you ſhall both make your horſe eate well, and alſo ſtrengthen his appetite: but if contrarie to this, your horſe bee both a greate eater, and a groſſe, then you ſhall feede him ſo oft, and with ſuch large proportions, that you bring him to ſtand and blow vpon his meate as it lyes before him. But this you muſt not doe by no meanes ſuddenly, or at one time when your horſe is hungrie, for that were to kill him, or make him ſurfeit: but you muſt doe it by ſuch leaſurable times, that nature hauing no more then ſhe is able to diſgeſt, may in the end come to be orderly ſatisfied: at what time, and not before, you may bee aſſured your horſe is in perfit ſtrength and keeping.

The firſt principall note or rule which euery good Keeper ſhall obſerue when he comes into any ſtrange ſtable, is with his owne hands to cleanſe the racke from all duſt, filth, hay, or hay-ſeedes, and to rub the maunger alſo as clean as may be in euery part, leaſt any infectious Horſe haue ſtood there before, which is moſt dangerous: and for preuention whereof I would euer haue you in an Inne to let your horſe eate his prouender in a Skuttell,

or

or ſome other cleanly veſſell, and not in the maunger.

Now laſtly, where as the moſt of our Engliſh trauellers doe vſe (eſpecially in the Summer) to baite or reſt their horſes at the noon time of the day, ſuppoſing it prepares them the better for their iourney: although I know the heate of the day is troubleſome, both to the horſe and man: yet I know theſe baytings are much more troubleſome, neither would I haue any man to vſe them; for when the horſe hath his limbes chafte and heated with his trauell, and then is ſet vp till they be growne ſtiffe and colde, and ſo preſently put to his labour againe, then I ſay the very paine and griefe of his limbes doe ſo trouble him, that except he bee of an extraordinary ſpirit, hee will be much ſubiect to faintneſſe in trauell; beſides to make your horſe iourney continually vpon a full ſtomacke is both painfull, and breedes ſicknes; wherefore I conclude, theſe baytes are good for none but Carriers and Poulters jades, whoſe labours not being aboue foot pace, may euer like Aſſes haue their prouender baggs at their noſes. And thus much touching a Horſes exerciſe and labour.

Chap. 6.

Of Sleeping, Waking, Fulneſſe, and Emptineſſe.

SLeepe in a Horſe (as in euery other beaſt which hath mooving) is a moſt neceſſarie and eſpeciall thing, neither can a Horſe liue without it, wherefore it is the place and office of euery good Keeper, to haue a carefull regard to the reſt of his Horſe, and to note

both after what manner he ſleepeth and how long hee ſleepeth : for if a Horſe ſleepe verie much, it is a great ſigne of dulneſſe, and fluxe of groſſe and colde humours in the braine : but if he ſleepe for the moſt part ſtanding, it is a token that he hath ſome inward paine in his backe, or bodie, and feareth to lie downe, leaſt hee cannot riſe againe without much torment : If a Horſe lie much, yet ſleepe but a little, it is a ſigne of weake ioyntes, frettized feete, or limbes beaten with trauell : if the Horſe neither ſleepe, nor lie much, but as it were wake continually, it is a ſigne the Horſe hath both a pained bodie, and a troubled minde, inſomuch that he cannot poſſiblie liue long, both becauſe hee wantes that which giueth the greateſt ſtrength to Nature, and alſo the chiefeſt meanes both of blood and diſgeſtion; ſleepe being indeede nothing elſe but certaine ſweete vapours, which aſcending from the heart, numbes the braine, and keepes the body for a time ſenceleſſe, ſo that euery keeper ſhould haue a carefull eye ouer his Horſe, to ſee how he ſleepes, when, and how long time : then how he wakes, when he wakes, and after what manner hee wakes, for if he wake much, his braine is diſeaſed, if hee wake often or ſuddainly, his heart, liuer, or ſtomacke is grieued ; and if hee wake ſeldome or with much adoe, then his whole powers are ouercome with ſome colde humour.

Next vnto theſe obſeruations, the carefull keeper ſhall looke to his horſes fulnes, or the filling of his belly, I doe not meane thoſe phiſicall fillings which conſiſt in humours either generally or particularly diſtributed ouer the bodie, conſiſting in quantitie or qualitie, for they are obſeruations fit for the farryer ; but to that fulnes which onely conſiſteth in the exceſſe of meate, wherefore the

the keeper ſhall note well the temper of the horſes feeding, that is, whether hee fill ſuddainly or ſlowly and according to his filling, ſo to temper his dyet, and to giue him the leſſe or the more meate according to his appetite, keeping the groſſe horſe emptie the longer before his trauell, and the tender horſe with meate till your foot be readie to be thruſt into the ſtirrop, for the full horſe with ſuddaine labour will ſoone burſt, and the emptie horſe with much faſting will not bee able to indure any violence through faintneſſe.

Next to your horſes filling you ſhall note his manner of emptying, that is the ſtate of his bodie, whether he be coſtiue or ſollible, or whether his vrine haue a free or troubleſome paſſage, and by the rule of them you ſhall feede your horſe more or leſſe, as thus, if your horſe be ſollible or free of vrine, you through that helpe of nature may aduenture to feede him the harder, for albe he fill much, yet he holdeth not that fulneſſe any long ſeaſon, but hauing an eaſie diſgeſtion, bringes his bodie ſoone to a temperate emptineſſe: but if hee bee coſtiue or haue ſtraite paſſage for his vrine, although faſting be the greateſt cauſe of coſtiuenes, yet when you prepare your horſe for a iourney, you ſhall not neede to feede him ſo extreamly, neither ſhall your meate bee for the moſt part any drie foode but rather moiſt waſht meate, of which foodes I ſhall haue cauſe to ſpeake more largely in the booke of Running horſes.

Now you ſhall vnderſtand that fulnes and emptineſſe are phiſike helpes one for another, the full horſe beeing to be cured by emptineſſe, as faſting, purgation, letting blood, or ſuch like: and emptineſſe to be cured by fulneſſe, as by reſtauration or renewing of thoſe powers

which are decayed; so that the Keeper carefully obseruing these rules, shall so quickly perceiue any imperfection in his horse, that a sleight preuention shall quickly auoide the greatest mischiefe. And thus much for *sleepe* and *feeding*.

Chap. 7.

Of the Soyle, or scowring Horses with Grasse, and of other foodes.

TOuching the opinions of Horse-men for the scowring of Horses with grasse, they be diuers and intricate; some holding forrage, which is the blades of greene Corne, as of Wheate or Barley to be the best, some three leaued grasse, some young thistles, and such like, so also there is a difference amongst them for the time in scowring; one allowing but fifteene daies, another a month, and another the whole summer, neither are they certaine in the place where the Horse should be scowred, for some would haue it in the stable, some in a large Parke or field, and some in a little wall'd plot of ground, not aboue the quantitie of one or two Akers.

Now to reconcile all these, and to bring them to as orderly a conformitie, as is fit for a reasonable vnderstanding, I will declare mine opinion. First, if your horse bee either Hunting horse, Running horse, or one that hath beene vsed to much trauell or iourneying, I holde it verie necessary that hee be scowred with grasse, either in some Parke, Close, or other spacious ground, where hee may haue sweet feeding, fresh springes, or riuers to drinke at, and good shelter both to defend him from flies and

and Sun-shine, the time to bee for foure monthes, that is to say, from the beginning of May to the end of August, in which time hee will not onely scowre and purge himselfe of grosse and corrupt humours, but also after such clensing grow strong, fat, and full of health and liuelinesse recouering by such rest and liberty, that weakenesse, stiffenesse, and numbnesse of ioyntes which his labour before had brought vnto him. But if your horse be a beast of great courage, and onely wantonly kept, either for your mornings exercise in riding, or for seruice in the warres, so that he will neither indure with any patience abroad, nor hath beene put to any such extreamitie that hee standeth neede of recouerie: then I would haue you only to put him to the soyle within the house, that is to say, you shall from the beginging of Iune till the beginning of Iuly feed your Horse onely with grasse and no longer: and during the time, you shall neither cloath him, dresse him, nor ride him, only you shal keepe his planchers cleane from dung, and litter him with nothing but the offall or reffuse grasse which hee pulls into the maunger, but will not eate: You shal also during this soyle time feede him with prouender in such sort as you did at other times, only I would haue his prouẽder to be Bean bread well bak'd, as for his grasse, if the first 3. daies of soyle time, you doe giue him forrage 'tis exceeding good, and after the sowrest grasse you can get, as that which in Orchards growes vnder fruit trees, or else such as growes in Garden alleyes, for the more sowrer and courser the grasse is, the better it scowreth; & in this case you should respect no feeding, neither should you mow any more grasse at one time, then your horse can conuenientlie eate in the instant; as for making your Horse to

neeſe much, or to purge his head much by fumigation in the ſoyle it is needleſſe, for the graſſe it ſelfe will doe it ſufficiently without any other medicine. If your Horſe during his time of being in the ſoyle, happen to ſwell in his ſheath, or about his cods, it ſhall be exceeding good in that caſe once or twice a day, either to ſwimme him, or to ride him through ſome water that wil reach aboue the horſes middle belly; but for making a daily exerciſe of ſwimming him without any ſpeciall occaſion, I doe greatly diſalow it, for it both ſtraines a horſes limbs, and brings him within the danger of Crampes and conuulti-ons, neither doe I allow (although it be the practiſe both of the *Italians* and ſome of our Engliſh keepers) to giue a horſe when hee is in ſoyle either ſcowring or purgation, as either ſodden Rie, Mellons, green Figges, the intralles of a Tench or Barbell mixt with white wine, or any ſuch like trumperie, for I haue ſeene where ſuch like courſes haue beene taken that the Horſe hath falne into ſuch an vnnatural ſcowring, that no poſſible meanes would ſtop it, till the horſe hath dyed with the violence. Others haue vſed in the ſoyle, in ſtead of wholſome and drie prouender, which is fitteſt to bee mixt with ſuch colde, moiſt, and raw foode, to giue their horſes either ſodden Beanes well ſalted, and wheat-branne, or Coleworts and branne, or elſe boyl'd Bucke, all which are both vnwhol-ſome, full of rottennes, and breede many foule diſeaſes, wherefore I aduiſe all Keepers to bee carefull to eſchew them; and rather to take leaſure and feede with ſuch foods as are both healthfull and natural, of which kindes you haue had already formerly declared. And thus much touching the Soyle, and the ſcowring of horſes in the Summer ſeaſon.

CHAP. 8.

Chap. 8.

Of the passions which are in Horses, and the loue which Keepers should beare vnto them.

LEauing to make any philosophicall discourse, or to argue of the passions or affections which are in horses, how they haue their beginnings frō sense, & their workings according to the course of nature. It is most certaine, that euery horse is possest with these passions, *Loue*, *Ioy*, *Hate*, *Sorrow*, and *Feare*: the first two springing from the alacritie, chearefulnesse, and good disposition of the minde, by which the Horse is made to be familiar with the man, obedient, kinde and docible, the other three from the corruption and putrifaction of nature, by which he becomes fierce, madde, and full of amazement, so that it is the office of euerie Keeper out of his iudgement and experience to learne to knowe when and at what time his horse is oppreſt or troubled with the Fluxe of any of these affections, that hee may by the applying of fit remedies abate and suppresse them in the excesse of their greatnesse, which nothing doth at any time sooner bring to passe then the mildenes and gentle disposition of the keeper towards his horse, for it is most certaine, that when keepers of Horses either out of their chollericke furies, or ignorant mis-behauiours, doe any thing about a horse either rashly, violently, or with the vse of vnnecessarie torment, that they onely by such indiscretion do create in horses all those euill affections

from

from whence any restiffe quallitie doth proceede, and therefore euery Keeper must with all lenitie, and sobernes both in worde and action procure the loue of the horse which he keepeth. And yet I doe not meane that a good keeper shall be altogether so voide of indignation, that hee shall suffer his horse to runne into any kinde of vice, without the touch of correction, for thereby I haue seene many horses so desolute and disobedient, that they haue gone beyond the power of reclayming, whence it hath come that some Horses haue slaine their Keepers, and some haue done almost as euill in other courses. A good keeper therefore must know when to correct and when to cherish, not giuing either blow or angry word, but in the instant of the offence, not to punish or strike the horse any longer then whilst his present fault rests in his memory. Also I would haue the keeper to obserue, that where gentleneffe and meeknes will preuaile, there by no meanes to put in any vse, either terror or torment, for as the Keepers greatest labour is but to procure loue from the Horse, so the onely thing that is pleasant to the horse, is loue from the Keeper; insomuch that there must be a sincere and incorporated friendship betwixt them, or else they cannot delight or profit each other, of which loue the Keepet is to giue testimonie, both by his gentle language to his horse, and by taking from him any thing which he shall beholde to annoy or hurt him, as moates, dust, superfluous haires, flyes in Summer, or any such like thing, and by oft feeding him out of his hand, by which meanes the Horse will take such delight and pleasure in his keepers company, that hee shall neuer approach him, but the horse will with a kinde of cheerefull or inward neying, show the ioy hee takes

takes to behold him, and where this mutuall loue is knit and combined, there the beast must needes prosper, and the man reape reputation and profit. And thus much for the Horses passions, and the Keepers affections.

Chap. 9.

The Office of the Coachman, and obseruations for his place.

THe vse of Coaches hath not beene of any long continuance in this kingdome, especially in that generall fashion, as now they are vsed: for if formerly they were in the hands, and for the ease of some particular great persons, yet now either thorough the benefits which are found by them, or through the vnaccustomed rareneſſe of them, they are growne as common as hackneyes, and are in the handes of as many as either esteeme reputation, or are numbred in the Catalogue of rich persons: Wherfore since they are in such generall vse, and esteemed such a generall good, I thinke is not fit in this my generall booke of Horſ-manship, to omit or forget some necessary obseruations which are helpefull and needfull to be knowne vnto the skilfull Coatch-man, and the rather, sith the cõmodities which redound thereby, are chiefly imployed in the seruices of Ladies and Gentlewomen, to whome both my selfe and euery honest man is in his first creation obliged, yet I doe not meane herein to make any tedious or long discourse, either of the benefits of Coatches, the diuersities, proportions, shapes, nor alterations, because euery vnſtanding

vnderstanding Coach-maker, and euery seruiceable Coach-man can giue proofes and reasons of each difference: neither is my profession to meddle with the shapes of timber, but with the natures of horses; nor will I speake of the seuerall customes or fashions of *Italie*, or *Fraunce*, because as farre as I can iudge, whatsoeuer wee practise in this art of Coach-gouerning is but an imitation of the shapes and chaunges of those Kingdomes; therefore for mine owne part I meane heere onely to handle some fewe notes touching the choyce of Coach-horses, their keeping, and apparaling.

Of the choise of Coatch-horses.

First then to speake of the choyce of Coach-horses: Some are of opinion that your *Flemish* Horse is the best for that purpose, because he is of strong limbes, hath a full breast, a good chyne, and is naturally trayned vp more to draught then to burthen: others doe preferre before these Horses the *Flemish* Mares (and I am of that opinion also) both because of their more temperate and coole spirits, their quiet sociableness in company, and their bringings vp, which only is in the wagon, by which meanes trauelling with more patience, thy are euer of more strength and indurnace, yet both these horses and Mares haue their faults euer coupled to their vertues, as first their paces are for the most part short trots, which containe much labour in a little ground, and so bring faintnesse of spirit in little iournyes, whereas indeed a Coach-horse should stretch foorth his feete, and the smoother and longer he strides the more way he riddes, and the sooner comes to his iournyes end without tyring. Next, their limbes from the knees and Cambrells downeward are so rough and hayrie, and the horses naturally of themselues so subiect to fault and fretting

fretting humours in thoſe partes, that neither can the Coach-man keepe them from the *Paines*, *Scratches*, *Mallanders*, *Sellanders*, and ſuch like diſeaſes, nor the Farrier oft times with his beſt skill cure them when they are diſeaſed. Laſtly they are for the moſt part of reſty and hot ſpirits, ſo that albe they be exellent and forward in the draught, yet in our Engliſh Nation amongſt our deepe clayes and myrie waies, they are not able to continue, but growe faint and weary of their labour, and it is euer a rule amongſt them, that after they haue beene once tyred there is no meanes againe to reſtore them to their firſt mettall or ſpirit.

Now to tell you mine opinion which is the beſt Coach horſe either for ſtreetes of Citties, or iourneying vpon the high waies, I hold not any horſe comparable either for ſtrength, courage, or labour with the large ſhap'd Engliſh Gelding, for he is as milde and ſociable as the Flemiſh Mare, more able to indure trauell, better ſhap'd, and longer continues in ſeruice, for the Mare if ſhe be proudly kept (as of neceſſity the Coach-mare muſt be) ſhe will then couet the horſe, and if ſhe haue him and hold to him her yeares ſeruice is loſt, if ſhe want him, you ſhall either indanger her life with the corruption of her pride, or elſe with Leproſie; but if they be ſpead or gelt Mares, they be then the worſt of all, for the body and ſpirits being ſo much ouer-coold they are vtterly diſabled for any violent extremity: look how much the Gelding is ſhort of the ſtond-horſe in courage, ſo much is the ſpead Mare ſhort of the Gelding: wherfore for the auoyding of all inconueniences, the beſt for the Coach is the large, ſtrong, Engliſh Gelding; the next him is the Flemiſh Mare, and the laſt is

the

the Flemish horse, the *Full nder* is exceeding good, but hee is somewhat too little and too fierce of nature, but for tyring that will hee seldome or neuer doe, with any indifferent order. When you haue determined touching the breede, or race of your Coatch-horses, you shall then looke to their shapes and colours; First for their colours, I haue formerly showed you which is the best, so that you shall obserue that in any case (so neare as you can chuse them) your Coatch-horses bee all of one colour, without diuersitie, and that their markes or semblances be also alike, as thus for example: If the one haue either white starre, or white rache, bald face, white foote, or be of pide colour, that then the others haue the like also. For their shapes, you shall chuse a leane proportioned head, a strong and firme necke, a full, broad, and round out-breast, a limbe flat, short ioynted, leane and well haired, a good bending ribbe, a strong backe, and a round buttocke; generally they would bee of a broad strong making, and of the tallest stature, for such are most seruiceable for the draught, and best able to indure the toyle of deepe trauell. Now for the properties, they must be as nearely alyed in nature and disposition, as in colour, shape and height, for if the one be free, and the other dull, then the free horse taking all the labour, must necessarily ouer-toyle himselfe, and soone both destroy his life and courage, so that they must bee of a like spirit and mettall: also you must haue an especiall regard that their paces bee alike, and that the one neither trot faster then the other, nor take larger strides then the other, for if their feete doe not rise from the ground together, there can be no indifferencie or equality in their draught, but the one must ouer-toyle the other,

other, whereas indeed they ought to bee of such equall strengthes, paces, and spirits, that as it were one body their labour should be deuided equally amongst them; they ought also (as neare as you can) to bee of louing, tractable and milde dispositions, not giuen to bite, strike, and especially not to yerke and strike with their hinder-legges backward, for it both doth indanger the life of the man, and also doth hazard the spoyling of the horse, by ouerthrowing himselfe in his harnesse. They should also haue perfect, good and tender mouthes; and ought to haue their heades well setled vpon the bitt before they come into the Coatch, being learnt to turne readily vpon either hand, without discontentment or rebellion, to stoppe close and firme; and to retyre backe freely with good spirit and courage; which are lessons fully sufficient to make a compleate good Coatch-horse; for although some Coatch-men more for brauery or pride then either for Art or profit, will make their horse stand and coruet in their Coaches, yet I would haue all good Coach-men knowe, that such motions are both vnfitt, vncomly, and most hurtfull for Coach horses; not onely taking from them the benefite and delight in trauell, but also making the Horse to mistake his corrections, and when hee growes to any faintnesse or dulnesse, or comes into any such ground where the depth thereof puts him to his full strength; nay sometimes the Coach stickes and will not come away at the first twitch, if then the Coach-man jert them forward with his whip, they presently fall to coruet and leape, refusing to drawe, in their greatest time of necessitie.

Now for the manner of keeping them, and dyeting them; they ate in all pointes to bee dreſt, pickt, and curryed

curryed like your ordinary trauelling Horſe, and to haue their foode and walkings after the ſame manner, onely their allowance of prouender would bee of the greateſt ſize, for their labour beeing for the moſt part extreame, and themſelues generally Horſes of groſſe nature, their chiefeſt ſtrengthes moſt often dependes vpon the fulneſſe of their bellies. In iourneying you ſhall vſe them as is before taught, for iourneying horſes, onely if they be either Flemiſh Horſes or Flemiſh Mares, and by that meanes bee ſubiect to paines and Scratches, then after your iourney when you haue bathed your Horſes leggs with piſſe and Salt-peeter, you ſhall then annoint all his paſternes and fetlockes, with Hogs-greaſe and muſtard mingled together, and if hee haue either ſcratches or paines, it will kill them; if hee haue none, it will preuent them from growing, and keepe his legges cleane howſoeuer hee be diſpoſed.

Now for the harneſſing or attyring of Coach-horſes, you muſt haue a great care that the long pillowe before his breaſt, bee of gentle leather, full, round and verie ſoft ſtopt, and that the little ſquare pillowes ouer the point of his wythers and tops of his ſhoulders, be likewiſe verie ſoft, for they beare the weight of his harneſſe, and ſome part of his draught, you ſhall ſee that the hinder part of your harneſſe which compaſſeth the neather part of his buttockes, and reſtes aboue the Horſes hinder houghes bee eaſie and large, not fretting or gauling off the haire from thoſe partes, as for the moſt part you ſhall ſee amongſt vnskilful Coachmen, the draught breadthes or Coach treates, which extend from the breaſt of the Horſe to the bridge-tree of the Coach, muſt bee of exceeding ſtrong double leather, well wrought and ſewed,

which

which (till you bring your horſe to the Coach) you muſt throw ouer your horſes backe croſ-wiſe, your headſtall and reynes of your bridle, muſt likewiſe bee either of ſtrong leather, or elſe of round wouen lines, made of ſilke or threed, according to the abilitie of the owner, or the delight of the Coach-man: yet to ſpeake the truth, thoſe lines of ſilke or threed are the better, becauſe they are more nimble, and come and goe more eaſily: as for your bittes, and the proportion of your cheekes, they are formerly diſcribed, and muſt be ſorted according to the quallitie of the Horſes mouth. Now foraſmuch as I cannot ſo ſufficiently in wordes figure out the proportions of euery ſeuerall part of theſe harneſſes, neither in what ſorte they ſhall bee ordered becauſe they alter according to the number of the horſes, two horſes beeing attyred after one ſort, three after another, and foure different from both, to giue a full ſatisfaction to euery ignorant Coach-man: I doe therefore aduiſe all that are deſirous to better their iudgements in ſuch knowledges to repaire to the Stables of great Princes where commonly are the bell-men of this Art, and there to beholde how euery thing in his true proportion is ordered, and from thence to draw vnto himſelfe rules for his owne inſtruction; onely theſe ſleight precepts I will beſtow vpon him: Firſt, that hee haue euer a conſtant ſweete hand vpon his horſes mouth, by no meanes looſing the feeling thereof, but obſeruing that the horſe doe reſt vpon his bitt, and carrie his head and reyne in a good and comely faſhion: for to goe with his head looſe, or to haue no feeling of the bitt, is both vncomely to the eye, and takes from the horſe all delight in his labour. Next when you turne vpon either hand, you ſhall onely drawe in

your inmoſt hand, and giue your outmoſt libertie, as thus for example: If you turne vpon your left hand, you ſhall draw in your left reyne a little ſtraiter, which gouernes the horſe vpon the left ſide, and the right reyne you ſhall giue libertie vnto, which gouernes the horſe on the right hand, ſo that the horſe of the neare ſide with the left hand comming inward, muſt neceſſarily whether he will or no, bring the horſe of the farre ſide, (which is the right hand) to follow him: and in theſe turnes you muſt euer bee aſſured to take a full compaſſe of ground, both according to the length of the Coach, and the skill of the horſes, for there is nothing doth amaze or diſturb a Coach-horſe more then when he is forc't to turn ſodainly, or ſtraiter then the Coach will giue him leaue, whence hee firſt learnes to gagg vp his head to looſe his reyne, and to diſorder contrarie to his owne diſpoſition. You ſhall alſo make your horſes after they haue ſtopt, ſtand ſtill conſtantly, and not to fridge vp and downe preſſing one while forward, another while backeward, both to the diſeaſe of themſelues, and the trouble of others: The Coach-man alſo ſhall not vpon euery ſleight errour or ſloathfulneſſe correct his horſe with the jerte or laſh of his whippe, for that will make them dull vpon the correction, but he ſhall rather now and then ſcarre them with the noyſe and ſmart ſound of the laſh of his whippe, ſuffering them onely to feele the torment in the time of greateſt extremitie: you ſhall when you firſt intend to breake a horſe for the Coach for two or three dayes before you bring him vnto the Coach, cauſe him to be put vnto the Cart, placing him in that place which Carters call the laſh, ſo that hee may haue two Horſes to follow behinde him whome together with the loade

that

that is in the Cart he cannot draw away; and two horſes before him, which with the ſtrength of his traytes will keepe him in an eeuen way without flying out, either vpon one ſide or other. Thus when you haue made him a little tame, and that hee knowes what it is to draw, and feeles the ſetling of the neather part of the coller vnto his breaſt, then you may put him vnto the Coach, ioyning vnto him an olde Horſe, which hath both a good mouth, and is of coole qualities, that if the younger horſe ſhall fall into any franticke paſſion, yet his ſtayednes may euer rule and gouerne him, till cuſtome and trauell haue perfitely brought him to knowe his labour: I haue ſeene a Coach-man who hath put two young horſes vnbroken into a Coach together, and I haue ſeene them run away, ouer-throwe and breake the Coach, and miſchiefe the Coach-man: wherefore I would haue euery Coach-man that will worke with Art and ſafetie to take longer time, more paines, and by the method before ſhewed to bring his horſes vnto perfection.

The laſt obſeruations that I would haue a Coach-man keepe, is that whenſoeuer he goes abroad with his Coach, he be aſſured euer to carrie with him his horſes cloathes, then whenſoeuer hee ſhall bee forced either through attendance, or other chances to ſtand ſtill any long time, hee may caſt the cloathes ouer his horſes, to keep them warme, and from the coldnes of the weather. Hee ſhall alſo haue euer in his Coach-coffer, Hammer, Pinſers, Wimble, Cheſſell, and Nayles, that if any ſmall fault happen about his Coach, hee may himſelfe amend it, hee ſhall alſo haue in his Coach-coffer, oyntments for his Horſes leggs and hooſes, eſpecially if they be *Flemiſh*, for they haue ſeldome or neuer good hooſes;

hee ſhall alſo haue ſhoomakers blacking to dreſſe the outſide of his Coach and harneſſe with: hee ſhall haue a bruſh for the inſide, a blunt iron to dreſſe his wheeles, either oyle or ſope for his axeltrees; and mayne-combe, curry combe, and other dreſſing cloathes for his horſe, ſo that generally hee ſhall keepe his Horſes neately; his wood-worke cleanely, his leather blacke, his buckles bright, and euery other ſeuerall ornament in ſuch comelineſſe, as may bee for the owners profite, and the keepers reputation. And thus much for the Coachman and his office.

***

The end of the Fift Booke.



CAVALARICE,
OR
The Currier.

Containing the Art, knowledge, and dyet of the running Horſe, either in trayning vp, or in any great march or wager.

The Sixt Booke.

Newly corrected and augmented.

By Geruaſe Markham.





LONDON

Printed by *Edw: Allde* for *Edward White*, and are to be ſold at his ſhop neere the little north doore of Saint Paules Church at the ſigne of the Gun. 1617.





To the Right Honorable the moſt Noble and mightie Lord PHYLIP HERBERT, Earle of *Mountgomerie* and Baron of *Shirland*.

AS oft as I beholde that poore houſe from whome I am deſcended, ſo oft I beholde vndying monuments of the noble and gracious fauours which by your famous Grand-father and moſt renowned Father, were plentiouſly powred vpon our familie, ſo that whileſt the glew of Lime and Simant ſhall knit ſtones together, ſo long in our houſe will be held their memories. From theſe motiues (moſt excellent Lord) and from the loue I ſee you beare to this Art which I profeſſe, I am imboldned to offer to your noble handes, the view of theſe my labours, in which, howſoeuer my Art may bee controled, yet it ſhall vnder the defence of your countenance iuſtifie it ſelfe both by the groundes of experience and reaſon, and though my obſcuritie liue vnaccompained with popular opinion, yet when I ſhall be try'd, I hope I ſhall proue vnſophiſticat, and the rather ſith my nature hath euer loathed to bee adorned with falſe fiers; yet that I am the meaneſt of many I know, and my ſelfe am vnto my ſelfe a teſtimonie, and that I deſire no greater height mine Inambition hath proued, onely your Honours good opinion ſhall be the ayme of my longings, and that gained, I ſhall dye your honours humbly deuoted,

GERVASE MARK

To all the louers of running Horſes.

I Haue not found any particular ſport or maſterie whatſoeuer, of more antiquitie or honorable eſtimation, then the vſe of running Horſes; ſo that if in our actions wee are to take imitation from the *Auncients*, then without queſtion there is no man able to ſtand vp againſt this pleaſure, beeing both moſt olde, and moſt royallie defended by the authoritie of many Emperours. But leaſt my ſuppoſition, ſhould drawe on a queſtion vncreated, I will forbeare to defend what none will impugne, and onely ſay, if I haue to the Art giuen as good rules as all men will giue allowance to the ſport, there is no doubt but I ſhall reape thankes in great meaſure. Well what I haue done, let experience iudge, and where I haue made any eſcape after a due tryall, let mee receiue the rigor of a humane charitie; ſo though I ſmart, yet I ſhall not bee confounded, but liue either to recant or make ſatisfaction:

Farewell.

G. M.

CAVALARICE.

The sixt Booke.

CHAP. I.

Of the running Horse in generall, and of their choise.

IF the auncienteſt vertue be moſt honorable, (as it is a principall *maxime* amongſt our Heraulds) then without all queſtion there is nothing more famous in this renowned Arte of Horſe-manſhip, then the practiſe and vſe of running Horſes, beeing as auncient as the *Olimpian* games in the dayes of *Hercules*, and ſo ſucceſſiuely deriued downe to the dayes of our lateſt Emperours in all which wee may reade of the great glories of the Horſes and the infinite rewardes and hie places of

of preferment bestowed vpon their Riders, in which we may behold both the fame of the exercise by the Princely foundation, and the necessitie and vertue by the delight of such Emperiall Maiesties.

And truly in these our latter dayes wherein wee study to controll the monuments of our fore-Fathers, this almost obscured Arte hath found out such Princely and vertuous mainteyners, that being but only cherrish'd in the coldest clymate of this Region, it is now famously nourished ouer al the Kingdome, to the eternall honour of their famous names, and to the exalt of the most seruiceable Beast that euer was created: Wherefore (to speake generally of running Horses) albe amongst old writers (whose readinges were much better then their rydings) they haue giuen the greatest prehemineence to the *Portugals* or *Spanish Ienets*, and chiefely to those which are bredde by the Riuer *Tagus*, or neare vnto *Lisbone*, comparing them to the windes, and such like impossible motions; yet we by our experience in these latter times, and out of our industrious labours, finde, that the *Turkes* are much swifter horses, and the *Barbaries* much swifter then the *Turkes*, and some *English* Horses and Geldings swifter then either *Ienet*, *Turke*, or *Barbary*, witnesse gray *Dallauell*, being the Horse vpon which the Earle of *Northumberland* roade in the last rebellon of the North: witnesse gray *Valentine*, which dyed a Horse neuer conquered; the Hobbie of Maister *Thomas Carletons*, and at this houre most famous *Puppey* against whom men may talke, but they cannot conquer.

Now therefore if your delight sway you to the exercise of this sport, you shall be very carefull in chusing a Horse fit for your purpose, wherein the chiefest thing

to

to bee regarded is his spirit and shape: for his spirit it would be free and actiue, inclined to chearefulnes, lightnes, and forwardnes to labour, scope or gallop; for a Horse of dull, idle, and heauie nature, can neuer either be swift or nimble: the lumpishnesse of his minde taking away the action and agilitie of his members.

Now for his shape it would bee of the finest, for seldome (in horses) doe naturall deformed shapes harbour any extraordinarie vertue, yet for more particularitie, I would haue him to holde most of the shapes of your hunting Horse, onely some sleight errours, you may beare withall in a running horse, as thus: If your running Horse be somewhat long and loosely made, that is to say somwhat long filletted between the huckle bones, and the short ribbes; if hee haue slender limbes, long ioyntes, a thinne necke and a little bellie; being in all his generall partes, not so strong and closely knit together, as the hunting Horse should be, (though I would wish such vices away) yet I haue seene Horses which haue had some part of them which haue beene of great speede in short courses.

Now you shall know, that forasmuch as the hunting Horse, and the running Horse are for two seuerall ends, that is to say, the first for long & wearie toyle by strength and coutinuance of labour, strugling and working out his perfection: the other by suddaine violence, and present furie, acting the vttermost that is expected from them: therefore there must necessarilie bee some difference in the ordering and dyeting of these two creatures: the Hunting horse by strength, making his winde indure a whole dayes labour; the Running horse by winde and nimble footemanship, dooing as much in a moment

moment as his ſtrength and power is able to ſecond. Now as *Order* and *Dyet* in this caſe is of moſt eſpeciall conſequence, ſo if trayning and teaching be not ioyned to dyet and keeping, all your labour will be vaine, and to no purpoſe imployed: wherefore hauing a Horſe of right ſhape, beauty, ſpirit, and other lineaments agreeable to your minde for this exerciſe, and that he is of full age and growth, which ſhould be fiue yeares olde at the leaſt; then you ſhall trayne him to the pleaſure of running, in ſuch ſort as ſhall be declared in this Chapter following.

Chap. 2.

How running Horſes ſhall be firſt trayned vp, and of their dyet.

After you haue either taken your Horſe (which you intend for running) fat from graſſe, or bought him fat and faire in the market, you ſhall dreſſe, order, and dyet him in ſuch ſort as is formerly preſcribed in the Booke of the Keepers Office for the three firſt dayes till his graſſe be ſcowred foorth, then after you ſhall dreſſe and dyet him in ſuch ſort as is preſcribed in the firſt fortnights dyeting of hunting horſes, only your exerciſe ſhall differ thus much, that for a fortnight together after his watering morning and euening you ſhall gallop him gently vpon the hand for a quarter of an houre together vpon ſome plaine leuell meddowe or ſuch like greene ſwarth ground, till you haue made him cunning in his gallop, and that he knowes how to take

vp

vp his feete, how to set them downe nimbly and skilfully, and withall, how and when to fauour him selfe, by making his stroake round and short, and how and when to increase his speed by striking foorth his limbes, and laying his body neare to the earth, onely you must obserue that in all this exercise you doe not make him sweate, or put him to any force, as well for feare of his winde as for other inconueniences, but that out of ease, wantonnes and pleasure, he may both attaine to delight and knowledge, and that also by the moderation of such temperate exercise, hee may haue his glut and pursiuenes clensed away, his fat and good flesh better hardned, his winde made more pure, and all his inward faculties better disposed.

After you haue spent this fortnight in this sort, you shal then put him into the same dyet, and both order and keepe him in such sort as you did keepe your hunting horse in the third fortnight, both with the same bread, the same scowrings, and the same obseruations of times and houres, only your exercise shal thus farre differ, that you shall for a fortnight together at least, foure times a weeke ride him foorth on hunting, but by no meanes, howsoeuer the Chases run, you shall not thrust him vpon any deepe or ouerthwart earth, but when the sents come vpon smooth and plaine ground; then you shall thrust him foorth into a good ordinarie speed, and follow the Houndes chearfully yet not with that violence, that either you straine him beyond his owne pleasure, or compell him to doe any thing vpon compulsion, but that whatsoeuer hee doth may be done out of his owne desire, you rather restraining and keeping him within his strength, then couetting to trie the vtmost of his power,

by

by which meanes you shall adde such life to his doings, that when necessity shall compell, he will perform more then you can expect or hope for: after you haue brought him home at night, you shall feede and scowre as in case of ordinary huntings, and in this maner of trayning, and with this gentle exercise you shall bring him to a good state of body, and to be able to endure some reasonable extremity, which you may knowe by the cleannes of his neather chappes, the thinnes of his ribbe, and the emptines of his flanke, yet for as much as many horses when they are very cleane will notwithstanding haue a full flanke, I wish you rather to trust to his Chaule and ribbe then to the signe of his flanke; Now when your horse is thus brought to some cleannes, if then you would know the height of his ordinary speede, you shal then feed him with the best hunting bread; and hauing found out some plaine smoothe course of about three or foure mile in length, and euery other day you shall course him thereupon for the space of a fortnight, yet by no meanes strayning him aboue a three quarters speede, onely to make him acquainted with the race, and that hee may come to the knowledge of his labour, and so may prepare himselfe thereunto by emptying his bellie, and pissing often, as you shall see in a short space hee will quickly learne, and the rather if as you leade him ouer the race you suffer him to stand still when hee pleaseth, to lie downe and tumble; to dung, pisse, or vse any other gesture, whatsoeuer the Horse pleases, not compelling him to leade, but according to his owne liking: And if you finde that hee will not emptie his bellie, you shall leade him where other Horses haue dunged, and stand still, and let him smell thereunto,

the

the ſent whereof will preſently entice him to dung alſo, and if he piſſe ſeldome, you ſhal ſtand ſtill the oftner, and make him ſtretch out his legges, you ſhall whiſtle him as hee ſtandes, or throwe a little ſtrawe vnder his belly, all which if it preuaile not, you ſhall your ſelfe piſſe vnder his belly, and it will intice him to piſſe, you ſhal vſe as he goes, to ſpirt Vinegar into his noſtrells, for it will both ſtrengthen his ſtomack, & prouoke him to piſſe. When you come to the race end where you muſt ſtart, you ſhal vnlooſe his ſurſingle, and putting back his cloathes, ſet on his Saddle, and then mounting vpon his backe, cauſe the Groome to ſtroake off his cloathes and to ride away with them, that you may haue them to put on againe when you haue runne the race ouer. Then you ſhall ſtart your horſe into a reaſonable ſpeed, and according to his winde and ſtrength, ſo you ſhall make him runne the courſe, either ſwifter, or ſlower; once in the courſe at leaſt making him runne for twelue-ſcore or there about, at the beſt of his ſpeed, but immediately you ſhall take vp your bridle againe and fauour him, that preſeruing him within his ſtrength, you may make both his winde and ſtrength the better. After that by this manner of trayning you finde that he will run his courſe with a good ordinary ſpeed, & that for the twelue-ſcore which is all the ſpace you ſtraine him in, you feele hee runnes both ſwiftly and ſtrongly, you ſhall then each day you courſe him, by little and little ſeeke to augment his violence by drawing twelue-ſcore, to twenty-ſcore, and twenty to forty, till in the end you finde hee will runne a myle with his beſt ſpeed; then you ſhall bring that myle to two myle, and two myle to three, till in the end he wil run the whole courſe, at the height of one entire ſpeede;

After

After that, you shal once in a fortnight make vse of your spurres, and make him runne the whole course thorow vpon the spurres, drawing blood soundly vpon both his sides, and then if you feele that in his course hee doth not faint, but maintaines his speed with a good courage, then you may presume hee is a horse of great vertue and worthie estimation.

Now you shal obserue, that at the end of euery course after you haue with gentle galloping vp and downe a little coold him, you shall light from his backe, and stop both his Nostrils with your hand for a little space, making him holde his winde: then you shall throw his cloathes vpon him, and making them hansomely fast about him, you shall ride him vp and downe till all his sweate be dryed vp, then ride him home, and set him vpon good store of litter in the stable, dyeting, scowring, feeding, and dressing him as you are taught in the last fortnight for Hunting horses, for all the while you traine a Running horse, you shall not exceed an ordinary hunting dyet, your vttermost ayme being but to make him inwardly cleane, and to bring him to a perfect stroake, and a quicke deliuerance of his feete, and that whatsoeuer he doth, hee may doe with great courage and liuelyhood. And thus much for the Running horses first order of trayning.

Chap. 3.

Of the making of a Match, and the obseruations therein.

When you haue after a month or two train'd your Horse, and brought him to some good perfection in running, if then you please either to

to put him to any Bell-course, or to match him against some other Horse for any great wager, you shall carefully obserue many aduauntages and circumstances which are needfull in that businesse, as first the nature and propertie of your horse, as whether he be of a fiecre and couragious spirit doing all thinges out of violence of his nature, or whether hee bee of cooler temper yet exceeding durable, for vnto the first the plainer & shorter course is the best, and to the latter the longer and the deeper is most aduantage, yet if the fierce Horse haue in his skelping course, either *vpwithes*, *inwithes*, or *downewithes*, which is, that he may either runne within the side of hilles, vp hils, or downe hils, it is much auailing to his winde, and makes him recouer his breath and strength much better; for this wee many times finde by proofe, that a fierce horse running vpon a plaine leuell, if his Rider start him sodainly, or hold his hankes too straite, the Horse out of his furie will choake himselfe in his owne winde; others I haue knowne, that hauing libertie of hand, haue run themselues blinde, both which the climbing or discending of hils doth preuent, for nature and the toyle makes him ease himselfe vp the hill: and downe the hill, his owne danger makes him take leasure; but if your horse be of coole temper, & starts slowly, yet in his whole course throughout, rather augments and increaseth his speede then either abates or diminisheth, such a horse is meete for a long and deepe course where not nimble footmanship, but truth of winde and bloodines of sides only must winne the wager, for where speed and spirit failes, there truth and toughnes are the onely conquerors: you shall also in his training note what kinde of earth he takes most delight to runne vpon, as if he loue

a hard smooth greene swarth, a beaten hie-way, a rotten ground full of letches, or an ouerthwart broken swarth full of foule treading, and according to his best running so to frame your wager.

You shall also note in what state of bodie your Horse runnes best, as some horses will runne best when they are fatt and full of flesh, and pride, some when they are exceeding poore and most vnlikely; some when they are of an indifferent state of bodie, neither too hie nor too lowe, but of a competent fulnesse, and according as you finde him neerest to his best perfection so you may be the bolder to hazard your wager; for if your Horse that runnes hie, bee lowe; you must then feede hard, and exercise little, till hauing gotten him into his true temper, and then you may aduenture him vpon labour; or if your Horse that runnes lowe be fat and hie, then you must neither spare exercise nor ayring, till you haue brought him to that state of bodie which best fits him.

Lastly, you shall obserue to make no match, but you shall reserue at least sixe weekes for the dyeting of your Horse, because it is a generall rule amongst all Horses, that the first fortnight they are brought to strict dyeting, they will fall away and growe a little sickish, so that necessarilie you had neede to haue a month after to bring him to lust, life and delight, in this manner of dyeting.

And thus much for present obseruations in Match making.

Chap. 4.

Of the seuerall kindes of Ayrings, and Foodes, belonging to a running Horse.

OF all the particles or best members belonging to this dyeting or ordering of running Horses, there is none of more force or efficacie then this, which wee call Ayring, for it hath a diuerse kinde of working, as one while it abateth flesh, weakneth and bringes lowe, another while it feedes, strengthens, and procures appetite; sometimes it cleares the blood, and sometimes it appaales the spirit, working according as it is ordered, yet at all times and how euer it is vsed, it putrifies breath, and is the best fortifier of the winde; wherefore you shal vnderstand, that if your Horse bee too fat, and either for feare of olde straines, or the short time you haue to dyet him you cannot by exercise make abatement of his flesh, then you shal not faile but euening and morning (at least two houres before day) to ayre him after this manner. Assoone as you come into the stable, and haue put away his dung, and made all thinges sweete and cleane, you shall then take a haire-cloath and rub his head, face, and necke all ouer, then you shall turne vp all his cloathes and rubbe downe his bodie, bellie, flankes, buttocks, and legges, then take his brydle and wett the snaffle either in Beare or Ale, & put it on his head, then trusse his clothes warme and close about him, and so leade him foorth in your hand vp to the toppe or height of some hill where the winde blowes sharpest, and the ayre is purest; and both as you go to the hill & when you are vpon the hill,

let the Horse goe at his owne pleasure, standing still and gazing when hee list, stretching himselfe foorth, gaping, yawning, tumbling, and vsing what other gesture hee pleases; your selfe euer helping and cherishing him in whatsoeuer he doth; obseruing principally to giue him the libertie of his brydle, and to intice him to smell to the ground, and to the dung of other Horses as you goe vp and downe, and you shall purposely seeke out where other Horses haue dung'd, and leade him vnto it, that hee may smell thereon, for it will mightilie prouoke him to emptie his belly: you shall if there bee any tussockes of long grasse, rushes, or dead fogge, leade him thereunto, both that hee may bathe his legges in the dewe (which is verie wholsome for his limbes) and also prouoke him to pisse. After you haue thus ledde him vp and downe for the space of two houres and more, euen till you see the day begin to breake, then you shall leade him home to the stable in the selfe same sort as you led him foorth: but by the way, if whilest you thus ayre your horse, you doe now and then spirt a little Vinegar into his nostrels, or sometime stop his nostrels with your hands, it is passing good, for it will both make him sneare and neese, and also it will procure him a stomacke, and make him hungry: if as you walke vp and downe you doe now and then with your hand gripe him gently about the wind-pipe, betweene his chaules and compell him to cough, it will be exceeding good, and you shall thereby finde if there bee any grosenesse about the rootes of his tongue, which stops or hinders his winde, as thus: If hee cough roughly, it is a signe of grosenesse: If hee cough roughly, and after his coughing chawe with his chaps, it is then both a signe of grosenesse, and that he hath some

disolued

dissolued and loose matter which hee breakes with coughing, which if you finde, you shall then vse to gripe him the oftner, but if hee cough cleare, and without hoarsnes, then he is cleane and you shall gripe him the more seldome.

After you haue brought your Horse into the stable, and haue chafte and rub'd his legges well, you shall then feede and order him, as shall bee hereafter declared; Now looke how you ayred your Horse in the morning before day; in the selfe same manner you shall also ayre him at night after the day is departed, onely in stead of leading him vnto the height of some hill, you shall leade him downe to some valley, or meddowe neare to some riuer or running water, that the coldnesse which comes from thence, may enter and pierce him; if at any time whilst you ayre your horse, you finde him wantonly disposed, you shal runne with him vp and downe, and make him scope and play about you. This ayring before and after day, doth abate a Horses flesh, dries vp pursiuenes and grosse humors, cleares the blood, and makes his vitall spirits more actiue.

Now if your Horse be exceeding leane, weake, and in pouertie, then you shall ayre him in the morning an houre or more after Sun-rise in the same sort as you did before, and also at night an houre or two before Sun-set, the pleasantnes of which two seasons will prouoke such delight in the horse, that hee will take pride in himselfe; it will get him such a stomacke, that you shall hardly ouer-feede him; and store of foode bringes euer store of flesh and strength, it will make him that he shall not take loath vnto his foode, which is the onely impediments that attends a running Horse, but the sorer you feede,

the better shall be euer his disgestion; and nature being pleased with what she receiues, will soone againe become strong and powerfull. But if your horse bee of a right state of body, that is, neither too fat nor too leane, but of a full strength and perfection, such as you knowe is fittest for the exercise, whereunto you intend him, then you shall ayre him euery morning after day, and before Sunne-rise, and euery euening after Sun-sett, and before the closing in of the night, for these indifferent and temperate times, doe neither take so sore of nature, that they bring it to any weakenesse, neither adde so much to strength or appetite, that they bring the flesh to any greater lust or increasement, but holding one certaine stay, keepes the body strong, the winde pure, and the inward spirits full of life and cheatefulnesse; Therefore euerie Keeper of running Horses must knowe that by no meanes whilst his horse is in strict dyet, hee may not faile to ayre his horse morning and euening, after one of these three seuerall wayes, according to the state and constitution of the Horses body, excepting onely those dayes wherein his horse takes his breathing courses, being assured that hee were better to forget a meale of the horses foode, then an houre of his ayringes: and since I haue thus shewed you, the diuersitie of ayringes, I will now proceed and shew you the diuersitie and natures of euery seuerall foode, meete for a Horses bodie.

First therefore you shal vnderstand that the principall foode, whereupon a Running horse is to be fedde most; as the very strength and chiefe substance of his life must be *Bread*, for it of all other foodes is most strong, cleane, healthfull, of best disgestion, and breede the best blood, wherefore for *Bread*, you shall make it after this manner.

Take

Take of fine Oatemell well dryed, foure peckes; of cleane dry'd Beanes two peckes, of the best Wheate two peckes, and of Rye two peckes, let all these graines bee well mingled together, and ground (if possible) vpon a paire of blacke stones, then boult the meale through a fine boulting-cloath, and knead it with new Ale, and the Barme well beaten together, and with the whites of at least an hundred Egges. Now if your horse, as for the most part Running horses are, be subiect to drynesse and costiuenes in his bodie, then to these former quantities, you shall adde at least three pound of sweet Butter, but not otherwise: these you shall kneade and worke together exceedingly, first with handes, after with feete by treading, and lastly with the brake; then couering it close with warme clothes, you shall let it lie two or three houres in the trough to swell, then take it foorth and molde it vp in great loaues at least halfe a peck in a loafe, and so bake it like vnto ordinary Houshold-bread: some Horse-men there bee, which of my knowledge to this breade will mixe the powder of *Licoras* or *Annyseedes* in great quantitie, but as once I saide, so say I still, it is the most vnwholsomest that can be, and most vnnaturall, nor haue I seene any horse winne, but I haue seene many horses loose, which haue beene kept with such dyet. The nature of this breade is onely to breed strength, lust, and good blood, without pursiuenes, grosenes or corrupting of the winde: it is light and easie of disgestion, and so not lying long either in the Horses stomacke or belly is no impediment to the violence and furie of his labour. Dyet bread.

Next vnto Bread is dryed washt-meate, as thus, take two peckes of the best Oates, and spreading them vpon a cloath, in the Sunne turne them vp and downe till they Of washt-meate dryed.

bee as drie as if they had beene dryed vpon a Kilne, then put them in a cleane bagg, and either beate them with a fleale, or vpon a hard floore as huſ-wiues beate Wheate, till the vpper hulles be almoſt beaten off, then winnowe them cleane, and putting them into ſome cleane veſſell, breake vnto them the whites of twentie or fortie Egges, and waſh the Oates, and ſtirre them well vp and downe therein, then let them ſtand and ſoke all that night. The next morning take foorth the Oates, and ſpread them in the Sunne vpon a cleane cloath till they be drie againe.

This foode of all other is moſt fine, light, and eaſie of diſgeſtion, 'tis moſt ſoueragine for the winde, diſoluing and clenſing away whatſoeuer is groſſe, or ſtoppes the entrance of thoſe pipes. The meeteſt time to giue this foode in, is either immediately before, or immediately after his labour, and the horſe moſt meete for this food is the groſſe feeder, the kettie or thicke winded.

Next to this foode is the Oates dri'd in the Sunne, and beaten as aforeſaid, and then to be ſteept for a day and a night in ſtrong Ale, and then dry'd in the Sunne. This foode is exceeding comfortable, and mooues life, ſpirit, and chearefulneſſe in a horſe, it helpes the winde ſomething, but not much, and is moſt meete to bee giuen a Horſe that is leane, or of a dainty and tender ſtomacke.

Now your laſt dry'd waſht meate is to take a couple of fine manchets well chipt, and to cut them croſſe wiſe into foure round toaſts, and ſo toaſt them before the fire, then ſteepe them for halfe an houre in Muskadine, then taking them foorth, lay them in warme cloathes before the fire, and ſmother them till they be drie againe, and ſo giue them to your horſe. This foode is a luſtie and ſtrong foode chearing the blood and the vitall ſpirits of

a horſe

a horse; it quickens the braine, makes the minde wanton and actiue, and so fills all the powers of a horse with alacritie of spirit, that if he be neuer so emptie, yet he takes no dislike in his fasting: it kils also the wormes in a horses bodie, and makes that they do not torment and gnaw him, when he is much fasting, yet this foode is not to be giuen often, for feare of intoxicating the braine through the fume thereof; but earely in the morning before your horse goe to course, if hee haue beene sicke, or is poore in flesh, or much subiect to take dislike or loath at his prouender.

Next to these dry'd washt meates, are your moyst washt meates, which are no other but these before named, as Oates, and whites of Egges, Oates and Ale, or Toastes and Muskadine, so that they be giuen to a horse presently after they haue been steept, & are as wet as wet may be. This foode is verie hartie, coole and much loosening the body, hauing onely this particular fault, that it a little breedeth pursiuenes, and grosenes: wherefore it is to be giuen to a horse that is either weake, sickly, or subiect to drie much in his bodie, it must be vsed for the most part medicinally, for, to make it a continuall foode, the very fume thereof would bring putrifaction to the braine, and the moystnesse cause an vnnaturall scowring in his bodie. Besides these foodes, there is the eares of Pollard wheat to be giuen by two or three handfull together out of your hand, for it prepareth and comforteth the stomacke, and is to be giuen to a horse as the first thing he eateth after he hath beene coursed or warmed with any extraordinarie labour. Of moyst washt meate.

Now as touching Rie, Mashes and such like, because they are in the nature of scowrings, I wil not couple thē amongst

amongst the Horses foodes, hauing spoken sufficiently of them and their natures in the booke of hunting horses, to which I referre you. And thus much for the diuersitie of ayrings, and the alterations of foodes.

Chap. 5.

Of the seuerall kindes of Sweates, and of their vses.

SWeates are to be giuen to a Horse two seuerall wayes, that is to say, either naked or cloathed, naked, as either by exercise or labour; or cloathed, as by phisicall helpes without much torment. And because the labour of the running Horse is violent and sodaine, without any indurance or deliberation in his exercise, insomuch that a Horse being in any good state of body, cannot sweate much, or dissolue any part of his inward grosse humours by so short an exercise: it is therefore agreed vpon by all good Horsemen, that as well for preseruing the running horse from wearinesse in labour, as also for bringing him to the best estate of a cleane bodie, that he shal haue his sweates giuen him for the most part in his cloathes, especially when hee is so cleane that hee will not sweat suddainly.

Now you shall vnderstand, that sweates in cloathes are to be giuen two seuerall waies, that is to say, eyther abroad in the field, or else standing still in the close Stable. If you giue your Horse his sweate abroad in the fielde, you shall doe it after this sorte: earely in the morning

ning after you haue rubbed him downe with your haire-cloath, and girded his cloathes close round about him, you shall put on his brydle, and leade him foorth into some faire large Close or field, and there mounting vpon his backe with his cloathes about him, you shall gallop him at a reasonable speede vp and downe without ceasing, till you finde all his head, necke and face, to bee of an intire sweate: then you shall ride him to the Stable doore, and there lighting from his backe, set him vp in Litter euen to the middle side; then tie him vp to the Racke, and cast a cloath or two more ouer him, couering his head and necke all ouer also, and so let him stand and sweate for an houre or more, if you knowe him to bee verie fat, and foule. After he hath sweat sufficiently, you shall then take off his cloathes one after another, and another, till by little and little abating his heate, you make him leaue sweating; then you shall rub him, and feede him as shall be hereafter declared.

Now if your Horse haue either former straynes, or be aged, or in any such state of bodie, that you may not well aduenture to put him to any violent labour, or if the weather bee so vnseasonable that you cannot conueniently giue his sweates without in the field; you shall then giue him his sweate in the Stable after this manner: First you shall strip your Horse naked, then take a large Blanket, and warme it against the fire, and then folde it in many foldes, heating euery folde hotter then other, and then being at the hottest, you shall wrappe it round about your Horses bodie next vnto his heart, pinning it verie close and straite; then lay ouer it two or three other Blankets at their vttermost largenesse, and two or three Couerlets also, girde them hard about his bodie

with

with a Surſingle, and binde euery one of them cloſe and faſt before his breaſt, then ſtoppe the ſurſingle round about with great wiſpes of ſtrawe, and let him ſtand in litter vp to the middle ſide, then keeping your Stable as cloſe and warme from all ayre as is poſſible, let him ſtand for a quarter of an houre, and you ſhall ſee the ſweate begin to riſe about his eare rootes, and trickle downe his face, which if it doe, you ſhall then let him ſtand ſtill, and ſweate ſo long as in your owne diſcretion you ſhall thinke meete (ſo it exceed not aboue two houres at the moſt) but if hee be of ſo hard a conſtitution, that this courſe will not make him ſweate at all, then you ſhall lay more cloathes vpon him; and if they preuaile not, then (being cladde in the manner aforeſaide) you ſhall take him foorth of the ſtable into ſome adioyning backeſide, and there trott him, and chafe him gently vp and downe till you ſee his ſweate begin to riſe, then ſet him vp in the Stable againe, and laying more cloathes vpon him, let him ſweate during your pleaſure, and all the while hee ſweateth, you ſhall make a Groome to ſtand by him, and to wipe the ſweate from his face with a drie cloath, which will pleaſe the horſe exceedingly.

When he hath ſweate to your contentment, you ſhall then by the abatement of his cloathes one after one, keeping a prettie diſtance of time betweene each ſeuerall cloathes taking away (leaſt cooling him too ſuddainly might doe him more hurt then his ſweating doth him good) bring him to that dryneſſe and temper of body, wherein you found him before you gaue him his ſwear, which when you haue brought to paſſe, you ſhall then vncloath and dreſſe him in ſuch ſort as becommeth the office of a good Keeper.

Theſe

Theſe ſweats are the moſt wholſomeſt and beſt ſcowrings that can be giuen to a fat horſe, for they doe diſſolue and expell all groſſe and infectious humors, how euer bred in the body either by ſurfeit or rawneſſe of foode, by violence of trauell, by ſuddaine coldes, exceſſiue heates, or by any other vnnaturall courſe whatſoeuer: it purifies the blood, cleares the winde, and bringes ſpirit and lightneſſe to the bodie, onely they doe much abate the fleſh, and therefore a little weaken the horſe, by which meanes they are held principally good for fat and groſſe Horſes, and ſeldome to bee vſed vpon leane Horſes; yet for mine owne part, it both hath beene, and ſhall euer bee my practiſe to vſe them both to fatt and leane Horſes, where I finde either by outward or inward ſigne, that the bodie hath beene vnwholſomly fed, and is poſſeſt with groſſe and corrupt humors: yet you muſt knowe that one of theſe ſweates doth take as much of a Horſe as three courſes, wherefore you muſt haue this conſideration, that if your horſe bee not in great pride and full ſtate of body, after one of theſe ſweates, you muſt not courſe or ſtraine your horſe for at leaſt fiue dayes.

And thus much for ſweates and their ſeuerall vſes.

Chap. 6.

Of the ordering and dyeting a Running Horſe for Match or Wager.

WHen you haue made any great match or wager vpon your horſe, ſo that you are to put him to the vttermoſt, that either art or nature cā bring him

him vnto; it is to be presupposed that your Horse being of some especiall note (at least in your owne estimation) must necessarilie be kept in good ordinarie Hunting dyet, for fewe or none will make any great wagers either of ordinarie Hackneyes, or grasse Nags, wherefore your match being made, and you now intending to put him into this strict dyet, onely appertaining to a course, you shall first looke vpon him; and as neare as you can, either by his dung, the thicknesse of his flesh vpon his shortest ribbe, the cleannesse of his Chaule and other externall partes (all which are formerly set downe at large) you shall iudge in what state of bodie your Horse standeth, and how neare, or how farre off hee is from being in fit temper to runne a course, and if you then finde that he is in full strength, good lust, and in an indifferent ordinarie cleannesse, you shall then thus begin first to fashion him vnto this dyet, First next his skinne you shall lay a faire linnen sheete, as well becausse horses naturally delight to be sweete and neately kept, priding themselues with the daintinesse of their keeping, as also becausse when nature beeing at any time distempered in the Horse, either through the straitnesse of his dyet, or the strangenesse of his foode, (which ordinarily is found with running horses) hee will breake foorth into great sweates, insomuch that when you come to him in the morning, you shall oft finde him all wett, as if hee were troubled with the night-mare, then the linnen being next his skin, euen as the force of nature or his sickenesse shall leaue their working, so will the linnen sheete coole and growe drie againe; neither forcing him to sweat (as wollen cloahtes will doe) nor retaining any moysture extraordinarilie, as your cloathes of course Canuase will doe; the first being

beeing vnwholsome for the Horses health, the other a great annoyance vnto his body; ouer this sheete you shall lay as many cloathes of wollen and Canuase, as shal double in weight and warmth those cloathes which hee vsually wore daily, as thus, if ordinarily he did weare a Canuase cloath and a Blanket, then now you shall lay on a blanket, a thicke couerlet and a cloath of canuase, all which you shall binde close and warme before his breast, and then with a surfingle gird them about his bodie, and stop him round with soft wispes; the reasons for these many cloathes being these two, first that they may helpe nature to expell all grosse, foggie and vnwholsome humors which are gathered together in a horses bodie by inforcing him to sweate in the houres of his rest, which a Horse naturally (with small helpe) will doe, if hee be ouerburdened with grosenes or faintnes, and these sweates are most kindely and least painfull: the second reason is, that a Horse being ouer-laden, and as it were fettered and bound vp in his cloathes, when hee shall come to be disburdened and stript naked of such incumberances, he will be so light, nimble, and deliuer in all his actions that like a prisoner discharged of heauie boltes, his feete will bee euen winges to beare away his bodie; also when a Horse that is so warme and tenderly kept, shall come to haue his skinne opposed against sharpe ayre, the very piercing colde thereof will be vnto him as good as a paire of spurres to enforce him to make hast in his labour, neither will the naturall heate which accompaineth and comforteth the heart, so easily be banisht into the outward parts, or bring to the horse any sence of faintnes. Next you shall obserue, that your Stable be close, warme, and darke as may bee, and that

ouer-

ouer and beſides the darkeneſſe of your Stable, you ſhall nayle ſome thicke Canuaſe cloathes about your Horſe alſo, both for cloſenes and warmnes; both becauſe no colde or ſubtill ayre ſhall ſuddainly ſtrike into the horſe and diſtemper his body, and alſo becauſe the horſe ſhall not diſtinguiſh the night from the day, but take his reſt equally in them both, without either the trouble of light or noyſes. This done, you ſhall euer bee carefull that your horſe may ſtand orderly night and day vpon great ſtore of litter, at leaſt a foote deepe from the planchers after your horſe hath preſt it downe with his lying, both becauſe it ſhall defend him from the colde dampiſhnes of the earth, which is verie vnhealthfull; and alſo becauſe he ſhal not holde his vrine in his body longer then the firſt prouocation of Nature, which if hee haue litter vnder him hee will not doe, but if he want, hee will not piſſe as long as he is able to containe it to the contrarie; beſides, there is nothing wherein a Horſe takes more delight, then in the ſoftneſſe of his bed, which aſſoone as hee findes, you ſhall ſee by his much lying the delight hee takes in his lodging: and truely whoſoeuer will expect much toyle from a horſe in the field, muſt not abridge him of any eaſe in the ſtable, and chieflie if he be a horſe of free and pure mettall.

Next vnto theſe obſeruations, you ſhall looke hourely to the keeping of your maunger cleane, both from duſt, filth, or any vncleannes whatſoeuer; and if there be any walles of earth, mudde, or loame, or any thatch or ſuch like filthines neare him, you ſhall nayle Canuaſe cloathes before them, ſo that by no meanes your horſe may come to licke or gnawe vpon them. Laſtly you ſhall haue regard to his racke, and ſee that it bee hourely

ſwept

swept and kept cleane, both from dust, cob-webs and such like filthines; and as touching the ordinarie meate which you shall put into his racke, during al the time of his dyet, it shall be nothing but sweet Wheat-straw well thrasht giuen by a sheafe at once, morning and euening.

Now when you haue performed all these generall obseruations, you shall then thus proceed to his more particular dyet: First in the morning assoone as you come into the Stable, which would be to a fat Horse long before day, to a Horse of good temper before Sun-rise, and to a leane Horse long after the Sunne is risen. Assoone as you haue put away his dung, and such foule litter as he hath that night syled, and after you haue swept & made your stable cleane, you shall then thrust your hand vnder his cloathes, and feele his flankes whether hee haue sweat that night I or no, if you finde he haue sweat, and is not fully drie, you shall then turne vp his cloathes, and with cleane cloathes, rubbe him as dry as may bee; then if hee be a Horse of grosse and foule feeding, you shall take a newe laide egge and breake it in his mouth, make him swallowe it shells and all, then washing his Snaffle in a little Beere, or Beere and Salt, put it in his mouth, and so leade him foorth and ayre him, as hath beene set downe in a former Chapter. After you haue brought in your Horse from ayring, and set him vp in the Stable, you shall first cause all his legges to bee rub'd exceeding much, and his feete to bee pickt cleane from durt, grauell and other filthinesse; then you shall take off his brydle, put on his coller, and giue him the value of halfe a pecke of Oates washt in the whites of Egges and dry'd, if he be a Horse of good stomacke and appetite; but if he be a horse tender and dainty, then you

The first dyet.

shall not giue him so much at once; but giue him lesse and often, wherefore as touching the quantities of meat which you shal giue, your own discretion agreeing with the appetite and stomacke of the horse, must make them more or lesse at your pleasure. After your horse hath eaten his meale, which you shall stand by and see him doe, you shall then after you haue made your stable cleane againe, shut vp your doore and windowes, and so let your horse rest till twelue a clock in the afternoone; at which time comming into the stable, and hauing put away his dung, and made all thinges sweete and cleane about the horse you shall then put on his brydle, and tye him vp to the racke, and then dresse, currie, and trim him, in such sort as is before described in the office of the Keeper; after you haue dreſt your horse, and cloathed him vp warme, hauing an especiall care that your horse by no means stand still naked, but that the groome be euer doing something about him (for so long he will neuer take colde) you shall then lead him forth to the water, either to some faire fountain, or some running spring, or some such water as you shall thinke to be most agreeable with your horses body: Of all which waters, I haue in the former booke of the office of the keeper, written sufficiently, and therfore in this place thinke it needlesse againe to repeat them. After your horse hath drunke his fill, you shall then leade him into the stable againe, and hauing chaft and rub'd his legs well, you shall then giue him the value of halfe a peck of your best dyet bread cut in small peeces, which assoone as you shall see him eat, you shall then shut vp your stable door, & let him rest til fiue of the clocke in the euening. Now you are from the first rules to gather these generall principles, that first your horse

shall

shal drink during his time of diet, but once in 24 houres, which is euer betwixt twelue, & one a clocke at noone, whē the Sun is at the hyest: next that he is to be dreſt but once in 24 houres, which is at twelue a clocke at noon also; then you shall euer see him eat his meat, & whē you giue him any bread, you shall chip your loaues well, and keep your rules formerly prescribed for hunting horses, that is to say, if your horse either be a grosse feeding horse & holde his meat long in his belly, or if at any time either vpon the occasion of his course, the giuing of medicine, or any other necessity, you would haue his meate soone disgested, you shall then giue him no crust at all, but all crum, for that sooneſt passeth thorow him: but if your horse be of daintie or tender nature, subiect to quicke disgestion; or if by reason of rest, or to comfort former toyle taken, you would haue him to retaine and holde his meate long, then you shall giue him more crust then crum, or els crust and crum equally mixt together, your loaues being onely sleightly chipt and but the vpper part taken away only. Lastly, you shall euer obserue when you dresse your horse, to annoint all his foure legges from the knees and cambrels downward with Linseed-oyle, and euer when he comes from his course, or from any exercise to bathe them with pisse and Saltpeeter boyl'd together.

At fiue of the clocke in the euening, you shall come vnto him, and first making your stable cleane, and putting away his dung, you shall turne vp his cloath, and with a haire-cloath rub his face, head, necke, buttockes, flanks, and belly, then with hard wispes chafe his legges; which done, you shall giue him the like quantitie of bread as you did at noone, and so let him rest till the houre of his

euening ayring; for you must vnderstand, that as duely as a horse must bee fedde or dreſt, so hee must be ayred at his fit houres, morning and euening. After you haue brought your horse from ayring, and haue chaft and rub'd his legges well, you may giue him a handfull of bread or thereabouts, and no more, and so let him rest till nine a clocke at night, at what time you shall come vnto him, and hauing rubb'd his bodie ouer with your haire-cloath, and his legges with hard wispes, you shall then giue him the ordinarie quantity of bread, toſſe vp his litter, make his bed soft, and so let him rest till the next morning; and as you spent this day, so you shall spend all other dayes of your horses rest, onely with this caution, that if as you feede your Horse, you finde him at any time grow coy or refuse the foode you giue him, then you shall alter his foode, and in steade of Breade giue Oates; and in stead of drie oates, wet Oates, and when hee is weary of wet oates to giue him drie Oates againe; yet to make your maine food indeed to be onely Bread, and to vse the other foodes but onely to make his appetite better to his bread. If any man shall either thinke, or in his experience finde, that these quantities which I prescribe are too great, he may at his discretion abridge them: for in my iudgement when I consider the want of Hay, the sharpnes of his ayrings, and compare his houres of fasting with his houres of feeding, I doe not finde any quantitie that can bee a better president.

The first courſing. After you haue thus kept your horse, as is before shewed, for the space of two dayes, you shall the third day in stead of ayring him, lead him in his cloathes to the place appointed for his courſe, for it is to bee intended, that you must euer either through right, loue, or money, haue

your

your Stable as neare to the staffe where your race must end as conueniently you can get it, as in the next neighbouring village, or such like place of conueniencie, that your Horse comming to knowe that hee euer runneth homeward, he will with more willingnes and spirit, bestirre himselfe in his labour.

Assoone as you haue brought your horse to the staffe, you shall let him smell thereto, and if he will, you shal let him rub himselfe thereon, or vse any other motion what hee pleaseth; then you shall leade him forward, with all leasure and gentlenes, standing many times still, both to prouoke him to dung, and pisse, and if he will lie downe and tumble, which Horse-men call *Freaning*, you shall not onely giue him leaue, but also with the brydle reynes helpe him to wallow ouer and ouer: but if as you leade him hee refuse either to dung or pisse, then being come to the place of start, you shall vnloose his surfingle, and breake the wispes open vnder his belly, for many horses will refuse to pisse for feare of sprinckling vpon his legs, which fewe dainty horse will indure; so that when hee perceiues the wisps to be vnder him, he wil pisse instantly, and to that end if he doe not offer at the first, you shall leade him ouer them twice or thrice. When hee hath pist, you shal take some of the dryest wispes and chafe all his legges; then you shall vnbinde his cloathes from before his brest, and putting them back, set on your saddle, which donne, you shall your selfe pisse in yout Horses mouth, which will be an occasion that he wil worke and run with pleasure, then you shal take away all his clothes and deliuer them to the groome, who may ryde towards the staffe with them: then after you shall start your horse and at more then three quarters speede, runne him ouer

the course: and assoone as you are past the staffe, you shall take him vp and stay him: then trott him gently backe to the staffe, and let him smell vpon it againe, that by custome hee may come to take an especiall notice of the place; and know that there is the end of his labour: Then you shall gallop and scope him gently vp and downe to keepe him warme, vntill his cloathes come; then lighting from his backe, and cloathing him, you shall ride him vp and downe till he bee sufficiently cooled, and then ride him home, and set him vp in the stable close and warme, casting another cloath ouer him; then hauing rubb'd his legges sufficiently let him stand, benig tyed by his brydle vp to the racke, for at least two or three houres or more, and then come to him, and if you finde that his sweate is all dryed vp, you shall take off the spare cloath, and hauing stopped his surfingle about with soft wispes, you shall giue him forth of your hands a handfull or two of the eares of Pollard wheate, and so let him stand till one of the clocke at noone, at what time you shall bring vnto him a very sweete Mash, and giue it him to drinke. After he hath drunke his mash, you shall giue him two or three handfuls of Oates washt in Muskadine, and dry'd; and mingled with them a handfull or two of cleane dreſt Hempseede. After hee hath eaten them, you shall then vncloath him, and currie and dresse him, as hath beene formerly described, then cloathing him vp warme againe, let him stand till fiue of the clocke at euening, at what time you shall giue him a good quantitie of bread, which assoone as hee hath eaten, you shall brydle him vp and leade him forth to ayre him, of what state of bodie soeuer hee be, both because hauing in the morning indured great toyle in his course,

it

it is requisite hee should haue comfort in his ayring, and also that you may haue great respect to his dung, obseruing both the temper, the colour and the slimenesse, and whether there come from him any grease or no, which if hee doe auoyde, it is an apparant signe of his foulenesse; if he doe not, it is a good token of his cleanneſſe.

After his ayring, you shall set him vp, chafe his legges, and giue him a handfull of bread, letting him stand till nine of the clocke at night, at what time (as you did in former nights) so you shall now giue him a good quantity of bread, rubbe his head, face, necke, bodie and buttocks with a haire-cloath, stirre vp his litter and so let him rest till the next morning, obseruing according to the expence of these three daies, so to spend the first fortnight, coursing your horse euery third day, both that you may bring him to an acquaintance with his race, and also that you may come to the better iudgment of the state of his body, for if in this first fortnight you finde your Horse to drie inwardly, and grow costiue, which is the naturall fault of running horses, then you shall vse moyst washt meat the oftner, put more Butter into your bread, and in time of necessity, giue him a handful or two of Rie sodden, but if you finde him naturally giuen to loosenes, which is seldome found in this dyeting, then you shal put no butter at all into your bread, you shall feed him with washt meate well dry'd, and giue him wheate eares both before and after his ayrings, you shall chip his bread little or nothing at all, and let it be baked somewhat the sorer. Now after this first fortnights keeping, if you finde your horse a little cleaner then he was, and that hee is strong and in good luſt, then both for your ayrings, dressings, dyetings, watrings, and other obseruations, you

shall in all thinges doe as you did in the first fortnight, onely with this difference, that in your coursings, you shall not bee so violent, or draw him vp to so hye a speed as formerly you did, but play with him, and as it were no more but gallop him ouer the race, that thereby hee may take pride and delight in his labour, onely once in each weeke, that is, in the middle of each weeke, being at least fiue dayes betwixt one and the other, if your Horse bee young, strong, and lusty, you shall giue him a sweate in his cloathes, either vpon the race which you must runne, or else vpon some other ground fit for the purpose; but if your Horse bee olde, stiffe, or rainted, then you shall giue him the sweates in his cloathes within the Stable, the manner of each sweate is in a former Chapter discribed, and these sweates you shall giue verie earely in the morning, as an houre before Sunne-rise; that hee may be coolde, haue his mash giuen him, and be curryed and drest soone after eleuen a clocke in the fore-noone, the day following the latter of these two sweates, you shall earely in the morning before you goe foorth to ayre him, giue him the scowring of *Muskadine*, *Sallet-oyle* and *Sugar-Candie*, as is mentioned in the booke of Hunting, and then leade him foorth and ayre him, but in any case keepe him not foorth aboue halfe an houre at the most, but bring him home, set him vppe warme, tye him so that hee may lye downe, lay an handfull or two of Oates before him, and so let him rest till twelue or one a clocke in the after-noone, at what time you shall water him, dresse him, and feede him as you did in the former dayes of his resting.

After this sweate thus giuen, you shall euery third day for exercise sake, gallop your Horse as gently ouer the race

race as may be, onely to keepe his legges nimble, and his breath pure, till the fourth day before the day of your wager, vpon which day you shall giue your Horse a sound and (as my country-men of the North tearme it) a bloudy course ouer the race; then after he is colde and brought home, as soone as you haue chast his legges well, you shall take a Muzzle made of canuase or leather, but canuase is the better, of which Muzzle I haue spoken more particularly in the booke of hunting. This muzzell you shall put vpon your horses head, and fasten it betwnene his eares; yet before you put it on, you shall throw into it the powder of Annyseedes well beaten in a morter, which is all the spice you shall vse about your horse, and euery time you take off or put on the muzzell, you shall put more powder in. This powder of Annyseedes is for the horse to smell vpon, because it openeth the winde-pipe, and sometimes to licke vpon, because it comforteth the stomacke, and strengthneth a horse in his fasting, you shall also haue diuers muzzels, that when your horse with his breath and such like moyst vapours hath wet one, and made it noysome, you may then put on another which is drie, and so keepe him sweete and cleanely, washing his foule muzzell, and drying it before the fire, that it may serue at another season.

After you haue muzzeld vp your horse that hee can eate nothing but what you giue him, you shall let him rest for an houre or two, and take away the wheat strawe from his racke, not suffring him to haue any more racke meate till the wager bee past. After hee hath stood two houres, you shal come to him and giue him two or three handfull of wheat-eares, and after them a sweete mash, then muzzell him vp againe, and let him stand til it bee

betwixt

betwixt twelue and one a clocke in the after noone, at what time you shall first take off his cloath and currie and dresse him very sufficiently, then hauing cloathed him vp warme againe, you shall take off his Muzzle, and giue him out of your hand bitte by bitte to the value of a pennie white loafe of your dyet bread, then you shall giue him in a cleane dish the value of a quart of water, then you shall giue him as much more bread, then offer him as much more water, and thus giuing him one while bread, another while water, giue him a good meale, according to the constitution of his body, and the strength of his appetite, then put on his Muzzle, and so let him stand till betwixt fiue and sixe a clocke in the euening, at what time you shall take your horse foorth to ayre him, and after he is ayred you shall bring him home, and hauing chaft his legges you shall take a cleane boule or tray of wood (for you must vnderstand after your horse is put into the Muzzle you shall suffer him no more to eate in the maunger) and into that boule or tray you shall put a good handfull of Oates wash'd in the whites of egges and dryde, which if you perceiue he eates very greedily, shall then giue him another handfull, and so a third, then in a dish you shall offer him a quart of water, then another handfull of Oates, and another quart of water, and thus you shall giue one after another till you haue giuen him a good meale likewise, then put on his Muzzle, and let him stand till betwixt nine and tenne a clocke at night, at what time you shall come to him, and as you fedde him at noone with bread and water, so you shall now feede him with bread and water likewise, then putting on his Muzzle, rubbing him, and raising vp his litter, let him stand till the next morning. The next day

is a

is a day of reſt, ſo that after you haue ayred him in the morning you ſhall then onely feede him as you did the day before, onely you muſt vnderſtand that theſe three dayes before your race day you ſhall in your ayrings bee longer abroad then vſually you were wont to be, both that you may keepe him in perfect breath, and ſuffer no groſeneſſe to increaſe, and alſo to procure him a good ſtomacke, and a longing appetite. After two of your foure dayes are thus ſpent in ayring and feeding, the third day you ſhall ſpend in the ſame manner alſo, both touching his ayrings and feedings, but the time betwixt his meales you ſhall ſpend in colling his eares, maine, chappes, eye browes, and other partes of his body that are charged with ſuperfluous haires; you ſhall waſh and ſcowre both his maine and taile with ſope and water, and then if at the race day you meane to haue it frizeld and brodered out brauely to the ſhowe, you ſhall plat them both in as many ſeuerall ſmall plats or ſtrings as you can conueniently, and knit euery ſeuerall plat and ſtring in as many knottes as you can deuiſe, for the leſſe your plats are, and the more knots you knit the brauelier will your horſes maine or taile curle, and the gallanter it will appeare to the beholders.

This day alſo you ſhall ſee that the Smith ſhooe your horſe both eaſily and ſufficiently, according to the nature of the courſe; that is to ſay, if the courſe bee vpon ſoft greene ſwarth, rotten moore, or durtie earth, then you ſhal ſhooe him with halfe ſhooes, both becauſe they preuent ouer-reaching (which often chaunces in ſuch grounds) and alſo giues foot-holde inough, which is all the neceſſitie in ſuch a courſe: But if the race bee vpon hard heathes, hie-wayes, or flintie, or chaukie grounds,

then

then you shal shooe him with whole shoes, neither halfe so broad, nor halfe so thicke as the hunting shooe, After your horse is thus prepared, the next day following, which is the day before your race day, you shall ayre, order and feed your horse, as you did in the former dayes, onely you shall giue him no water at all. After you haue finished watring and feeding him at twelue of the clocke in the afternoone, till your wager bee past, onely you shall feede him with what meate hee hath most stomack vnto, both in the euening, and at nine a clocke also, giuing him as much quietnesse and rest as you can deuise: Vpon the race day in the morning before the spring of the day, you shall take foorth your horse and ayre him; then when you haue brought him home, you shall giue him (after his legges haue beene well rubbed and annoynted with Linseed-oyle, or Traine oyle) as many toastes steept in Muskadine, and dryed as he will eate, or if out of the daintinesse of his stomacke, hee take dislike vnto them, you shall onely giue him halfe a pecke of fine cleane Oate-meale well dryed, then put on his muzzell, and so let him take his rest, till you haue warning to prepare him for his course, which assoone as you haue, you shall the first thing you doe, take halfe a pinte of Sacke, and hauing brewed it well with the powder of Anny-seedes and Sugar candie, giue it your horse: then lay his cloathes hansomely and in good order about him, stopping the surfingle round about with soft wispes, then if you haue any couering of silke, or other finer cloath for the showe, (as for the most part Noble-men and great persons haue) then you shall lay it the vppermost, and hide both the other cloathes and the wispes also; then you shall vnplatte both his mayne and

tayle

tayle, seuering euerie haire one from another, then you shall wash his Snaffle in a little Beere, and put it in his mouth, then with some fine riband or lace, you shall tye vp his fore-toppe, so that it may not dangle or hinder his sight, and whilest you are dooing these thinges, you shall make other Groomes doe nothing but rubbe his legges, thus when you haue fitted euerie thing conueniently, you shall take Vinegar into your mouth and spirt it into your Horses nostrels, and so leade him towardes the race, in such manner and forme as was shewed you in the Horses first course, and after you come at the race end, when you haue rubd his legges, and asmuch as you can, prouok't him to pisse and dung, then you shall vngird his cloathes, set on your saddle, spirt Vinegar into his nostrels, and then mount his backe, and when the watch-word is giuen, start him and runne him according to your Art and courage.

Chap. 7.

Obseruations to bee vsed, and inconueniences which happen during the dyeting of Running Horses.

NOW forasmuch as there bee diuers generall obseruations, which you shall obserue, during the time of dyeting your Horse, I will as neere as I can set them downe in such sort, as may bee best fitting for your memory, wherfore first you shall obserue that once or twice in a week when you giue your horse any oates, to giue him a little Mustard-seede mingled therewith,

which

which will make your horse neese, and purge his head of all grosse matter. You shal also obserue, that when your Horses dung lookes of a paalish yellowe colour, and is of an indifferent hardnesse both in substance and smell, like to the ordure of a man, that then it is best, and the Horse in strongest temper. You shall obserue, that after your horse comes to the strength of feeding, and that his dung smells strongly, that then euery time you come into the stable you burne either Iuniper, Frankensence, Storaxe, or some other perfume, both to take away the euill smell, and to comfort the horse. Also you shall obserue, that if your Horse be an exeeding grosse feeder, and that he will eate vp his litter in great aboundance, that then you may put him into his Muzzle for a fortnight or three weekes before the race day, but if he be a horse of a tender and dainty stomacke, so that you shall with great difficultie make him eate any thing at all, in this case you shall not put him into the muzzle at all, aboue one night before the race day, for the vse of the muzzle is onely but to keepe him from foule and vnwholsome feeding, and to prepare and get him a stomacke; also you shall obserue, that when you giue your horse a playing course, that is to say, when you doe no more but gallop him ouer the race so leasurely as you can deuise, that if then you doe it in his cloathes it shall be very good, and more wholsome for the horse then if you did giue him such a course naked, for if hee bee in good and perfect temper, then that gentle exercise will no more but make him warme in his cloathes.

Lastly you shall obserue, that after your horse is perfectly cleane, and in perfect state of body, if then he take a generall loathe vnto his dyeting food, and will not by any

any meanes touch any part of it, then you shall not spare if for the recouery of his stomacke you giue him any food whatsoeuer for a meale or two, as either hay, grasse, forrage, hunting bread, pease and branne, or euen common horse-bread; for the common Prouerbe being, that a little doth but a little hurt. In this case to preuent a greater mischiefe, you must be content to runne into a greater inconuenience. Many other obseruations there be which your experience will produce vnto your memory, and which acquaintance and familiarity amongst men skilfull in this Art will bring to your knowledge, of which now my remembrance is barren of, wherefore not doubting but these being carefully looked vnto, will giue you all reasonable satisfaction, for the rest I will referre them to your owne practise, and the disputations of others reasons.

Now for the inconueniences which are most apt to fall out during this time of dyeting running horses, they are three in number, namely, lameneſſe of members, sickneſſe of body, or dislike of food. To preuent lameneſſe of limbes, you must let your exercise be moderate, and vse dayly those supple oyntments which are soueraigne for the limbs; as linseed oyle, traine oyle, sheepsfoot oyle, neats-foot oyle, and such like: all which are to be vsed before trauell; and pisse and salt-peter, nerue-oyle, oyle de bay, and oyle *Perolium*, all which are to be vsed after labour: but if notwithstanding all these helps yet lameneſſe doe chance to happen, then you must repaire to the next Booke following, which conteineth the office of the Farrier, wherein you shall finde remedy for euery sorance: as for sickneſſe of body to preuent it, you must keepe the body cleane by scowrings, the bloud

pure

pure by good dyet, and the spirits actiue, and in strength by healthfull exercise; but if likewise crosse to your indeuours this chaunce of sicknes and infirmitie happen vnto your Horse, then you shall repaire likewise to the next booke, where you shall finde receits for euery imperfection in Nature, as wholsome purgations, comfortable drinkes, and the best glisters, of which you shall stand most in neede in this case of straite dyeting; for if your Horse in the time of this especiall keeping, doe by any accident drie inwardly, so that he cannot dung but with great paine and difficultie, you shall then not loosen him by any purgation or scowring, for that through his passage amongst the inward vessels, and mixing with the blood and spirits, doth weaken a Horse too much, but onely you shall administer a glister vnto him which is most kindely, both cooling and comfortable. Now lastly for his dislike of foode, to preuent it, you must vse oft change of food, and certaine times in your feeding; but if notwithstanding it happen, then you must repaire it by much ayring, and longer time of fasting: And thus much both for obseruations and inconueniences.

Chap. 8.

Certaine helpes and rules for the Rider, and how hee shall runne his Horse at the best aduauntage.

Of waight.

OF all the aduantages which are either to bee gained or lost, there is none greater or more carefully to be respected, then either the giuing, or the loosing

loosing of waight, for it is most certain and I haue seene many experiments thereof, that a pound waight aduantage hath both wonne and lost the wager, as thus, he that hath beene a pound waight heauier hath lost, and that pound waight being abated hee hath wonne, for in long or sore courses, where waight is to be felt, there lesse then a pound is verie troublesome; and though these chances happen not in euerie course, at least are not so seuerally lookt into, yet for mine owne part, I giue this caution to all those which intend to make any match vpon running Horses, by no meanes to giue his aduersarie any aduantage in waight, for though it be neuer so little in a mans sence or apprehension, yet it is a great matter in the end of the wearie labour.

The waight, which for the most part is agree'd vpon in matches in these daies, and the certaine waight which is allowed in all Bell-courses through this Land, where men are the ryders is ten stone waight, each stone containing 14. pound; and (being in a match for a Bel) if he which comes first vnto the staffe, want any thing of his due waight, (which is presently to be tryed by the scales) hee shall loose his aduantage, and the second horse shall haue the Bell, but if the second horse want waight also, then the third horse shal haue it, and so frō horse to horse til it come to the last horse, and for mine own part, I haue seene courses where for want of waight the hindmost horse hath beene adiudged the Bell, and indeed it is his due if he bring his true waight to the staffe, and be seene to gallop the course thorow; but if in the course hee be seene to leaue galloping as disparing in the match, then he shall challenge no aduantage, because his owne yeelding was a resignatiō of all his right in that daies victory.

Now if no horse bring his waight to the staffe, then the Bell shal be giuen to that horse which ranne with the greatest waight. These Lawes being well considered, it is the part of euerie good Rider to make himselfe a full compleate waight, and if he be of himselfe so light, that hee must carry dead waight, then to carry it in a thicke plate of leade, folded and sowed vp in cloath or canuase, and going like a girdle about his brest vnder his arme-pits, and to be borne vp with two crosse Bautricks ouerthwart their shoulders, for so shall it bee least troublesome both to the Horse, and to the Rider, whereas to carrie dead waight, as I haue seene many Riders doe, either about their wastes, or in the pockets of their breeches, it must needs bee verie vilde, and cannot chuse but beate a man mightily, both vpon the thighes and bodie. To ride with a plate coate, (as I haue seene a principall Rider doe) cannot but be most troublesome, or to beare sods of earth about a man is the worst of all, for the earth drying, looseth the waight, and so puts in danger the wager. I would not haue a Rider by any meanes to ride fasting, for though some suppose they are then lightest, yet daily proofes shewes vs, that they are heauier, then when their bodies haue taken moderate sustenance.

Of aduantage against aduantage.

Now since I am entred thus farre into these aduantages, I will shew you one most necessary which hitherto I haue omitted, which is aduantage against aduantage, as thus for example: If you being the maister of a horse of principall good speed, shall be either braued or challenged by him that hath a horse but of a meane speed, saying hee wil runne with you such a course if you will but giue him one quarter of a mile aduantage, you that by certain proofe and triall knowes your horse is able to ouer-run him

him in that course aboue three quarters of a mile, will presently make the match: In this case, you shall by no meanes agree to giue him oddes, or aduauntage of the quarter of a mile at the beginning of the race, for that may soone bring you to bee a looser; and the reason is this: your aduersarie at the start stands a iust quarter of a mile before you, and the signe beeing giuen, you both start, you haue then a quarter of a mile to runne before you come to his starting place, which if you doe not runne at the height of your horses speede, then your aduersary will be got another quarter of a mile before you, and then your wager is in great hazzard, but say you doe runne at your best speede, so that when you come to the end of the first quarter, your aduersarie running but at a three quarters speed (as if he be wise he will not runne faster) is but halfe a quarter before you, then haue you that halfe quarter to runne vpon the spurres also: when that is done, say he be but twentie score before you, that must bee runne vpon the spurres also: then say hee be but twelue score before, you must runne that at the same speede also: then say you come in that twelue score to buttocke him, you shall then finde hee hauing runne all the while before at his owne ease, and within his speede, will now bee able to giue a fresh loose from you and almost to double the speede hee before held, whilest your horse hauing before neither had ease, nor breath giuen him, will euen through despaire and faintnesse, yeeld in his labour, except hee be a Horse of such an inuincible spirit as hath fewe or no equalls: whereas on the contrarie part, giue the aduauntage at the last end of the race, so that you may start cheeke by cheeke together, and you shall in the first quarter of the mile burst him,

and inforcing him to runne beyond his strength, he will not be able to indure his gallop, but wil tyre most shamefully. For as a horse beeing kept in his strength growes proude in his labour; so beeing stretched beyond his strength, hee growes weake and faint-harted.

But leauing these aduauntages, and to returne to my purpose, after the Ryder hath made his waight, and all other his accouterments, in such fit sorte as becomes a good Horsman; that is to say, his garments light, close, and easie, his Cappe fast vpon his head, his bootes without wrinckles, and his spurres easie for his heeles, hauing verie good steele rowels: then beeing mounted vpon his Horse, and being ready for the start, hee shall take a couple of roddes finely rush growne, of good tough Birch, not beeing aboue an elle long, and one of them he shall put vnder his girdle, and the other hee shall carrie in the midst crosse wise betweene his teeth: then shall hee take vp his Brydle reynes, and hauing made them eeuen, he shall holde them fast betweene his fore-finger and his thumbe, and then hanke them about his hand twice, drawing them vnto such a firme straitnesse, that albe hee let the first hanke loose, yet the second shall holde his Horse at a sufficient commaundment. And beeing thus readily prepared, carrying his legges close by his Horses sides, with his toes turned inward towardes the pointes of the horses fore-shoulders, so that the horse may neither feele the spurre, nor yet his legges be borne so farre off, but that vpon the least occasion he may instantly giue him the spurres.

The Horse-runners apparell.

Assoone as the watch-word for the start is giuen, hee shall by bowing his body a little forward towardes his horses neck, with all coolnes and gentlenes that may be,

start

start his horse into little more then an ordinarie gallop; for there is not a more vilde or vn-Horsman-like motion, then to start a horse suddainly, or in furie, both because if the Horse be of a furious and great spirit, such an intemperate hastinesse will driue him into a violent madnesse, in which hee will either choake himselfe at first in his owne winde, or else runne away so fast that he will abate his strength before he haue occasion to vse it, as I haue seen many times happen between a mad horse, and a mad Horse-man.

Now it is certaine that there be some Horses (as I haue both seene and ridden such) which though the Horse-man bee neuer so temperate and milde, yet out of the hardnesse of their mouthes, and the violence of their spirits, if they be either started amongst other horses, or heare horses come thundring after them, will (whether the Rider will or no) runne at the height of their vttermost powers, whilest they haue either strength or winde.

Such a horse if you chance to ride vpon who hath neither patience in starting, nor temper in running, then I would haue you to suffer such horser as runne against you to start before you, and you with all gentlenes to follow them euen in the verie path, that one of them runs, so that if he offer to runne faster then he should, hee shall be inforced to runne ouer the horse which runnes before him, which seldome you shall finde any horse without compulsion will doe, by meanes whereof you shall reape these two benefits: First that you shall keepe your horse in that temper of speede which you desire, and sepreserue your horse both in strength and winde: and so condly, what with the noise of your rũning, and the feare that you will treade vpon his heeles, you shall driue your

aduersarie so fast before you, that through feare and furie you shall beate him out of winde, and make him faint much sooner then if hee ranne at his owne pleasure, insomuch that when you haue ridden a myle or more, at what time your Horse will come to coolenesse, and temperate ryding, you shall finde him in that strength of winde and bodie, that you may take what way you will and rule your horse by the directions of your owne thoughts. But if your Horse bee so extreame madde, that hee will not suffer any horse to start before him, nor yet stand still with any quietnesse till the time of starting, you shall not then take his backe till your aduaersaries bee all ready mounted, and then assoone as you get vp, you shall stand a horse length or two at least behinde your aduersaries, and cause your Groome to holde him quietly by the head, hauing his face turnd the contrarie way, to that which he should runne till the other Horses be started, then vpon their starting, the groome shall turne him gently about, and you shall start with all quietnes; and though you will thinke the losse of so much ground is a great dis-aduantage, which cannot be at the most aboue fortie or threescore yardes, yet it is not so, for beleeue it to loose twelue score yardes, so you may bring your horse to runne tempetately, will be double gained in a course of foure myle, for nothing bringes a Horse sooner to faintnesse then intemperance and indiscretion at the first starting.

These Horses of which I haue hitherto spoken, being of great courage and mettall, are intended to be of great speede and swiftnesse, for it is impossible to finde toughnes and furie ioyn'd together, because the one doth euer confound the other: Wherefore if the Horse you ride

vpon

vpon bee ſwift and ſpritie, you ſhall let your aduerſarie leade you, till you finde your horſe begin to ride at ſome commandment, then you ſhall thruſt vp to the ſide of your aduerſarie, and ſee in what ſort he rideth, whether he haue made any vſe of his ſpurres, whether he ride with a looſe hand, or whether he vſe any other cloſe correction, as either to giue him a chock in the mouth with his brydle, to daſh his feete forward vpon his ſtirrop-leathers, or to ſtrike him with his ſpurre vpon the contrary ſide which is from you, which you ſhall know by the whisking of the horſes tayle; any of theſe if you doe perceiue, and feele your owne horſe to run at his eaſe, you ſhall then neither increaſe nor diminiſh your ſpeede, but hold him vp to that ſpeede till you come within the laſt myle of the race, and then you ſhal looſe a hanke and put your horſe forth faſter, which if your aduerſarie ſecond and follow you cloſe, then you may beſtow a good ſtroke with your ſpurres, or a good iert or two with your rod, and then letting goe your laſt hanke, and being neare the end of your race, ſhoot away as faſt as you can make your horſe goe; but if vpon the firſt letting go of your hanke, you finde that your aduerſarie doth not ſecond you, but looſeth ground, then you ſhall make good your hanke againe, and onely looſe it when hee ſhall come neare you, till you haue wonne the wager: for euerie good Horſeman ought to bring his horſe to the laſt part of the race, with as great ſtrength as may be, and not as I haue ſeene many doe, to ſpur away ſo faſt vpon the firſt aduantage, that when they come to the end of the race where is both the greateſt concourſe of people, and where the Horſe ſhould ſhow his beſt ſpirit, they many times with great difficultie gallop, although their aduerſarie bee

at least a quarter of a myle behinde them, wherefore a iudicial Horſ-man knowing his aduantages ſhould hold then: and ſo though he runne not farre before his aduerſary, yet by his gallantnes in running, and the pride of his Horſes countenance, hee ſhall declare to the world that he could do more, if it were his pleaſure, and this is the beſt manner of ryding, & moſt like a good Horſman.

Of running againſt many Horſes.

But if you runne againſt many Horſes, ſo that if you ſhould ride at any one particularly, you ſhould looſe aduantage of the reſt; In this caſe you haue but onely this courſe of riding, firſt to ſtart with as great temperance as you can, and whileſt all the horſes run in a cluſter together, to followe them cloſe at the heeles, and when you ſee any one or two of them to breake from the reſt, onely to amend your ſpeed but a little more, and to come vp to the hinmoſt horſe, whom if you ſee to ride at his owne eaſe, and with good ſtrength, you ſhall drawe him on a little faſter, and looke to the formoſt horſes which brake away firſt, and if you perceiue that either of them whiske their tailes about, or that you ſee their ryder lye cloſe and begin to labour, you ſhall then let them goe, and hold you your certaine ſpeed ſtill amongſt the reſt, for they being at ſtrife one with another, will ſoone burſt themſelues, and when their winde begins to grow weake and their Riders would a little eaſe them, then you ſhall thruſt vp hard vnto them and by no meanes giue them leaue to take any breathing: yet you ſhall not couet to runne paſt them, but vpon them, till being within three quatters of a mile of the ſtaffe, you ſhall then put him to the vttermoſt of his power, and either win or looſe inſtantly, ſo that to ſpeake in a word, if you runne amongſt numbers, neuer ſtriue, nor (if you can hinder it) be ſtriuen withall,

withall, but keeping a certaintie in your speed, take your aduantage when you see others are weakned.

Hitherto I haue onely spoken of swift horses, because in them is most Art to be vsed, but if your horse bee not full so swift, yet verie tough, and of great indurance, then you shall vpon your first start run away at the least at a three quarters speed, for the first mile, yet not runne before him, but cheek by checke or hard vpon his heele, that you may compell him to runne as violently as you can, and when you haue got him to any great speed, you shall then hold your bridle somewhat straite, yet bestowe the euen stroke of your spurres twice or thrice together: then when you come within a mile and a halfe of the end of the course, you shall spare neither rodde, nor spurre, but runne away with all the speed you can till the wager be wonne or lost. Of running a slowe tough Horse.

Now for generall rules in your riding, you shall know that he which will run a race, must haue a sure, a strong, and a close seate without moouing in his saddle or pressing too hard vpon his stirrop leathers, he must carrie both his armes close to his body, and when he vseth his rodde, he must not mooue his arme any more then from the elbowe downward: when he spurs he must not fetch his legs with a long blowe, but gripe his horse vpon each side sharply & suddainly. if when he is in the very height of his running, when he spurres hir horse, hee perceiue him to whiske his taile, and clappe his eares close to his neck, he shall then forbeare to spur him, and rather seek to giue him breath, because he is then at the vttermost of his power, and to torment further were to make him faint and desperate; he shall neuer ride his horse with a loose hand, but holding his reines at an indifferent straitHelps in riding.

nesse keepe his horse in winde and courage.

Now for the rules of foule play, as the crossing of waies, the striking your aduersaries horse thwart the face as you passe by him, the shouldring him vp into vneeuen pathes or rough waie, whereby you may indanger to ouerthrowe him; or as you ride close by him with your foote to dash his foote out of his stirrop, or riding knee to knee to put your knee vnder the thigh of your aduersary and so seeke to hoist him out of the saddle, or laying your hand vpon his shoulder, to pull him backward; or in riding by him to twitch his rod either from his hand, mouth, or girdle, or a world of other such like knaueries, as they are both contrarie to faire play, & the grounds, of many great quarrells and greeuances amongst great persons, so I wish euery good ryder, not onelie to shunne them but with his vttermost power to detest him that will put them in practise, because it is both the signe of a dishonest nature, and is the onely meanes to bring confusion to that sport which is most praise-worthie. And thus much for the rules both good and euill which accompanie the running rider.

CHAP. 2

The office of the Sadler, and the best side of his commodities.

The great horse saddle.

NOt that I am ambitious of the name of generall knowledge, nor that I would haue the world to repute me such an officious Constable that I will make priuie searches into occupations beyond my commission, doe I intend to handle this matter of the Sadlers office. But since I haue thus farre waded into this generall reuelation of all things belonging to the skilful horseman

horseman, and that euery Gentleman, horsman, or other trauailer, may know how to apparrell his horse, which is most beautifull, which most easie, and which most hurtfull, I meane according to mine experience, to deliuer the true shapes and benefites of Saddles, and other implements belonging to a horse, and to shew which is the meeteſt for the mans seate, or the horses wearing, presuming that in it I knowe mor then a common Sadler, because they onely fashion, and the horseman findes the ease, or disease of their proportions.

To begin therfore with Saddles; the saddle for the great horse or horse of seruice, is the most worthie, the true shape and proportion whereof I haue shewed before in my booke of riding. And albe it haue not the hie forepillowes or bolsters, to which you may so conueniently fasten your steeles or plats, as the flat pillowes vsed in times past haue, yet a skilfull Sadler may make the outside of those pillowes as flat as he please, and with some small buckles make the plates as fast aboue and belowe, as any vice pinns whatsoeuer, then whereas some will finde fault at the roundnesse of the pomell, as supposing it doth not couer the mans bellie sufficiently, to that I say they are verie much deciued, for if the seat of the saddle haue his true descent and compasse, the pomell cannot chuse but come to the riders nauell, which is a height in the stricknesse of Art somwhat of the higheſt, only this obseruation the sadler must keep, that the forepillowes must stand so directly downeward, that they may defend the Ryders knees from the neather point of the bare tree, and not by setting them somewhat too forward, leaue nothing betweene his knees and the tree, but the thicknes of a single leather. At the setting on of

the

the pommell of the saddle shall be plac'd a ring of iron, wherto to fasten your pistols, and by the right side of the pommell shall be a loope whereon to hang your battell-axe, there must be betwixt each mid side of the pannell before on the tree, a strong buckle wherto to fasten the breast-plate, and directly in the mid part of the saddle behinde ouer the horses chine, an other strong buckle whereto to fasten the crooper.

The Morocco Saddle.

Next vnto this saddle is the *Morocco* saddle, which in euery shape should resemble the proportion of this former saddle, onely in the bigness of the pillowes, the height of the hinder crooper, the depth of the seate, and squarenes of the tree, it should not containe halfe so much as the other, the length thereof not being aboue seauenteene or eighteene inches, the depth ten inches, and the height of the hinder croope or pillowes not aboue fiue inches; to this saddle doth also belong both breast-plate and crooper, and it is principally to be vsed in the warres, as either for the light horse or the *Carbine*, and these two Saddles for seruice in the warres, are altogether sufficient.

The French Pad.

Now to procoede to such saddles as are meetest for the vse of trauelling, you shall vnderstand that for princes, men of estate, men diseased or corpulent, all which howsoeuer they iourney, yet they iourney with greate moderation and temperance, being as loath to ouerheat their horses, as to ouer toyle themselues; for such I say, the most easiest, graueſt and comelyest seate is the french pad, if it be made of a right shape tree, and the seate stopt with downe, and artificially quilted, neither so soft and loose that the weight of the man presse it flat downe; nor so hard that the seate will not yeelde though the man sit

neuer

neuer so heauie, there is a meane betwixt both these, and that meane is to be obserued. Now the generall and greatest fault which our Sadlers heere in England doe commit in making these French Pads is, that they make the seates thereof too broad, so that when a man comes to bestride them, they doe make him open his thighes so wide, that he can neither sit fast nor at his ease, but after a little trauell put him to such paine, as if they would splyt or deuide him; wherefore it is the office of the good sadler when he makes the seate of the French pad, to raise the vpper garthweb a little higher, and to drawe the seat before as narrow as he can, and as thicke and soft as he can; I meane that part onely which is iust betweene the mans legges: as for the hinder part of the seate which is vnder the buttocks he shall make it broad, round, flat and soft, that the man may sit thereupon, as if he sat vpon a cushion; to this saddle also doth belong both brest-plate and crooper, so that it (as the former) must haue buckles for that purpose.

The next saddle to this for ease is the large Scotch saddle, being at least eighteene inches in length, & made with the French padde seate, together with pillowes and bolsters of like fashion, of which sort of Saddles a man may behold some almost in euery Sadlers shop, and it is a very excellent Saddle for his seruice, who hauing great occasions of continuall trauell, is now and then compeld to trauaile with more then ordinary haste: so that should he make vse of the French padde, or any of the former Saddles, the burthen and trouble sometimes would too soone heate his horses back, and with the scalding thereof breed both the felter worm, warble, & such like diseases, and also draw a horse sooner to faintnes & wearines

The large scotch saddle.

in

in his iourney, for the truth is, those heauie Saddles are but for moderate trauaile.

The next Saddle to this for the vse of trauel, is the plain Scottish saddle, I do not mean that Scottish saddle which was in vse many yeares agone, and are yet remaining in Sadlers shops, being in fashion iust foure square, that is to say, as deep as they are long: for of all the proportions of saddles they be the worst: but I meane that saddle which being eighteene inches in seate, is not aboue ten inches in depth to the neather points, or being fourteene inches in length, is not aboue eight in depth, and these sizes are sufficient for any man of what shape soeuer he be, if he exceed not a horses ordinarie burthen.

The plaine Scottish sadle.

Now it is the office of the Sadler which maketh the seate of this plaine Scottish saddle, to set it somewhat straite vpon the garth-web, and not according to our late found fashion in the South parts of this kingdome, to set the garth-web so loose, that before the saddle come to be ridden in, the seate is fallen as lowe, and beareth as great a compasse as if it had bin ridden in many daies before, which I must confesse is more comely to the eie of the beholder, but nothing neare so profitable for the vse of the rider; and the reason is this, when the garth-web is so let downe, and the seate proportioned before the saddle be ridden in, then when it comes to beare the waight of the man, and to be stretcht out by burthen; the garth-web which euer at first will retch, falls downe so lowe vnder the tree of the saddle, that after a monthes riding in it the man is forc'd to sit vpon the edges of the ribbes of the Tree, and which is worse then that, the seate will be so hollow, that when either the horse shall stumble, be put to any great leape,

or

or vpon any great affright, shall sodainely stand still; the vpper part of the saddle will giue the man such a iumpe against the bottome of his bellye, that it will make his hart ake for many houres after, whereas when the seate standes straite vpon the garth webbe, then the waight of the man doth no more but settle the webbe to such a competent lowenes, that the man being borne vp aboue the saddle tree, sits both more sure, more easie and more free from danger; and these saddles are vsed most of young Gentlemen, and such other youthfull spirits, who scorning to be older then their yeares, or giue the world notice of any inabilitie, will neither bee beholden to the pad or any other quilted seate, for the benefit of ease in their trauell.

The Hunting or running saddle.

Next vnto this saddle, is the hunting or running Saddle, which is also but a plaine scotch saddle of the same generall proportion that the former scotch saddle is, onely it must be the lightest and nimblest you can possible haue framed, as being made of the oldest and dryest Sallowe which can be gotten and hew'd to as slender a substance as can possible be, for the strengthning whereof the sadler shall first couer the wood ouer with dride sinewes, of an Oxe well tasled and mixt with well tempered glewe, and not as many of our Sadlers vse to doe, to lay on the sinewes, with nothing but paste onely. After the tree is sinewd, you shall then glewe strong canuase all ouer the wood also, then plate the tree, both before and behinde and it will be strong enough for any burthen. These hunting or running Saddles would be twelue inches in length of seate and not aboue fiue inches in depth downeward, it must also haue the seate made straite vpon the garth-webbe, and the pillowes

thereof

thereof round, and but a little bigger then a mans great finger.

Of chusing Saddle trees.

Now becauſe the greateſt goodneſſe in ſaddles conſiſteth in the ſaddle tree, the ſadler when he chuſeth his trees ſhal obſerue theſe principles, firſt that their ſhapes be right in his eye, next that the wood whereof they be made, be exceeding old, drie, and well ſeaſoned, for if it be otherwiſe, the very heate of the horſes back will warp the ſaddle tree, and if it warpe but the breadth of a ſtrawe awrye, it wil neuer ſtand vpon any horſes backe after, but it will hurt him; Next he ſhall turne vp the ſaddle tree, & with a threed meaſure it from point to point, croſſewiſe, and if it be not iuſt and euen, but longer or wider one way then another, which of Sadlers is called a skellowd tree, then it cannot poſſibly be ridden vpon, but it will hurt a horſe: but if it be ſquare and eeuen, then you may preſume it is very perfect; then he ſhall not ſuffer any holes to be cut through the tree for to paſſe the ſtirrop-leathers thorowe, but to haue ſtrong *Sinills* of yron well reuited thorowe the tree wherein to put your ſtirrop leathers, he ſhall naile vpon each ſide of the Saddle, three ſtrong tabbes of neates leather, onely they vpon the left ſide, ſhall bee longer then thoſe vpon the right ſide, becauſe the horſe is euer girded vpon the left ſide: the pannells of his Saddle ſhall be made of ſtrong linnen cloath, which is longeſt ere it heate, and ſooneſt dride when it is wette, and not of cotten as it is vſed in ſome places. The beſt ſtopping for pannels is Deares hayre, for it is ſofteſt, lyeth moſt eeuen and ſooneſt dryeth when it is wette, but where it cannot be gotte, there muſt other hayre be vſed, but the Sadler muſt be very carefull that the lime be well waſht out of it, and that it

be

be well beaten, or else it will both poyson and hurt a horses backe: the pannell also would be stopt no further then to couer the wood of the tree, for more is superfluous, and doth but adde to the Horses backe a heate extraordinarie.

As the Sadler shall thus be furnished with all manner of saddles, so he shall likewise haue all sorts of bitts, which belong to the great horse saddle, the *Morocco* or the French Padde: the proportions of which mouthes and cheekes are figured in the booke of riding. He shall also haue head-stalles fitte for such bitts made of blacke Neates leather, both plaine or studded, with brest-plates and trappings sutable to the head-stalles and trimmings of the saddles; then he shall haue to ioyne with the Scotch Saddle,, which hath the French Padde seate, or with the plaine trauelling Scotch saddle, fine light Northerne Bridles, made of good Neates leather soundly oylde, and either of white, blacke, redde, or yellow colour. To these bridles, he shall haue Snaffles of all shapes, some smooth, some rough, with small rings in the midst, and sundry sort of small players fastned to those ringes, which to a trauelling horse breedes pleasure, and makes him haue a white mouth.

Now to the Hunting or running Saddle, hee shall haue likewise light, narrowe Northerne bribles, but his Snaffles for those purposes shall be longer then the trauelling Snaffles by at least two inches: they shall haue no ringes nor players in the midst, but be plighted one within another, and the whole Snaffle shall bee as small and as slender as may bee, and the plights made so easie that you may make the out-moste endes at your pleasure, meete one with the other: the

reasons of which shapes are, first it shall haue no players least the horse in his race catch them betweene his teeth, & so hold them, that though the rider pull neuer so hard, yet the horse will runne away without controlement, neither shall the players make him foame at the mouth, least that fluxe of grosse moisture in his swiftnesse choak or stop his winde, then the two outmost ends shall meet together, that if the horse shall runne faster then you would haue him, the pulling in of your bridle reyne shal drawe the outmost endes of the snaffle so close together and so nip the horse vpon each side of the chap, that he shall be glad to haue his head commaunded.

Next these the sadler shall haue stirrops of all fashions, to the great Saddle, the *Morocco* & the Pad, and such stirrops as are figured in the book of riding, but to the other Scotch Saddles, fine, slender, round webd, stirrops; that part which is vnder the riders foot, being razed & made rough like a rape file, that his feete may not slippe vp and downe therein. He shall haue garthes of all sortes, those for trauelling being made of broade linnen webbe with large strong buckles, those for hunting or running, of woollen webbe, strongly quilled and ioyned to the lightest and finest buckles. He must haue stirrop-leathers made of well liquored leather, and by no means so burnt in the dressing, as most black stirrop-leathers are, which are hardly for a weeks seruice. As for maine-combs, curie-combes of all fashions & sizes, spunges, postpillions, Surfingles, Collers, pasterns, Coach harnesses, hoodes and housing cloathes for horses, and such like apparellings meete either for vse in the house, in the field, or vpon the high way, it is the office of euery good Sadler to haue both the best and the best choice, as being the onely

onely Marchant for these necessarie commodities. And thus much for a slender taste of the Sadlers office.

CHAP. 2

The office of the Smith, touching the shooing of horses.

BEcause the Smith is a most principall and necessarie member in a well ordered stable; and that the want of him bringeth many most grosse inconueniences to the good estate of Horses, I will before I proceede any further, speake something concerning his office, not as to speake of his office in euery generall vnderstanding, but onely of that parte of his office which concerneth the paring and shooing of Horses feete. It is therefore the dutie of euery good Smith, to knowe that Horses haue two sortes of hoofes, that is to say, either perfite or imperfite; the perfite hoofe is deuided into two kindes, that is, the perfite round hoofe, and the perfite long hoofe: and the imperfite hoofe is deuided into eight kindes, that is, the flat hoofe, as those of flemish horses, the brittle or rugged hoofe as those which growe after frettizing or foundring; the crooked hoofe, either inward or outward (the inward making a horse enterfaire, the outward making a horse grauel) the ouerhollow or drie hoofe, as those of *Barbaries* & *Turkes*. The hoofe which is all soale (of some called a broad frush) which makes a horse haue weak heeles: the narrow heeld hoofe, the hoofe with the false quarter, & the hoofe that is bound, either by any straine, or some one of these former imperfections: To all these hoofes both perfect and

imperfect, there belongeth great skil, & the Smith must know how to handle & pare each one of them seuerally.

Wherfore first to speak of the perfit hoofes: the round perfite hoofe is good in the trauelling horse, and is both a signe of strength and long life: the long perfit hoofe (which by some of our English writers is accounted a fault in horses) is excellent both in the running and hunting horse, and is not only a great signe of swiftnes, but also makes a horse runne with lesse paine and labour ouerthwart deepe fieldes, or myrie wayes. Touching the paring of either of them, the Smith must knowe that there is but one skill to be there vsed, and that is, he shall (as soone as he hath taken his Buttris or paring knife in his hand) not take his stroke from the toppe of the heele downe to the toe (as our bungling common Smithes doe) cutting away the horses heeles at the first stroake, which onely should be preserued & cut little or nothing at all, but striking at least an inch or more short of the heele, he shall first pare the toe, both smooth, plain, thin, and euen: then turning himselfe about, and looking vpon the horses heeles, if in his eie they appeare (for want of ordering) to be a little ouer-growne, then he shall as sleightly and thinly as may bee pare away onely, the superfluous growth of the heele: for the Smith must knowe, that the onely thing which is to be preserued in a horses hoofe is his heeles. This done, he shal with his face turned opposite to the horses hoofe, and with the edge of his Buttris vpward, open the heele of the Horse betweene the frush and the hoofe as wide and as hollow as conueniently may be, for that onely giueth ease and libertie to the foote within the hoofe: this done, hee shall lay his shooe vpon the hoofe, and see that it lie

lie close and euen, not bearing more vpon one part of the heele then on the other, but resting alike in all parts, which he shall discerne, if by looking betwixt the hoofe & the shooe he see not any glimpse of light shining thorow more in one place then in another; when the shooe sits to your contentment vpon the foote, then you shall see that the vtmost verge or ring of the shooe extend almost halfe a strawe breadth broder forth then the hoofe, especially at the heeles, and on each side; but at the toe, the hoofe and the shooe shall be all one.

Now to speake more particularly of the shooe, it is the office of the Smith to knowe that he must fashion, proportion and turne it according to the shape of the hoofe and not like our Smiths, make one shooe serue all manner of feet. He shall also know how to giue his Iron the toughest and not the hardest temper: he shall make his naile hoales more towards the toe then the heele, because there the hoofe is weakest and narrowest, and the veine lyeth most outmost. Now for the heeles of the shooes, he shall make them with great thick spunges, at least halfe an inch thick, if the horse be either for seruice in the wars, or for trauelling: but if he be for the Coach, Wagon, or other draught; chiefely in paued streets; then in stead of thick spunges, deep caukens are more cõmodious. For the web of the trauelling shooe it shall bee broad, chiefly at the toe, drawing a little narrower down towards the heele, yet in such sort that it may almost couer the hoofe, and leaue onely the soale or frush vncouered: the Iron wherof the shooe shall be made, may either be good Spanish Iron, or good English Iron, & for mine own part I haue euer found the English Iron the better.

Now for the naile, it must both hold the same temper

which the shooe hath, and be of the same Iron, the head must be long and square, beaten, a little sloapewise at the neather end, that it may fill the hoale, and not (as some of our ouer curious Smithes doe) be made in a mould, by which meanes it cannot enter in as it should, but holding onely by the weakest part of the naile, which is the very point of the clench, with the least straine vpon any stone or other wise, it is loosened and wrested out of the shooe: these foolishly made nailes, you shall knowe, for they haue most commonly the foure outmost corners of the head driuen downe, and the figure of a Diamond square vpon the top. Your nayle head therefore must so enter into the shooe, that not aboue the one halfe may stand aboue the shooe, the shankes of the nayles must be flat, and iust so broad as the nayle hoale, and towards the setting on of the head so thicke, that they may fill the hole as they are driuen in: the point of the naile shall be sharpe, and beaten vpon one side sloape-wise, that as it is driuen, the point may carry the shanke outward from the hoofe, not inward, towards the veane for feare of pricking. The first naile you shall driue in shall bee into the middle hoale vpon the outside of the hoofe, then set the shooe straight, which is, that it may stand and couer equally both the heeles alike, then driue in another naile into the middle hoale on the inside the hoofe. Now you must vnderstand, that when you driue in any nailes, you shall either dippe the point into soft grease or sope, or else wet them in your mouth.

The hammer which driues them must be very light, and the first strokes very gentle till the nailes be entred, and then harder and harder, till they can goe no further.

Assoone as any naile is driuen in, you shall turne the

point backe againe, downe to the shooeward, both for feare the horse by twitching his foot away, should hurt him which holds vp his foot, & also that by the bending the shankes, the clenches may be the stronger. When all the nailes are driuen in, and the pointes brought out as it were all in one line, then with a paire of pincers the nailes points shall be all wrung off close by the hoofe, then driuing all the nailes ouer againe, somwhat harder then before, the Smith shall then clench the nailes vpon the hoofe by holding his pincers against each naile head and with his hammer beating downe euery clench, till they lye as smooth, and as plaine as may be, then with a rape file where the hoofe is larger then the shooe (which should be no where but at the toe) he shall file it in such sort that the shooe may be discerned round about.

Now for the imperfit hoofes, if your horses hoofe be flat and weake, you shal pare the toe a little, but the heele nothing at all, neither shal you open them aboue a straw breadth deepe between the frush & the hoofe: his shooe shall be so broad that it may couer all the hoofe hollowly that it may not touch the soale, and largely that it may beare him both easily and from the ground. But if your horses hoofes be rugged or brittle, then in paring them you shall open his heeles both as deepe and as wide as is possible, and take a little from the vpper part. The ruggednes you shall file smooth with a rape file, and the toe you shall pare as thinne as may be. For his shooe, it shall neither be heauy nor extraordinarily light, but of a mean size, only it shall be naild round about the toe; the whole shoe containing ten nailes at the least. But if his hoofe be crooked inward or outward, look what side of his hoofe he weareth least, and of that side pare the most away,

leauing the other side whole and vntouched, more then to make the shooe stand euen; as for the shooe, it shall be a very broad web, and looke of what side the horse treadeth most, that side of the shooe shall be a great deale the higher, and driuing the most nailes into the strong side of the hoofe & the fewest into the weake. If the horses hoofes be ouer hollow, you shall pare away no part of the ball of the foote, but round about the outside of the hoofe, euen from the top of the heele to the toe, you shal take away as much as you can with conueniencie, and make the hoofe more flat & leuel, as for the shooe, it shal be in all points like the shooe for the perfit hoofe, only a little flatter, & somwhat lighter: but if the horses hoofes be all soale, hauing a broad frush, you shall then pare no part of it at al, but only to make the shoe stand euen, for it stands in need of al strength possible. As for the shoe, the heeles shal be made with extraordinary long spunges, & those spunges more broad and flat then cõmonly is vsed, both to beare vp his heels, & defend the weaknes. If the horse haue strait and narrow heeles then the heeles must be opened wel between the hoofe & the frush, that they may stretch & spread: & for the shoe it shall be very light before, but the spũges vpon the hinder parts shal almost meet & ioyne together; the nailes should stand forward, & the shoe must wãt nothing of his due length, but if your horse either by pricking, stubbing or other mischiefes, put out a false quarter, you shal then in paring his hoofe plain, hollow the false quarter a litle thought more then the rest of the hoofe, & when you set on the shooe also, you shal make it by a litle hollowing to bear so from the false quarter, that the horse in his treading may not presse vpõ any patt of it. I haue seen some that haue made their

shooes

shooes want a quarter, so that the halfe quarter hath beene vncouered, but it is not good, especially if the Horse trauaile in rough wayes, for the least touch vpon the sore place, will make the horse hault exceedingly.

Now if your Horse bee hoofe-bound, you shall in paring open his heeles, so that you may almost discerne the quicke, then with a sharpe drawing yron, you shall drawe the outside of his hoofe, directly before his toe, and on each side of his hoofe, almost cleane thorow, and annoynt it euery day with Hogs-grease and Tarre mixt together, as for his shooe, it would be like the perfite shooe, onely a thought wider and larger: but for halfe shooes like halfe moones, they are naught for they leaue the heeles vndefended, which onely should bee supported and stretcht foorth to the utmost.

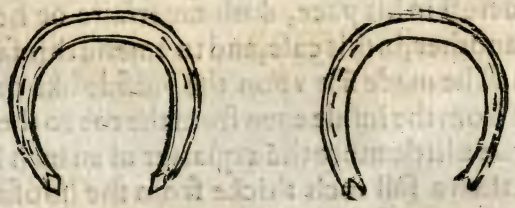
Of enterfayring.

Now if your Horse haue a good perfect hoofe, yet through defect in his pace, doth enterfaire or hew one leg vpon another, in this case, and to amend this fault, his shooes shall be made flat vpon the outside like ordinary shoes, but from the inside euen from the toe to the heele, they must be a little more thē a quarter of an inch broad, and more then a full inch thicke from the hoofe to the ground downeward, the nayles standing all round about the toe and the outside of the hoofe: the narrownes of the shooe must stand a quarter of an inch within the hoofe, and it will cast the horses legges outward. Some Smithes wil make these shoes of a full thicknes from the hoofe downward, but so thin as the back of a knife ouerthwart, but they doe no good, because the waight of the horse making those edges cut into the ground, he treads as it were on a leuell, and so cuts notwithstanding.

Hunting shooes.

Now for those shooes which doe belong vnto the Hunting

Hunting horſe, euery Smith muſt knowe that they differ from other ſhooes, becauſe the Horſes exerciſe is little vpon hie-wayes, or ſtonie places, but altogether vpon the deepes, therefore his ſhooes muſt be as light and ſlender as may bee made, but onely as it were to compaſſe the outmoſt ring of the hoofe, being in bredth not full halfe an inch, and almoſt as thicke as broade, and hauing a ſmall gutter round about, into which the Smith ſhall let in ſome part of naile head. The heeles of the ſhooes ſhall be a litle turnd vp againſt the heeles of the Horſe, being beaten thinne, and hauing as it were a little button vnderneath like a caulken made in the faſhion of thoſe ſharpe catches, which clappe into lockes and holde faſt. The proportion of the ſhooes are in theſe figures.



As for the Running ſhooes, I haue ſpoken of them ſomewhat already in the booke of Running Horſes, where I haue ſhewed of two kindes, one for hard courſes, the other for ſoft, whereunto I referre ſuch as either deſire ſatisfaction, or would knowe the vſes or reaſons for them; many other ſhooes there are, as namely ſhoes with ringes in the heeles, to make a Horſe lift his legges, the *Pancelet* to helpe the weake heele, ſhooes with

turning

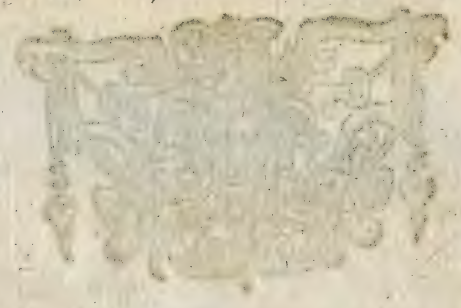
turning vices and ioyntes, and the patten ſhooe, all which being now out of vſe, becauſe there beeing better meanes found out for the preuention of the faultes they amend, I will here let them paſſe without diſcriptions, becauſe I will neither trouble you with friuolous matter, nor intice you to practiſe that which is vnprofitable.

And thus much for the Smithes office in paring and ſhooing onely.

***

The end of the ſixt Booke.







CAVALARICE,

OR

That part of Art wherin is contayned the Knowledge or Office of the Horse-Farryer, with the signes and demonstrations of all manner of infirmities, and the most best approued cure for the same.

The Seauenth Booke.

Newly corrected, perfected, and augmented, with many rare secrets:

By Geruase Markham.





LONDON

Printed by *Edw: Alde* for *Edward White*, and are to be sold at his shop neere the little north doore of Saint Paules Church at the signe of the Gun. 1617.





To the Right Honorable and moſt *noble Lord* IOHN RAMSEY, Vicount HADINGTON.

IF there be blame in me (moſt Noble Lord) to offer to your vertues this poore offertory of my labours, I muſt with renowned Sir Phillip Sydney *make anſwere, that it is a fault then in you to be vertuous, for did not your vertue and Honorable inclination (which euen vpholdeth and ſtrengtheneth this Art which I profeſſe) mooue me with the violence of an inrepreſſable deſire to become your obſeure ſeruant, doubtleſſe I had both conceal'd your name and this Worke: But ſince it is ſo, that I am now within the mercy of your more noble Spirit, euen for Vertues ſake, and that delight which you conceiue in the height of your pleaſures, let my dutious loue bee mine excuſe, and imagine that if I had inioyed better abilitie to haue expreſt a better ſeruice, it had e're now beene tendred to your Honour, with more then a hartie ſincereneſſe. As it is, I know your noble Nature will holde it, and though I am not able to doe you profitable ſeruice, yet I will not ceaſe to adde to your Name my prayers and beſt wiſhes, which is aſmuch as Greatnes can expect from a lowe fortune.*

Humbly your Honors,

GERVASE MARKHAM.

To all my fellow Smithes and Farryers both good and bad, diſperſed ouer *this Kingdome.*

THere is nothing more preiudiciall to the life of man, then an vnlearned Phiſition; nor no vilder member belonging to the Stable then an vnskilfull Farryer: whence it comes, that I haue beene more preciſely carefull to perfit this booke with the trueſt plainneſſe, and the eaſieſt demonſtrations that I could any way faſhion, becauſe for the moſt part, you Smithes are Maiſters of little more then Natures learning, ſo that ſhould I haue writ as former Authors haue written, queſtionleſſe as formerly you haue done, ſo ſtill you ſhould continue in a maze and error, the effects of your practiſe hauing onely the ground of cuſtome, and not of reaſon: this to preuent, and that you may giue a true account for whatſoeuer you ſhall adminiſter, I haue laide downe euery effect, euery face, and figure of euery infirmitie, ſo plainly, and ſo accompained it with vndoubted truthes, that if you will but either heare or reade, and intreat your memoryes to retaine what you ſhall haue deliuered, I doubt not but you ſhall both commend your expence of time, thanke me for my trauell, pleaſure thoſe which ſhall nee de you, and maintaine your places with good reputation: howſoeuer this I knowe, that foraſmuch as I haue ſet downe nothing beyond my knowledge, therefore I haue done nothing to which I cannot giue the account of reaſon: therefore if you accept it kindely, it is my loue well imployed, if otherwiſe, it is not loſt, for I did not intend it for thoſe which are vngratefull.

Farewell.

G. M.

CAVALARICE.

The ſeauenth Booke.

CHAP. I.

Of the compoſition of Horſes, and the qualitie of the thinges hee is compounded of.

HOw euer either the croſneſſe of my fortunes, which hath kept me vnder a lowe clowdy ſaile, or the miſ-imployment of mine houres ſpent in lighter ſtudies, may make the World conſtantly to imagine me an ignorant Truant in Phyloſophy, yet ſuch hath beene my couetouſneſſe in knowledge, that what I could either get by reading, comerce, or inſtruction, I haue retained with my beſt carefulnes; ſo that thoſe which beſt knowe mee, knowes I can ſay ſomething in moſt Sciences: eſpecially in this of which

I intend now to write, because euen from mine infancie I haue pursude and followed it with all dilligence and violence; yet sith I euer intended this Worke for mine owne tombe, and the generall profite of this Empyre, I will shunne all obscuritie, darkenesse and ryddles, and in the plainest manner that may bee, write so as the simplest Smith in the Land may bee bettered by his reading: Wherefore first you shall vnderstand, a Horse is compounded of seauen Naturall thinges, that is Elements, Temperatures, Humors, Members, Powers, Operations and Spirits.

Of Elements there bee foure, that is Fire, Ayre, Water, and Earth, the Fire is of nature hot and dry, but the heate is chiefest, the propertie of which heate, is to moue matter to generation, and to disperse thinges of seuerall kindes, and binde together thinges of one kinde. The Ayre is moyst and hote, but the moystnes is chiefest, the properties whereof is to make the matter apt to receiue forme, to quicken and coole the heart, and other such like offices. The Water is colde and moyst, but the coldnesse is chiefest, whose propertie is to binde and mixe bodies together, as flesh with bones, and bones with sinewes, and such like. The Earth is dry and colde, but the drynesse is chiefest, the propertie whereof is to holde together those formes which the Ayre and Water through their fluxible natures would otherwise dissolue. Thus you may see, that since in euery liuing creature there must be heate, moysture, coldnesse and drynesse, their proper beginnings must come from the operation of these foure Elements: For other more particular Elements, as the seede or menstruall blood, in that they also depend vpon these former Elements,

I will

I will not make any longer discourse vpon them.

Now for Temperatures, they spring from the mixture of Elements, and are in number nine, that is, hotte, colde, moyst and dry, which are vn-equall and simple: then hot and moyst, hot and dry, colde and moyst, colde and dry, which are vnequall and compound: and the last is a generall mixture of all the foure Elements indifferently, and is called equall, because it hath not more of the one then of the other.

Now for the vse of these tempers in a Horse, if he be equally compounded, that is, haue indifferent mixture of the Elements, then is hee of the best temper, as being light, swift, bolde, tractable, louing, and of long life: but if hee exceede in one qualitie more then in another, as if he haue most of the heate, then hee is furious, mad and desperate; if most of moysture, then hee is Apish, fantasticall, and forgetfull; if most of colde, then hee is fearefull, skyttish, and subiect to tyring; if most of dryenesse, then he is dull, sloathfull, rebellious, and full of malitiousnesse: all which tempers, you may gesse at by the Horses colours, but knowne assuredly by practise in ryding, or operation in medicine.

Now these tempers do alter, as the powers of a horse either increase or diminish, as thus: a Foale is said to haue his temper from the Fire and Ayre, a horse of middle age from the Fire and Earth, and a horse of olde age from the Earth and Water.

Horses likewise take their temperatures from the Clymbes where they are bredde, as commonly those which are neareſt the Sunne, are euer of pureſt spirits and longeſt liues, and those which are fartheſt off, are more dull, and of lesse continuance. And although one

of our Englisſh Authors, numbers our Nation of England for one of thoſe colde Countries, yet by his patience, hee is much deceiued, for if he will looke vpon the lyne vnder which we liue, hee ſhall finde we are vnder ſuch a temperate height, that neither *Greece*, *Affricke*, nor *Spayne* excelles vs in goodneſſe. Now for humors they alſo are deriued from the Elements, and are in number foure, that is to ſay, Choller, which is of the nature of Fire; Blood, which is the nature of Ayre; Flegme, which is of the nature of Water; and Melancholy, which is of the nature of Earth. Choller is in taſt bitter, Blood is in taſt ſweete, Flegme is in taſt wateriſh without taſt, and Melancholy is in taſt ſower: The places where theſe humors moſt abound, is in the Liuer choller, in the Heart blood, in the Braine flegme, and in the Spleene melancholy; from theſe humors alſo come Horſes colours, as from Choller comes bright Sorrels, cole-Blacks, and red Cheſſenuts; from Blood comes bright Bayes and Roanes; from Flegme, Milke-whites, and yellow Duns: from Melancholy, Iron-greys and Mouſe-duns. The office of theſe humors is, Choller to diſgeſt and empty the guts, Blood to nouriſh and warme the members, Flegme to giue motion, and Melancholy to procure appetite, beeing all good in their temperate Natures, but when they ouerflow, then they are vilde and ingender ſicknes. Now for the members, they are Generall, and Speciall; generall, as fleſh, bone, ſinew, and veyne; ſpeciall, as head, necke, breſt, leg, foote, and ſuch like; which though they be knit together, yet differ both in name and proportion, and of theſe ſpeciall members, the Braine, the Heart, the Liuer, and the Stones, are the chiefeſt, from whom ſpring many other principall Members, as Sinnewes

from

from the Braine, Arteries from the Heart, Veynes from the Lyuer, and Vessels of generation from the stones; all which, and the other inferiour Members, it is most necessarie euery Farryer know, and he can by no meanes better attaine thereunto, then by dissecting or anotomizing horses when they are dead; as for mine owne part, it was my practise many yeares together: Now for the powers which are in a horse, principally they be three, the first the power of feeling, which comming like a great cundite in one maine sinew from the braine, dispersеth and deuideth it selfe into a multitude of other smaller sinewes, giuing an vniuersall feeling ouer the whole body, and this power by Physitions is called *Animall*. The second is the power of life, and proceedeth from the heart, conueying from thence in Arteries, a certaine vitall blood of the Nature of Ayre, ouer the whole body also, and it is called *Vitall*. The third is the power of nourishment which proceedeth from the Liuer, carrying from thence in a number of smaller cunduit pipes, the blood through the body, which cherisheth and strengtheneth euerie member, and is called *Naturall*, which naturall power hath also other foure offices, as the receiuing of foode fit to nourish, the holding it that it may nourish, the disgesting it after it hath nourisht, and the expelling it away when it is turned to excrement: Now for opperations they proceede from the powers, as from feeling commeth motion of members, from life motion of humors whether distempered or not distempered, and may verie well bee felt by the beating of a Horses pulse vpon the temples of his heade close by his eares, and not vppon his fore legges, though some Authors

write to such purpose, from nourishment comes the motion of thought, and the motion of generation, with many other such like: these operations bee otherwise two-folde, that is Externall, or Internall, externall as the motion of the Limbes, which mooue but when the Horse pleaseth, and internall as the motion of the Heart, Brayne, and Pulses, which mooue continually, whether the Horse wake, sleepe, goe, stand, or whatsoeuer hee doth else: Now lastly for the spirit, it is the verie quintessence of the blood, and beeing conueyed in the Arteries, giues the bodie a more liuely and spritie heate, and makes his feeling more quicke and tender. By some Horse-men, the spirit of a Horse is taken to bee his breath, but the former I take to bee more substantiall; but both haue their workings, and may well be termed Spirits: Now therefore it is the part and duty of euerie good Farryer, diligently to search into these seauen famous Naturall simples whereof a Horse is made, that knowing which Element is in the Horses bodie most predominant, then, which temper agrees with which element, which humor with which temper, which member is infected with which humor, which power is vndistributed into which member, and lastly which spirit is weakned by the ouerworking, of which power hee may apply all his receyts and medicines according to Art, and the composition of his Horses body.

CHAP. 2.

CHAP. 2.

Of the Sinewes, Veynes and Bones of a Horse.

ALthough some of our English Horse-men will allow a horse but thirtie foure maine sinewes, yet I haue found many moe, and much difference from the discriptions I haue read in some Authors; for although *Vegetius* deriues two maine sinewes from the mid nostrell to the crooper, I finde it is not so, but there is one maine tendant or sinewe, which comming from the braine, and hinder-part of the horses head, extendeth two smaller branches on each side the cheekes of the horse, which running along the chappes, meete at the horses nostrels; then doth that maine sinewe extend it selfe downe the necke bone of the horse, running through euery ioynt thereof in many small branches, till it come to the setting on of the chyne, where the maine sinewe is diuided into three great armes, one running through his chyne, and deuiding into seuerall thrids through euery ioynt of his backe, knits and bindes his ribbes: the other two downe each side of his shoulders, euen to the bottome of his fore-hoofes, and is deuided into fortie seuerall branches: now when the maine sinewe of his backe comes to the binding together of his huckle-bones, it there againe deuides it selfe into other three great sinewes, two running crossewise downe his hinder legges, to the bottome of his hoofes, and are likewise deuided into fortie branches,

the other goeth still forward downe to the end of the sterne of his tayle, deuiding into euery seuerall ioynt many seuerall branches, so that to speake generally of all the sinewes, they are infinite, and almost without number, but to speake particularly of principall sinewes they are eleuen, that is first, two which runnes through the chappes, and compasse in the teeth, which is the occasion of tooth-ach; two that meete at the nostrels, one downe the necke bone, two downe the shoulders and legges and downe the backe, two downe the huckle-bones and hinder partes, and one downe the rumpe.

Nowe for Veynes which are of vse, and by striking of them bring health to the Horse, there are in number one and thirtie, that is to say, two in the vpper part of his mouth, two in his temples, two vnder his eyes, one of each side of his necke, two vnder his fore-shoulders, two in his breast, foure in his thighes, two in his pasternes, two aboue his hoofes on the cronets, foure in his flankes, two in his hammes, two in his hinder legges, and one vnder his tayle: Now for the bones of a Horse, although other Authors haue writ as perfectly of them as I am any way able to doe, yet I will not sticke heere to repeate them, wherefore first you shall vnderstand, a horse hath in all a hundred threescore and tenne bones, that is to say, in the vpper part of his heade two bones, from the forehead to the nose two bones, his neather iawes two bones, of fore-teeth twelue, of tushes foure, of grinders foure and twentie, in his necke, seauen, from the wythers to the huckle bones eight, from the huckle bones to the tayle seauen, then the broad bone behinde with twelue Seames, two spade

bones,

bones, two to the canell bones, then two from thence to the first ioynt about the legs, then two to the knees from thence, two to the pasternes, and from thence downe into the hoofes sixteene little bones, one breast bone, thirty sixe ribs great and small, two bones to the *Columell*, two from the molairs to the ioynts, and two towards the ribs, from the hough to the legge two small bones, and from the leg to the forcels two small bones, & from the pasternes to the hoofes sixteene little bones; and thus much for sinews, veines, and bones.

CHAP. 3

Of Horses vrine, and of his excrements.

THere is no better note nor caracter that a Farrier can take of the state of a horses bodie, or wherein he may plainely see the true vsage of infirmity and sicknes, then in a horses vrine or excrements, because that they participating of the inward powers and faculties of the bodie, alter and change their colours and tastes, as the body altereth with the paine of infirmitie and sicknes; you shall knowe therfore, that first as touching vrines, if when your horse pisseth, his water bee of a pale yellow colour, not transparent, that is to say, bright and cleare, that a man may see thorow it, but of an indifferent thicknes, and an vnffensiue smell, then you may be assured the horse is sound, strong, and full of lust, but if his vrine bee of a bright high amber colour inclyning some what to redishnes; then you must knowe that his bloud is inflamed, and hee

hath

hath either taken surfet of rawe foode, or else being heated, hath taken some sodaine cold, which hath bred putrifaction and corruption in his bloud, bringing forth the effects of *Feauers*, *Yellows*, *Anticor* or such like. If his vrine looke like bloud, or haue lost the strength of his sauor, you must then vnderstand your horse hath beene ouer laboured, and with too violent exercise hath distempered his bloud, & bred corruption about his liuer, whence springs many faint diseases, as the *Apoplexie* or *Palsie*, consumption of the flesh, and such like. If your horses vrine haue like a white creame vpon the toppe of it, it is a signe of putrifaction and infirmitie in his kidnies; whence comes the paine and consumption in the kidnies; if his vrine be of a greenish colour, thicke and muddie, it is a signe of weake reynes and the consumption of the seede; if his vrine be of a high redish colour, very thicke, cloudy, and the grosnes as it were bound together, it is a signe of death and mortalitie, shewing that nature hath giuen ouer her working, but if the blacke thickenesse hold not together, but disperse into sundry places, it is a signe that nature as it were reuiues and euen conquers infirmities; many other obseruations there are, but for mine owne part, because I haue found some vntruthes in them, I will not set them downe for rules: Now for the excrements, I haue both in the booke of hunting and running, discried, the vttermost properties and secrets which can any way be found out by them; and therefore in this chapter will not loade your eares with that which I haue formerly written.

CHAP. 4

CHAP. 4

Of letting of horses blood, the time, the cause, and the signes which desire it should be vsed.

TOuching the letting of horses blood, both the Farriars of former times, and those now in our dayes, are of sundry opinions, some saying it should be done at the beginning of euery quarter in the yeare, as the spring, summer, autumne, and winter: others will let blood but three times in the yeare, that is the beginning of May, when blood springs, the beginning of September, when the blood is warmed and setled, and the beginning of December when the blood is grosse and thickned. Others would haue a horse blooded but once a yeare, and that is in May onely, because when blood springs, if the new blood should mixe with the olde corrupt blood, it cannot choose but soone inflame and ingender sickneſſe: all these reasons are probable enough, and we see few horse-maisters at this day, but do follow either one or other of these obseruations, yet for mine owne part I cannot be induced to become any of their imytators, as holding this opinion not by any meanes to let my horse blood, but when vrgent neceſſitie, and apparent reasons drawe me thereunto, for aboue all thinges I hate to doe any thing for fashion sake, and I must confeſſe I doe euen contemne and enuie to see euery Smithes shop in Christmas holly-dayes looke like a butchers slaughter house, not one Farrier being able to giue me a reason why he hath blooded any two of these horses,

horses, more then it is an old custome, and that the holy dayes is a time of rest wherein the horse may recouer his bloud againe, not considering how pretious a thing bloud is, nor what euills such customes bring vnto a horse, as weakenesse of body, imperfection of sight, crampes, conuulsions and palsies, besides when a horse is let bloud, by the rule of custome, if at any time you breake or omit that rule, there presently followes disease and infirmitie. And againe, oft letting of bloud makes the bloud fall into the inward partes, cloying the heart, stomacke and guts, and leauing the outward parts, makes them goutie, grosse and vnnimble; wherefore if your horse be in health, and good state of body, by no meanes let him bloud, except it be now and then with the point of your knife aboue the second and third barre in the roofe of the horses mouth, by which meanes the horse may chewe and licke vp his owne bloud, which is most wholesome for many diseases as you shall perceiue hereafter, or now and then in his eye veines, which is comfortable for the head, and cleereth the sight, but for letting bloud in any long or more fluent veines, I would not haue it vsd but vpon necessitie, as for any obseruation of the time of yeare, houre of the day, and state of the moone or signe: when there is cause of blood letting, I haue euer set those cautions behinde the doore, as respectes of little vallew, because the forbearance of a quarter of an houre, may be the losse of the horse, and indeede they are but bugbeares only to scarre the ignorant, but for obseruing the clyme wherein a horse is bred, the age, strength, and disposition of the horses bodie, they are notes worthie regard onely: touching the quantitie of the blood you take away, for horses bred in hot

hot countryes, olde horſes, and flegmatique horſes would not haue ſo much blood taken from them, as horſes bred in colde regions, young horſes, or chollerick horſes: now that you may know when a horſe ſtãds in neede of blood-letting, if you perceiue that he hath any extraordinary itch, ſo that he now and then rubbeth his neck or buttockes, or if his skin begin to pyll, or the hayre either of his maine or tayle ſhed, if you haue giuen him any violent exerciſe aboue his ſtrength, ſo that he hath either taken ſurfait, or bin tyred, if he be brought to an extreame pouertie of fleſh, or if his eyes looke redde, and his vaines ſwell, if you finde in him the effects of any *Feuer*, the *Yellowes* or *Antichor*, or any inward ſickneſs, proceeding either of inflamation or corruption of the blood, in any of theſe cafes it is neceſſary to let blood; and if the infirmity be not growne to any ſtrength, then the beſt time to let blood in, is ſomewhat early in the morning, the horſe hauing beene kept faſting all the night before; let your horſe (as neere as you can) ſtand vpon euen ground when he is let blood, and let the corde wherewith you binde his necke ſtrait, be ſtraite twound, ſo that by no meanes it may retch out, but keepe the ſtraitnes it holdeth; you muſt in any wiſe be moſt carefull, that when you ſtrike with your fleame or inſtrument of blood-letting that in ſtead of the vaine you ſtrike not the arterie which lyes cloſe by the vaine, or ſetting the point of your fleame by the ſide of the vaine, that the skinne ſlippe, and ſo you miſſe the vaine and hitte the arterie, either off which may indaunger the horſes life, which to preuent it is good when you haue raiſd the vaine to ſpitte vpon it, or wette it, that making the haire lie cloſe and ſmoothe, you may

at a haire see how to place your fleame in the right place: whilst your horse bleedes, you shall put your finger in the side of your horses mouth, and by rubbing and tickling his vpper barres, make him chewe and mooue his chappes, which will make him bleed much more freshly, but if hee will not suffer you to put your finger in his mouth, then you shall giue him a little hay, or a little grasse, only to make him mooue his chappes, if he will not (as many olde Iades are of that quallitie) suffer you after his necke is bound, to come to set on your fleame, you shall then either put a paire of close spectacles ouer his eyes, or else blinde-fold him with something else, so that you may without daunger approch him: It is very good to saue the blood you take from him, and whilst he bleedes to stirre it about for lumping, then to mingle it with beane flower, and boale Armoniack; and being made thicke like a plaster, to spreade it vpon his backe and loynes, for it is exceeding good both for his legges and feete: when your horse hath bled sufficiently, you shall loose the bynding corde, and with it stroake downe the vaine twice, or thrice; and it will staunch of it selfe: after the horse is let blood, you shall cause him to be set vp in the stable, and to fast at least two houres after, and then giue him what meate you please if he be fat and in strength, but if he bee leane and weake, then you shall giue him a warme sweete mashe made of water and ground malte well mingled together: And thus much for letting of blood.

CHAP. 5.

CHAP. 5.

Of sickenes in generall.

SIcknes is by diuers auncient writers diuersly defined, and as diuersly deuided. One saies it is an euill affection contrary to nature, hindring some action of the body, and deuides it into three kindes: the first *parts* that are alike, the second *parts* instrumentall; the third, both these ioyned together: the first consisteth in the predominance of the elements, as when either choller, blood, fleame, or melanchollie doe super abound; the second, in composition of the body, when the members are diseased or deformed: the third in the deuision of members, as if it be in a fleshie part, then it is called a wound or an vlcer, if in the bones then it is called a Fracture. Another saith sicknes is a maladie, or greefe proceeding from the corruption and weakenesse of the vitall partes, and deuides it into foure braunches, as moyst malladie, drie malladie, malladie of the ioynts, & malladie betwixt the skinne and flesh: the moyst malladie springes from fleame and mellancholy, as strangle, glaunders, and other fluxes; the drie malladie springes from choller and blood, as consumptions, drie coughes and such like: the mallady of the ioynts is all griefes incident to Ioynts, as splents, spauens, excresions, swellings, and such like: and the malladie betwixt the flesh and skinne, is the Farcion, scab, mangines, or such like; Others make other definitions and deuisions, but all tending to one end; they are needlesse to be repeated, and it shall be enough for the

the diligent Farrier, if he but retaine in his memorie, that all inward infirmities are called sicknesses, or diseases, and all outward infirmites are called grieues and sorances, and that he apply and moderate his medicines according to the violence of the disease, increasing the strength of his receites as the disease increases in power; and thus much for sicknes ingenerall; As for the signes and Characters by which diseases and sorances are to be knowne because I set them downe at large in the beginning of euery infirmity, I will at this time forbeare to write or trouble you with them.

CHAP. 6

Of Feauers and the diuers kindes therof, together with their cures.

FEuers although our ordinary Farriers neither know them nor can cure them, and therfore hold opinion there is no such thing: yet for mine owne part, I haue had such experience, and haue so certainely found the effects of them in many horses, that I dare auouch the disease to bee common and in dayly knowledge, wherefore to speake generally of Feuers: a Feauer is an immoderate heate, or inflamation of the blood, disturbing and hindring all the motions of the body, and of these Feuers there are diuers kindes, a *Quotidian* or continuall Feuer, *Tertians* as euery other day a fit, *Quartans* which are euery third day, and pestilent or burning Feuers, the first three proceeding from humors and spirits, the last from putrifaction and inflamation of the blood, ingendred

ingendred by either too extreame and violent exercise, or by surfeit of rawe foode, as of vndryed Pease or Oates or of vncleanly foode, as Chaffe, Pease, pulse and such like. The extreame heate of the Sunne, or extreame coldnesse of the ayre will either of them ingender Feuers; Now the signes to know a Feuer is, you shall see him hang downe his heade, his eyes beeing heauie and waterish, his lippes will hang from his teeth, and his flesh will bee loose, his stones will hang downe, and his breath will be hotte, hee will gape oft and stretch out his limbes, hee will haue a kinde of shiuering in his flesshe and an extraordinarie heate and beating of his pulses vpon the temples of his head, he will drinke much and eate little, and his vrine will looke of a high colour bright and cleare like Amber. Now if you finde these signes not to alter or cease, but to continue in one strength and violence, then you shall be assured it is a *Quotidian* or continuall Feuer, but if the motions alter, and he bee one day well and the next day ill, then it is a *Tertian*, but if hee be one day ill and two dayes well, then it is a *Quartan*, for cure whereof some haue vsed this phisicke, first to let him blood in his temple veines, and pallat of his mouth, and sometimes in the necke veine and to giue him the first day no meate, but warme drinke; then after to giue him grasse, or hay wet in water, and to keepe him warme and walke him in a temperate aire, and then vpon his amendment to giue him sodden Barley the huske being beate off as you beate wheate before you boile it; Others vse for the cure of this Feuer, first to purge his head by squirting into his nostrilles, either the vrine of a man or of an Oxe, & then giue him this drink, take of *Iermander* foure ounces, of *Gum dragon*

and dry'd Roſes of each an ounce, beate them to powder, then put them into a quart of olde Ale, and adde thereto of Sallet oyle and Hony of each foure ounces, and giue this drinke luke warme. Others haue preſcribed other medicines, ſome ſtronger, ſome weaker, ſome for Feuers in autumne, ſome for Feuers in ſummer, ſome for ſpring, and ſome for winter, but I haue proued them, yet neuer could finde much profite by them; the onely meanes that euer I found for theſe Feuers hath beene this, aſſoone as you haue perceiued the viſible ſignes of theſe Feuers, firſt to note how the fittes come and goe, and then to keepe the Horſe faſting for at leaſt a doozen houres before the fitte come, that Nature wanting whereupon to worke, ſhee may onely worke vpon the diſeaſed humour, and ſo conſume and weaken it, then when you doe perceiue the fit to approach, you ſhall take of ſtrong Ale a quart, and boyle therein of Wormewood halfe a handfull, of long Pepper and Graines two ounces, of ſtrong Treakle two ounces, and of the powder of dry'd Rue one ounce, and when the third part of the Ale is waſted, take it from the fire and ſtraine it and giue it the Horſe luke-warme to drinke, or if you will you may in ſteade of this drinke, take the yolkes of foure new laide Egges and beate them in a diſh, then put thereto eight ſpooneſuls of Aqua-vitæ, and mingling it well together giue it the Horſe to drinke, then beeing warmely cloathed ride him vp and downe in ſome faire warme place till hee begin to ſweate and then ſet him vp in the ſtable, lay more cloathes vpon him, and giue him litter inough vnder him, and let him ſo ſweate at leaſt two or three houres, and then abate his cloathes with diſcretion.

Thus

Thus dooing but twise at the most will assuredly mend any of these kinde of agues; as for the drinke which hee shal drinke during this cure, let it be warme water wherin hath beene boyled Mallowes, Sorrell, Pursline, and Endiue, and for his foode let it be well dry'd Oates, and bread made of cleane Beanes, if during his sickneſſe hee proone drie or costiue in his body, you shall then giue him now and then halfe of a Rye sheafe eares and all to eate. This manner of cure is not onely good for these Feuers, but also for any other inward sickneſſe proceeding frō inflamation of the blood or corruption of humors.

There is also another Feuer which is called the pestilent or burning Feuer, and it hath all the signes and faces before shewed, onely they are perceiued more violently, and haue greater showes of pain and sickneſſe differing absolutely but in this effect, which is, the horse neuer shiuereth or shaketh as hauing the effect of coldneſſe: but continually burneth as beeing vniuersally distempered with heate and glowing; which you shall plainely perceiue by his continuall desire to drinke and scipple, neuer satisfied till the colde water bee in his mouth, and by laying your handes vpon his fore-legges, vnder his knees, or vpon the temples of his head which two places will burne more then any other partes of his body; The cure of this pestilent Feuer (though our Farryers holde it incurable) is thus. First you shall let him blood in the necke veyne, then you shall lay to the temples of his head this plaister. Take of the iuyce of Camomile foure spoonefuls, of Goates milke foure spoonefulles, of the iuyce of Sage foure spoonefulles, and of Sallet oyle foure spoonefulles, then take a handfull of dry'd Rose leaues, whether of a Rose cake

Of the pestilent Feuer.

or otherwise, and beate all these in a morter till it be made one substance, then take foure spoonfuls of strong Wine vinegar and with it stirre them altogether, and if it bee very thinne then take as many moe Rose leaues and beate with them till it be as thicke as a plaister, then spred it vpon a cloath and strewe vpon it the powder of three or foure Nutmegges then warme it hotte vpon a chafing-dish and coales, and applie it to the Horse as a foresaid, then you shall giue him to drinke water boyld with Violet leaues, Mallowes and Sorrell; but if the fitt holde him violently, you shall take three ounces of leane Treakle, and dissolue it in a pinte of Malmsey, and put thereto the iuyce of two or three Lemmans, and giue it him in a horne to drinke, and it will presently put away the fitte: the nature of this Feuer beeing so pestilently hotte, is to furre the mouth, and to breede vlcers and soreneſſe both in the mouth and throate, wherefore you shall carefully euerie day looke in his mouth, and if you perceiue any such thing, take but the sirrop of Mulberries, and with a small squirt strike it into his mouth, and it will heale the sore immediately, for it is of such vertue that a man once knowing it, will hardly be without it, but if you cannot get the sirrop of Mulberies, then take a pinte of running water and boyle therin two ounces of Allom, and halfe a handfull of Sage, and with that wash the sore place and it will heale it: If the heate and drineſſe of this diseaſe keepe the Horse so costiue that hee can by no meanes dung, you shall then onely giue him this Glister. Take of new Milke halfe a pinte, of Sallet oyle a pinte, and halfe a pinte of the decoction of Mallowes and Violet leaues, and to them put an ounce of Scene, and halfe an ounce of

Centerie,

Centuarie, and administer it luke warme with an Elder pipe made for the purpose; and these remedies I assure you will not onely helpe this Feuer but also many other mortall and dangerous diseases; diuers other medicines are prescribed for this Feuer by other Authors, but the simples are so strange, and the compositions so phantasticall, that for mine owne part I haue carryed the receites to skilfull Apothecaries, who hane vtterly disavow'd the knowledge of such simples, so that after I could neuer giue credite to the practise. The last Feuer is called the Feuer accidentall, because it is a Feuer which comes by the violence and paine of some grieuous receiued wound, and of all Feuers it is most common and most dangerous, for when wounds are accompanied with Feuers the horse seldome escapes death, and for mine owne part I cannot boast of any great cure I haue done in this case, onely my rule hath been to keepe the vitall partes as strong as I could with comfortable drinkes made of Ale, Annyseeds and Sugar candie, and to giue him to eate halfe a dozen soppes or toasts steept in Muskadine, according to the forme before shewed in the booke of Running horses, and this I assure my selfe (if the wound be curable) will take away the Feuer.

And thus much for the cure of Feuers.

CHAP. 7.

Of the Pestilence or Gargill.

THE Pestilence howsoeuer other Authors doe seriously write both of it and the causes frō whence it springs, as from labour, hunger, sodaine motion

after rest, surfeit, corruption of humors, corruption of ayre, vapours, exhalations, influence of planets, and such like; yet I say (if I know the pestilence) it is plainely that which we call amongst Men the plague, amongst Beastes the murren, and amongst Horses the gargill, it proceeds from surfeit and rawe disgestion after proude keeping, ingendring corrupt & poysonous humors; or else from the infection of the ayre, or the foode whereon the horse feedeth: It is of all diseases most infectious and mortall, and for mine owne part I haue had no perfect experience of it, but onely in young Foales which are apt to take it, especially if they bee weyned too young, the signes to know it is, the sides of their heades euen to the rootes of their eares, and so downe all vnder their chaps will swell exceedingly and be wondrous hard, their eyes and the inside of their lippes will bee very yellow, and their breathes will be strong and noysome. Nowe you must vnderstand that when these outward signes appeare, then the disease is incurable, so that to set downe therefore any cure is a thing impossible, onely this is the best preuention to giue your Foales for three dayes together, both at the fall of the leafe, and at the spring euery morning three or foure slippes of Sauen, as is shewed in the booke of breeding, but if this disease happen to Horses of elder age which is surest knowne by the losse of that horse which first dyeth, then you shall seperate the sound from the sicke, and putting them into a fresh ayre after they haue beene let blood, both in the necke, veynes and their mouthes, you shall then giue each of them to drinke halfe a pinte of Sacke, and halfe a pinte of Sallet-oyle mingled together, the next morning after you shall giue euery one of them a pinte of strong Ale,

and

and the ſhauings of the yellow tipps of the olde Stagges horne, or the ſhauings of the yellow tippe of the Sea-horſe tooth, both which if you cannot readily get, then you ſhall giue them ſtrong Ale and Treakle boyld together, to each a good draught, and doubt not but it will both expell and preuent the force of the infection. As for *Ariſtoloch*, *Gentian*, *Myrrhe* and ſuch like, which ſome preſcribe to bee giuen for this diſeaſe I doe not thinke the Authors thereof euer ſawe the practiſe, nor will I counſaile any man to try them, knowing the former to be ſufficient.

CHAP. 8.

Of the inward diſeaſes of the Head, and firſt of the head-ach.

THE head of a Horſe is ſubiect to diuers diſeaſes according to the inward compoſitions thereof, as from the pannickle which couers the braine comes head-ach, rhumes and mygrams, from the braine frenzie, ſleeping euill, and palſies, and from the conduites of the braine come the ſtaggers, night-mare, crampe, catarres and ſuch like; But firſt to ſpeake of the head-ach, it is a diſeaſe that moſt commonly proceedes of a cholericke humor bred in the pannickle, or elſe of ſome outward cauſe as of a blowe, of colde or ill ſauors, the ſignes thereof is onely heauineſſe of countenance, watring of his eyes, and forbearance of his food: the cure is, take either Storax or Frankinſence, and throwe it vpon a chafing diſh and coales vnder the horſes noſe,

so that the smoke may ascend vp into his head and when hee is thus perfumed, you shall binde to his temples the same plaster which is formerly set downe for the pestilent feauer, and questionles it will helpe him in twice or thrice applying.

CHAP. 9.

Of Frenzie or Madnesse in Horses.

MAdnesse is a fault very much incident to Horses, and I haue had much experience thereof, and as farre as I can coniecture, it proceeds onely from the torment of the braine or pannickle, when they are either corrupted with naughtie blood, or inflamed with the heate of poysonous humors; many other discriptions the auncient *Italians* make of the frenzie of a horse, saying it proceedes not from the head alone, but sometimes from the torment of the heart, liuer or spleene, which a man may know by a horses byting and tearing of his owne flesh, and with his feete beating vpon his body; but for such madde horses as I haue seene, their madnes hath issued from the braine only, and the signes from whence I haue gathered it haue beene these, they will haue heauie countenances, but fierie eyes, they will beate their owne heades against the walles, bite at any thing suddainly, and as they stand they will gnaw vpon the maunger; when they lye they will lay their fore-legges ouer their heades, and now and then beate their heads with their leggs, they will forsake all foode, or if they doe eate, they will snatch their meate hastily,

and

and seldome chewe it; the cuer is to let them blood very much in the shackle veines to drawe the humors from the vpper parts, then to take halfe a pinte of milke, and halfe a pint of sallet oyle mingled together, and giue it him to drinke three mornings together, which done other three mornings you shall take halfe a handfull of Sage, halfe a handfull of Minte, and halfe a handfull of hearbe of grace, and boile them in a quarte of white wine, till it come to a pinte, then straine it hard and giue it the horse to drinke lukewarme, and during these sixe dayes let him be fed with bread made of beanes and rie, but by no meanes let him haue so much as he willl eate, let him also drinke no cold water, and let his stable be kept exceeding darke and warme; if for this disease you giue him to drinke mans ordure and wine mixt together it is very good, or to chafe all his body ouer with blacke *Elleborus* boyld in vineger is good also, especially to chafe his head and temples, as for gelding him, or burning him vpon the head with hotte irons, I like it not, for it is against rule, and to a horse of good temper will bring madnes.

CHAP. 10.

Of the sleeping euill or lethargie.

THis sleeping euil or lethargy in a horse proceedeth of cold fleame and moisture about the braine, dulling the sences and bringing a drowsie heauines ouer the whole body, the signes is onely his continuall sleeping, from which with great industry he will hardly be reclaimed, the cure thereof is thus, first let him be

kept

kept waking with noyses and affrightes whether he will or no, then let him blood in the necke veine, and giue him to drinke water wherein is boyled Sage, Camomile and motherworte, and mingling with it Salt, Vineger, and wheate branne, after he hath drunke this, three mornings together, you shall then perfume him by blowing into his nostrills the powder of strong Tobacco well dryed, and you shall chafe his head with Time and Penniryall sodden together in vineger; also to burne brimstone vnder his nose is very good, and in his prouender to giue him hempseede is very good, and in his oates you shall put fennell seedes, and parsley seedes, many other medecines there are but none more effectuall then these already named.

CHAP. II

Of a Horse that is taken.

A Horse that is taken our common Farriers say to be planet strooke, and to be as it were lamed or benumbd of his sences by some supernaturall influence, and therefore hold it altogether vncurable, but they are deceiued, for a horse is said to be taken when he is sodainely depriued of his feeling and mouing, and it proceedeth sometimes from the imperfection of the braine when it is either oppreſt in the hinder part, (from whence the great maine sinew of the whole body goes) with too much fleame or too much choller, but most generally and oftnest it commeth by some extreame or sodaine colde which after some great heat striking into the

the veines ouercommeth all naturall heate, and bringes insensiblenes. The signes are numbdnes and want of motion, and the cure is thus, first you shall giue him the scowring of butter and garlicke as is shewd before in the booke of hunting horses, then you shall take Aqua-vitæ, and being warmde vpon a chafing-dish and coales, let two or three groomes chafe and rub him therewith ouer all his body, which done, lappe clothes made most exceeding hotte round about him, and letting him haue good store of litter force him into a sweat; after he hath swet an houre or there about, moderately bate his clothes and then annoint him all ouer with oyle debay, and it is not to be doubted but he will recouer his former feeling. Some of our auntient Farriers in this case haue laide the horse all saue the head in a soft dunghill till warmth and sence come into the horses limbes, and it is not contrary to the cure, yet I haue found it better by much for the conuulsions of sinewes or crampes, then for this disease, and nothing neare so good as the former remedie. If your horse when he is thus taken be leane, poore, and faint, then it shall be good for you to giue him to drinke euery morning a pinte of Malmesey brewde with the powder of sugar, cynamon and cloues, and warmed vpon the fire, this dyet during the cure would be thinne, his prouender oates, and his drinke warme water.

CHAP. 12

Of the Staggers.

THe Staggers is a dizines in the head, proceeding from corrupt blood, and grosse humors poysoning the

the braine, by which many times it driueth a horse into frenzie and madnes. The signes thereof is heauines of head and countenance, dimnes of sight, forsaking of his meate, and staggering and reeling as he goes, and sometimes falling downe and beating of his head pitiously against the walles, manger and plaunchers, wherein is to be noted that when he only reeleth the disease is easie to be cured, but if he fall and growe mad then the cure is almost desperate, how euer thus you shall endeauour to cure it. First you shall let him blood in the temple veines, and then you shall take foure spoonefulls of Aqua vitæ, and as much of the iuyce of garlicke and mixing them together warme them vpon the fire, and therewith chafe all the horses forehead, and the nape of his necke, then take two little round balles of flaxe or soft towe, and dipping them therein, stoppe them into the horses eares, then with a needle and a threede stitch the tippes of his eares together, and do thus for three mornings together and the cure will be perfited, yet during the cure let him drinke no colde water but warme mashes of water and ground malte, and let him once a day be walkte vp and downe gently. There be some Farriers (and my selfe haue often vsed it) do cut the horse in the forehead, vpon the rumpe, and in the nape of the necke, and to taint the places with turpentine and sallet oyle, or for want of oyle with hogges grease, but when I found how much the first receite went beyond this, I left the practise thereof, and the rather because it was foule and tedious.

CHAP. 13.

Of the falling euill, or falling sicknes.

THis disease of the falling euill I haue more read of in old Italian Authors, and heard more talkt vpon, by gentlemen traind vp to horsemanship in those countries, then either seen or taken notice of: for I haue not in all the diseases I haue knowne, seene any I could compare vnto it, so that what I write thereof is other mens opinions; not my practise, for I thinke a man may liue in England *Nestors* yeares, before he see a horse fall into such an euill. But to proceede to the disease, *Absirtus* saith it is an infirmitie like a conuulsion or crampe, taking from a horse a certaine time all sence & feeling, making him fall downe & loose the benefit of all his sences; *Vigetius* saith the moon is a great work-mistris in this disease, in so much that a horse at some times of the moone will fall downe and be to outward appearance dead, then on a sodaine againe rise to his meate and eat; the signes therof are his falling down sodainly through the weaknes of his members and distention of sinews, the quiuering of his body and foaming at his mouth; if the grissle of his nose be cold, it is a signe he wil fal often, if it be warm, he will fall more seldom: the cure according to the Italians is first to let him blood in the neck veins, and the temple veins, then keeping him warm to annoint his body all ouer with the oile *Petrolium*, & his head & eares with oile de-bay, liquid pitch & tarre mingled together, and to put some into his eares also, then by making him

a canuasse cap quilted with wooll to keepe his head exceeding warme and then to giue him this drinke: take of Raddish rootes two ounces, of the hearb *Panap* and of *Scamony* of each one ounce, beate them together and boile them in a quarte of honey, and as oft as it is needefull giue him a spoonefull or two of it in a quarte of Ale luke warme, and put thereunto three or foure spoonefulles of sallet oyle, it is also good to blowe the powder of mother-worte and pirethrum vp into his nostrilles, and if this help not, then to let out the humor by piercing the skin of his forehead with a hot iron in many places.

CHAP. 14

Of the Appoplexie and palsey.

THis Apoplexie differeth in outward appearance nothing from the falling euill, for it is a depriuing of the whole body of sence and mouing, but if it depriue but part of the body, or but one member then it is called a palsey; it differeth from the falling euill but onely in this, that the falling euill is a disease proceeding generally from the sickneſſe of the whole body, this only from the distemperature of the braine where grosse and fleamie humors are cropen in betwixt the pannackle and the braine, but for mine owne part I haue ofte seene in horses this Apoplexie, and doe hold it a disease incident vnto them, but auncient horsemen seeing other diseases more violent at one time then an other, or in one horse more then another, haue out of the ripenes of their wits giuen to such passions new names of diseases;

seases; as when a horse hauing but only the staggers, hath fallen downe and (as ordinarily they will doe) layne for a little space as if he had beene dead, they haue coniectured it to be the falling sickues or Appoplexie, by which tytles a man may very properly at any time terme the staggers. Now for the palsey that I haue oft seene, and it is much incident to horses, cheifly to hunting horses in their first trayning, or to running horses that come after tender keeping to take sodaine heates and coldes in hunting: the signes are, they will hold their necks awry, goe grouelling, sidelong and reeling, they will haue most feeble legges and painefull heads, which they will shewe by shaking it, yet notwithstanding they will eate their meate with all greedines. The cure is first to anoint them all ouer their bodies with the oyle *Petrolium*, then with splents of wood binde the necke straight, and making his stable very warme giue him this drinke, take halfe an ownce of long pepper beaten to powder, of *Cedar* two ounces, of *Nitre* an ounce, of *Lacerpitium* as much as a beane, and giue it him to drinke in a quart of white wine, each morning a pint for two mornings together, and it will ease the palsey.

CHAP. 15.

Of the witch or night-mare.

THis disease hapneth ofte vnto horses, and foolish Smithes thinke such horses are ridden with the witch and that the disease is supernaturall and therfore some of them goe about to cure it by hanging a naked sword ouer the horse all night as if it would scarre

the

the deuill, other seeke to cure it by charmes and night-spelles, such as Maistar *Blundeuile* for laughter sake repeates in his booke: which is, to take a flint stone that naturally hath a hole in it, and hang it ouer the horse and write in a bill:

In nomine patris, &c.
Saint George our Ladies knight
He walked day so did he night
Vntill he her found
He her beate and he her bound
Till truly her troth she him plight
That she would not come within the night
There as Saint George our Ladies knight
Named was three times. Saint George

And to hang this ouer the horse also. This bawble I knowe at this day is vsed of many ignorant Smithes to cosen men of money, but to speak of the truth of the disease indeed, though some hold there is no such infirmitie, yet I knowe by experience it is otherwise, for it is a passion of the stomacke which being cloyd with crudities and rawe digestion, stoppeth the powers of the body and makes the horse for want of breath, in his sleepe to struggle and striue most violently, the signes thereof are, you shall in the morning when you come to your horse finde him all of an exceeding great sweate, and if the passion haue gone from him but a little before, you shall perceiue him to breath very short and his flancke will beate very fast; Now for as much as horses that are newly taken from grasse, or horses that haue beene grosse & fowly fed, are subiect to much sweating in the night,

you

you are to haue great reſpect to the ſtate of the horſes body, and if when your horſe is cleane of body, or if more one night then another you finde him thus extraordinarily to ſweate, you may aſſure your ſelfe of this diſeaſe. The cure whereof is, giue him two mornings together a pinte of ſacke, halfe a pinte of ſallet oyle, and two ounces of ſugar candie mingled together, and it will purge him cleare of the infirmitie.

CHAP. 16

Of Crampes or Conuultions, of Synewes, or Muskeles.

CRampes or Conuultions of Sinewes or Muskles are violent contractions or drawings together of members, either vniuerſally about the whole body, or particularly as in one member, they proceede either from cauſes naturall, or cauſes accidentall: if from cauſes naturall, then they come from fulnes or emptines, from fulnes, as from ſurfeit of meate or drink, or the want of vacation of humors; from emptines as from too much blood-letting, too much purging, or too much labouring, all which filles the hollownes of the ſinewes with cold windie vapors which are the onely great cauſes of conuultions. If they come from cauſes accidentall, then it is from ſome receiued wounde where a ſinew is but halfe cut a ſunder, or but prickt, which preſently cauſeth a conuultion ouer the whole body. The ſigns of the generall diſeaſe is, the horſe will carry his neck ſtiffe and not be able to ſtirre it, his backe will riſe vp like the backe of a Cammell or bend of a bowe, his rumpe will

shrinke inward, his foure legges will stand close together, and his belly will be clung vp to his back-bone, being downe he is not able to rise, especially vpon his hinder loynes: of this disease I haue had experience to my full contentment, and the cure is thus: First put him into a sweate, either by burying him all saue the head in a dunghil, or else by applying hot blankets doubled about each side of his heart and body, then after his sweate anoint all his body ouer with oile *Petrolium*, for it is much better then either debay, or oyle of cypres, then giue him to drinke halfe an ounce of *Lacerpitium* as much Cummin, aniseedes, fenegreeke and old sallet oyle, infused into a quarte of Malmesey, then keeping him warme and feeding him with good beane bread and warme mashes made of ground malte and water, his sinewes will come to their former abilitie, but if the conuultion come accidentally, as by the pricke, or halfe cut off a Synew, then you shall search for the sinew so prickt or cutte, and with a paire of sheers clip it asunder and the conuulsion will cease, but if it be but a crampe onely, and so but in one member, then if you doe but chafe or rub the member pained, with a hard wispe or hay rope, the griefe will vanish.

CHAP. 17

Of the Pose or colde in the head.

OF all the diseases that are incident to horses, there is none more common, or more worthy of cure then is colde or pose in the heade, which according

ding as it is new or olde, great or little, and as the humors doe abounde and are thicke or thinne, so is the disease of more or lesse daunger: the signes to knowe it is his heauines of head and countenance, or else by his coughing; if when he cougheth there come from his nose nothing but cleane and thin water, then is his cold neither great nor olde, but if vpon his coughing there come any yellow or filthy thin water, then is his colde neither new nor little; therefore when you see the filth, you shall then with your hand gripe him hard about the vpper part of his wessen and stop his winde, compelling him to cough, & if when he is forst to cough you see any hard or thicke matter come from his nose, or after he hath cought, if then you see him chewe as if he were eating something, which indeed is nothing but corrupt fleame and filth which comes from his lunges, then be assured he hath as dangerous a colde as is possible, Also a horse that hath such an extreame colde, if you holde your eares to his nostrilles will rattle as he breathes, also if you giue him any water you shall see he cannot drinke, or if he doe drinke; the water as he drinkes wil come forth of his nostrilles: you shall also when you put your hand betweene his neather chaps feele about the rootes of his tongue great and hard kirnels & much grosse matter, with many other such like signes; The cure whereof is thus, if the colde be but a pose, that is newly taken, & of no great force, so as the horse neither casteth at his nose nor cougheth often, if then you doe but morning and euening ride him forth to the water, and hauing drunke, gallop him gently a quarter of an houre together till he be warme, and so set him vp in the stable, it will put away his pose in lesse then a weekes

exercise; but if it continue and rather increase then abate, you must imagine then some rhumaticke and moist humor which feedeth his colde, whereupon you shall giue him the scowring of butter and garlicke for three mornings together, as it is prescribed in the booke of hunting horses, & after the giuing you shall ride him vp and downe for an houre or better, and it will purge his head as aforesaide: But if his colde be of long growth and very contagious, then you shall keepe his head and body very warme, & giue him this drinke, take of strong Ale a quarte, of the best Treakle three ounces, of long pepper and graines as much, of the iuyce of garlick two spoonefulles, and boile all these together and giue it reasonable hot to the horse in the morning fasting, then ride him vp and downe for an houre and so set him vp, obseruing by no meanes to giue him any colde water for a weeke at least, but if it so chance that this long growne colde bee not yet come to such ripenes that either the horse cougheth, or casteth filth from his nose, (for indeed when a horse coughes the worst of his cold is past) but it lies in his head and throate, which for want of knowledge you cannot perceiue, and then hauing instant occasion to ride some serious iourney, when you are vpon his backe both by his heauines & want of courage, besides the ratling in his throate which you shall plainly heare when he labors you finde his impediment, you shall not for this disease slacke your iourney, but the first day with all gentlenes and easie pace, let him bring you to your Inne, and as soone as you are lighted make him be very well rubd and drest, and store of litter laide vnder him, then immediately take a pinte of very good Ceres sacke, and make it more then luke warme in the

the fire, then take halfe a pinte of ſallet oyle, or for want thereof halfe a pinte of ſweetbutter melted, then brew the ſacke and it together, and giue it warme to the horſe with a horne; then binde a Couerlet or blanket about the horſe, and let him ſtand vpon the bridle for an houre after, at which time come to him and tye him ſo as hee may lie downe at pleaſure, then locke the ſtable dore and let no body trouble him for three or foure houres after, for he will growe extreame ſicke, and ſo that if you did ſee him you would thinke him at the point of death: when you are diſpoſed to goe to bed, go to your horſe and if you finde him laide along very ſicke reſpect it not but making the manger cleane put therein halfe a pecke of cleane oates, and three penniworth of bread broken ſmall, and a penniworth or two of hay, and ſo leaue him till morning, and be ſure by morning he will not onely haue eaten vp his meate but be as cheerefull as euer he was in his life, and you ſhall ſee his colde breake away aboundantly, and if you keepe him warme and ſuffer him to take no newe colde, be ſure the olde will waſte quite away with his trauell: as for the perfuming him with Frankinſence, or with Peniryall and Sage boilde together, or tickling him with gooſe feathers and oyle-de-bay, or with a clout annointed with ſope by thruſting them vp into his noſe, only to make the horſe ſneare or ſneeſe, you may ſaue that labour for it is of little purpoſe, although our common Farriers vſe it, but if you will when you giue him any prouender ſprinkle a little Fenegreeke and Aniſeedes amongſt it for three or foure dayes together it will not be amiſſe; And alſo euer obſerue that if your horſe be very leane which hath his colde, that then with your ſacke and oyle,

you mixe at least two ounces of sugar candie beaten to powder.

CHAP. 18

Of the diseases of the eies, and first of the waterish or weeping eies.

WAterish eies proceede euer either from rhumaticke and moyst humours, or else from some stripe or blowe either with rodde, whippe, or such like. And the cure is, first let him blood vpon his eye-veines, then take Pitch, Masticke, and rossen of each like quantitie, and melting them together spread it with a sticke all ouer the temples of his head, then lay flockes as neare as yon can of the horses colour vpon it and make it lye like a plaster fast and flatte to his head: then euery morning wash his eyes with white wine, and put into them the powder of Pomystone, and some *Tartarum* mixt with life honey, and you shall perceiue as the humor doth decrease, so the plaster will loosen and fall away.

CHAP. 19

Of bloodshotten whether they come by blowes, itching, rubbing, or such like.

I Haue for mine owne part seene none of our best Farriers vse any other medicine for this griefe then olde Martins

Martins water, which is to take of rose water, of malmsey and Fennell water, of each three spoonefulles, of *Tutia* as much as you may easily take vp with your thumbe and your finger, the powder of a dozen cloues, mingle them together, and being luke-warme, with a feather dipt therein to wash the inward parte of the eye therewith. Others lesse cunning I haue seene for this greife to wash horses eyes with white wine and the powder of Sandiuer mixt together, but for mine owne part I haue found an other receite much better then either the one or the other, and this it is, take the whites of a coupple of Egges, and beate it till it come to an oyle, then put to it a spoonefull of rose-water, two spoonefull of the iuyce of houslicke, and two spoonefull of the water of eye-bright, mixe them well together, then dip therein little round plegents of Flaxe or Towe as bigge as a horses eye, and lay them vpon the horses eyes, changing them as oft as they growe hard and drie, and doubt not but in two or three nights it will cure a very sore eye.

CHAP. 20.

Of dimnes of sight, Pinne, Webbe, Pearles or spottes in the eies.

IF your horse either through fylme, asker, pearle, pin, web, or any such like grosse matter growing vpon the ball of his eie, haue his sight hindered, if you aske

the opinion of our beſt Farriers, they will bid you take of Pomies ſtone, of *Tartarum* of ſall *Gemma* of each like quantitie, and being beaten to fine powder to blow it into the horſes eyes; others will bid you blowe the powder of ſandeuoire into his eyes, others the powder of burnt Allom, of burnt oyſter ſhelles, or of the blacke flinte ſtone, all which are fretting and will breake any filme: yet for mine owne parte this hath beene my medicine, to take the water of Eie-bright three pintes, and as much perfit good white wine, then to infuſe therein of the powder of the Pomyes and the black flint ſtone, of *Tartarum*, of *Sall Gemma*, of *Sandiuoir*, of white Copperis, and of the drie rootes of Angelica of each of theſe two ounces, and of greene Copperis foure ounces, when theſe haue beene infuſed together for the ſpace of foure and twentie houres; then you ſhall put them altogether into a limbecke and alſo a handfull of Iſope, a handfull of Tyme, and halfe a handfull of Peniryall, diſtill theſe vpon a ſlowe fire; then you ſhall with the water thereof taken with a feather, anoint the horſe both vnder the eie, and aloft vpon the eye-lidde, but by no meanes within the eye, and it will weare away any filme whatſoeuer.

CHAP. 21.

Of the Hawe or Kyrnels within the eyes.

THe Hawe is a certaine hard gryſſle or Kyrnell, growing vnderneath the eye within the neather lidde, it growes from the groſſe & tough humors, and

and will spread sometime ouer more then one halfe of the eye, and doth hinder the sight and make the eye to water, the signe is you shall visibly see it, when either the Horse showes his eyes or moues his eye liddes, the cure is onely to cut them away in this manner, you shall with one of your fingers put vp to the vpper lidde of the Horses eye, and with your thumbe put downe the neather lidde, so that you may lay the Hawe bare to your sight, then take a sharpe needle with a thridde, and thrust it thorow the side of the Hawe, and with the thridde drawe the Hawe from touching the eye, then take a sharpe Pen knife and cut the grissell away almost (but not full out) to the bottome, but as neere the blacke as may bee for feare of making the horse bleere eyed, then wash the sore with the water, of eye-bright, with white Wine or with Beere and it will doe well.

CHAP. 22.

Of Lunatike or Moone eyes.

LVnatike eyes, or Moone eyes, thongh the auntient Italian Horse-men could giue no reason or signes of them; yet I knowe this by mine owne experience, that they proceede from hotte salte humors, dispersed and distilled from the braine by ouer-ryding, or other violent and extream exercise; the signes are, he wil see at somtimes of the moon, better thē at other somtimes, whence comes the name of the disease: his eyes

when

when they are at the best wil looke reddish, when at the worst, red and fierie, the cure is first vpon the temples of his head, you shall lay the plaister of pitch, rossen, and masticke as is afore shewed, then with an yron somewhat bigger then a wheat-strawe, you shall burne vpon the ball of his cheekes vnder his eyes, on each side three holes to the bone, and annoynt them daily with a little fresh butter; and if you please, you may in stead of those holes, slitt the skinne with a knife, and put in a rowell of leather, as shall be shewed you hereafter where I speake of rowelling: After the sore hath runne eight or tenne dayes, you shall heale it by taking away the rowell, and laying on the sore, a plaister made of Turpentine, Hony, and Waxe, of each like quantitie boyld together, and during the time that the sore doth runne, you shal twice a day put into his eye, with a feather a little life honey, and feare not the amendment.

CHAP. 23.

Of the Canker, Vlcer, and Fistula in the eye.

THIS disease proceedeth from the salte humors and corruption of the blood, descending downe from the head into the eye, the signes whereof are, the eye will be white, redde and bloody, and vpon the eye-lids will bee little angrie red pimples, from whence will runne a kinde of lye or water which will scalde the cheekes as it passes, and the eye it selfe will bee full of gumme and corrupt yellow matter, the cure is, first to let

let him blood on that side of the necke on which the eye is sore, and then with a very small fine instrument of steele or siluer, you shall search all the pimples, to see if you can finde any hole or hollownes amongst them; and if you finde any you shall search the depth thereof, then make a tente fitte for the hole, and dippe it in the water I before prescribed for the pinne and webbe, and so put it to the bottome of the hole, euery other day making the tent shorter and shorter; till the hollownes be filled, but if you finde no hollownes, then you shall twice a day rubbe the pimples with this water till they bee bloody and rawe, take of Roch-allome, of greene Coporas, of each a quarter of a pound: of white Coporas halfe an ounce, and boyle them in somewhat more then a pinte of running water, till halfe bee consumed, then take it from the fire, and when you applie it to the sore eye let it bee luke warme, and in foure or fiue dressinges it will drie vp the Vlcer.

CHAP. 24.

Of the disease belonging to the eares of a Horse, and first of the laue eares, or hanging eares.

THIS disgrace of being Laue-ear'd, albeit it is not a paine or griefe to the Horse, yet it is so foule a sore both to the eye of the owner, and to euery beholder, that it euen drowneth and obscureth all other vertues whatsoeuer, it is an infirmitie procceding from Nature, and it is ingendred in the first creation, and although

although fewe of our Farryers either haue indeauored themselues, or know how to helpe it, yet such hath been mine earnestnesse to knowe the vttermost secret in that Art, that by trying many conclusions, in the ende I hitte vpon a certaine cure for the same, and haue within this little space helpt sundry Horses, for the signe thereof the name is sufficient, and it will plainely showe it, and the cure is thus; Take your Horses eares and place them in such manner as you would desire they should stand, and then with two little boards or peeces of trenchers three fingers broad, hauing long stringes knit vnto them, bind the eares so fast in the places wherein they stand, that by no meanes or motion they may stirre, then betwixt the head and the roote of the eare, you shall see a great deale of wrinkled emptie skinne, which with your finger and your thumbe you shall pull vp; and then with a verie sharpe payre of Sizers you shall clippe away all the emptie skinne close by the head, then with a needle and a little redde silke, you shall stitch the two sides of the skin close together, and then with a salue made of Turpentine, Wax, Deares suet, and Hony, of each like quantitie melted together, heale vp the sore, which done, take away the splents which helde vp his eares, and you shall see his eares will keepe the same place still as you sett them without any alteration, this is as certaine as the healing of a cut finger.

CHAP. 25.

Of the Impostume in the Eare.

ALL Impostumes come either from blowes, bruisings, or gathering together of many grose humors in

in one place, and of all Impostumes, there is none worse then that bredde in the eare of a Horse, because proceeding from the braine, it many times corrupts the same; the signe thereof is onely the apparant showe, and the cure is this: take a handfull of Sorrell, and lapping it in a Burre-docke leafe lay it in hotte burning imbers, and roast it as you would roast a warden, then taking it forth of the fire, and opening it, applie it as hote as is possible to the Impostume which is within the eare, shifting it euery day till it hath both ripened and broke the Impostume, which the yolke of Egge, Wheate flowre, Hony and hearbe of grace will doe also; when it is broken and the corruption well come foorth, then you may heale the sore with the salue made of Turpentine, waxe, hony, and Deares suet, but if you finde the horse haue paine in his eare but no swelling, then you shall onely stoppe his eare or eares, with blacke wooll dipt in the oyle of Camomile, and it will helpe him.

CHAP. 26.

Of the Poll-euill or Fistula in the Necke.

THis disease is an Impostumation like a Fistula, growing betwixt the eare and the poll or nape of the necke, and is bredde by flemie and grosse humours gathered together in that part: or else by some bruise or straine, taken either by some blowe, or by some halter or neck-band, for that part of all partes about the heade is most tender; this disease is most incident to

Carte

Cart Horses, because the rudenesse of clownes seldome respect where they strike, the signe thereof is, the horse will carry his nose out-right and his necke stiffe, you shal also perceiue the swelling, which in the end will breake of it selfe, although naturally it rott more inwardly then outward; the cure is to ripen it either with rosted Sorrell, or with rotten litter, or else with scalding hot Hogs-grease, making him a cap to keepe his necke warme: when it is almost ripe and ready to breake, you shall take a small round hote yron, and thrust it from the nether side of the swelling vp to the top where it is most ripe, so that the corruption may haue issue downeward, then you shall make a tent of drie spunge, and dipping it in Hogs grease and Turpentine molten together, thrust in the tent as you thrust in the yron, this tent will keepe open the whole belowe, then you shall lay vpon the tent the plaster of wax, turpentine & hony, and thus you shall dresse him twice a day till hee be whole, obseruing not to tent with drie spunge any longer then whilest you would keepe the wound open, if you finde it heale but softly, you shall take of Turpentine washt in nine waters a quarter of a pound, and put to it the yolke of an egge and a little English saffron, and mixing them well together, tent the sore therewith till it be whole.

CHAP. 27.

Of the Viues or great Kirnels.

THE Viues are certaine great kirnels which growe from the roote of the Horses eare downe towards his throat, betwixt his necke and his neether chap, they

they are inwardly full of little white graines, like salte cornes, there is no Horse but hath them, onely they are not painefull till grosser humors resorting to that part, inflame them and make them swell; the signe is only the swelling, which is apparant, and the cure is thus, apply vnto them either rosted Sorrel or else a plaister of pitch and hogs-grease molten and boyld together till such time as the Kirnels rotte and breake, and with the selfe same medicine also heale them againe. Now forasmuch as our common Farriers vse for this griefe, with a hote yron to drawe a line from the eare to the chappe, and then to crosse those lines with other lines after the fashion of a ragged staffe, and then pulling the kirnels out with a payre of pinsers to cut them away, and then onely to fill the hole with salte, I would haue you know it is a very foule manner of cure and dangerous, besides be hee neuer so cunning that doth it, that part of the necke will neuer be so slender as it was before, nor will the markes of the hot yron euer be taken away.

CHAP. 28.

Of the cankerous Vlcer in the nose.

THIS disease proceedeth from salte, hott, and fretting humours occasioned by corruption of blood in the kidneyes, or the vessels of seede, which is so poysonous and sharpe, that it not onely consumeth the flesh, but also (if it be not preuented) will eate through the grisle of the nose, there is nothing which sooner brings it then surfeit of rawe meate or extreame colde;

the

the signes be, you shall see much blacke and putrified blood come from his nose, and sometimes yellow dissiested matter which will stinke vildely: The cure is, take of greene Coporis and Allom a like quantitie as of each a pound, of *Venice* Turpentine and white Coporis of each a quarterne, boyle them in a pottle of running water till almost halfe be consumed, then take it from the fire and straine it and put thereto halfe a pinte of life honey, and a quarter of an ounce of Safron, then holding vp the horses head, with a squirt you shall squirt this confaction made luke warme into his nostrels, then let his head goe downe that hee may throwe out the filth, and after you haue done thus three or foure dayes, if then you see the matter is not so aboundant as it was, you shall neede then but onely by fastning a soft cloute about a sticke to dippe it into the confection and thrust it vp into his nose; dressing him so twice a day till the sore be whole.

CHAP. 29.

Of bleeding at the Nose.

HOrses are subiect to bleede at the nose as men are, and the selfe same causes procure it, as when the veyne which endeth in the nose is either opened or broken, by any blowe or stroake vpon the face, or by any violent straining of the body, as by extreame labouring when the horse is not cleane, as I haue seene a horse at the end of his course gush foorth of bleeding, or (as I haue seen) when a horse cannot dung, the very straining himselfe

himselfe hath made his nose bleede, sometimes the verie abundance of blood, and pride of good keeping, will make the nose bleede, but that is euer in young horses: the signe to know it from the vlcerous nose is, the blood will be cleare and of a pure colour, the other blacke and filthy. The cure is to take clothes dipt in cold water and apply them one after another to the nape of his necke and the temples of his head & it will staunch the blood, or dig vp a sod of earth and lay it to the nape of the horses necke and it will staunch it also, but if these faile take a porrenger full of his blood and boile it vpon the fire till it come to a powder, then with a cane blowe the powder into his nostrilles and it will staunch the blood, but if your horse be much subiect to bleeding and bleed often then I would haue you to let him blood in the neck vaine to alter the course of the blood, and stop his nostrills full of hogs dung, for that is very good to staunch blood.

CHAP. 30.

Of the disease of the mouth, and first of the bloody rifts in the pallet of the mouth.

THis griefe I haue seene come diuers waies, as if you suffer some fooliſh Smithe to drench your horse ofte and hee by his rude handling (as they seldome take care) doe with the corde wherwith hee holdes vp his horses mouth, gall or fret the skinne off vpon his barres or roofe of his mouth,

then letting it passe vnlookt to, the sore will fret and turne to this disease, or if your horse be vsed to eate rough stumpie hay which growing in whinnie grounds is full of sharp pricks and stumps, those pricks & stumps wounding and galling the pallat of his mouth, will make it ranckle and bleed, and vtter forth much corruption. The cure whereof is thus, first wash the sore place with vineger and salte till it be rawe, then take honey well mixt with the powdeof iet and rub it vppon the sore, and it will soone healeit.

CHAP. 31

Of the bladders or Gigges in a horses mouth.

THese bladders or Gigges are little swellinges like paps which growe vpon the inside of a horses lips next to a horses great Jawe teeth, they haue little blacke heads, and are so painefull that they will make a horse forsake his meate; and how euer some thinke they come either by eating too much grasse or by grosse, dusty or pricking meate, yet it is not so, for I haue seene them in young sucking Foales, the signes are the visible appearance of them, and the cure is to slit them with a small rasor, and then thrusting out the corruption, to wash the sore place three or foure rimes a day with running water reasonable warme, wherein hath formerly beene boild good store of Allome, Sage, and a little honey, till it be whole.

CHAP. 32.

Of the Lampas.

THe Lampas is a great swelling or excression of flesh in the roofe of a horses mouth; in the very first furrow adioyning to the formost teeth: which swelling as hie as the teeth and somtimes ouer the teeth, make that the horse can neither gather vp his meat wel, nor chewe it when it is gathred, it proceedes onely from pride and aboundance of blood, the signes are the visible sight thereof, and the cure is,' first to put a peece of wood as big as a great rowling pinne betweene the horses chappes, and then with a crooked Iron to bourne away all the superfluous flesh, and to annoint the sore place onely with salte.

CHAP. 33

Of the Canker in any part of the mouth.

THe Canker in the mouth is a venemous and fretting vulcer which droceedeth from the wearing of rustie bittes, or from the vnnaturall heate either of the braine or stomacke, which distilling in salte rhumes into the mouth, doe breed rawe & fretting vlcers; the signs are rawnes of the mo uth or tong, blisterings, white furrings and such like; The cure is, take strong vineger two spoonefuls, and as much of the powder of Allom as

will make the vinegar thicke, and with it rubbe the ſore place three or foure times a day for two or three dayes together till it be rawe and bleede, then take a quarte of running water, fiue ounces of Allome, of honey ſixe ſpoonefuls, of Woodbine leaues, Sage leaues, and Colſobine leaues of each halfe a handfull, boyle all theſe together till one halfe bee conſumed, and waſh the ſore therewithall three or foure times a day till it be whole.

CHAP. 34.

Of Heate in the Mouth and Lippes.

A Horſe will haue in his Mouth ſometimes an extraordinary heate, when hee hath no vlcer, which will make him forſake his meat, and it proceedeth from the ſtomacke, the ſignes whereof are, the immoderate heate of his breath, and the whiteneſſe of his tongue, which when you perceiue, the cure is, firſt to let him blood in the roofe of his mouth, and after hee hath likt and chewed off his blood a good prettie ſpace, then you ſhall waſh his mouth and tongue all ouer with vinegar and ſalt, and then annoint it with the ſirrop of Mulberies, doe but thus twice a day for two or three dayes, and and the Horſe will doe well.

CHAP. 35.

Of the tongue being hurt with the Bitt or Snaffle.

A Canker which commeth by wearing a ruſtie Bitte, and the hurt which comes of the rude handling

of

of a chain Bit are two contrary diseases, for the one doth impoysen, the other doth but only seperate; wherefore if your horses mouth or tongue be but only brused or hurt with a naughtie Bit, the cure is first to wash the sore place with Allom water, and then to anoint it with life honey and English saffron well beaten and mixt together, and when you ride your horse, to haue a cleane cloth foulded about the Bitt or snaffle, and to annoint it with the same salue, and this you shall doe twice a day till the sore be whole, to choppe the leaues of a blacke bramble and swines lard̃e together, and binding it in a fine cloth, then dipping it in honey, and annointing the horses tongue therewith, as some of our Smithes doe is good, but nothing neare so speedy a medicine.

CHAP. 36.

Of the Barbbs or Pappes vnder a Horses tongue.

EVery horse naturally hath vpon the neather chaps vnder the tongue two long wartes like pappes, which we call Barbs, which how euer some horsemen doe hold will hurt a horse, yet for mine owne part I could neuer perceiue it in all my practise, nor would I haue them taken away, yet if any one, either out of strõg beliefe in the paine, or out of curiositie or will, will haue them taken away (as I haue seene and smild at many that would) you shal not (as our cõmon Smiths do) clip them

away with a paire of sheeres, for there doth follow them such fluxe of blood, that in so doing I haue seene them put beyond their skilles how to staunch them, but the cure is to holde vp the tongue, and taking holde of the barbe with a smal paire of mullets, with a fine yron made of purpose to seare them away: and then to annoint them with the oyle of bitter Almons, till they bee whole.

CHAP. 37.

Of Paine in the Teeth, and of the Wolues.

PAine in a horses teeth commeth either from pride and corruption of blood, or else from cold rhumes; if from blood, the signe is, his gooms will swell, and haue as it were, blebbes about them: if from rhume, he will continually slauer, and that which commeth from him will be thin and watersh: the cure is, with a sharpe knife to race him alongst his gummes, close vnder his teeth, both of the inside and outside: and then to rubbe them all ouer, either with pepper and salt well mingled together, or with clarret wine and pepper heated vpon the fire, or else with chalke and vineger, or after they are washt, to strewe vpon them the powder of Pomegranat pills: Now for the wolues which are two sharpe teeth more then nature allowes, growing out of the vpper iawes, next to the great teeth, which pricketh the neather chappe, so that the horse is not able to eate his meate: although for mine owne parte I haue not seene such an

an vnnaturall accident, yet if you be acertaind thereof, you may if you will vse olde Martins Medicine; which is, after the horses head is tide to a poste, and his mouth opened so as you may looke therein, to haue a long instrument of yron made like a Carpenter gouge, and setting the edge thereof close to the bottome of the tooth by the gumm, then with a mallet in your other hand to giue a good knocke vpon the instrument, which not onely entring into the tooth, but also loosening it and setting it awry, you shall then by holding the instrument firme and hard still and resting it vpon the chap of the horse, wrest the tooth out of his head, and then putting salte into the hole, close it vp, but in my conceipt it were a much better and more safer cure, if (when your horses mouth is opened) you finde the horses teeth to be very extraordinarily sharpe, that then you take a long sharpe file made for the purpose, and therewith reasonably to blunt all his iawe teeth, for that would bring your horse ease without any vnnaturall torment.

CHAP. 38

Of the Cricke in the Necke.

THe Cricke in the necke is a kinde of conuulti-on or soreneſſe of the sinewes, it commeth either by the ouer-loading of a horse vpon the fore-shoulders, by some great colde taking, or when a horse hath layne with his necke awry, as either ouer the grup-tree behinde the planchers, or in the fielde ouer some

moale-hill, or in some hollow furrow: the signes are, a horse can sometimes not stirre his necke any way, some times but one way, and from these Crickes many times come Feuers and other inward sicknes. The cure is, not according to the opinion of olde *Martin* drawe him alongst each side of the necke from the roote of the eare to the brest a strawe breadth deepe, and then to put a rowell in his forehead, annointing it with hogs grease, for it is grosse and sauors nothing of good arte; but you shall first purge the horse with the seowring of butter & garlicke, and then holding a panne of coales vnder him you shall also chafe the nape of his necke, the temples of his head and his whole necke with sacke and the oyle of Cipresse mixt together and made hotte vpon a chafing-dish and coales; then cloath him vp warme and ride him in some warme plaine, gently for an houre and more, this if you doe three or foure dayes, assuredly the Cricke will vanish.

CHAP. 27.

Of Wennes in the necke.

WEnnes are great or little round swellings like tumors or pustules, only there is not in them any inflamation or sorenes, their insides are tough and spungie, yet in colour yellow like reesed bacon, they proceede from corruption of blood and cold humors, and the cure is thus, first apply vnto it rosted sorrell or the plaster of Pitch and Hogs-grease mixt together for the space of seauen dayes to see if you can bring

bring it to a head or rottennes, which if it doe, then you shall launce it, and after the filth is come forth you shall heale the wound, with the salue made of Turpentine, waxe, and Deare suet; but if by no meanes it will come to any head or rottennes, then you shall ouer night apply round about the wenne Bole-armonicke and vineger mixte together; then the next morning, after you haue set fresh butter to boile vpon the fire, and put a calterising iron in the fire also, you shall then take off the plasters and the horse being fast held, first you shall with a rasor and warme water shaue all the haire from the wenne, then you shall note how the veines runne, that as neare as you can you may misse them, then with an incision knife you shall cut the wenne cleane away, and with spunges taking away the blood, leaue not any part of the yellow substance, which done you shall calterize the sore with scalding hot butter, but if that will not stay the fluxe of blood, you shal then calterize the heads of those veines which bleed most, with the hot Iron; then making a plegant of soft towe as broad as the sore, dip it in fresh butter molten very hotte, and lay it vpon the sore, then couer it ouer with the plaster of waxe, Turpentine, and Deares suet, and so let not the sore be stirred for eight and fortie houres, then vpon the second dressing if you see any of the substance of the wenne beleft vncut away, you shall then take hogs-grease and vardigrease molten together, and with it dresse the sore, till it haue eaten away all the grosse matter, and then heale vp the sore with the salue before prescribed.

CHAP. 40.

Of Swelling in the necke after blood-letting.

SWelling after blood-letting proceedes from diuers causes, as if the Orifice be made too great and so the subtle winde strike sodainely into the wounde, or if presently after a horse is let blood, you turne him to grasse, and so by thrusting downe his head too soone to eate his meate, the blood reuert backe and fester about the wounde; or if the smith be negligent and strike him with a rustie or venome fleame: the cure whereof is thus, you shall take wheate flower two or three handfuls, as much sheepes suet shreaded small, and as much Camomile shredded small likewise, boyle them altogether in three pintes of new milke till they be very thicke, then take it very hotte and lay it vnto his necke, this pultis will in once or twice laying to, either dissolue the humor or drawe it to a head, and breake it, which if it doe then you shall heale vp the sore with a little Turpentine, Waxe and Hogs-grease molten together and made into a soft salue: some Farriers vse to breake the sore with the oile of Camomile or with olde rotten litter, or with wet hay and then to taint it with Turpentine and hogs-grease only till it be whole, but it is not so good a cure, for it will be both longer in ripening, and when it is broken the tainting will bring downe such a fluxe of humours that I haue often seene such sores turne to Fistulas, which had they beene but ordinarily dealt withall, nature it selfe would haue cured.

CHAP. 41.

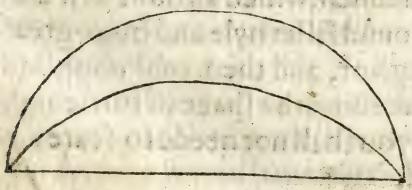
Of staunching of blood, whether it come by blood-letting, or by any wound receiued.

IF either by disorderly bloodletting, as when the veine is striken cleane thorow, or the orifice by the vnstaidnes of the Farriers hand, is made too great, or if by any casualty a horse receiue a wound amongst the principall veines, so that the flux of blood will not be staid (for as touching that opinion that the veine will not be stopt which is strooke when the signe is in that parte, it is both idle and friuolous) the cure thereof is thus, take bole-armonicke and vineger and mixing them thicke together dip flaxe therein, and lay it to the wound & it will stanch the bloud; a sod of new earth laid to the woũd wil stanch blood also, hot horse-dung being applyed will doe the like, or if you temper with the dung chalk and vineger it is good also, yet to apply any of these medicines in case of any sore or grieuous wound they are dangerous for making the wound gangrean, so that I allow the powder of blood to be much better then any of them, but if it faile in extreamity to worke the effect you desire, you shall then garter or binde your horse very straite aboue both his foreknees, and also vnder his sore knees, aboue both his hinder cambrelles and vnder the spauen ioynts, you shall then drawe a surfingle very strait about his body also, & so letting him but stand a little space you shall presently see his blood staunch, which assoone as it doth you shall apply to the wound sallet oyle and hogs-grease molten together boyling hot, and then vnbinding him let him abide with that dressing the space of fortie eight houres at least, and then you shall not neede to feare any more the fluxe of blood.

CHAP. 42

Of the falling of the Creſt.

THe falling of the Creſt is when the creſt or vpper part of the necke, on which the mane growth (which naturally ſhould ſtand vp ſtrong and firmely) doth either leane to the one or the other ſide, or elſe falleth flat downe and lyeth in a moſt vncomely manner vpon his neck, it proceedeth from two cauſes, either old age or pouertie of fleſh, and the cure thereof is thus, firſt if it proceed but from pouertie of fleſh and be not vtterly falne downe but leaning to one ſide, you ſhall then platte into his mane certaine waightes of ſuch ſufficient poiſe as may either drawe the Creſt vp ſtraight, or elſe make it leane to that ſide from whence it ſwearuerh, and then feeding him vp with good meate, and much change of meate be aſſured that as ſoone as he is fatte his Creſt will ſtand vp ſtraight, but if it be ſo vtterly falne downe that no fatnes nor feeding will recouer it, you ſhall then hang the waights as is before ſaid, and then on the contrary ſide with a hot Iron made better then a quarter of an inch broad, drawe three lines thorow the skinne and no more, the firſt at the bottome of the Creſt cloſe to the ſetting on vpon the necke, the ſecond in the midway betweene the bottom of the Creſt and the roots of the mane, and the third as neere the edge of the mane as may be, which lines will preſent this figure, then you ſhall daily till the skin be whole againe, annoint the ſore with warm ſallet oile or els the creame of butter,



and

and vpon that side which your waights hang, you shall annoint the necke of the horse in that place where the Crest is fallen with the oyle of *Spike*, and the oyle *Petrolium* mixt together and made warme vpon the fire, and it will straiten the skinne and make the Crest stand vp firme againe.

CHAP. 43.

Of the Mangineſſe or Scabbe within the Mane.

THIS Mangineſſe in the Mane commeth from diuers cauſes, as from corruption of blood, aboundance of hotte humours, or want of foode, ſometimes from lowſineſſe, want of cleane keeping, or from the infection of other Horſes which haue the ſame infirmitie: the ſignes are, an apparant white ſcurffe or drie ſcabbe, which will riſe continually from his mane and ſometimes bring foorth matter, or elſe an extreame itch and inceſſant rubbing or a deſire to ſtand knapping with other Horſes: the cure is thus; take of Nearue-oyle halfe a pound, of Quickſiluer a quarter of an ounce and beate them together with great labour till you bee ſure that you haue kild the Quickſiluer, and brought the Nearue-oyle which was of a darke greene colour to be of a pale yellowiſh colour, thē take of brimſtone an ounce beaten to powder, and mixe it with the Nearue-oyle, then if it appeare ſomwhat thicke and ſtiffe you ſhall bring it againe to a liquid oyntment by mixing with them a quarter of a pint of Rape oyle or Train oile, when you haue made this oyntment, you ſhall then take an inſtrument of yron made for the purpoſe, and with

it

it scrape all the scabbes and scurffe cleane away, making the sore bleede and looke rawe, then take a little olde pisse boilde with the powder of Iette, and first wash the sore therewith, then with the oyntment annoint it all ouer, holding a fire-shouell heated redde hotte ouer the maine, that the ointment may melte and sinke into the sore place, and doing thus but three or foure times, the horse will be whole.

CHAP. 44.

Of shedding the haire from the maine or tayle.

THere bee two causes which makes a horse shed his haire from his maine or taile, the one is pouerty or misliking, the other a certaine little worme ingendred by corrupt blood, which eating the rootes of the haire, makes it fall and wast: the cure is thus, you shall take of the fine ashes of ashe-wood, halfe a pecke, and as much of sope-ashes, when the sope-boyler hath done with them, and putting them into a vessell, fill it vp with running water, and let it stand the space of three dayes, then draine the water cleane from the ashes, as you see salt-peter men doe, and with the water wash the horses maine and tayle twice a day, and after each washing annoint the bottome of his haire with sope, and the haire will be fixed.

CHAP. 45

CHAP. 45.

Of the swelling of the Withers, either by pinching, or galling with an ill saddle, or otherwise.

THere is no outward part of a horse, more tender or subiect to swellings, brusinges, blisterings, and other infirmities, then the Withers of a horse, sometime proceeding from inward corrupt humours and sometime from outward casualties, as from naughty saddles and too heauie burthens: if it be so that you see the swelling is but little or of sleight moment, you shall then but onely clappe a little rotten litter vpon it, and it will either asswage it presently or bring it to a head and breake it, and if it breake and runne, you shall neede doe no more but heate a little butter very hotte in a saucer, and poure it vpon it, and then mending the saddle where it did pinch, his Withers will soone be whole. Some Farriers vse in this case of swelling, to make a poultus of mallowes and smallage boild till they be soft, and then mixe with it either hogs-grease, sallet oyle, or fresh butter, and so to apply it very hotte to the swelling, now whereas some vse to pricke or scarifie the swelling with the pointe of a sharpe knife, that, by all meanes possible I disallow, for it both drawes to the swelling naughtie humours, and also breedes inflamation and putrifaction, where else none would be: Now if there be no swelling but only that the skinne is fridgd off, you may dry vp that either with a little thicke creame and the soote

of

of a chimney mixt well together, and therewithall to annoint and drie vp the raw place, or else by taking halfe a pint of honey, and blending with it as much vnsleakt lyme as will make it as thicke as past, then making it in a thinne cake lay it vpon a tile stone ouer a hotte fire till it be so drye that you may beate it to powder, then casting that powder vpon any vnskind part, it will presently bring on the skinne againe: as for Oyster-shels, cloath, felt, silke, mirrhe, or such like to be burnt, they are nothing neare so good, although none of them but in time will dry and skinne a sore.

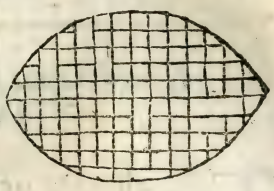
CHAP. 32.

Of great Impostumations in a horses Withers.

IF a horse either by too negligent a sufferance, or by some violent torment, haue his Withers so extreamly pincht or brusd, that there followes not only swellings of great quantitie, but also great inflamations and putrifactions, then you are with regard to respect the cure thereof, because if the tender grissle which is vpon the toppe of the shoulder blade, should either be crusht or tainted, there many times followeth cankerous sores and fistulating, which to preuent, as soone as you haue with applying either rotten litter or wette hay to the swelling made it ripe and rotten, which you shall perceiue by the softnes, you shall then with a sharpe rasor slitte the swelling downeward, euen to the very bottome thereof and so let out the corruption. There be som

Farriers

Farriers, which before they open the sore, will with a hot yron crosse the swelling diuers wayes according to this figure and then thrust another hot yron cleane thorow the sore, and so let out the matter, but it is a very vilde manner of cure, and makes an ougly eye-sore neuer to bee cured; for the nature of an Incission by fire is to seperate and deuide the skinne in such sort that it can neuer bee brought together againe, but the seames thereof will be both hard and apparant for euer after, besides the fire is so attractiue that the much vse thereof doth drawe downe to the weake part such confluence of humours, that the griefe is made much worse then it would be; wherefore when you haue opened the sore as is before saide with a Razer, you shall then but onely applie vnto it plegants of Flaxe dipt in hotte fresh Butter, and lay cleane ouer the swelling a plaister made of Waxe, Turpentine, Deares suet and a little Rozen, renewing them once a day till the sore be healed: But if these swellinges will not putrifie, but onely continue in one state, and rather growe hard then tender, in this case I would haue you with an instrument made for the purpose, to thrust a great thicke rowell of Horse haire quite thorow the swelling, euen from the neathermost part to the vppermost of the swelling, and twice a day to turne the rowell about, and either to annoynt it with fresh Butter, or Venice Turpentine, till the swelling bee cleane gone, and then to take away the rowell and to heale the two orrifices with fresh Butter and Oatemeale mixt together.



CHAP. 47.

Of hard Hornes, Knobbes, and fit-fasts, growing vnder the Saddle.

THese hornes or knobs, which grow vpon a horses backe vnder the saddle, are cald of our Horsemen heere in England fit-fasts, which how euer the Italians doe make differences of them, either becauſe of the ſeuerall places wherein they grow, as when they growe oppoſite againſt a rib, or elſe betweene two ribbes, yet the truth is they are but all one thing, and proceede all from one ſelfe like cauſe, as from ſome olde pinch with a ſaddle where the ſwelling doth not rotte but falling againe, yet retaineth betwixt the skinne and the fleſh, a certaine vnnaturall hard ſubſtance, ſo that vnder your hand the skinne will be hard as a board, and in time Nature it ſelfe will corrupt and driue it foorth: the cure of theſe fit-fasts are thus, firſt with a ſharpe knife ſlitt the skin thorow, cloſe by the edge of the fit-faſt, and aſſoone as you haue raiſd it vp take a nayle and file the point very ſharpe then bowing it crooked like a hooke, with it take holde of the fit-faſt and roote it cleane foorth as farre as you feele it hard, then if you ſee that the fit-faſt haue not eaten any depth into the fleſh, but euen the thickneſſe of the skinne onely, then after it is cut foorth you ſhall annoint the place with Creame and Soote mixt together till it be whole, but if it haue eaten into the fleſh and that there bee any matter vnder the hardnes, then you ſhall make a plaiſter of Turpentine, Waxe, Deares ſuet, and Engliſh Saffron mixt together, of each of them

an

an equall quantitie except the Saffron, and of it a quarter asmuch as of the rest, and after you haue washt the sore place with Mans vrine, then lay on the plaister and renew it once a day till the sore be whole.

CHAP. 48.

Of the Nauell-gall.

NAuell-gall is a foule bruise taken by the sitting downe of the hinder part of the saddle vpon the horses backe, and it is called Nauell-gall, because the crush is vpon the signe iust opposite against the Horses Nauell, it oftest comes by the carriage of cloake-bags, Portmantuaes, or such like waights behinde, it is by most of our common Farriers helde altogether incurable, because most commonly it breaketh not forth very apparantly till it bee full of dead flesh, which being a spungie and cankerous substance, doth in time corrupt and putrifie the Chine-bone, or turne to a Fistula, which in that part is mortall. The cure thereof is thus, first with your crooked nayle take holde of the dead flesh, and with a Razor cut it cleane out, leauing no part of it behind and making the wound plaine, and without hollownesse, then take of Hogs-grease finely rendred, and of Turpentine washt of each like quantitie, then melt them together, and beeing exceeding hot, dippe a pleagant of Flaxe into it, and so fill vp the sore, then lay vpon it a plaister of Waxe, Rozzen, and Turpentine mixt together, and after you haue dresst him thus for two dayes, if then you perceiue any dead or proude flesh begin to

grow in it againe, then you shall take an ounce of Turpentine, a quarter of a pinte of Honey, and an ounce of Verdigrease beaten to powder, and boyle them vpon the fire a good while together, and lay it vpon the sore plaister-wise, renewing it once a day till the Vlcer bee brought to skinning, thē dry it vp, and skin it either with Creame & Soote, or with the powder of hony and lime.

CHAP. 49.

Of the swaying of the backe.

THere be a multitude of mischances, which occasion the swaying of the backe, as straynings either in ryding, running, or leaping, ouer-burthening either by mischance or negligence, and the signes thereof are these, the Horse will in his going reele and folder, and his hinder parts will not goe in one furrow with his fore-parts, when he is downe, he will haue much adoe to rise, and when he is vp, it is painfull to him to lie downe. The cure thereof is diuersly handled, according to the opinion of Farriers, some imitating the Method prescribed by *Martin*, as by laying a hot sheepe-skin new taken from the sheepe to the horses backe, suffering it to lie till it smel, and thē to renue it: others, by scorching the horse ouer-thwart the backe with a hot yron Checker-wise, and then to lay on a charge made thus: Take of Pitch a pound, of Rozen halfe a pound, of Bolarmoniacke made in powder halfe a pound, and of Tarre halfe a pinte, boile all these in a pot together, till they bee well incorperated, then beeing luke-warme, daube it vpon the Horses backe,

backe and lay flaxe vpon it, suffering it to rest till it fall off by it owne accord, both these medicines I haue my selfe oft vsed, but haue found them not to auaile, wherefore the only cure that euer I found for this griefe is this; Take of Tarre halfe a pinte, of Turpentine foure ounces, of the oyle of Swallowes, and the oyle of Mandrage, of each sixe ounces, mixe these together, and boyle them vpon the fire, then annoynt the horses backe therewith luke-warme, and chafe it in halfe an houre together, holding a hot fire-pan ouer his back whilst you annoynt him, and dooing but this twice a day for nine dayes together, it will knit his backe, prouided that you let him runne at grasse without labour for at least two monthes after the cure.

CHAP. 50.

Of weakenesse in the backe.

VNto the backe is incident another weakenesse, besides these strainings, which proceedeth not from any casualty or mischance, but only from the confluence and fluxe of moyst and colde humors which benummeth, and dulls the vitall parts of the backe, bringing the horse to such a weakenesse, that hee many times fals downe flat to the ground, and cannot rise again. Our best Farriers call it the fretting of the reynes, and hold it generally to be mortall; for mine owne part I haue not seene the disease aboue twice, and my cure thereof is thus, take of *Venice* Turpentine, and after you haue washed it well, take iust so much of Honey and mixe with it,

beating them very well together, then take as much refined Sugar beaten to powder, as will make it as thicke as Paste, then roule it in round Balles, as bigge as a little Wall-nut, and couering them ouer with sweete Butter, giue him euery morning for fiue morninges together three of those Balles, and it will restore and strengthen his backe.

CHAP. 51

Of Hide-bound.

HIde bound is when a Horses skinne is so strained and bound vnto his bones, that a man can with no possible strength pull it vp with his hands, it proceedeth onely from the weakenesse of the body, and pouertie of flesh, the signes to knowe it, is the handling of the Horse, his leanenesse, and the clinging vp of his belly to the chine of his backe. The cure (although many of our best Farriers make it very curious, and haue sundrie drenches and drinkes to little purpose) is of all other cures most easie, for you shall no more but let him blood in the necke veyne, and for a month following, feede him with nothing but sweete Hay, and boyled Barley, hauing care that you boyle not so much together, but that your horse may eate it whilest it is sweete, and feare not the loosenesse of his skinne, nor the swelling of his flesh with fatnesse.

CHAP. 52.

Of the Strangle or Glanders, or the mourning of the Chine.

THE Strangle is a disease for the most part incident to Foales or young Colts, and sometimes to Horses of elder age, it is a fluxe or ingendring together of many humors about the roots of the tongue, between the two neather chappes, inflaming and impostumating those Kernels which naturally grow about the rootes of the tongue, which kernels are called *Glandes*, frō whence some Farriers suppose the name of Glanders came first, and I am of that mind also. For betwixt the Strangle and the Glanders, is but this difference, that when those kernels doe swel and impostumate outwardly, that is to say, when they rise betweene his chappes like a huge Byle, so that they hinder a Horse from swallowing his meat, and as it were strangle and Choake him with tough and vndisolued matter, and in the end breakes outwardly forth like an ordinary impostumation, and so vanisheth, then wee call it but the Strangle, but if it doe not breake outwardly, but that the inflamation and impostumation exulcerates inward, and so like a foule Fistula auoydes all the foule matter at the horses Nostrels, thē we call it the Glanders, and it is a much harder cure. But that the Strangle should be, as some of our English Authors suppose, the same disease which wee call the Squinancie, or Quinzie, I cannot imagine it, for it hath no resemblance of such an infirmitie, onely I take the Viues to bee somewhat akinne to that sickneſſe. Now for the Strangle, it

proceedeth either of colde and raw disgestion, as that which is in Foales; or else of some suddaine colde taken, and lingring without remedy in a Horse, groweth in the end to this euill. The cure of the strangle is thus, assoone as you perceiue the swelling to rise, you shall take a waxe candle, and holding it vnder the Horses chappes close to the swelling, burne it so long, till you see the skin bee burnt thorow, so that you may scarifie it, and raise it from the flesh, which done, you shall take a broad peece of leather, and spread thereupon a good thicke quantity of blacke shoomakers waxe, and lay it vpon the sore, and it will not onely breake the sore, but heale it also; but if either by some extreame colde, or other disorder in keeping this disease breake inwarde, and so turne to the Glaunders, you shall first perfume his head with Brimstone and Frankensence mixt together, and burnt vpon a chafing-dish of coales, and then you shall poure into his nostrells halfe a pinte of Sal let oyle, an ounce of Niter, and sixe spoonefuls of the iuyce of Leekes, and doing thus but foure mornings together, it will cure any Glanders, if it haue not beene aboue halfe a yeares continuance, but if you can get the oyle of Oates, and poure it into his nostrelles, it is most certaine it both cureth this disease, and the mourning of the Chine also.

Of the sore generall Cough. Chap. 53.

TAke a spoonefull of Tarre and put it in a fine linnen cloath, and tye it to the Snaffle and iourney your horse therewithall.

Of the inward and wett Cough. Chap. 54.

TAke the greene barke of Elder and boyle it most extreamely, renewing the water as it wastes then

straine

straine it and mixe it with sallet oyle, and giue it the horse to drinke.

Of frettized, broken, and rotten lungs. Chap. 55

TAke the fast of Bacon an inch square, and a finger long, and pricke a dozen cloues of garlicke in it, and then role it in Brimstone and giue it the horse.

Of the putrified or rotten lunges. Chap. 56.

TAke *Auripigmentum* and burne it in a chasing-dish vnder the horse nose.

Of the shortnes of breath, and the causes. Chap. 57.

SHortnes of breath or pursinesse comes by suddaine riding after a horse is fill'd or new fedde, the signe is his panting and inabilitie to trauaile, and the cure is, to giue him either a couple of new laid Egges, shels and all, or else a pinte of Milke and Sallet oyle mixt together.

Of a consumtion. Chap. 58.

A Consumption is nothing but an exulceration or putrifaction of the lunges, and the cure is, for fiue mornings together to giue him the same drinke prescribed for the wett or drie Cough.

Of the griefe in the Breast. Chap. 59.

THis disease comes by the corruption of blood, or the abundance of humors gathered together about the breast, and occasioning swelling, the cure is, to slitte the swelled part, and to put in a trowell, and annoynt it with a little sweete Butter till the sore be whole.

Of the Antichor. Chap. 60.

THe Antichor is a disease proceeding of corruption of blood and spirits, it onely paineth the heart, and is oft mortall; the cure whereof, is to let the Horse blood, and then to giue him to drinke a pinte of Malmesie, brewed with Sinamon, Licoras, and the shauings

of

of Iuory, for fiue mornings together.

Or this,

Take two spoonefuls of *Diapente* and brew it in a pinte of Muskadine and giue it the horse.

Of the tyred Horses. Chap. 61.

EVery one knowes both the cause and signe of this euill: the cure therefore is, to bath his limbs with pisse and salt Peeter, and to giue him to drinke eight spoonefuls of Aqua-vitæ, wherein hath bin infused for the space of twelue houres halfe an ounce of strong Tobacco, and after strain'd.

Of diseases vnder the Midriffe. Chap. 62.

TAke *Diapente* two spoonefuls, and brewe it in a quart of ale and giue it the horse.

Of the loathing of meate. chap. 63.

TAke vineger and spirt it into his nose and wash his tongue therewith, and keepe him long fasting.

Of casting out drinke. chap. 64.

TAke cloues, Cynamon, and Ginger, and brewe it with a quart ef strong Ale, and giue it the horse.

Of surfeites. chap. 65.

TAke Selladine, Rewe, Worme-wood and Sage of each alike, and boyle them in strong Ale, then strain it and put sweete butter thereunto, and giue it the horse fasting, and keepe him with little foode.

Of the hungry euill. chap. 66.

TAke Barley boyld and a little sage chopt amongst it, and let the horse glut himselfe thereupon.

Of the generall griefe of the Liuer. chap. 67.

FOr the generall griefe of the liuer, letting of blood in the necke veine is a present cure.

Of the

Of the consumption of the Liuer. chap. 68.

TAke sweete worte and old sallet oyle and mixe them together, and giue it warme to the horse to drinke diuers mornings.

Of diseases in the gall, chap. 69

HOw euer other men imagine, yet I haue not found any disease to proceede from the gall more then the Yellowes, yet that it may sometimes be pained I denie not, & it is to be knowne by the yellownes of his water, for cure whereof, there is nothing better then the ordure of Geese, being infused in white Wine, and giuen to the horse to drinke.

Of diseases in the Spleene. Chap. 70.

THe spleene of a Horse is troubled with no disease but a little swelling, which comes of too proude keeping: and the cure is, after you haue made him sweat to giue him in a pinte of white Wine, the leaues of the Tamariske bruised, and Cummin-seede beaten to powder mixt together, and warmed vpon the fire.

Of the Yellowes. Chap. 71.

THe Yellowes is a disease of the gall, and it is mortall if it bee not preuented, the signes are yellowneſſe of his eyes, lippes, tongue, and other partes, and the cure is, first let him blood in the pallat of the mouth, and then giue him to drinke a pinte of strong Ale, mixt with a quarter of so much of the iuyce of Selladine, & an ounce of Saffron luke-warme, for three mornings together.

Of the Dropsie. Chap. 72.

THat which is called the Dropsie in horses, cõmeth of raw food, & sore riding when a horse is fat; the signe is the swelling of his legs, & the cure is, to purge him wel with milke and sallet oyle, and to bath his legs daily with Linseed-oyle.

Of di-

Of diseases in the guts. chap. 73.

FOr generall griefe in the gutt, as being but only Belly-ake proceeding from colde, moderate exercise, & warme keeping will take it away.

Of Costiuenes. chap. 74.

TAke a ball of sweete sope, as big as a Turkies Egge, and put it downe the horses throate, and then trott him vp and downe.

Of looseues. chap. 75.

TAke Beane-flower and Tanners barke, and boyle them in Milke and giue it the horse to drinke.

Of the Bloody fluxe. Chap. 76.

TAke a quarte of redde wine, and boyle a handfull of the hearbe cald sheapherds purse therein and giue it the horse to drinke.

Of Bots or wormes. chap. 77.

TAke two or three slippes of Sauen, and rouling it in Butter, giue it the horse diuers mornings in the manner of pills.

Of paine in the Kidnyes. Chap. 78.

THe greatest disease belonging to the kidneys, is the stone, which you may cure by giuing the horse to drinke a quart of strong Ale, in which hath beene steept for foure & twenty houres two pound of Radish rootes slit in quarters, and to giue it three mornings together.

Of pissing Blood. Chap. 79.

TAke halfe a pinte of Milke, and halfe a pinte of white Wine, and boyle therein a pound of *Daffadill* rootes, and two ounces of Wheate flower and giue it the horse to drinke diuers mornings.

Of the Colt-euill. Chap. 80.

EIther swim or bathe your horses codds in colde water and it is a present helpe.

Of the

Of the mattering of the Yarde. chap. 81.

TAke white wine and boyle a little allom therein, and when the water is luke-warme squirt it with a Serrindge into the horses yarde.

Of the shedding of the seede. chap. 82

TAke Venice Turpentine, and being very well washt, mixe it with good store of white sugar, and then making balls thereof, giue it the horse in the manner of Pills.

Of the falling of the Yarde. chap. 83

TAke wine vineger and salte, and boyling them together lukewarme, bath the horses yarde therewith.

Of the swelling of the Codds only. chap. 84

TAke vineger and salt-Peter, and boyling them together, bath the horses codds therein twice or thrice a day.

Of incording or bursting. chap. 85

WIth lists make the horse a close trusse which may holde vp his guts, and then anoint his codds and stones euery day with May butter.

Of the botch in the groine. chap. 86

THe botch in the groine of a horse comes of pride of blood or sore labour, it resembles a great bile, and is cured either with rosted sorrell, or a plaister of shoomakers waxe.

Of mangines in the taile. chap. 87

IF a horse be scabd or mangie about the taile, the cure is, first to let him blood, and then to wash his taile twice a day with olde pisse and Coporas boylde together, and then annointed with narue oyle and quicksiluer beaten together till the quick-siluer be kild.

Of

Of pinching, splatting, or straines in the shoulder. chap. 88

THe worst pinch or straines that happens to a horse, is that in the shoulder, which if at any time it chance you shall take of oyle petrolium, of oyle of Cipres, and of Linseed-oyle, of each like quantitie, and being mixt together, bathe the horses shoulder therewith, and if that take not away his halte, then put a rowell betwixt his shoulder and his brest.

Of swelling of the legs. chap. 89

IF your horses legs swell at any time vpon any occasion, you shall bath them with warme traine oyle, and it will help them.

Of Foundring. chap. 90.

FOundring comes by sodaine heate after violent labor, the signe is the horse will stand with all his foure legs together, or for the most part not stand at all, the cure is, let him blood in the neck veine, & take from him a pottle of blood; then mixe with it the whites of foure eggs, halfe a pound of bole-armoniack, a pint of vineger, and as much wheat-flower as will thicken al, then lay it vpon the horses back & reynes, & with long linnen rags dipt therein, binde his fore-legs straite aboue his knees; then ride him two hours vpon a hard pauement, then pare his feet exceeding thin, and stop them with bran and hogs-grease boild together, and his feet will be well within a weeke after.

Of the Splent or Serew. chap. 91

A Splent is so well known to all men, that it needs no discription, & the Serew is the same a splent is, only it is vpon the outside of the legs: there be many cures, & my selfe could repeat twentie, but the surest and cleanest

way

way is with the point of a sharp knife, to make a litle hole of more then a barley corne length vpon the top of the Splent, & put therin as much Arsnick as the quarter of a hasell nut and in three daies it wil take away the splent, & then heale the sore onely with sweet butter molten.

Of Mallander and Sellander, chap. 92

A Mallander is a drie scabbe vpon the bought of the fore leg: and the Sellander vpon the bought of the hinder: the cure is, after you haue made them bleed, to binde to them for three dayes blacke sope, and lime mixt together, and then to heale them with sweete butter againe.

Of an ouer-reach vpon the sinew. chap. 93

WHat ouer-reach soeuer your horse chances vpon, you shall to cure him, first with a sharpe knife cut out the ouer-reach as plaine as may bee, then washing it with beere and salt, lay vpon it Otemeale and butter mixt together, and it will heale it.

Of an ouer-reach vpon the heele. chap. 94

AFter you haue cut out the ouer-reach, you shall take Bolearmoniake and vineger mixt together, and anoint the sore therewith.

Of halting before and behinde. chap. 95

IF a horse hault before, his griefe is either in his shoulder, his knee, his fetlocke or his foote, if it bee in his shoulder I haue declared a remedie already, if in his knee or ferlocke you shall folde his legges about with ropes of wet hay, and they will help him, and if it be in his foote, pare the hoofe thin, and stop it with bran and hogs-grease, but if he halte behinde, he is hipped or stifled, if hee be hipped hee is past cure, if stifled you shall either swimme him in a deepe water or

binde

binde vp his sound legge, that he may perforce stand vpon the other, and he will goe vprighr suddainely.

Of being hipped. chap. 96

IF your horse be olde hipt he is past cure, if newe done youshall cast him on his back, and by the help of foure pasternes drawe him by the legge from the ground, and so bring the ioynt into his place againe.

Of being stiffled. chap. 97

TAke a new plaine surfingle, and with it garter vp the contrary legge a little aboue the hough, and so let him runne two or three dayes.

Of the bone Spauen, chap. 98

SLit the place iust vpon the excression of the bone, and put a little Arsnick thereinto, then after two or three dayes anoint it with sweete butter.

Of the blood spauen. chap. 99.

ONely take vp the veine aboue the spauen and let it bleede only from belowe; then cut the veine in sunder, and lay on a plaster of pitch.

Of the Kurbe. chap. 100

THe Curbe is a hard knot vpon the hinder part of the Cambrel, and it is to be taken away as you take away a splent.

Of the paines. chap. 101

THese diseases are sore dride scabs, close vnder the Fetlocks, and the cure is to rub them till thy bleede, then to wash them with pisse and Coporas, and annoint them with hoggs grease and strong mustard mixt together till they be whole.

Of kybde heeles. chap: 102.

TAke greene Copperas and old pisse, and boyle them together, and wash his heeles therewith.

Of Wind-

Of Windgalls. chap. 103

VVIngalles are little blebs raisd vp by extreame trauell on each side the horses Fetlocks,& the cure is to lay vnto them the plaister of pitch; rossen, and masticke, as hath before beene shew'd, and it will helpe them.

Of wrinching the neather ioynt. chap. 104

IF your horse get a straine in the neather ioynt, so that the member be bigge, you shall onely annoint it with Narue oyle,and oyle of Cipresse,and it will take away the swelling.

Of the Shacklegall. chap. 105

SHackle gall is any sore got by wearing pasternes, shackles, or other fetters, and it is to be cured by annointing the sore with fresh butter and honey together.

Of the Scratches. chap. 106

SCratches are certaine vilde drie scabs, growing aboue the Fetlockes, and are to be cured as you cure the paines.

of the Ring-bone. chap. 107

THe Ringbone is a certain superfluous grisle,growing about the cronet of the horses hoofe: and the cure is,to dresse it in three places, that is, before and on each side with *Arsnicke* as you did the splent, and after three daies to heale it with sweete butter: as for the crowne scab, or other hurts vpon the cronnet of the hoofe, the vse of hogs-grease, and Mustard will heale them.

Of the crowne scab. chap, 108.

TAke Verdigrease, hogges-grease, and the strongest mustard,and mixing them well together, anoint the sore therewith.

Of hurts vpon the cronett. chap. 109.

IF there be any hollownes, either cut it plaine, or eate it plaine with verdigreaſe, then anoint it with Turpentine and hogs-greaſe mixt together.

Of the Quitter-bone. Chap. 110.

THe Quitter-bone is a griſſell growing vnder the hoofe, it is of all diſeaſes the vildeſt, and fulleſt of danger, yet the cure is firſt with Arſnicke or Vardigreaſe, to eate away the fleſh till you may ſee the bone and then cut it out, and heale the ſore with Turpentine, Waxe and Butter molten together.

Of grauelling. chap. 111.

FIrſt pare out the grauell and bruſe, and then melte vpon the ſore pitch, roſſen and tallow, laying a little Flaxe thereupon.

Of ſurbatting. chap. 112.

TAke young nettles and chop them, and mixe them with cow-dung, and ſtoppe his feete therewith.

Of a pricke in the ſoale of the foote. chap. 113.

TAke Turpentine, tallow and tarre, and melte them together, and vent the ſore therewith.

Of a retreate. chap. 114.

FIrſt waſh it with Beere and Salte, then lay vpon it Hogs-greaſe, honey and Verdigreaſe well melted together.

Of Coyning. chap. 115.

FIrſt drawe the nayle, then melt into the hole tallow and tarre mixt together.

Of looſing the hoofe. Chap. 116.

TAke Burgundy pitch and melt vpon the opening, then annoynt all the cronet with Bole-armoniacke and vinegar mixt together.

Of ca-

Of casting the hoofe. Chap. 117.

YOu must make the horse a boote of leather, and lappe about his sore foote Hogs grease, Tarre and Turpentine mixt together.

Of hoofe-bound. Chap. 118.

YOu shall with a drawing yron drawe diuers small gutters in his hoofe from the cronet downeward, and then annoynt them with Tarre and Tallow mixt together.

Of the running Frush. Chap. 119.

TAke the whites of Egges and beate them with the soote of a Chimney till it bee thicke like a salue, then stop the horses foote therewith.

Of the Leprosie. Chap. 120.

THe Leprosie in a horse is when the mangines spreads ouer the whole body, and is to be cured as you cure the mangines of the tayle.

Of the Farcion. Chap. 121.

THe Farcion is a foule disease that runnes in poysonous knottes ouer all the horses bodie, and though there be many waies to cure it, yet this is the best; to slitt halfe a dozen of the hardest knots which are best risen, and fill them with Arsenicke, and then to annoynt all the other sores with Butter, and the disease will heale presently.

Of the Canker. Chap. 122.

THe Canker is a venemous fretting humour, which poysons the flesh whereseoeuer it goes, and the cure is, first to wash or squirt the sore with Allome water and Coporas mixt together, thē to annoynt or tent the sore three dayes together with blacke sope, and after to heale it with molten butter.

Of the Fistula. chap. 123.

FIrst with Allome water euery morning squirt the sore and wash it cleane, then tent it with *Vnguentum Ægipciacum.*

Of the Anbury. chap. 124.

AN Anbury is nothing but a spungie wart, growing vpon any part of the horses bodie, and the cure is either to wash it with the water which standes in the roote of an olde Oake-tree, or to tye it so straite with some of the horses hayres, that it may rot away.

Of Woundes. chap. 125.

OF Woundes, or cutting of Sinewes, I haue spoake sufficiently already, onely if the horse haue a wound which comes by Gun-shot, you shall mixe with your salue a good quantitie of Varnish, but if the horse bee burnt with Lime, then you shall adde some olde Barme or yeast; if the horse be bitt with a mad Dog, you shall vse in your salue Goates dung, or the fat of hung Beefe.

Of Bruisings or Swellings. chap. 126.

TAke Butter and Vinegar and hauing molten it, put as much wheate-bran to it as as will make it thicke, and lay it hot to the swelling.

Of Sinewes cut or prickt. Chap. 127.

TAke Turpentine, Waxe, and Hogs-grease, of each like quantitie and melt them together, and then being warme dresse the sore therewith.

Of woundes made with Gun-shot. Chap. 128

TAke Bole-armoniacke and Vinegar mixt together, and lay it round about the wound, then dresse and tent the sore with *Vnguentum Aurum*, or else with *Basilicon.*

Of Burning with Lime. Chap. 129.

TAke *Vnguentum Populion*, and *Vnguentum Dialthea* and mixe them together, and therewith annoynt the sore, and lay on the plaister called *Scicatrinum Rubrem.*

Of the Byting with a mad Dog. Chap. 130.

FIrst let him blood in the mouth, then take a young Pidgeon and cleauing it in the midst, lay it hot to the sore.

Of being shrew runne. Chap. 131.

IF your horse bee shrew-runne, you shall looke for a Bryer which growes at both endes, and drawe your horse thorow it and hee will be well.

Of the Warble or Felter. Chap. 132.

TO kill the Warble or Felter, bathe your horse either in strong Lye, or with burnt Sacke and vinegar mixt together.

Of stinging with Snakes. Chap. 133.

ANnoynt the sore with Sallet-oyle and Saffron, and giue the horse to drinke Cowe-milke and the shauings of Iuory.

Of eating Hens-dung. Chap. 134.

YOu shall giue your horse the scowring of Butter and Saunders.

To kill Lice. Chap. 135.

ANnoint the horse with sope, quicksiluer, and Staues-aker mixt together.

Of being stung with Flies. Chap. 136.

TAke hearbe of grace and boyle it in faire water, from a gallon to a pottle and wash all the horses body therewith.

Of broken Bones. Chap. 137.

THe best salue for broken bones is oyle of Mandrage, or oyle of Swallowes.

Of taking vp of Veynes. Chap. 138.

TIs good to take vp veynes for griefe in the legges, as Farcies, spauens or such like, or for the quitter bone, Scabbe or scratches, and for no other infirmities.

Of Glisters. Chap. 139.

THe best Glister is to boyle Mallowes, and then to straine the water, and put to a quart of water, a pinte of fresh Butter, and halfe a pinte of Sallet oyle, and administer it warme to the horse.

Purgations. Chap. 140.

TOuching purgations to be receiued inwardly, looke in the booke of hunting, and by the name of scowrings you shall finde plenty.

Of Calterizing. Chap. 141.

FOr Calterizing, it is neuer to bee vsed, but either to stay the Fluxe of blood, or when incission is to be made amongst veynes or sinewes wherefore to calterize a large wound, your yron must be thin, sharpe & flat, and to calterize a little orifice, it must be blunt and round, yet by how much the hotter by so much it is the better.

Certaine speciall receites. Chap. 142.

TVrpentine and the powder of leat mixt together, will drawe out any venome or poyson from any wound whatsoeuer. To bathe a horse with Tansey and Verd-iuice will kill the Farcie, and the water wherein the greene barke of Elder hath beene boyled, being mixt with Sallet oyle, will cure the Glaunders.

The end of the seauenth Booke.



CAVALARICE,

OR

That part of Horſe-manſhip diſcouering the ſubtill trade of Horſcourſers, together with an explanation of the excellency of a Horſes vnderſtanding, and how to make him doe Trickes like Bankes his Curtall, and of drawing dry-foot, and other Acts both naturall and vnnaturall.

The Eight Booke.

Newly corrected, and augmented.

By Geruaſe Markham.

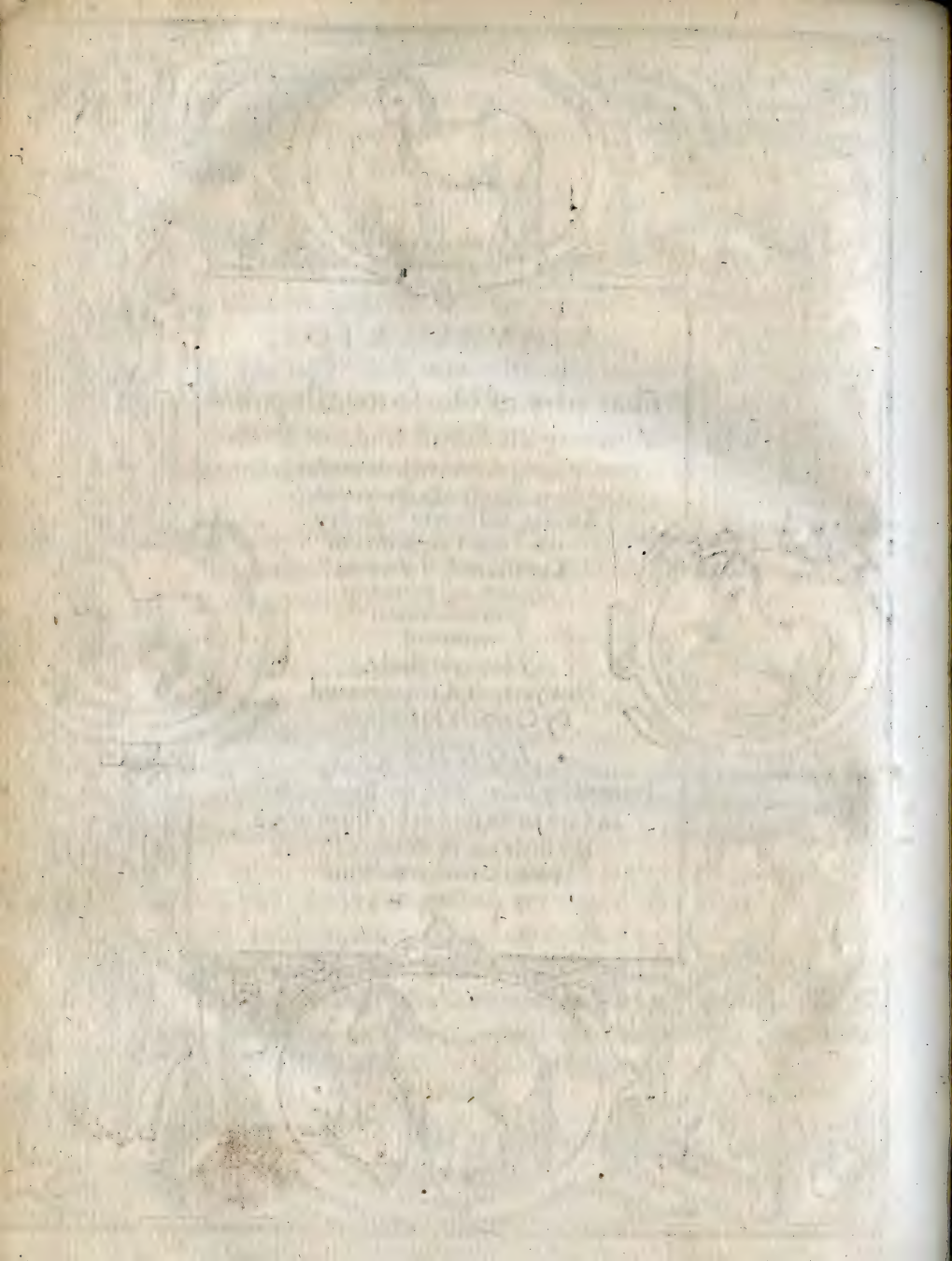




LONDON

Printed by *Edw: Allde* for *Edward White*, and are to be ſold at his ſhop neere the little north doore of Saint Paules Church at the ſigne of the Gun. 1617.





To the Honorable and most worthy Knight Sir WALTER ASTON.

SIR,

How dearely I loue you, and with what zeale I wish I could doe you seruice, I would this poore trybute of my labours could giue a true testimony, that then you might knowe what power you haue in a poore Creature, but since neither it, nor any lymmits can bound thinges infinite, conceiue of mee according to the square of your owne Noble thoughts, which I perswade my selfe euen to apparant errours, would lend most Charitable constructions. I haue in this volume dar'd a bolde enterprize, the rather sith there was neuer before this day moe Champions either in perfect skill, or in strong imagination of their skill, that may easily bee inflamed to rise vp against me, but I haue chose you for one of my honorable defenders, not that you shall stand betwixt me and my hazard, but be a meanes to bring me to an equall combate, for I know my selfe to be so safely armed with Art, experience, and the grounds of reason, that I feare no malignitie, but an vnlawfull counsell, which to preuent, those Noble Princes and your selfe whome I haue chosen, I hope will bee my protectors, to whose mercy and gracious opinions, I prostrate me and my labours.

GERVASE MARKHAM.

To all the buſie Horſe-courſers, both of the Citty and Countrey whereſoeuer.

IMagin not becauſe I haue diſcouered vnto the world thoſe ſecret deceits wherewith the world is hourely beguiled, that I with a more ſpleeny ſpirit doe condemne you, then all other trades whatſoeuer: For if the Marchant will haue a darke ſhop to make bright ſoyled ware: If the Shoe-maker will cut Leather but halfe tann'd; the Carpenter worke his Timber halfe ſeaſond; if the Baker will not giue his true waight, the Butcher will not forgoe his imboſture of prickes, nor any Trade whatſoeuer but will preſerue to himſelfe ſome diſception; beleeue it I conclude you as good, and loue you aſmuch as any, and thinke it agreeable with the law of reaſon, that you haue as much priuiledge as any whatſoeuer in this worldly Charter. But foraſmuch as ſome (becauſe they deceiue themſelues) make no conſcience in deceiuing others, and thinke the gaine moſt honeſt, how euer gathered by the hand of corruption, I thought it not amiſſe to make my ſelfe a warrant without authority, and to lay open what with long experience, and diligent obſeruation I haue noted and ſometimes purchaſed at too deere a reckoning, both to fortifie the honeſt againſt vnconſcionable practiſe, and to make them loath thoſe groſſe deceits, of which euen Boyes and Babes may detect them, which if it reape thankes from them that reape profite, I haue my wiſh, if it offend the contrary I reſpect not, becauſe they may amend their loſſe if they will buy with care, and ſell with a good conſcience.

Farewell.

G. M.

CAVALARICE.

The Eight Booke.

CHAP. 1.

Of Horſe-courſers in generall.

THere is not any ground, Art, Science, or Handicraft, whatſoeuer, which hath beene ſo exactly found out either by Nature or the power of the greateſt Wiſdome, but Time and Mens corruptions hath poyſoned them with ſome one or other diſception; as euen the very foode of our ſoules, how it is prophaned with a world of ſcyſmes; in Philoſophy at this day how many Hereticks; in Phyſicke what numbers of Mounte-banckes; in Aſtrologie what falſe Star-gazers; in Muſicke what Minſtrelcie: and to conclude, in all what can Man doe that is vertuous, which one will not imitate in a like vizard. Hence and from this

this auncient knowledge of ſufferance, being founded by an idle ignorant couetouſneſſe hath ſprung this deceit or impoſtume vpon the face of Horſe-manſhip which wee call Horſe-courſing. Now that you may know what a horſe-courſer is, leaſt by miſtaking mine application, I may be helde to condemne thoſe which are both honeſt and vertuous, you ſhall vnderſtand the Horſe-courſer, whoſe ſubtle trade I diſcouer, is hee who paſſes from Faire to Faire, and from Market to Market, to buy lame, tyred, diſeaſed, and tainted Horſes, and then with one deceitfull tricke or other, recouering their imperfections, ſelles them againe into the handes of ſimple men, who not perceiuing the hooke, ſwallow the bayte, and are choakt with moſt vnthriftie penniworths. Now for the honeſt marchant of Horſes, who with all carefull induſtrie and a watchfull eye buyes none but ſuch as his knowledge and iudgment approues to be ſound, beautifull, well bredde, and fitt for beſt imployments, or for him that ſells but either the ſuperfluitie of his Breede, or the ſurcharge of his Stable, and with that naked plaineneſſe that there is neither found falſehood in his oathes or boaſtings; theſe I ſay are as vnworthie the name of Horſ-courſers, as truth vnfit for the name of falſhood. Now therefore ſince I haue giuen you the true Character of the partie whome I meane, and that you may not applie any of theſe vices to men of contrary diſpoſition, I will deſcend vnto his cuſtomes and quallities, touching his Trade onely.

CHAP. 2.

CHAP. 2.

The obseruations which Horse-coursers hold in the choise of their Horses, the deceits they vse in couering their faults, and their practises in selling Iades.

THE Horse-courser who onely buyes for present gaine, and selles without either respect to mens occasions, his owne conscience, or his wordes reputation, dooth only in chusing his horses obserue these fewe principles: First, if hee can he will haue him exceeding fat, and of a faire and beautifull colour, of all which the best in the Horse-coursers eye is the faire Daple-gray, or the Gray with white maine and tayle; the vnstained White, the Bright-bay with white starre, white rache, or white heele, or the Cole-blacke with those white markes also, for these colours, either to Courtiers, Ladies, Lawyers, Schollers, or Cittizens, couer and keepe many mischiefes vnreuealed: Next to his colour, the Horse-courser lookes euer for a dainty pace, as in the ambler great ease, and in the Trotter much paine and busie treading; next colour and pace, hee lookes to outward grosse infirmitie, such as lie so apparant that euery one may beholde them without groaping, as are ouergrowne splents, Spauens either bone or bogge, Ringbones, Curbes or other excerssions, but if they bee young and but newly appearing, hee may speake what he will in their dispraise, but hee loues the Horse not one haire the worse for his purpose; as for any inward griefe, as Glaunders, Consumptions, Coughes, Broken-

The Horse-courses choise of Horses.

windes,

windes, Dulneſſe of ſpirit, Reſtifnes, or any miſchiefes elſe which hath either skinne or haire to couer it, hee regardes them not: for his returne being ſuddaine, he hath for to blinde ignorant eyes, cloakes enow to conceale them, during the time hee is in feeling. The laſt thing he lookes vnto is price, for beleeue it, they euer buy fleſh, colour, ſhape, and countenance, but they will hardly giue any penny for goodneſſe, both becauſe the wiſe ſeller will holde it at a good rate (as it is worthy) and the Horſe-courſer ſhall haue no benefite, being able to make a Iade ſeeme equall with the beſt ſpirited: and although I will not ſay but a Horſe-courſer may haue a good horſe, aſwell as a Woman that ſells Muſſels may haue a rich Pearle amongſt them, yet it is great oddes to the contrary, both becauſe hee is ſolde at a great value, (and ſo not to him ſo commodious) and alſo he is neuer the obiect at which the Horſe-courſer aymes at, for 'tis beauty, ſhape, pace and cheapneſſe hee deſires, and then if goodneſſe chance to come vnlookt for, the horſe is ſo much the dearer, although the cauſe of ſuch deareneſſe ſtand the ſeller in neuer a penny, in which me thinkes Horſe-courſers reſemble theſe miſerable ingroſſers of Corne that albeit they buy graine at neuer ſo cheape a reckoning, yet in the dearneſſe of the yeare, they will not abate one ſingle halpennie, although it were euen to the ſauegard of the life of a Chriſtian. And truely I doe with more cõfidence write this, becauſe I haue my ſelfe oft ſolde vnto horſe-courſers horſes, which I knew to be faultie, and when I haue out of a ſimple minde reuealed the worſt of my knowledge they haue, euen ſcoft at my too much curioſitie, and made no reckoning of the miſchiefes, and after when they haue ſolde them againe,

they

they haue giuen me many thankes for their good penni-worths, and wisht for many such like commodities, when I dare very well presume that I knew much better then they, or then any Horse-courser whatsoeuer, that such Horses were vtterly past all vse or seruice. Now therefore briefely you may see the chiefe ayme of the Horse-courser in buying Horses, is at his beauty, or fulnesse of flesh, his faire colour, his shape free from grosse infirmitie, his cleane pace, and his cheape price; to which should goodnesse haue beene coupled, doubtlesse the Marchandize would returne little profite, for in all mine experience I neuer knew good horses solde at such a cheape reckoning, that a man might keepe a Familie with the gaines, except they came from one of these three mens handes; either a Foole that would giue a Diamond for a Barly-corne, an vnthrift that would loose profit for his instant pleasure, or a Theefe that to bee eased of an vnlawful prize, would euer be content to loose three partes of the true valew.

But to returne to my purpose, when the Horse-courser hath bought his horse according to his fancy, and learnt asmuch as hee can of his Chapman, touching his inward disposition; and also out of his own tryals, findes the faults to which he is most adicted, (as they are questionlesse with great ease discerned) then presently hee begins to plot stratagems in his head, how hee may cloake and couer those faults, and make the horse seeme in euery mans iudgement mearely contrary to that to which hee is naturally adicted, as thus; If he finde the horse that hee hath bought to bee a dull, heauy, sad jade, and that a man can with no reasonable compulsion make him goe faster then an Asse; then the horse-corser will not misse, but

The Horse-coursers deceites.

but duely euery morning, noone, and night, with bigge long ripling ſtaues beſtow at leaſt an houre and more in beating his Horſe, both vpon the body, ſides, and buttocks, till he make his fleſh ſo extreame tender and ſore, that euen the very ſhake and lifting vp of a ſticke, is enough to make the Horſe mad and deſperate: Hee will doe nothing about the Horſe, as either combing, dreſſing, turning his cloathes vp and downe, or any thing elſe, but it ſhall be done with furie, and with ſtroakes, he will not at any time paſſe by the horſe but hee ſhall haue a ſtroke, nor will he ſpeake to any man if the Horſe ſtand neare him, but euen midſt that conference, hee will ſtrike and torment the horſe, till hee haue made the horſe ſo fearefull and deſperate, that the very bitternes of a Mans voyce ſhall be able to make him leape againſt the walles. This beating of horſes thus amongſt Horſe-courſers, is called giuing them Lambe-pye, from a knauiſh ieſt of a horſe courſers Boy, that being askt of his Maiſter what meate hee had giuen the Horſes, made anſwere Lambe-pye enough maiſter.

And truely could it feede them aſwell as it puts them in affright, a Horſe-courſer might very well ſpare other foode: for howſoeuer they get meate, it is moſt aſſured they neuer want blowes. Nowe when they haue thus beaten their horſes ſoundly in the houſe, that they will ſtart, flie, and leape againſt the walls, then bringing them into the common roade where the Horſe-courſer vſes to ride his Horſe for the ſale, which is not aboue fortie or threeſore yardes in length, you ſhall ſee him no ſooner ſet his Boy or Seruant vpon his horſes backe, but preſently ere the boy bee well ſetled, you ſhall ſee the Horſe-courſer giue the horſe two or three good blowes

vpon

vpon the ſides with his Cudgell, and the Boy alſo to augment his Maiſters torment, will no ſooner haue his legge ouer the Horſes backe, but both his Spurres ſhall bee faſt in his ſides, and if the poore Iade through theſe torments chance to whiske his tayle (which is a plaine ſigne, hee doth nothing out of his free ſpirit) you ſhall ſee the Horſe-courſer giue the Horſe ſuch a ſtroake vpon the verie ſterne of his tayle, that as if hee would euen breake it in peeces, he will make the Horſe holde it ſo cloſe to his buttockes, that to the death hee will not mooue it, which will deceiue a verie good iudgement touching his mettle. Thus and by theſe torments you ſhall ſee him bring his horſe to ſuch a ſencible feareful-neſſe, that for the ordinary rode of a Faire or a Market, hee will make him goe with ſuch ſpirit and madnes of paſſion, that as if hee had no feete but winges, you will rather feare his furie, then his dulneſſe; whereas when either hee ſhall come to temperate keeping, or ordinary trauell, you ſhall ſoone finde by his tyring, how thoſe falſe fiers were created. Another tricke Horſe-courſers haue to make their horſes being dull, to ſhew braue ſpirits, and that (when all other meanes failes them) will quicken them vppe for the length of a roade, as long as there is any life in their bodyes, and this it is; They will take a verie fine ſharpe Nalle, and raiſing with their finger and thumbe the skinne from the fleſh vpon each ſide of the ſpurre veyne, euen iuſt in the common ſpurring place, pricke the skinne through twice or thrice, and then they will take the powder of Glaſſe, beaten as ſmall as is poſſible to be gotten, and with it rub the places that were prickt, ſo that the powder of the Glaſſe may enter into the holes, and then lay the haire ſmooth

and plaine againe : this will bring the horſe to ſuch a ſoreneſſe,and tendernes of his ſides, that it is worſe then death to him to haue any thing to touch them ; ſo that whether a man haue ſpurres or no ſpurs, yet the horſe will goe and ſhew ſpirit beyond all expectation ; onely this you muſt obſerue, that whenſoeuer you dreſſe your horſe thus in the morning, that then at night you annoynt his ſides with Turpentine,and the powder of leat mixed together, and his ſides will bee as well within twelue houres, as if they had neuer beene poyſoned: And for mine owne part I haue tryed this tricke vpon a Iade which hath beene tyred by the hye-way, and I haue found him that where before, the more a man ſpurred, the ſooner hee would ſtand ſtill ; Now if a man did but make offer to touch his ſides, he would ſhew quickneſſe, and ſtriue to goe with more willingneſſe,then when hee was firſt taken forth in the morning. Many other deceits they haue to quicken a dull Iade, but theſe are the moſt vſuall,and doe ſooneſt deceiue a plaine meaning.

Nowe if his Horſe haue beene formerly foundred, or frettized vpon his feete, then bee ſure, before hee bringes him to any great ſhew for the ſale, he will chafe and ride him vp and downe at leaſt halfe a quarter of an houre before, that hauing gotten heate and warmeth into the horſes limbs,he may then bring him to the vſew of any man, and as long as the horſe is hott, or treades vpon ſoft ground, a very good eye ſhall hardly perceiue imperfection in his feete ; and if a Horſe-courſer haue ſuch a Horſe, you ſhall ſee if at any time hee chance to ſet him vp hee will not yet let him ſtand ſtill, but he will euer be beating or ſtirring him ; and if his hoofes be rugged or wrinckled (as frettized hoofes for the moſt part

are

are) ſo that if a Horſe man ſhall ſee them hee will eaſily diſcerne his fault, or if the horſe haue ring-bone, paines, ſcratches, ſplents, or any eie ſore about the neather ioynt then the firſt thing the Horſe-courſer doth; is to ride his horſe into the durt, and by dawbing his legs to hide his faultes: If the horſe be ſubiect to ſwelling in his legges, then the firſt thing the Horſe-courſer dooth, is to ride his horſe into ſome water, or to bathe the horſes legges with colde water, for that will keepe downe the ſwelling till his legs be drie againe: If the horſe haue had any ſecret ſtraine in the fore-ſhoulder, the Horſe-courſer will ride him very ſeldome, and when he rides him you ſhall neuer ſee him turne him narrow, but both vſe him gently, and take large compaſſe; If the horſe haue a little halt it is the tricke of the horſe-corſer, that looke vpon which foot he halteth, from that foot cõmonly he will take off his ſhooe or with his knife cut off a little of the skin from his heele, and then not forbeare to proteſt that his halt is the want of a ſhooe, or elſe by reaſon of that ſmall ouer-reach, which in any mans eie wil be of no great moment, and yet make a good iudgement, thinke it is the cauſe of his halting; If the horſe haue the Glanders, and haue run at the noſe for many yeares before, ſo that it is become in cõmon experience incurable, and that the horſe is neare his laſt date, in this caſe the horſe-courſer will not faile but in the morning before his horſe goes to the ſale, he will firſt blowe into his noſtrels a good quantity of Neezing-powder, then take two long feathers of a Gooſe-wing, and dipping them either in the iuyce of Garlicke or in a little Oyle-de-bay, thruſt them vp into the horſes noſtrels, euen to the top of his heade, and rub them vp and downe: then after he hath caſt the filth out

of his Noſtrels a good ſpace, the Horſe courſer will take of Garlicke a good quantitie beeing well bruiſed in a Morter, and a good quantitie of ſtrong Muſtard, and mixing them well with new Ale, hee will with a horne put ſome thereof into each of the Horſes noſtrels, and ſo holde it in with his hand by keeping his noſtells cloſe together; and then after his Horſe hath neez'd and ſnear'd a ſpace, the filthineſſe will ſtop, and then the Horſe-courſer will ride him forth (for 'tis moſt certaine that for twelue houres after there will not come any filthineſſe that will either trouble or diſgrace the horſe.) And thus euen almoſt for euerie groſſe infirmitie, the ſubtle Horſe-courſer hath one deuiſe or other to deſemble and cloake it, ſome being ſo artificiall, that euen verie wiſe men may be miſtaken, and ſome ſo groſſe, that a halfe wit will diſcerne it: yet neither the one nor the other, but at ſome time ſerues the Horſe-courſer for ſome purpoſe. But if the horſe ouer and aboue all theſe outward and inward infirmities, bee alſo ſo exceeding olde and aged, that he is almoſt paſt both vſe and ſeruice, then the Horſ-courſer wil take a ſmall round yron made very hot, and with it burne two little round black holes in the top of the two outmoſt teeth of each ſide, the outſide of the horſes mouth vpon the neather teeth, and likewiſe the teeth of the vpper chap, which anſwere iuſt oppoſite to the neather, by which meanes if you looke into the mouth of the horſe to knowe his age, you ſhall ſee the marke ſo full and plaine (the nature of which marke hath bin ſo formerly ſhew'd you) that you cānot poſſibly geſſe the horſe to be aboue the age of 7. years; but if the horſe throgh his age hath loſt any of thoſe teeth which declare the age of the horſe, ſo that ȳ deceit will not hold, thē the

Horſe-

Horſe-courſer doth not faile euery minute of an houre to be handling his horſe about the lips, and euer as hee touches them, either to thruſt a ſharpe alle, or a ſharpe pinne into them, till hee haue brought the horſe to ſuch a tendernes and knowledge of the torment which hee ſuſtaines, that in the end hee will not ſuffer any man to touch him about the lips, but that hee will either bite, ſtrike, or commit ſome other outragious part; ſo that no man beeing able to looke into his mouth, no man that hath not other skill ſhall know his age by his mouth, for the countenance of the horſe, or the hollowneſſe of his eyes, or gray haires about the temples of the head are no true ſignes, but may diuerſly faile, as either being begotten by an old horſe; or by oppoſition in colour between the Mare and the Horſe, or elſe by being bredde in lowe and rotten ſoyles, all which will make a Horſe in his beſt youth and luſtineſſe haue an olde countenance.

Theſe deceites and a multitude of others, as the ſelling of Horſes which are Moone-eyed, making falſe tayles, falſe Whites in the face, or in diuers other places, as by burning the horſe in the foreheade with an hard Egge taken burning hotte out of the fire and clapped to the horſes face, or by clappiug to it the ſtalke of a Cole-wort roaſted in the fire as you would roaſt a Warden; or rubbing the hayre and skinne off with a ſmooth Bricke-batt leaſurely, and ſuch like toyes, all which will make whites either in a horſes face, or in any other part of his body, or the feeding of a horſe with falſe fleſh, as by giuing him to eate, either ſodden Barley, or ſodden Beanes, or Bucke, or Colewortes, or ſuch like, all which wil ſtuffe vp a horſe in fleſh ſodenly, but one daies labour will euer take away a whole monthes feeding.

Theſe and a world of ſuch like vnhoneſt fallaces are the verie occupations and toyles of Horſe-courſers, by which they deceiue whole multitudes of true meaning people: but foraſmuch as from the diſcouery of theſe which I haue already ſhewed, doth iſſue the diſcouery of all other whatſoeuer they can inuent, I will not clogge your memory with more obſeruations then ſuch, as (if you haue daily cõmerce with Horſe-courſers) you ſhall hourely haue occaſion to imploy.

Now to ſpeake ſomthing of their ſubtiltie in practiſe, you ſhall knowe, that amongſt them, it is euen as it is amongſt Conny-catchers, and Cut-purſſes (pardon my compariſon) for as they haue falſe Brothers, ſo hath euer the vnconſcionable horſe-courſer: ſo that a plaine dealing man ſhall no ſooner offer him money for a horſe (albeit hee offer more then his woorth) but preſently you ſhall haue a fellow made for the purpoſe, who will come and ouer-bid the true dealer: another wil ſtep foorth and giue ſuch falſe prayſes, and a third report of ſo many falſe offers, which the Horſe-courſer hath refuſed, that hee which meanes ſimplie, firſt taking a fancy to the horſe, and that fancy making him too willing to beleeue any goodneſſe of the horſe, will be ſo carryed away with their falſhoodes, that in the end hee ſhall finde he hath bought naughtineſſe at a much too deare a reckoning: If this were the worſt of euill mens practiſe, time and a little loſſe would make men more carefull and truſt leſſe: but there are ſo many deceites, and ſuch new generations of deceites, that it is impoſſible to diſcerne them, becauſe they are hourely in creating; wherfore what I haue already written, I holde ſufficient to fortifie any mans opinion againſt giuing too great truſt

to

to dissimulation, or suffering his fancy to ouer-rule his iudgement. And thus much touching the choice of Horse-coursers and their Horses, their deceites and practises.

CHAP. 3.

Of the discouery and preuention of Horse-coursers deceites.

SInce I haue shewed you the ordinarie and customarie deceites of both publicke and priuate vnconscionable Horse-coursers, it shall be fit that I shew you likewise by what meanes and industrie you shall preuent and discerne the euill into which craft would intangle you, or else bee reputed a verie insufficient Tutor that onely tell you of euill, but shew you no way to auoyd it: You shall therefore knowe that when you goe to buy a horse of a Horse-courser, you must by no meanes giue credite to any thing he speakes touching his horse, more then what you apparantly see and knowe to bee iust, which is, but onely whether hee be faire shaped, fatt, leane, or such like outward characters in which hee cannot deceiue you, but for concealed quallities, beleeue it as a knowne veritie that the more the horse-courser boasts or brags, the more deceit by much is in the horse hee boasts of, and the more willing he is to sell, the more willing hee is to deceiue: wherefore to come to particularities, if when the horse-courser brings his horse to be ridden before you, if you see him start, leape, rush forward, and be so impatient that he will hardly bee kept to

any moderate pace, as if his ſpirit were infinite, you ſhall then with good conſideration marke the countenance of the horſe in his going, whether hee haue a ſad, heauie, or vnmouing eye, or whether he carrie his eares, ſtill, and moueth ſeldome, or whether he reyne ſlouenly, not raiſing vp his necke, or ſhewing naturall cheareful-nes, or whether in his going you perceiue him to leane vpon his Riders hand, as if his heade were too great a burden for his necke to carry: And laſtly, whether hee goe with patience when he is from company, and onely is moſt mad when company is about him, any of theſe conſtant and vnſprity carriages are ſignes of dulneſſe: wherefore when you diſcerne any of them in a horſe, you ſhall preſently make the Rider to alight from his backe, and (as if you would view the horſe) you ſhall lay your hand vpon his Buttocks, thighes, and ſides, and as if you would trie the looſeneſſe of his skin you ſhall plucke it from the fleſh, and if you finde hee ſtarts or is diſpleaſed thereat, be then aſſured that horſe hath beene ſoundly beaten. You ſhall alſo with your hand pull vp the skin in the ſpurring place, and if you finde he either choppes downe his head, as if he would bite, or that hee ſhrinkes his body, whiskes his tayle, or ſhakes his heade, it is an euident token hee hath had his ſides rubbed with Glaſſe or ſomething elſe to make them tender: Or if theſe obſeruations cannot ſatisfie you, then the beſt courſe is to ride the horſe your ſelfe: and if vpon the very firſt mounting him, you finde he is all ſpirit and mettle, you ſhall then ride him foorth of company, and when you are alone giue him leaue to goe at his owne pleaſure without forcing him, and if then you finde, that of his owne accord he is willing to be temperate, and that hee

is

is euer moſt madde when hee is in moſt company, then you may bee aſſured that Horſes mettle is not his owne, but hath abſolutely beene forc'ſt into him, either by beating or ſome worſe practiſe : Beſides, if it bee his owne mettle, yet it is a true rule, that the more extreame furious a horſe is, the leſſe will bee his indurance in Trauell, neither is hee woorthie of any confidence: wherefore euer your beſt ſpirit is that which is moſt temperate, that will neither giue any ſigne of ſloath, nor eaſily bee mooued to any violence, Now after you are reſolued touching his mettle and inward ſpirit, if then you would knowe whether hee haue beene foundred, fretized, or bee vnſound of any of his limbes, you ſhall attend till the Horſe-courſer ſet him vp in the ſtable, and after hee hath ſtood a while you ſhall marke the manner of his ſtanding when no body troubles him, and if you perceiue him, firſt to eaſe one foote then another, and that hee cannot ſtand a minute of an houre together without hitching from one foote to another, as if he would dance, then you ſhal be reſolued, that queſtionles that horſe hath either bin fretized or foundred, and hath ſtill remaining in his feet a moſt vnnatural heat; for the ſound Horſe you ſhall ſee ſtand conſtantly and euen vpon all his feete without any ſigne or ſhew of wearines in his feete, which a horſe that is thus tainted is not able to endure ; But if you perceiue that hee dooth not hitch and moue thus from foot to foot, onely he thruſts one of his fore-feete more from him then the other, or treads not ſo ſurely vpon one of his hind-feet as vpon the other, if this you doe behold, then be aſſured that horſe hath had ſome ill &dangerous ſtraine, the anguiſh wherof remaines ſtil amongſt the bones and ſinewes, yet that griefe

griefe is euer in the neather and not in the vpper ioynts: as for young Splents, Spauens, Ring bones, Curbes, Paines, Scratches, or any ſuch ſorance, as durt or myre may couer, bee ſure to ſee the horſe when his legges are cleane, and if your eye cannot pierce deepe enough into the imperfections, bee not aſhamed to let your fingers make a ſearch, and they will diſcouer whatſoeuer haire or skin keepes hidden, if either you knowe what the diſeaſes are, or can iudge of them when you feele them; If you feare him for hauing gowtie and ſweld legges, you ſhal then watch to ſee him when his legs are dry, or after he hath ſtood an houre or two vnſtirred, or earely in the morning before his legs be wet, and he will eaſily diſcouer ſuch a ſorance: but if you cannot come to the ſight of the horſe at ſuch conuenient times, you ſhall then as you handle the horſe about the neather ioynt, euen cloſe by his fetlocke with your finger and your thumbe, preſſe the fleſh very hard where you finde it thickeſt, and if after you haue preſt it, you feele any dintes or hollowneſſe where your thumbe or finger lay, then you may very well bee aſſured, that that horſe with the leaſt Trauaile, will haue gowtie and ſwell'd legges, for though colde water and labour doe diſperſe the humor, yet in the neather part of the ioynt will euer remaine ſome naughtie ſubſtance: If you feare the horſe for ſecret ſtraines, as thoſe which are in the Shoulder, in the Hip, and in thoſe vpper partes of the Limbes, you ſhall then take him by the Brydle, and ſetting your backe to his ſhoulder, turne him once about in as ſtraite and narrow a compaſſe as is poſſible; firſt of one ſide, then of the other, and as hee turnes you ſhall marke how hee handles his feete, and if you finde hee bringes not his outmoſt Legge ouer his

inmoſt

inmoſt, but that his inmoſt legge failes him, ſo that hee dare not firme it vpon the ground, but mooues it both out of due time, and in an vncomely order, it is then a manifeſt token that he hath had ſome ſtraine in the vpper part of that legge, which hee dare not truſt vpon the ground in a ſtraite turne, becauſe ſuch narrow turnings doe euer writhe and approoue the vpper ioyntes onely. As for halting, and couering it with vaine excuſes, the beſt diſcouery thereof is neuer to truſt a Horſe-courſers proteſtations, but the more he vowes, the leſſe doe you credit him, and ſo by miſtruſting the worſt that may happen, you ſhall preuent a miſchiefe that would happen. Nowe if you feare any Glanders, Broken winde, Conſumption, or other inward infirmity, you ſhall with your hand gripe him very hard about the Weſſen-pipe, cloſe by the roote of the tongue, and ſo holde him a good ſpace, till you compell him to cough twice or thrice, and then if aſſoone as hee hath coughe, you ſee him begin to champe or chew with his teeth, as if hee did eate ſomething, (which indeede is nothing but filthineſſe which his coughing bringes vp) then it is an apparant ſigne, that either hee hath the Glanders, or ſome inward growne colde; if his cough bee hoarce, it is a ſigne of corruption, and putrifaction in his lungs, but if it be dry, clayne, and hollow, it is a great ſigne that his winde is tainted, which by the beating of his flanke afrer a little labour, or by the ſwift motion too and fro of his tayle, you may more plainly diſcerne, for if his winde be ſound then his flanke will riſe very ſlowly, and his taile will not be ſeene to mooue but at great leaſure; And from theſe obſeruations you ſhall diſcouer a world of ſuch deceits, which doe depend and are coherents to his former miſchiefes.

miſchiefes. As for Moon-eyed Horſes, which ſome call the Lunatick ey'd, as it is a diſeaſe by which a man may the ſooneſt bee cooſened, ſo it is a ſorance, that a skilfull eye will ſooneſt diſcerne, for though the eye keep the moſt part of an ordinarie complexion, yet it is a little redder then the perfect eye, and much more Cloudie: beſides, about the outmoſt Verge or circle of the eye, you ſhall ſee a little white filme like a line goe about the eye, which is the plaineſt character that may be for that diſeaſe; Now for falſe tayles, or falſe Markes, your hand may eaſily finde out the one, and your eyes may ſoone diſcerne the other, for the artificiall white will neither carry ſo bright a colour, nor be of ſo good proportion as that of nature, but like a patch in a new garment, it will not rightly agree with the other features. Now laſtly, for the age of the horſe, if the Horſe-courſer haue burnt him with holes in his teeth, to make him appeare young, you ſhall then know that thoſe holes will bee both rounder and blacker, by a good deale, then thoſe which came by Nature, and they will carrie more commonly one ſhape or faſhion, which thoſe that come by nature will not doe, for they will ſometimes bee leſſe one then the other, and one of them bee worne out ſooner then another, but alſo if the horſe will not ſuffer you to looke in his mouth at all, then you ſhall by gentle meanes put your finger into his mouth, and feeling the inſide of his vpper tuſh, by the hoale which is within, you ſhall iudge his age, without any contradiction. Many other rules I haue formerly taught for the knowing of a Horſes age, and by the vſe of them though in one or two, yet in the moſt you ſhall not be deceiued.

Thus therefore when you are able to diſcerne and diſcouer

discouer those ordinarie and common deceites which Horse coursers practise, you shall then in buying any Horses of them, take great leasure and time, neuer making your bargaine sodainly, but after you haue chosen which you would haue, see him goe, then stand still, and then goe againe, beeing (if your leasure will serue) at least a day before you make your bargaine, that what you ouerslip in the first sight you may perceiue in the second or the third: and what helpes your memory cannot sodainly call together, by the deliberation of time, you may the better bring to your remembrance, and so seldome or neuer buy with a bad bargaine fond repentance. And thus much for the discouery of those common deceites which our Horse-coursers haue hourely in their practise.

CHAP. 4.

Of the excellency of a Horses vnderstanding, and other quallities.

THat a Horse is a Beast of a most excellent vnderstanding and of more rare and pure sence then any other Beast whatsoeuer, we haue many auncient and rare recordes left vnto vs, by the graueſt and worthiest Writers that haue writ either in the historie of the World, or of Nature: for we finde it written, that in the army of *Sibaritanes*, Horses would daunce to Musicke, and in their motions keepe due time with musicke, they haue giuen to their maisters apparant signes, that they haue had the foreknowledge of battel, & haue prepared themselues

themſelues thereunto, with extraordinary diligence.

They haue beene ſeene when their Maiſters haue bin ſlaine from their backes to mourne and ſorrow after ſtrange faſhions, as the horſe of *Nicomedes*, which would neuer eate any meate after his maſter was ſlaine but dyed with hunger, or that of *Centaretus*, who when hee ſaw his maiſter ſlaine by *Antiochus*, and that *Antiochus* after hee had kild the Man, would in the pride of his tryumph mount vpon the Beaſt, it is ſaid that the horſe inſtantlie ran with him to the tops of the Rockes, and both ſlew himſelfe and his maiſters conqueror.

One of the Kings of *Scithia* beeing ſlaine in a combate, his enemy comming to diſ-arme him, the ſlaine Kings horſe with great furie ran vpon his maiſters foe, and neuer left byting and ſtriking till hee had ſlaine him likewiſe: It is reported that *Dioniſius* the Tirant, forſaking his horſe in a bogge or quagmire, the horſe after with much labor getting foorth of the durt, did immediately vpon his own accord follow his Maſter whilſt a ſwarme of Bees did knit in his mayn, which *Dioniſius* perceiuing, hee mounted the horſes backe againe, and tooke that ſigne for a token that hee ſhould be King of *Scicill.*

Horſes as ſome Authors doe report haue been ſeene to haue ſuch excellent perſeuerances and vnderſtandings of their daungers, that they haue gathered vp the Darts which haue bin ſpent in Battell, and haue deliuered them vnto their Maiſters; others report that in the *Circenſian* games which were founded by *Claudius Cæſar*, the Horſes which wore the white liuerie, caſting the Charriot-dryuer from his ſeate, did notwithſtanding of their owne accords runne to the end of the courſe, and there made there ſtoppe, and wan the prize with great glory,

glory, and it is ſaid that other horſes in the ſame games, but at other times, hauing caſt their Riders, haue notwithſtanding both wun the Wagers, and after according to the manner of thoſe ſportes, they haue without any conductors or rulers gone to the Capitol, and made three turnes about the temple of *Iupiter*.

A world of other examples are recorded touching the inward worthines of their knowledges, which becauſe wee doe not daily ſee or daily take note of, therefore we hardly credit. Nowe for the puiſſaunce and ſtoutneſſe of their courages, we finde how there be diuers probable Authors, who write that neither *Bucephalus* which was *Alexanders* horſe, nor the horſe of *Iulius Cæſar* would ſuffer any man to ride them, but their Maiſters onely, as if they did ſcorne meaner Burthens, it is ſaide that *Auguſtus Cæſar*, had a horſe of ſuch exquiſite goodneſſe and perfection, that *Germanicus Cæſar* made a moſt famous Poem in praiſe of him, and both at *Agrigentum*, and in diuers other partes there bee moſt famous Piramides builded ouer Horſes, all which ſhewe that they haue beene moſt famous Beaſtes, and they haue bin regarded according to their worths, how euer now they be diſpiſed or neglected: and if we looke but into latter times wee may ſee the great eſtimation of Horſes, by the buriall of that famous Horſe, vpon which *Charles* the Eight did himſelfe ſerue againſt the *Italians*, which Horſe was afterwardes ſolemnly buryed by the Lady of *Burbon*, the Kings ſiſter; And for mine owne part, I haue ſeene an Iriſh Hobby which being ſhot cleane thorow the body, did bring his Maiſter ſafe from the field, and aſſoone as he was diſmounted, the Horſe dyed preſently; And truely it is a thing vnſearchable to enter into

the

the Knowledge, Stoutneſſe, Aptneſſe, and indurance of an excellent Horſe; for proofe whereof doe but heare the reportes of Souldiers or Huntſ-men, and they will giue you full ſatisfaction; Now for thoſe onely which a horſe will doe, as beeing vnnaturall, ſtrange, and paſt reaſon, wee haue had a full teſtimony in our time, by the Curtall which one *Banks* carryed vp and dowue, and ſhewed both to Princes, and to the common people, which were ſo farre beyond conceit, that it was a generall opinion, and euen ſome of good wiſdome haue maintained the aſſertion, that it was not poſſible to bee done by a Horſe, that which that Curtall did, but by the aſſiſtance of the Deuill; but for mine owne part, I knowe that all which ſo thought, were infinitely deceiued, and theſe two reaſons leade me thereunto, that firſt I perſwade my ſelfe the Man was exceeding honeſt, and ſecondly that I knowe by moſt aſſured tryals, that there was no one tricke which that Curtall did, which I will not almoſt make any horſe doe in leſſe then a monthes practiſe, and that foraſmuch as euer I ſaw him doe (which I perſwade my ſelfe was as much as other men) I euer found a direct rule and method, by which the Horſe was gouerned and directed.

And thus much I thought good to write touching the excellency of a horſes aptneſſe and vnderſtanding.

CHAP. 5.

CHAP. 5.

How a Horſe may be taught to doe any tricke, done by Bankes *his Curtall.*

ALthough *La Broue* doe much diſcommend and diſpraiſe the teaching of a Horſe to doe theſe vnneceſſary and vnnaturall actions which more properly doe belong to Dogges, Apes, Munkies, and Baboones, yet becauſe Mens natures are ſo apt to delight in nouelties, and in aſmuch as I deſire to giue ſatisfaction to all humors whatſoeuer, vpon profite and reaſon; and becauſe theſe vnprofitable toyes ſhew in a Horſe an extraordinary capacity, an obſeruant feare, and an obedient loue, all which are to be eſteemed worthy quallities; I will ſhew you in this briefe relation, by the example of two or three trickes, how you ſhall make your Horſe to doe any other action aſwell as any Dog or Ape whatſoeuer, except it be leaping vpon your ſhoulders, climbing vp houſes, or vntying knots, all which are contrary to the ſhape and ſtrength of his great body; but for fetching or carrying, (as commonly Dogs doe) for counting numbers with his feet, or for chuſing out any particular perſon amongſt a multitude, or any other ſuch like motion, thoſe you ſhal perceiue are to bee taught with great eaſe and aſſurance, if a man will imploy his labor thereunto, and not neglect the principal obſeruations which neceſſarily depend vpon ſuch inſtructions. You ſhal therefore knowe, that if you will haue your Horſe fetch and carry, either Gloue, Handkirchiffe, Hat, or any ſuch like thing,

you ſhall firſt bring your Horſe to an eſpeciall loue, feare, and knowledge of your perſon, by this meanes; You ſhall not ſuffer any Man whatſoeuer to rub, dreſſe, or ſo much as to ſpeake to the horſe, but your ſelfe only, neither ſhall you let him haue any food, drinke, or other nouriſhment, but what he receiues from your hand, and to that end you ſhall continually keepe him in the muzzell, you ſhall ſeldome bee from him, but either picking or trimming him, you ſhall when you walke abroade, take him in a ſtring abroade with you, and make him ſo conuerſant and familiar with you, (ſuffering no other man to giue him either faire worde or faire looke) that in the end the Horſe finding that hee receiues neither foode nor comfort from any Creature but your ſelfe, he may ſo wedde his inclination vnto yours, that as if it were a Dogge which would follow his Maiſter, ſo you ſhall make your Horſe to attend and follow you vp and downe, which is an eaſie thing to bring to paſſe, as you may perceiue by many foot-cloath Horſes in the Cittie, which onely through a little cuſtome will followe their Keepers whetherſoeuer they goe: now you muſt obſerue, that whileſt you make your Horſe thus to loue and delight in your company, you muſt alſo make him ſtand in awe and feare of your diſpleaſure, correcting him euer with a ſharpe rod, when he doth any thing contrary to your will, and both cheriſhing him, and giuing him ſomething to eate, whenſoeuer hee doeth any thing to your liking; and in correcting him you muſt euer obſerue to acquaint him but with one torment, as if it bee with the Rodde, then you ſhall by no meanes vſe Whippe, Cudgell, or to ſtrike him with your Fiſts, and to this actuall torment you ſhall euer adde but one

worde

worde of terrour or threatning: So likewiſe in cheriſhing, beſides foode, you ſhall vſe but one manner of clapping or clawing him, nor but one certaine worde of encouragement, for as the vſe of many wordes, many corrections, and many cheriſhings makes him hee can neither vnderſtand any worde, any correction, or any cheriſhing perfectly, ſo the vſe of one ſingle worde certainely, to one purpoſe, makes the Horſe as perfitly by cuſtome knowe the meaning thereof as your ſelfe that ſpeakes it, as thus for example: If your Horſe out of ignorance bee about to doe contrary to your will, then to vſe this worde: *Bewiſe*, at which if hee doe not ſtay and take better deliberation, but wilfully purſue his error, thē to correct him & vſe this word *Villayn* or *Traytor*, or ſuch like, ſo you vſe but one word; and when he doth as you would haue him, to cheriſh him, & vſe this word *So boy*, in a ſhort ſpace you ſhall bring him to that knowledge that hee will wholy bee directed by thoſe wordes and your commaundment; you ſhall neuer at any time giue him any foode, but when hee doth ſomething to deſerue it, that knowing alwayes the cauſe why hee hath foode, he may with more diligence regard and obſerue you in whatſoeuer you doe: Now when you haue thus made your horſe acquainted with obedience and loving vnto you, and ready to obſerue euery thing which ſhall proceed from you, when he knowes perfectly the diuerſity of your wordes, and the cauſe of your great tormenting and puniſhing him, when you haue brought him to an emptie body and a hungry appetite, ſo that euen for his belly ſake hee will double his diligence, for it is a generall rule that neither flying Hawke, nor ſetting Spaniell muſt bee kept more empty then a Horſe in this caſe,

then you may begin to teach him to fetch your gloue, firſt by making him take your gloue into his mouth and holding it, then by letting the gloue fall to the ground, and making him take it vp, and laſtly by throwing the gloue a prettie way from you, and making him fetch it and deliuer it vnto you, and euery time hee dooth to your contentment, you ſhall giue him two or three bitts of Breade, and when hee offends you two or three ſtrokes; or if you finde him very wilfull or vnapt to conceiue, then aſſoone as you haue corrected him, you ſhall put on his muzzell, and let him ſtand for at leaſt ſixe houres after without meate, and then proone him again, yet you muſt haue great patience in teaching him at the firſt, and not leaue him by any meanes till hee doth ſomething faſhion himſelfe to your liking, and after once you perceiue he doth vnderſtand you, then if hee doe amiſſe, you muſt by no meanes ouerſlip puniſhment; for the greateſt difficultie is in the firſt entrance to learne, and whether hee doth well or ill, or whatſoeuer he doth you ſhal by no meanes change your words or vſe more ſpeech then what he perfectly vnderſtands. Till he will very readily receiue your gloue, you ſhall by no meanes make him take it from the ground, and till he will take it from the ground as quickly as you can let it fall, you ſhall not by any meanes make him fetch it, for to haue two leſſons imperfect at once, would make a confuſion in the horſes memory, and before you make him perfect in any of theſe three, you ſhall by continuall vſe and calling vpon him make him know his own name, ſo that whenſoeuer you pronounce it, he may (whatſoeuer he is doing) lift vp his head, & looke you in the face, which is a ſigne hee attends your pleaſure: and to bring

all

all theſe thinges to paſſe, there is no other Art to be vſed then labour and induſtry ioyned to the obſeruations already preſcribed: and there be ſome horſes which after they are acquainted with the Man and his meanings will performe all this in leſſe then a weeke, other Horſes I haue ſeene which haue bin a month about one of them, wherefore when you will trie theſe concluſions, you muſt not thinke much with any labour. When your Horſe will receiue your Gloue, take vp your gloue, and fetch your gloue, you ſhall then make him carrie a gloue whether you will in this ſort: Firſt you ſhall make him receiue it in his mouth, and then pointing out a place with your rodde you ſhall ſay vnto him *Deliuer*, and not leaue repeating that worde ſometimes more ſharpely, ſometimes gently, till hee lay or at leaſt bowe his heade downe with it to that place where your rodde pointed, and then you ſhall cheriſh him, and giue him bread, thus you ſhall labour and apply him euery houre when hee is hungry, till you haue made him that hee will carry to any place againſt which you point your rodde, and when you ſay *Deliuer*, then to let it part from his mouth.

Nowe you muſt obſerue that whileſt you teach him thus, looke to what place you point your rodde, to that place alſo you muſt moſt conſtantly place your eye, not remouing it to any obiect, till your will bee perform'd, for it is your eye and countenance, aſwell as your wordes, by which the Horſe is guided, and whoſoeuer did note *Bankes* Curtall, might ſee that his eye did neuer part from the eye of his Maiſter; when your Horſe will thus by the direction of your rod and your eye, carry any thing you will to the place you ſhall appoint him vnto, then you ſhall ſo honrely practiſe him therin, that in the

end if you doe make neuer ſo ſlight a ſigne with your rodde, ſo your eye bee conſtantly fixt, yet the horſe will beare it towardes that place, which as oft as hee dooth, you ſhall cherriſh him and giue him foode, then you ſhall cauſe two or three by-ſtanders to ſtand a prettie diſtance one from another, and then giuing the Horſe the Gloue, you ſhall with your rod point at him to whome you would haue him carrie it, and aſſoone as he comes neare, or but towardes the partie you point at, hee ſhall put out his hand and receiue the Gloue from him, and you ſhall then cheriſh the horſe, and giue him bread, and thus you ſhal doe to euery ſeuerall by-ſtander diuers and ſundry times, till the Horſe be ſo perfite, that he will goe to which or whome you will point at, and when he doth erre neuer ſo little, you ſhall not faile firſt to bid him *Be wiſe*, and then if he amend not inſtantly, to correct him; this done, you ſhall make two by-ſtanders to ſtand cloſe together, and then pointing at one of them, if the horſe miſtake and looke more towards the other, you ſhall bid him *Be wiſe*, and then if he turne his head towards the other, hee ſhall preſently receiue the Gloue, and you ſhall cheriſh the horſe, this by labour and practiſe hee will growe ſo cunning in, that if there bee neuer ſo great a company, looke but vpon what you fixe your eye, or to what obiect you beare the point of your rodde, to that onely the horſe will carry what is deliuered him, wherein you are but onely to helpe him thus farre, that when hee is neare the partie, you giue him comfort, and cauſe the party to take what the horſe bringes: Then after to giue a greater grace to the action, or to make fond people wonder, you may blindfolde the horſe, and taking any mans Gloue in ſecret, after vnblindfolde him, and bid

the

the horſe beare the gloue to him from whom you tooke it, which by the direction of your eye and rod, hee will preſently doe.

Now if you will teach your Horſe to reckon any number, by lifting vp and pawing with his feete, you ſhal firſt with your rodde, by rapping him vpon the ſhin, make him take his foote from the ground, and by adding to your rod one certaine worde as *Vp*: or ſuch like, nowe when he will take vp his foote once, you ſhall cherriſh him, and giue him breade, and when hee ſets it vpon the ground, the firſt time you ſhall euer ſay one, then giue him more breade, and after a little pauſe, labour him againe at euery motion, giuing him a bit of bread till hee be ſo perfit, that as you lift vp your rod, ſo he will lift vp his foote, and as you moue your rod downeward, ſo he will mooue his foote to the ground, and you ſhall carefully obſerue to make him in any wiſe to keepe true time with your rodde, and not to mooue his foote when you leaue to moue your rod, which correcting him when hee offends, both with ſtrokes and hunger, he will ſoone bee carefull to obſerue, after you haue brought him to this perfectneſſe, then you ſhall make him encreaſe his numbers at your pleaſure, as from one to two, from two to three, and ſo foorth, till in the end hee will not leaue pawing with his foote, ſo long as euer you moue your rodde vp and downe, and in this by long cuſtome, you ſhall make him ſo perfect, that if you make the motion of your rod neuer ſo little, or hard to bee perceiued, yet hee will take notice from it, and in this leſſon as in the other, you muſt alſo direct him by your eye, fixing your eyes vpon the rodde, and vpon the horſes feete all the while that you moue it: for it is a rule in the Nature of

Of counting numbers.

horſes, that they haue an eſpeciall regard to the eye, face, and countenance of their keepers, ſo that once after you haue brought him to knowe the helpe of your eye, you may preſume hee will hardly erre except your eye miſguide him: and therefore euer before you make your Horſe doe any thing, you muſt firſt make him looke you in the face. Now after you haue made him perfite in theſe obſeruations, and that he knowes his ſeuerall rewardes, both for good and euill doings, then you may aduenture to bring him into any company or aſſembly, and making any man thinke a number, and tell it you in your eare, you may bid the Horſe tell you what number the man did thinke, and at the end of your ſpeech bee ſure to ſay laſt *vp*: for that is as it were a watch-worde to make him knowe what hee muſt doe, and whileſt you are talking, you ſhall make him looke in your face, and ſo your eye directing him vnto your rodde, you may with the motions thereof, make him with his foote declare the number before thought by the by-ſtander. From this you may create a World of other toyes, as how many Maydes, how many Fooles, how many Knaues, or how many Rich men are amongſt a multitude of gazing perſons, making the World wonder at that which is neither wonderfull, nor ſcarce artificiall.

Of making a Horſe lye downe.

Now for the making of a Horſe to lye downe when you will, that euery ordinary Horſe courſer, or Horſe ambler, can make his Horſe by beating him, firſt vpon both his fore ſhinnes, and making him kneele downe, and ſo by degrees to make him lye all along, after what faſhion or manner you will, as if either hee were deade, aſleepe, or elſe couching and watching to ſee ſome-

thing;

thing; wherein is onely to bee obſerued, the conſtancie of the certaine worde you vſe for that purpoſe, and your reward for well dooing, and your correction when hee offendes, and all ſuch helpes which you vſe when you teach either Hound or Spaniell to couch, which is for the moſt part at the firſt onely an awfull threatning, or commaundment till hee vnderſtand your minde, and after as it were but a milde and cheerefull intreaty.

Now for to make him riſe vp ſodainely againe, and either to ſtrike, leape, or vſe any deſperate motion, you ſhall but onely acquaint him with ſome other worde contrary to that by which you forceſt him to lye downe, and aſſoone as you vſe it, you ſhall not onely helpe to raiſe him vp with your hand, but by pricking, tickling, or toying with him, make him yerke vp his hinder parts, and offer to runne and bite at you, your ſelfe ſeeming as it were to bee affraid of him, and as it were in a pleaſant manner to ſhrinke and runne away from his furie; and that you may doe this with more certaintie, you ſhall before you teach him to lie downe, teach him to yerke behinde by pricking him in the buttocke with a ſharpe Nalle, Goade, or ſuch like inſtrument, but in any caſe not by vſing your rodde, for that being your inſtrument of correction, muſt neuer be vſed but when hee offends, leaſt hee miſtaking the vſe, doe likewiſe miſtake when hee doth offend, and when hee doth pleaſe you.

Alſo you ſhall teach him before he come to fall down, to runne, and bite, and ſnappe at you as hee plaies, and is familiar with you, by twitching at his lips, and ſhrinking your hand againe, or ſometimes by pricking him in the lippes with a Pinne, or ſuch like; or by making him runne vp and downe after you, for in ſuch wantonneſſe a

Horſe

Horſe is naturally adicted to knauery; Nowe when hee hath learnt theſe toyes, you may then imploy them, and mixe them with any tricke whatſoeuer, and from theſe toyes you may create twenty others as much or more fantaſticall, which would aske a great toyle to declare in writing, and yet in their teaching they haue but one Method or manner of inſtruction.

Of making a Horſe piſſe, or forbeare, & other toyes.

Now to conclude, that you may make a horſe to piſſe when you would haue him (or at leaſt to ſtraine and moue himſelfe thereunto) or to leaue piſſing when you pleaſe, you ſhall for two dayes at the leaſt, watch him, and keepe ſuch diſtance of times, that hee may neuer piſſe, but when you vrge him, and to that end you ſhall once in two or three houres leade your horſe vp and downe vpon ſtraw, ſo ſoftly, that hee may as it were but put one foote and ſtand ſtill, then another and ſtand ſtill, your ſelfe continually ſaying vnto him *Piſſe*, *Piſſe*, and thus you ſhall doe if it bee a whole day together, till hee doe piſſe or ſtraine himſelfe to piſſe, and then you ſhall reward him with breade; and till hee doe piſſe or ſtraine himſelfe to piſſe, you ſhall neither moone him in any other leſſon, nor let him taſte foode though it were for a weeke together, and by this meanes after hee vnderſtands your meaning, you ſhall no oftner ſay *Piſſe*, but he either will piſſe, or ſtraine himſelfe to piſſe, and then at your pleaſure acquainting him with a contrary worde as *No more* or ſuch like, which beeing ſpoken in threatning ſort, and accompanied with correction, you ſhall make him ſtay his piſſing, when, and as oft as you pleaſe. As this motion of piſſing, ſo you may vſe him in his eating, drinking, or any other Naturall action, and though theſe appeare very vnnaturall, yea euen to Horſe-men themſelues,

ſelues, yet they are as eaſie to bee effected, as any toy whatſoeuer.

Now for Trotting, Ambling or Dauncing when you pleaſe, or ſeuerally to vſe which you pleaſe, you are but firſt to make him ſeuerally to knowe the motions, and to vſe to euery motion a ſeuerall helpe, as when you would haue him Daunce, to jerke him ouerthwart the midbacke, when you would haue him Trot, to jerke him vpon the ſhoulder, and when you would haue him Amble to jerke him vnder the belly, and to knit to euery helpe a certain worde, and you ſhall finde it more certaine then any other tricke whatſoeuer. And thus hauing giuen you theſe ſlight taſtes of the entrance into theſe ſuperficiall toyes, which are more to ſtirre admiration then profit, ſith from theſe may bee deriued all others which haue beene put in practiſe, I thinke it not good to trouble you further with any large relation.

CHAP. 6.

Of drawing dry-foote, and the aptneſſe of Horſes thereunto.

IT is not long agoe ſince a worthy Gentleman mine eſpeciall friend (talking with mee touching the Natures and diſpoſitions of Horſes) began amongſt other conferences to lay me downe ſtrong arguments and very good and probable reaſons, that it might bee poſſible to make a Horſe to draw dry-foot after any Man, and to diſtinguiſh Scents with his noſe aſwell as any Bloodhound, or ſlut-hound whatſoeuer, both becauſe a Horſe

of

of all other Beastes is most dainty and curious of smell, and also is more apt to vndertake, and more able to performe any thing then any other beast, by asmuch as hee is of greater vnderstanding and better capacity, and for an instance of his pureneſſe of smelling, wee know that let a Horse bee blind-folded neuer so close, and but brought where a proude Mare is, hee will instantly smell her, and growe as couragious as if his eyes had neuer so great liberty; Horses also haue beene knowne to start, and to vndertake the scent of a Beare long before they haue either seene or come neare the Beare; so that a horse beeing able both to vent and winde a farre off the scents, which both pleaſe and displeaſe him, it must consequently follow that Nature hath giuen them benefite enough in smelling, and there onely wantes but an industrious minde to venter vpon the imployment; out of such like arguments as theſe, it pleased him to vrge mee to make tryall of his imagination, and so to report what I found in the practise: but at that time being ouer-maistred with the worlds buſineſſe (I mean croſſes and Law suites) I could not so presently purſue it, but since being deliuer'd of thoſe fetters, I beſtowed a monthes practiſe to see what I could bring to paſſe, and it is moſt assured I found it very poſſible, for thus farre I proceeded; Firſt after I had kept my horſe in the muzzell a Weeke and more, and brought him to such a sharpneſſe and eagerneſſe of stomacke, that hee was euen almoſt mad for foode, and when I had brought him to a perfect familiarity and acquaintance with mee, making him euer eate that little which hee had giuen vpon the ground, after I had troad on it with my foote, I then went into a bare-close, and there laide downe a peece of Breade, and set

my

my foote vpon it, and then another within a foot of it, and trod vpon it alſo, and ſo laide piece by piece one within a foote or two of another, till I had gone twenty or thirty yardes, and then ſtood cloſe vnder a hedge or a wall, ſo as the horſe might not ſee me, then I cauſed one to bring foorth the horſe, and to bring him to the firſt peece of bread, and ſo to the ſecond, and ſo from peece to peece, till hee came to the place where I ſtood, where preſently I gaue him as many Oates as hee would eate, and then put on his muzzell: for you muſt vnderſtand that Bread is onely good to make the Traine with, but to feede the horſe continually with it, the ſauour is ſo ſtrong, that it would ſomewhat hinder his ſcent, whereas Oates hauing no ſuch ranckneſſe, workes no ſuch imperfection: in this ſort I continued him twice a day for a weeke together, euery time making my traine a ſeuerall way, till the horſe grewe ſo cunning, that aſſoone as he had taſted the firſt peece hee would euen trot from peece to peece, and make no ſtay till hee came where I ſtood. After this I laide my firſt peeces of bread more then a yarde a ſunder, and towardes the latter end of the traine I laid them a dozen yardes a ſunder, ſo that then hee began to truſt more to his noſe then he did before, and thus I vſed him for more then another weeke, till he came to that perfection that hee would make him runne which ledde him, in all which time I euer obſerued, that if hee either grew negligent or careleſſe of his buſineſſe, or fell to gnaw vpon the earth, preſently hee which led him, after ſome rating and beating him, put on his muzzell, and hee ſtood at leaſt a dozen houres after without foode, but this neither did, nor will happen but very ſeldome,

dome, especially if you keepe him in right temper, which is, that hee may bee extreame hungry, but not faint or sicke with hunger, and also I did neuer faile but when he had found me out, I gaue him water as well as Oates; the third weeke, I made his Traine at least a quarter of a myle, and not aboue sixe peeces of Breade in all the traine, yet so plac'st, and the traine made so plaine, that if at any time there hapened a slight errour, yet hee which ledde him by knowing my passage was able to helpe and putt him into the true pathe againe, and thus I practised the Horse, and increased his knowledge by such leasurable degrees, that before a month was past, I haue not laide aboue two peeces of breade in more then a quarter of a myle, and haue with my best diligence endeauoured to deceiue both the Horse, and hee which ledde him, but I founde that with no faire play I was able to doe it, but goe whether I would in any orderly fashion, and the Horse would finde men out; Now thus farre onely I did proceede in this experiment partly to satisfie my freind, and partly to better mine owne iudgement, when compelled (as poore meu are) to follow other occasions, I was faine to desist and to leaue my desire but halfe satisfied; so that how a Horses nose is able to direct him when hee comes to diuersitie of Earths, to hye-wayes, to the foylings of other Cattle, and to wette and moyst places, I am not able as yet to iudge, onely for what I haue hitherto seene, or what in the Nature or composition of a Horse I vnderstand I finde nothing to abate or discourage my hope, and for mine owne part I haue such a confident opinion therein, that I make no doubt but whosoeuer

shall

shall take in hand the practise, shall finde it easie and full of probabilitie, till when I referre all whatsoeuer I haue written in this whole Arte of Horse manship to the iudgement of such who reade without mallice or detraction.

*****

FINIS.



155

J. C. H.

MACDONALD – BINDER. N.V.